

Unyanyembe Journal, 28 January 1866 - 5 March 1872

David Livingstone and Henry M. Stanley

Published by Livingstone Online (livingstoneonline.org), 2017

[0001]

[0002]

[0003]

[0004]

[0005]

[0006]

Livingstone's Journal

Instructions to Printer -

= Omit pages 1 - ~~12~~ as far as marked 11 and
12 as far as marked through with pencil -

= Omit pages 131 - 143 -

= Omit page 171 from pencil mark to ~~pene~~
pencil mark page 172

= Omit page 201 from pencil mark to pencil
mark 2page 202.

= Pages 374-389 are t go in as appendix

- 397 - 421- ditto - ditto -

= Omit pages 493 to 505 -

- - 535 - 5998 and 599 as far
as marked in pencil -

= Omit pages 621 - 644

- - 737 to End -

= Dates in Side notes t be in text - remarks

in side notes t be as foot - notes -

= Notes on various subjects t be in the text unless

put in the appendix - see above -

MChale
16/7/74

[0007]
1

G

This Journal sent home
from Unyanyembe by
Henry M. Stanley
14th March 1872
David Livingstone

[0008]
2

[0009]
3

[0010]
4

[0011]
5

[The imprint of the words "The Right Honourable Earl Russell" appears backwards here and appears to have rubbed off from another manuscript.]

[0012]
6

[0013]

David Livingstone

1866

For Contents see twelve months at the end of the volume, each month having two pages allotted to it - The days as printed in the body of the work are noted in the Contents but a leaf left without paging between each two numbered days is also left blank - The Rainfall is copied beginning July I. and onwards - Altitudes above the level of the sea at principal stations by Barometers and boiling points begin July 12. Private Memoranda being November I.

[0014]

[0015]

9

I

Bombay 28 Nov^r 1865

[...]1

The Right Honourable

Earl Russell

My Lord

I have the honour to inform your Lordship that having arrived here on the 11th Sept, I spent some time in organizing my expedition for the Interior of Africa and was ready to start six weeks ago

On again visiting my little steamer I came to the conclusion that she was much too small to recross the two thousand & seven hundred miles between this & the River Rovuma, and that it would be unwise to aim to incur the risk of that navigation for the sake of using her on the hundred and fifty miles of that river which is navigable -

I therefore waited in the hope of hearing of a passage in a man of war in accordance

with a request made by the Foreign Office to the Admiral but recieved no information till the arrival of Commodore Montresor a week ago when it appeared that the first ship proceeding to the East Coast would not be here for another month - His Excellency Sir Bartle Frere, however having given me the option of a passage in a small steamer named "Thule" which is to be sent in a few days as a present from this Government to the Sultan of Zanzibar I shall gladly avail myself of this conveyance -

[0016]

10

II

By the favour of his Excellency the Governor I have twelve Sepoy volunteers and a native officer from the Marine Battalion who having served as Marines in the old East Indian Navy in the Persian Gulph and on the coast of Africa are prepared to undergo hardship and it has been kindly arranged that this work will count as service.

In addition to these, eight liberated Africans who have recieved some education and been taught carpenter and smith's work have also volunteered to serve

The most serious drawback to travelling in Africa is the want of carriage & beasts of burden - The insect called the "Tsetse" by destroying domestic animals confines cattle to very limited areas of country - as wild buffaloes are not injured by the bite of this pest it occurred to me to try whether the tame buffalo of India might not enjoy the same immunity, and by the very friendly assistance of His Highness the Sultan of Zanzibar, who wrote an order with his own hand to the Captain of one of his ships to convey what I might send on board, I despatched fourteen of these animals to be used as beasts of burden, and as an experiment to see if they can

withstand the insect poison The
tame buffalo of India resembles the
wild one of Africa so closely that

[0017]

11.

III

they must be more than half brothers
and should we succeed in introducing
a beast of burden it will be a boon to the
country, and by rendering strangers
almost independent of native carriers
a blessing to travellers - The experiment
at any rate is worth the expense

His Excellency Sir Bartle Frere has
done everything in his power to aid my
progress, and shewn more kindness
than I can express - Through his influence
the Sultan of Zanzibar furnished a
Firman to all his people whom we
may meet - This will at least prevent
hostility and may do much more -
It is a gratifying proof of His Highness'
Friendship

Some of the gentlemen of Bombay
of their own accord entered into a
subscription in aid of my expedition
and handed (£645) six hundred and
forty five Pounds to me - I have
deposited this sum with a mercantile
firm to be used as soon as I can point
out a comparatively healthy locality
in an effort to establish lawful
commerce, and begin that system
which has been so eminently success-
ful on the West Coast - It is probable
that a mercantile house will manage
an affair of this kind to greater
advantage - and spend the money
to better purpose than I could, because
I am deficient in the trading instinct

[0018]

12

IV

The explorations pointed out in

your Lordships Instructions and in
those of the Royal Geographical
Society will claim my earliest
and earnest attention
I am your Lordships
most obedient servant
David Livingstone
Zanzibar 28 January 1866

After a passage of 23 days from Bombay
we arrived at this island in the Thule
which was one of Captain Sherard Osborne's
late Chinese fleet and now a present from
the Bombay Government to the Sultan
of Zanzibar - I was honoured with
the Commission to make the formal pre-
-sentation and this was intended by H- E.
the Governor in Council to shew in
how much estimation I was held and
thereby induce the Sultan to forward
my enterprise - The letter to his highness
was a commendatory epistle in my
favour - for which consideration
on the part of Sir Bartle Frere I feel
deeply grateful.

When we arrived D^r Seward was
absent at the Seyschelles on account
of serious failure of health - M^r Schultz
was acting for him but he too was
at the time absent and on reflecting
a short time I thought it better not
to put myself in the hands of a foreigner

[0019]

13

V

D^r Seward was expected back daily, and he did
arrive on the 31st I requested a private
interview with the Sultan and on the following
day (29th) called and told him the nature of my
commission to His Highness - He was very
gracious and seemed pleased with the
gift as well he might for the Thule is
fitted up in the most gorgeous manner
We asked a few days to put her in perfect
order and this being the Ramadân or fasting
month he was all the more willing to defer
a visit to the vessel -

After D^r Seward came he arranged
to have an audience with the Sultan to

present me in the formal manner he was directed to do and Captain Bradshaw of the Wasp with Captain Leatham of the Vigilant and bishop Tozer were to accompany us in full dress but the Sultan had a toothache & gum boil and could not receive us - He however placed one of his houses at my disposal and appointed a man who speaks English to furnish board for my men & me as also for Captain Brebner of the Thule & his men -

76th February 1866 The Sultan being still unable to come partly on account of toothache and partly on account of Ramadan he sent his Commodore Captain Abdullah to receive the Thule - When the English flag was hauled down in the Thule it went up to the main mast of the Secunder Shah and was saluted by 21 guns - Then the Wasp saluted the Turkish flag with an equal number which honour being duly acknowledged by a second Royal salute from Secunder Shah

[0020]

14
VI

Captain Abdullah's frigate the ceremony ended - Next day the 7th we were received by the Sultan and having his interpreter I told him that his friend the Governor of Bombay had lately visited the South Mahratta Princes and had pressed on them the necessity of education - The world was moving on and those who neglected to acquire knowledge would soon find that power slipped through their fingers - The Bombay Government in presenting H. H. with a portion of steam power shewed its desire to impart one of the greatest improvements of modern times - They evidently did not desire to monopolize power but to lift up others with themselves and I wished him to live a hundred years and enjoy all happiness - The idea was borrowed partly from Sir Bartle Frere's addresses because I thought it would have more weight if he heard a little

from that source than if it emanated
from myself - He was very anxious
that Captⁿ Brebner and his men should
take a passage from him in the Nadir
Shah one of his men of war - and though
he had already - taken his things aboard
the "Vigilant" to proceed to Seyschelles thence
to Bombay we persuaded Captⁿ Brebner
to accept H H's hospitality - He had
evidently set his heart on sending them
back with suitable honours and an
hour after consent was given to go by
Nadir Shah he signed an order for the
money to fit her out -

[0021]

15

VII

11th February 1866 -

One of the first subjects that naturally
occupied my mind here was the sad loss of
the Baron van der Decken on the River
Juba or Aljib - The first intimation of the
unfortunate termination of his explorations
was the appearance of Lieut^t von Schich or
Schift at this place - He had left without
knowing whether his leader were dead or alive
but an attack had been made in the en-
-campment which had been plan[...]-ted after the
steamer struck the rocks & filled, and two
of the Europeans were killed - The attacking
party came from the direction in which
the Baron, and D^r Link went and three
men of note in it were slain - Von Schift
went back from Zanzibar to Brava to ascertain the fate
of the Baron, and meanwhile several
native sailors from Zanzibar had been
allowed to escape from the scene of
confusion to Brava from their account
as written down in Arabic we glean
the following points

Maya Mabrook & Hamada said -
When we reached Aljib (or Juba) the people
forbade us to pass into the river without a
letter from the people of Brava - The Baron
wrote a letter & sent it to Brava, but for 10
days no answer came to him so he went
into the Juba without it - The small steam
launch in crossing the bar struck on water

so shoal that the men walked on the sand.
One white sailor seems to have stumbled
into a hole & was drowned - this is mentioned
by another witness.

They were a long time in the ascent from
anchoring at night & cutting wood -

[0022]

VIII

16

written Feb^y 1866 from depositions of survivors of Baron's party
Once the Baron & others went ashore to hunt & lost his
way - wandering about for 5 days - Abdiyo -
Kurow & Baraka were sent to look for the Baron
and his companions and after some days they
returned & were rewarded with ten dollars they at last reached the country
and town of Bardereh about 20 September 1865 on which the Baron
with the Doctor & three men went to the town
and bought a couple of oxen- The Baron
wanted to go to Jananeh (some place
further up the country) Hajee Ali the chief
of the country said that the ship will not
pass further up the river on account of the
rocks, but you must go on camels by the
road - and I will send on some people to
accompany you to Jananeh, and they will
come back with you; The Baron answered
"you Mahometans tell lies, we do not
believe you" Hajee Ali said, "send some[-]
one who will bring you word, and it will
be known whether our words are true or not."
He did not consent. After six days we
sailed without going to the chief. At midday
we anchored, and the next day about midday
the ship struck on a rock and began to fill
with water - (Suleiman said "We saw a stone before us -
the ship struck by its front & came back again - then
struck twice - then began to fill") (Must have been trying to force a passage)
We landed all the property, and next day
the Baron went to Bardereh with the
Doctor, Abdiyo, Kirow & Baraka -

The next day after that there came a
great number of people 29th Sept^r calling to us -
The Captain (Von Schiffck) sent the boat
to enquire about the Baron - When the
boat reached them there were a great
many Somalies there - The boat came
back - The Somalies at once came near

[0023]

17

IX

lent me by M^r Theodor Schultz - Zanzibar - (footnote)
the property - then we asked for a musket from
the Captain - He said "Our muskets were enough -"
the Somalies had each two spears - We fought -
– three chief men of the Somalies were killed -
The Captain could not stand against them -
he went to get the boat. - some of the Somalies
were in it, he fought with them and drove
them away - then he went in it with some
five men , and I with three other men went
to Bardereh to tell the Baron of what had happened.
After two days, we arrived. When we reached
it we were taken by the people of Bardereh &
kept in a house belonging to Hajee Ali's brother
Afterwards Mobarak came to us with the three
men -
Mabrook (slave of Hamad bin Said bin Ghabish)
He says when the ship struck on a rock in the
country of the Somalies & Gallas the Baron
went down stream to Bardereh in a boat
they reached the town the same day and two
houses were given to the party - Hajee Ali
had that day arrived from another village
and came at once to the Baron who said
that he wanted 10 oxen Hajee Ali said that
they never kept oxen in the town but
he would send for them to some out
station - they only kept cows in the town
for the sake of their milk - next day only
2 fowls & nine eggs were brought - Then
on third day 2 bulls - The Baron told the
chief that he wanted ten sent to his people
and if he knew the price it would be
paid on arrival of the animals at the camp
He said that he wanted also camels to
go on to Jananeh - Hajee Ali said - very
well, all shall come at once. Hajee Ali

[0024]

X

18

went to his house - 2^d Oct^r After he left - Baraka came and called four men belonging to the Baron who sitting at his door, who answered we cannot leave the door he said never mind no danger, then they went with him to the house where Kamees was, when they saw them they asked Kamees what had happened, he told them that the property had all been taken and that the Captain had gone away in the boat, and we could not overtake them, but we came by land to tell the Baron of what had happened - When we got there they kept us in this house afterwards

Mabrook Speak said
That the Baron said ~~to him~~ when the people said to him his ship could not go to Guananeh because the water was little - the Baron said "never mind if she is damaged I will shall build another ["]- After reaching Bardereh we left the boat with Mobarek alone in it - Abdiyo said, "here we fight - it is better to leave the boat without any one in it" - On the second day Abdiyo said that the boat was taken away - When the Baron heard this he said to me go & look for the boat, and he ordered me if I found it not to bring it in the day time but at night. On looking for it I did not find it, but on my way back I met a woman from the Somalies who put her hand on her throat telling me like killing - When I reached the Baron I told him of this - he said that "I tell lies" - Then Abdiyo came and said there is fight - The Baron said to him "you tell lies," "and want to make a riot" Then the Baron ordered Abdiyo to

[0025]

19

XI

to go to the ship and to tell them about the fight - Abdiyo made leizure - made himself heavy - When the Baron saw that he did not wish to go he ordered us to be ready - When we were all ready to go to the ship with him, and the Doctor,

elsewhere
said
to have
wander-
ed

we went till sunset & slept there - (in the way) In
the morning the Baron said to the Doctor
"I am tired and I cannot go to the place
where the ship is, but you and Sulieman go

[Printed advertisement for Lett's Perpetual Diary.]
"go and tell them of what has happened,
and we shall return to Bardereh" When
we were going the Baron said to us, "you
do not say to any that we did not reach the
ship -" And when we [had] gone towards the place
where the ship was, we left in the house
at Bardereh Abdiyo, Baraka & Kiro -
When we returned to Bardereh Abdiyo
asked us "did you reach the ship -"
We said "Yes & slept there" - In the
morning we purchased eight oxen -

[0026]

XII
20

[Printed note on representation of days of week in the journal.]
and the Baron ordered Kiro to take
them to the ship - Then we (pounded) were struck(?)
corn & eat it, and when the guns were
were taken I was not there, but at
midday five men Jomeh - Kamass -
Mageh - and Mabrook Shalleh came &
said there is a fight at the ship - Then
the Baron said to Abdiyo's brother -
"Bring me my guns" - he answered I will
bring them soon - Then the Baron ordered
me to go and bring them - Abdiyo's brother
said I shall bring them - The Baron
sent Maya to bring them - and they were
not brought - Afterwards the Somalies
came, some with guns & some ~~not~~ - now
they brought the guns for the Baron -

He offered

them money.”
In vain.
Abdiyo
said he
”was killed
& thrown
into the
river”

When they were near him (and he stoop[ed]
down to lift up his own gun) they
seized and bound his hands with ropes - before him
the Baron said ”Abdiyo! Abdiyo!”
twice - they then took him - When [he] was
going he saw (looked?) back about us
Afterward one Somalie pass in his
hand pantallon (pantaloon?) in it blood
Then the Somalies send to us that you
are Mahomedans, not kill you - You

about
20 Oct^r

will go to Brava - Abdiyo was have
(had?) money of the Baron and
this money was in a little earthen
vessel & one book, and the property
that remained was divided among
them

[0027]

21
XIII

Suleimans evidence shews
that after the Baron went back to the
town of Bardereh he & the Doctor as ordered
went forward to the ship to ascertain whether
an attack had been made or not - ”When we
went there we reached about 4 oclock, we saw
good number of people at near the ship, and we
saw there no body from (or of) our com-
panions - When the Somalies saw us, we
have flee into the river swimming - the doctor
went up, but I followed the water till I got the
ship, and I remained a little, then I bound two
woods (pieces of ?) and embark (on) them till the
morning - I hid myself in the wildness - (Wilder[-]

ness)?) I was going then all day & in the night I ascend a tree - at the morning I came down and reached Bardereh at Midday-” When I was seen by the people they bound my hands behind me & put me in a house - At four oclock, I have heard that the Doctor Luick reached Bardereh called out for the Baron and he was killed by its people - but I and some of our companions and the people of this place, said that they wanted to kill us (too) - After several days a chief arrived from another place & released them all -

Other evidence mentions that the Baron was enticed away from his house by Abdiyo to see a friends house & both went without arms - then the Barons arms were taken away - the Somalies came afterwards each with two spears as if mischief were meant -

The Brava people wished him to take some gentlemen from them to introduce him ~~from~~ to the Somalie people but this was not done somehow - ”If

[0028]

22

XIV copied 12 Feby 1866 (footnote)

”you come here you will be in safety because we will take (hostages?) first ~~to~~from them and come men from them who will be with you always but please that you would come to Brava, and first as you like, but if happened against you any bad state we and His Highness are not responsible” so said the Sheich of Brava 16 Nov^r

Mohamad bin Shamlan Hadamande makes it plain that the Baron examined the rocks from the shore - then next morning took Von Schift and examined them again, and came to the conclusion that she could ascend - The pilot of Bardereh said that she could not - When ~~in the~~ ~~boat~~ going back to Bardereh he said to those with him in the boat,

"do not tell the people of what has happened to the ship"

Mobarek says that they measured the water where it came by force (fall?) He was told that the Gallahs wished to fight him there, and Von Schiiftckh seems to have sounded it too - so no blame need be attached to this part of the affair if it is true that after she struck once he sounded & then went at it again, Mopaty puts it this last way - He says three Somalies came & proposed to remove the property to the other side for fear of the Gallas - Von Schiiftckh refused and "all at once the Somalies in numbers attacked them - Mopaty Abdullah & Ali Mekwa were taken but

[0029]

copied 12 Feby 1866

(footnote) 23

XV

one European M^r Bremer Bremur the hunter fired at those who took us - they fell dead - so they left us and we ran a little and far off we saw the Captain (Von Schiiftckh) & four Europeans in a boat she? We (cortined illegible) carried?) 12 Europeans the Captain & five Europeans & eight men & eight of our men and went to the ship - The Captain put on board the boat whatever he wanted to discharge? (save?) money, muskets - two kegs of powder and one of biscuit - then we went on rowing till we reached Bardereh at 10 oclock in the night where the Captain looked for the boat of the Baron - When he saw nothing, he ordered to go further on - We were pulling four days - nights & days - till we reached Jombo - The Captain landed all the money & told us to carry it with the muskets - We left the boat and everything, and he said we had to go by land till we got a new vessel - then we went on till we reached a village called Kisinago - We there got a dhow for \$50 - We went on in the same dhow to Myama where the Captain ordered us to say nothing about our case to Awess and to nobody else either If we should be asked, we should say we were sent by the Baron for the vessel which

was sent from Zanzibar with provisions
and other things - When we saw Awess
we told him the same and Awess went
with us to Lamoo - The Captain ordered
us to tell the same story - then we
met the Badeen from Zanzibar with
20 men sent by M^r Schultz with a letter
which was read by the Captain who
ordered us to return to Zanzibar

[0030]

XVI

24

Portions of the evidence as afore quoted
leave not the smallest doubt as to the fatal
issue of the enterprise - The river is said
to be very winding - they went up 300 miles
which may mean 100 [miles] in a straight line
the Baron was very haughty in dealing with
the natives and never lost an opportunity
of shewing his contempt for them - He
was moreover somewhat stingy in small
matters - the Doctor & Artist were very amiable

Schickh

Von Schifftckh was very imperious shouting
and roaring and cuffing the
native sailors all day long as if he had a lot
of Austrians under him. He got into a
rage with the natives when giving evidence
and by his vociferations confused them
The Baron's letters were filled with praise
of the Juba & country and abuse of the natives
He had quarreled with every one here. When
asked to go to church he replied that he would
not go because the bishop prayed for Sultan
Majid and he as a knight was bound to
extirpate all Turks and infidels - This was
told me by the bishop's chaplain - He
seems to have carried things with a high
hand - After some altercation with the
chief Hajee Ali the chief held out his
hand in token of reconciliation and
friendship - The Baron thrust it away -
contemptuously and by this act probably
sealed his own fate - We shall probably

never hear the other side of the question
from the evidence of these sailors as quoted
above it seems that lying was practised by
both the Baron & Von Schiff - Ten to one the
chief Hajee Ali & people knew perfectly all that
took place at the ship - the lies would to him
seem evidence of cowardice or fear

[0031]

25

XVII

In M^r Schulz account he says "the Baron
has bullied Seyed Majid a good deal as long as he was
alive - the Baron went to the Juba river against
Seyed Majid's most earnest remonstrances
as the baron was killed about 300 or 350
miles in the Juba Seyed Majid cannot be made
responsible for his death - Seyed Majid promised
to do everything in order to save the Baron's
journal & other papers which he carried along with
himself and also to catch the rascal Abdiu (or
Abdiyo) who most likely sold the Baron &
betrayed him" - "The only thing in favour of Abdiu
is that he warned the Baron from going back to
Berdera as he would be killed"

i Baron van Der Decken's letter to D^r Seward

Juba River 30 Juli 1865

My Dear Sir -

My first letter addressed to you from
Thula was left by the damned Arab who
would forward it at Thula - M^r Schultz will tell
you all the adventures and the good fortune, I
had from that time - I am in such a state of
mind that you will excuse me not to write it
again -

My position here is really a very bad one - The
people not taking care at all of Seyed Majid's, &
I myself being not strong enough to impose
them, half of my Europeans & crew being
sick, besides that having lost some of my
best men, and the other ones all in very low
spirits -

I wrote to M^r Schultz all the things I
wished I wanted but I would request from
your kindness to lend him your assistance
and influence to get a conveyance & twenty
good men - I am sure you will take the
troubles and do everything to get us out of this

[0032]

XVIII

26

very disagreeable position so soon as possible
and I hope will twenty good men I will be
able to stand against the people and go up in the
Interior, at least I will try to get on in boats, or
walking so far as possible - the Expedition had
from her beginning to a bad chance to succeed -
but I will try my best till I break down, if also
myself in low spirits I can stand, for my fears
are a good deal more - I cannot say au revoir
there is not much chance but beleive me to be
Yours Truly

[*Note: A true copy DL.*] W Bror Decken

ii Second Letter

My Dear Sir Tomorrow "inshallah" I
leave Thula trying to get in the Juba - I had a
good deal of trouble with the people here, not
that they tried openly to resist my requests
but by their common way of lying &
shuffling - I lost there by four days - every
day the chiefs promised to send a kind of
pilote or interpreter on board and always
refusing it the next day under different
pretexts - and at last in asking openly for
a large present - Every chief or man has
been recompensed ~~handsomely~~ for the smallest
service they rendered in a very generous way -
therefore my patience had gone to-day - and
as they told me that tomorrow a man should
be ready and that I had to wait for him - that
they could not let me go alone after the
letter I had brought from Seyed Majid
I gave them time till tomorrow morning
and if I see nobody coming, I go on
shore and take a man "nolens volens"
Both Rivers the Thula & Shamba
marked on the map are no rivers at all

[0033]

27

XIX

only narrow inlets from the sea - extending for 20 - 30 miles inland - I wished that M^r Witt had not exaggerated so much, and I would not have lost a whole month here, but would be safe over the bar of the Juba, with the assistance of the Lyra which I miss very much.

I will run close inland till Kismago, go after[-]wards myself overland to the mouth of the Juba to take some bearing of the bar, afterwards return to Kismago and bring the steamer in.

We had a good deal of sickness I myself being not at all well two of my black fellows died - by cholera, at noon sick - the evening dead, which made all my people a little afraid, every body thinking he will be the next, I think the danger is over because the ~~two~~2 men who died on board, and then one on shore were just the men I had with me on a hunting party for four days when we get very bad water which I presume was the cause of the sickness

iii Third letter

Juba River 14 August 1865

My Dear Sir

I am asked by Chigo bin Osman of the Somalie tribe Jafferasi one of the chiefs in Prava who passed from Lamo Yuicou, and has arranged all things with the Juba people who would at first not recognize the letter of ~~Sultan~~Sayed Majid, and tell him that he did all in his power to help me - He did so really in giving me his brother as interpreter, and guide to go up with me till Berðbera & Guanana, and I would ask you to be so kind and tell occasionally to Seyed Majid my best salams, and tell him that Chigo bin Osman had been of great use to the expedition - In six weeks I will be back here - I wrote to M^r Schultz all the news of the Expedition - Believe me to be My Dear Sir

Yours faithfully W Bror Decken

[0034]

28

Copy

to His Highness Seyed Majid of Zanzibar.
Your Highness

I trust that this will find you in the enjoyment of health and happiness -
I have requested my friend D^r David Livingstone who is already personally well and favourably known to Your Highness to convey to you the assurance of the continued friendship and goodwill of Her Majesty's Government in India.

Your Highness is already aware of the benevolent objects of D^r Livingstone's life and labours, and I feel assured that Your Highness will continue to him the favour & protection which you have already shewn to him on former occasions, and that Your Highness will direct every aid to be given to him within Your Highness dominions which may tend to further the philanthropic designs to which he has devoted himself the 18th February 1866 - All the Europeans went to pay visits of congratulation to His Highness the Sultan upon the conclusion of the Ramadân when sweetmeats were placed before us - He desired me to thank the Governor of Bombay for his magnificent gift and that though he would like to have me always with him yet he would shew me the same favour in Africa which he had done here - and the "Thule" was at my service to take me to the Rovuma whenever I wished to leave - I replied that nothing had been wanting on his part - He had done more than I expected and I was sure that His Excellency the Governor would be delighted to hear that the vessel promoted his health and prosperity - nothing would delight him more than this. He said that he meant to go out in her on Wednesday next (20th) The bishop Tozer - Captain Fraeser - D^r Steere and all the English were present and which as your Highness is aware are viewed with the warmest interest by Her Majesty's Government both in India and England
I trust your Highness will favour me with continued accounts of your good health & welfare -
I remain your Highness' sincere friend - (signed) H. B. E. Frere - Bombay castle 2 January 1866 -

and I pointed out the Nassick lads as
those who had been rescued from slavery
educated and sent back to their own
country by the Governor - surely he
must see that some people in the
world act from other than selfish motives
In the afternoon Sheikh Sulieman his
secretary came with a letter for the Gover[-]
nor to be conveyed by Lieutenant
Brebner I. N. in the Nadir Shah
which is to sail tomorrow - He offered
money if the Lieutenant would have
taken it but this could not be heard
of for a moment -

The Translation of the letter brought as
as follows and is an answer to that
which I brought a copy of which appears
at the top of the preceding page

To His Excellency the Governor of Bombay
After compliments
The end of my desire is
to know ever that your Excellency's health
is good; As for me - your friend - I am
very well -

Your honoured letter borne by D^r
Livingstone duly reached me, and all
that you said about him I understood.

I will shew him respect, give him
honour and help him in all his affairs
and that I have already done this I trust
he will tell you

I hope you will let me rest in
your heart, and that you will send
me many letters

[0036]

30

If you need anything I shall be glad
and will give it

a true
copy
DL.

Your sincere friend
Majid bin Said -
Dated 2nd Shaul 1282
18 February 1866

2^d March 1866 A Southern dhow came in with slaves and when it was reported to the Sultan he ordered it to be burned and we saw this done from the window of the consulate - but he has very little power over Northern Arabs - He has shewn a little vigour of late - He wished to raise a revenue by a charge of ten per cent on all articles brought into town for sale but this is clearly contrary to treaty which provides that no monopoly shall be permitted and no dues save that of 5 per cent import duty - The French consul bullies him - Their system of dealing with the natives is well expressed by that word - no wonder they cannot gain influence among them - The greatest power they exercise is by lending their flag to slave dhows so that it covers that nefarious traffic -

The stench arising from a mile & a half or two square miles of exposed sea beach which is the general depository of the filth of the town is quite a caution At night it is so gross or crass one might cut out a slice and manure a garden with it - It might be called Stinkibar rather than Zanzibar - No one can long enjoy good health here

[0037]

31

On visiting the slave market I found about 300 slaves exposed for sale - The greater part of them come from Lake Nyassa & the Shire - I am so familiar with the peculiar faces and markings or tatooings that I expect them to recognize me - One woman said that she had heard of our passing up Lake Nyassa in a boat but she did not see me - Others came from Chipeta S W of the Lake - all who have grown up seem ashamed at being hawked about for sale the teeth are examined - the cloth lifted up to examine the lower limbs & a stick is thrown for the slave to bring & thus exhibit his paces - some are dragged through the crowd

by the hand & the price called out incessantly
Most of the purchasers were Northern
Arabs and Persians - This is the period
when the Sultans people many not carry
slaves coast wise but they simply cannot
for the wind is against them - Many of the
dhows leave for Madagascar & thence come
back to complete their cargoes -

The Arabs are said to treat their slaves
kindly and this also may be said of
native masters - the reason is Master & Slave
partake of the general indolence. But the
lot of the slave does not improve with
the general progress in civilization -
While no great disparity of rank exists
his energies are little tasked But when
society advances - wants multiply -
and to supply these the slave's lot grows
harder - The distance between master & man
increases as the lust of gain is developed
Hence we can hope for no improvement
in the slaves condition unless the master
returns to or remains in Barbarism -

[0038]

32

6th March 1866 - Rains have begun now
that the sun is overhead - We expect Penguin
daily to come from Johanna and take
us to the Rovuma - Six of my men had
fever here - It is an unhealthy place -
Few retain health long and considering
the lowness of the island and the absence
of sanitary regulations in the town
it is not to be wondered at - The
Sultan has little power, being only the
successor to the captain of the horde
of Arabs who came down & over-
ran the island & maritime coasts of
the adjacent continent - He is called
only Said or Syed by them - never
Sultan & they can boast of choosing
a new one if he does not suit
them - Some coins were found in
digging here which have cufic
inscriptions and are some 900 years
old - The island is low - the highest
parts may not be more than 150
feet above the sea - It is of a coral

formation with sandstone con[-]
glomerate in which lime is an
important ingredient - Most of the
plants are African - clove trees -
Mangoes & cocoa nut groves give
a luxuriant South Sea island look
to the whole scenery

We visited an old man today - the
richest in Zanzibar He is to give
me letters to his friends at Tanganyika
and I am trying to get a depot of
goods for provisions farmed there - So
that when I reach it I may not be
distitute

[0039]

33

18 March 1866 - Have arranged with Koorje
a Banian who farms the custom House
Revenue here to send a supply of beads,
cloth - flour, Tea - coffee & sugar to Ujiji
on Lake Tanganyika - The Arab there with
whom one of Koorje's people will remain
in charge of the goods is called Thani bin
Suelim and after delivery to me he will
return to Unyembe -

Yesterday we went to take leave of the
Sultan and to thank him for all his kind[-]
nessto me and my men which has
indeed been very great - He offered me
men to go with me [...]and another letter
if I wished it - He looks very ill -

I have recieved very great kindness
during my stay from D^r & M^{rs} Seward
they have done everything for me in
their power - May God Almighty return
it all abundantly into their bosoms in
the way that he best can - His views
of the policy pursued here are the oppos[-]
ite of Pelly's and I have no doubt
they are the right ones in fact the only
ones which can be looked back to
with satisfaction or that have probability
of success among a race of Pariah
Arabs

The Penguin came a few days ago
and Lieutenant Garforth in command
agrees to take me down to Rovuma
and land me there - I hire a dhow to

take my animals - sevenix camels
three buffaloes - & a calf - 2 mules
and four donkeys - I have 13
sepoys - 10 Johanna men - 9 Nassick
boys - 2 Shupanga men - & 2 Waiyau

[0040]

34

19th March 1866 We start this morning
at 10 AM. I trust that the most High
may prosper me in this work granting
me influence in the eyes of the heathen
and helping me to make my intercourse
beneficial to them -

22 March 1866 Reached Rovuma Bay
and anchored about 2 miles from
the mouth of the River in 5 fathoms
I went up the left bank to see if the
gullies which formerly ran into the
bay had altered so as to allow the
camels to cross them - They seemed to
have become shallower - no wind for
the dhow and the man of war towing
her was out of the question - On the
23 - cutter tried to tow the dhow but
without success as a strong tide runs
consistently out of the river at this
season - a squall came up from the
S.E. which would have taken dhow
in but master was on board Penguin
and said he had no large sail - I got
him off to his vessel but wind died
away before we got into the river
24 I went to dhow & there being no
wind I left orders to the captain to go
up right bank should a breeze arise -
Went with M^r Fane - midshipman
up left bank above part already
examined to see if we could lead
the camels along in the water - Near the
point where the river first makes
a little bend to the North we landed
and found three formidable gullies
and jungle so thick with bush - date
palms - twigging bambo and hooked

[0041]

thorns that men could scarcely get along -
 Further inland it was sticky mud thickly
 planted over with mangrove roots - gullies
 in whose soft banks one sank over
 the ankles - No camels could have moved -
 and men with extreme difficulty might
 struggle through - but we never could have
 made an available road - came to a she
 Hippopotamus lying in a ditch which did
 not cover her - M^r Fane fired into
 her head and she was so upset that
 she nearly fell backwards in plunging
 up the opposite bank - Her calf was
 killed and was like sucking pig though
 in appearance as large as a full grown
 sow -

We then saw that the dhow had a
 good breeze and came up along the
 right bank and grounded at least a
 mile from the spot where the Mangroves
 ceased - The hills about 200 feet high
 begin about two or three miles above
 that, and they looked invitingly green &
 cool - Went ~~in~~ from the dhow inland
 to see if the mangroves gave way to a
 more walkable country - The swamp
 covered over thickly with Mangroves became worse
 the farther we receded from the river -
 The whole is flooded at high tides and
 had we landed all the men would
 have been laid off fever ere we
 could have attained the higher lands
 which on the ~~left~~right bank bounds the
 line of vision and the first part of which
 lies so near - Thought I had better [...]land
 on the sand built on the left of Rovuma
 Bay and then explore and get

[0042]

information from the natives none
 of whom had as yet come near us.

March
1866

ordered the dhow to come down to the spot next day 24th and went on board the Penguin - Lieutenant Garforth was excessively kind and though this is his best time for cruising in the South most patiently agreed to wait and help me to land - 24th March 1866 - During the night it occurred to me that we should be in a mess of after exploration & information from the natives we could find no path - and when I mentioned this Let^t Garforth suggested that we should proceed to Kilwa - At 5 A M I went up to dhow with M^r Fane and told the Captain that we were going to Kilwa - He was loud in his protestations against this and strongly recommended the port of Mikindany - as quite near to Rovuma - Nyassa, and the country I wished to visit - A Good landing place and the finest port on the Coast - Thither we went and on the same evening landed all our animals - It is only 25 miles N of Rovuma the Penguin then left -

The Rovuma is quite altered from what we first observed of it - It is probable that the freshets form a bank inside the mouth and then they are washed out into the deep bay - and this periodical formation probably has prevented the Arabs from using the Rovuma as a port of shipment - It is not likely that M^r May would have made a mistake of the middle were as shoal as now & make it out 3 fathoms or more

[0043]
37

25th March 1866 - Hired a house for 4 dollars a month and landed all our goods for the dhow - The Bay gives off a narrow channel about 500 yards wide and 200 yards long the middle is deep but the sides are coral reefs and shoal - The deep part seems about

one hundred yards wide - Outside in the Bay Mikindany there is no anchorage except on the edge of the reef where Penguin got 7 fathoms but further in it was only two fathoms - the inner bay is called Pemba not Pimba as erroneously printed in the charts of Owen - It is deep and quite sheltered - another of a similar round form lies somewhat to the South - This may be two miles square - The cattle are all very much the worse of being knocked about in the dhow - We began to prepare saddles of a very strong tree called Ntibwe which is also used for making the hooked spear with which hippopotami are killed - The hook is very strong & tough - applied also for twenty carriers and a Bamian engaged to get them as soon as possible - People have no cattle here - are half caste Arabs mostly and quite civil to us -

26 March 1866 - a few of the Nassick boys have the slave spirit pretty strongly - It goes deep[-]est in those who have the darkest skins - Two Gallah men are the most intelligent & hardworking among them - Others skulk or look on work with indifference when others are the actors -

Now that I am on the point of starting on another trip into Africa I feel quite exhilarated When one travels with the specific object in view of ameliorating the condition of the natives every act becomes enobled -

[0044]

38

26 -
March
1866

Whether exchanging the customary civilities on arriving at a village - accepting a nights lodging - purchasing food for the party - Asking for information - or answering polite African enquiries as to our objects in travelling - We begin to spread a knowledge of that people by whose agency their land will yet become enlightened and freed from the slave trade ~~in slaves~~.

The mere animal pleasure of travelling in a

wild unexplored country is very great - When
on lands of a couple of thousand feet elevation -
brisk exercise imparts elasticity to the muscles -
Fresh and healthy blood circulates through the brain -
the mind works well - The eye is clear - the step is firm - and a days
exertion always makes the evening's repose
thoroughly enjoyable -

We have usually the stimulus of remote chances
of danger either from beasts or men - Our
sympathies are readily often drawn out towards
our humble hardy companions by a community of
interests - and it may be of perils which make us
all friends - Nothing but the most pitiable puerility
would lead any manly heart to make their inferiori-
-ty a theme for self exultation - However that is
often done as if With the vague idea that we
can, by magnifying their deficiencies, demonstrate
our immaculate perfections.

The effect of travel on a man whose
heart is in the right place is that the mind
is made more self reliant - It becomes
more confident of its own resources -
there is greater presence of mind - The
body becomes well knit - the muscles of
the limbs become as hard as a board and
seem to have no fat - The countenance is
bronzed, and there is no dyspepsia - Africa
is a most wonderful country for appetite

[0045]

39

It is only when one gloats over marrow bones or
Elephants feet that indigestion is possible - No
doubt, much toil is involved, and fatigue of
which travellers in the more temperate climes
can form but a faint conception, but the sweat
of one's brow is no longer a curse when one
works for God - It proves a tonic to the system
and is actually a blessing - No one can truly
appreciate the charm of repose unless he has
undergone severe exertion -

27 March-
1866

The point of land which on the North side
of the entrance to the harbour narrows it the

entrance to about 300 yards is alone called
Pemba - The other parts have different names
looking Northwards from the point the first
hundred yards has ninety house of wattle &
daub and square - a ruin a mosque has been built of
lime & coral - The whole point is coral, and
the soil is red & covered over with dense
Tropical vegetation in which the Baobab is
conspicuous - Dhows at present come in
with ease by the Easterly wind which blows
in the evening and leave next morning the
land wind taking them out.

While the camels & other animals are getting
over their fatigues and bad bruises we are
making camels saddles, and repairing those
of the mules & buffaloes - Oysters abound on
all the rocks, and on the trees over which the
tide flows - They are small but much
relished by the people

The Arabs here are a wretched lot physically - thin,
washed out creatures - many with bleared eyes probably
from the venereal - D^r Ord of H. M. Wasp told me that
from the numbers who consulted him for syphilitic
affections at Johanna he did not believe that there
was a man free of it in the town - & D^r Seward told
me that he found respectable men at Zanzibar
so often caught it that he refused to treat them - It
was disgusting to find married men such whore followers

[0046]

40

27
March
1866

In reading the remarks of those gentlemen
who assume to themselves the credit of being
guided by the rules and light of the "higher
criticism" it always strikes me as remarkable
that they should so unrelentingly decide on
cutting out versess - chapters - & even books
from the sacred record - Because the
Divine Being has employed men as the
vehicles or channels of His truth and some
of the personalities of the agents have of
necessity clung to his word - that surely is
no reason why the portions in which

their human element gives a tinge should
be expunged - for nothing can be pro-
duced by unaided man in the remotest
degree equal even to those suspected portions
If the higher criticism could only give us
some chapters - if not an entire book equal
to Genesis we might bear with their idea -
If ~~and~~ what has been produced by mere man
of old could be reproduced in our day &
it would give plausibility to their theories
but not a page has even been produced
with the ring of the genuine metal -
How "wersh" the apocraphyphal books
read after the noble productions of
Moses and Samuel - David & Isaiah-

The circumstance that Moses said to the
Israelites, the land shall spue you out as it
spued out the nations that were before you
is considered conclusive evidence that the
passage was written after the Jews entered
the promised land - though I try to be as fair
and liberal towards the critics as possible, I
cannot see it as they do - this probably is because
I cannot view the words as those of unaided
man - They were virtually spued out as soon
he decreed it with whom one day is as a
thousand years, and a thousand years as one day

[0047]

41

29-30
March
1866

This harbour has somewhat the shape of a
bent bow or spade on a playing card. the shaft of the arrow being the
entrance in - The passage in is very deep but

[Drawing of a bow and arrow.] not more than 100 yards wide - It
goes in nearly S - W. in direction
and inside it is deep and quite secure
and protected from all winds - the lands
Westward rise at once to about 200 feet
and John a hill is the land mark by which
it is best known in coming along the
coast - so say the Arabs - The people have
no cattle but say there are no Tsetse - They

say that they have not been long here i- e-
under the present system - but a ruin on the
Northern Peninsula or Jaro of the entrance
built of stone and line arab fashion
and others on the North West shews that the place has been known &
used of old - The adjacent country has
large game at different water pools,
and as the whole country is somewhat
elevated it probably is healthy - There is
very little mangrove but another
enclosed piece of water to the South of
this probably has more - The language
of the people here is Swaheli - The people
trade a little in gum copal & orchilla weed-
An agent of the Zanzibar custom house
presides over the customs which are
very small - A sirkar acknowledging
the Sultan is the chief authority - but they
people are little superior to the natives
whom they have displaced - the Sirkar
has been very civil to me - and gives me
two guides to go on to Ndonde - but no
carriers can be hired - Water is found
in wells in the coral rock which
underlies the whole place -

[0048]

42

4 April 1866 When about to start from
Pemba at the entrance to the other side of the
bay our buffalo gored a donkey so badly he
had to be shot - cut off tips of offenders horns
on the principle of "locking the stable door
when the steed is stolen" and marched -
came on level spots destitute of vegetation
and hard on surface but a deposit of
water below allowed camels to sink up
to their bodies through the crust - Hauled them
out and got along to Sirkar's House which
is built of coral & lime - Hamesh was profuse
in his professions of desire to serve but
gave a shabby hut which let in rain and
wind - I slept one night in it and it was un[-]
bearable so I asked Sirkar to allow me to
sleep in his court room where many
of the sepoy were - consented & when I went
refused - they being an excitable nervous
Arab took fright - got all his men amounting
to about fifteen with matchlocks mustered -

ran off saying he was going to kill a lion
came back shook hands nervously with
me - saying it was a man who would
not obey him - "It was not you" - Our goods
were all out in the street bound on the
pack saddles so at night we took the ordinary
precaution of setting a gaurd - This excited
our Sirkar and at night all his men were
again mustered with matches lighted - took
no notice of him and after he had spent a
great deal of talk which we could hear he
called Musa and asked what I meant -
the explanations of Musa had the effect of
sending him to bed and in the morning
when I learned how much I had most
unintentionally disturbed him I told him

[0049]

43

5th April
1866

that I was sorry but it did not occur to me to
tell him about an ordinary precaution
against thieves - He thought he had given me a
crushing reply when he said with vehemence
"But there are no thieves here" - I did not know
till afterwards that he and others had done me an
ill turn in saying that no carriers could be
hired from the independent tribes adjacent
they are low coast Arabs three quarters African
and as usual possessing the bad without the
good qualities of both parents - Many of them
came and begged brandy and laughed when they
remarked that they could drink it in secret but
not openly - They have not however introduced it
as an article of trade as we christians have done
on the West Coast -

6th

We made a short march round to the South West
side of the lake - and spent the night at a village in

that direction - there are six villages dotted round the inner harbour, and the population may amount to 250 or 300 souls = Coast Arabs - and their slaves two Banians had come for trade - The Southern portion of the harbour is deep - from 10 to 14 fathoms but the North Western part is shoal & rocky - very little is done in the way of trade - some sorghum - sem sem seed - gum copal & orchilla weed constitute the commerce of the part -

7th

Went about South from Kindany with a Somalie guide named Ben Ali or Bon Ali a good looking obliging man who was to get 20 dollars to take us up to Ngomano - our path lay in a valley with well wooded heights on each side - the grass towered over our heads and gave the sensation of smothering - the sun beat down on our heads very hot & there was not a breath of air stirring - not understanding camels I had to trust to

[0050]

44

7 April
1866

Sepoys who overloaded them and before we had accomplished our march of about seven miles they were knocked up -

8th

We spent this Sunday at a village called Nyañgedi Here on the evening seventh April our buffaloes and camels were first bitten by the Tsetse - We had passed through some pieces of dense jungle which through no obstruction to foot passengers but rather an agreeable shade had to be cut for the tall camels - We found

the Makonde of this village glad to engage them
-selves by the day either as wood cutters or
carriers - We had left many things. with the
Sirkar from an idea that no carriers could be
procured - I now lightened the camels, and had a
party of wood cutters to heighten and widen the
path in the dense jungle into which we
now penetrated - Every now and then
we emerged on open spaces where the Makonde
have cleared gardens for sorghum - maize
and cassava - The people very much more
taken up with the camels & buffaloes than
with me - They are all independent of each
other and no paramount chief exists - Their
foreheads may be called compact - narrow &
rather low - the alae nasi expanded latterally
lips full not excessively thick - limbs &
body well formed - hands & feet small - colour
dark and light brown - height middle size &
bearing independent -

10th

We reached a village called Nuri Lat - 10° 23' 14"S
Many of the men had touches of fever - gave
medicine to eleven of them and next morning
all were better - food is abundant & cheap
Our course is nearly South and in "Wadys"
from which following the trade road we
often ascend the heights and then from
the villages which all on the higher land

[0051]

45

we descend to another on the same Wady - no
running water seen - people depend on wells
for a supply

1866

11th April

At Tandahara we were still ascending as
we went South - soil very fertile with a good
admixture of sand in it but no rocks visible

very heavy crops of maize & sorghum are
raised - Cassava bushes seven feet in height
the bamboos are cleared off - spread over the
space to be cultivated and burned to serve as
manure - Iron very scarce for many of
the men appear with wooden spears - they
find none here but in some spots where an
ooze issued from the soil iron rust appeared
At each of the villages where we spent a night
we presented a fathom of calico and the headman
always gave a fowl or two and a basket of
rice or maize - The Makonde dialect is quite
different from Swaheli but from their inter-
course with the coast Arabs many of the people
here have acquired a knowledge of Swaheli -

12th

On starting we found the jungle so dense that the
people thought that "there was no cutting it" &
continued upwards of [...]three miles - the trees not
large but so closely planted together that a great
deal of labour was required to widen & heighten
the path - Where bamboos prevail they have
starved out the woody trees - the reason why the
trees are not large is because all the spaces we
passed over were formerly garden ground
when the Makonde had not been thinned by the
slave trade - as soon as a garden is deserted
a thick crop of trees of the same sorts as those
formerly cut down springs up - and here the
process of woody trees starving out their
fellows and occupying the land without
dense scrub below has not had time to work
itself out. Many are mere poles - and

[0052]

46

so intertwined with climbers as to present the
the appearance of a ship's ropes & cables shaken
in among them - many have woody stems
as thick as an eleven inch howser - One
species may be likened to the scabbard of a
dragoon's sword but along the middle of the
flat side runs a ridge from which springs
up ever few inches a bunch of inch long straight
sharp thorns - It hangs straight For a couple

of yards but as if it could not give its thorns
a fair chance of mischief it suddenly bends on
itself and all its cruel points are now at right
angles to what they were before - Darwin's observations
shew a great deal of what looks like instinct
in these climbers - this species
[Drawing of a creeper with thorns.] seems to be
eager on mischief its tangled
limbs hang out ready to inflict injury on
all passers by - another climber is
so tough it is not to be broken by the fingers
another appears at its root as a young
tree but it has the straggling habits of its
class as may be seen by its cords stretched
some fifty or sixty feet off - It is often 2
inches in diameter - you cut it through at
one part and find it reappear 40 yards off
as if another plant

Another climber is like the leaf of an aloe
but convoluted as strangely as shavings from
the plane of a carpenter - It is dark green in
colour and when its bark is taken off it is
beautifully str[ati]ated beneath lighter & darker
green like the rings of growth on wood
still another is a thin string with a succession
of [large] knobs - & another has its bark finished
up all round at intervals so as to present
a great many cutting edges - the common
one need scarcely be mentioned in which

[0053]

47

all along its length are strong bent hooks all
placed in the way that will hold one if it can
but grapple with him for that is common
and not like those mentioned which seem to
be stragglers from the carboniferous period
of geologists when Pachydermata wriggled among
tangled masses worse than these unscathed - We
employed about 10 jolly young Makonde to
deal with these prehistoric plants in their
own way - They are accustomed to clearing
spaces for gardens and went at the work with
a will using tomahawks well adapted for
the work

[Drawing of a tomahawk.] They whittled away right
manfully using an axe

[Drawing of an axe.] when any trees

had to be cut - their pay arranged before[-]
hand was to be one yard of calico per day -
This is not much seeing we are still so
near the sea coast - Climbers & young trees
melted before them like a cloud before the Sun
Many more would have worked than we
employed but we used the precaution of
taking the names of those engaged - The tall men
became exhausted soonest while the shorter
men worked vigorously still - but a couple
of days hard work seem to tell on the best of
them - It is doubtful if any but meat eating
people can stand long continued labour
without exhaustion - the Chinese may be
an exception - Here the Makonde have
rarely the chance of a good feed of meat
It is only when one of them is fortunate
enough to spear a wild hog or an antelope
When a fowl is eaten they get but a taste of
it with their porridge - When French Navvies
were first employed they could not do a
tithe of the work of our English ones - but when
the French were fed in the same style as the English

[0054]

48

13th
April
1866

they performed equally well
We now began to descend the Northern
slope down to the Rovuma and a glimpse
could occasionally be obtained of the
country - It seemed covered with great
masses of dark green forest but the
undulations occasionally looked like
hills and here and there a sterculia had
put on yellow foliage in anticipation of
the coming winter - More frequently [...]our
vision was circumscribed to a few
yards till our merry wood cutters made
for us the pleasant scene of a long
vista fit for camels to pass - As a whole
the jungle would have made the authors of the
natty little hints to travellers smile at their

own productions - good enough perhaps
where one has an open country with trees
hills &c of which to take bearings - estimate
distances - see that one point is on the same
latitude another on the same longitude with
such another and all to be laid down fair
and square with protractor - compass - but
so long as we remained within the vegetation
that is fed by the moisture from the Indian
ocean - the steamy - smothering air, and dank rank
luxuriant vegetation made me feel like it
struggling for existence, and no more
capable of taking bearings than if I had been
in a hogshead & observing through the bunghole -

An old head Monijiñko man presented a goat - Asked
if Sepoys wished to cut its throat - The Johannese
being of a different sect of Mahometans wanted
to cut it in some other way than their Indian
coreligionists - then ensued a fierce dispute
as to who was of the right sort of Moslem
It was interesting to see that not christians

[0055]

49

13th April
1866

alone but other nations feel keenly on religious
subjects Saw rocks of grey sandstone like
that which overlies coal and the Rovuma in the
distance - Didi name of a village whose headman
Chombokea ~~with but one foot~~ is said to be a doctor - All the head[-]
men pretend or are really doctors - One Fundindouba
came after me for medicine for himself however -

14th

We succeeded in reaching the Rovuma
when some very red cliffs appear on the
opposite heights - and close by where it is
marked on the map that the Pioneer turned

15th

in 1861 - Here we rested on Sunday 15th

Our course now lay westwards along the side of that ragged outline of table land which we had formerly seen from the river as flanking both sides - There it appeared a range of hills shutting in Rovuma - Here we had spurs putting out towards the River and valleys retiring from a mile to three miles inland - Sometimes we would round them sometimes rose over and descended their western sides and a great deal of wood cutting was required - the path is not straight but from one village to another however out of the straight W- S. W of the true course it may be - We came perpetually on gardens - and remarked that rice was sown among the other grain There must be a good deal of moisture at other times to admit of this succeeding At present, the crops were suffering for want of rain - We could purchase plenty of rice for the Sepoys and well it was so for the supply which was to last till we arrived at Ngomano was finished on the 13th An old doctor with our

17

food awaiting presented me with two large bags of rice unhusked & his wife husked it for us -

[0056]

50

17th

April

1866

Not being acquainted with camels and my other men being equally ignorant of their management I had to leave them in the hands of the Sepoys - I ordered them to bring as little luggage as possible and the Havildar assured me that two buffaloes were amply sufficient

to carry all [he] ~~ea~~ they would bring - I now
 find that they have more that full loads
 for two buffaloes - two mules and two
 donkeys but when these animals fall
 down under the loads they assure me with
 so much positiveness that they are not over[-]
 loaded that I have to be silent or only as I
 have several times done express the opinion
 that they would kill these animals - This
 observation on my part leads them to
 hide their things in the packs of the camels
 which too are overburdened - I fear that
 my experiment with the Tsetse will be
 vitiated but no symptoms yet occur
 in any of those bitten except weariness,
 The Sun is very sharp - it scorches - nearly
 all sepoys had fever but it is easily cured -
 they never required to stop marching and
 we cannot make over four or five
 miles a day which movement aids in
 the cure - In all cases of fever removal
 from the spot of attack should be made -
 After the fever by the Sepoys the Nassick
 boys took their turn along with the Johannese

18th

Bon Ali misled us away up to the
 North in spite of my protest when we
 turned in that direction - He declared that was
 the proper path - We had much wood
 cutting and found that our course that
 day & next were to visit & return from
 one of his wives - a comely Makonde

[0057]

51

woman - He brought her to call on me and I had
 to be polite to the lady though we lost a day by the
 zigzag - This is one way by which the Arabs
 gain influence - a great many very light coloured
 people are strewed among the Makonde but only one
 of these had the Arab hair - On asking Ali whether
 any attempts had been made by Arabs to convert
 those with whom the Arabs enter into such intimate
 relationships he replied that the Makonde had no
 idea of a Deity - No one could teach them though

Makonde slaves when taken to the coast & elsewhere
were made Mahometans - Since the slave trade was
introduced the Makonde have much diminished
in numbers and one village makes war upon
another and kidnaps, but no religious teaching
has been attempted - the Arabs come down to the
native ways and make no attempts to raise the
natives to theirs - It is better that it is so for the
coast Arab's manners and morals would be
no improvement on the pagan African -

19th April
1866

We were led up over a talus again and on to
the level of the plateau where the evaporation
is greater than in the valley - tasted water for
the first time this journey of an agreeable coldness
People especially women very nude and men very
eager to be employed as wood cutters - Very merry at it
every now & then one raises a cheerful shout in
which all join - I suppose they are urged on by
a desire to please their wives with a little clothing
The higher up the Rovuma we ascend the
people are more and more tattooed on the
face & and on all parts of the body - The teeth
filed to points and huge lip rings in the women
some few Mabiha men from the South side
of the river have lip rings too -

20th

A Johanna man allowed camels to
trespass on destroy a man's tobacco
patch - The owner would not allow us

[0058]

52

20th
April
1866

After this to pass through his rice field in which
the route lay - I examined the damage and
made the Johanna man pay a yard of calico
for it which set matters all right -

Tsetse biting buffaloes again - Elephants
Hippopotami and pigs are the only game
here but we see none - The Tsetse feed on them
In the low meadow land from one to three
miles broad which lies along both banks we
have brackish pools - one a large one which
we passed is called Nrongwe had much fish
and salt are got from it -

21st

After a great deal of cutting we reached the
valley of Mehambwe to spend Sunday all
glad that it has come round again - Here
some men came to our camp from
Ndonde who report that an invasion of
Mazitu had three months ago swept away
all the food out of the country and they
are now obliged to send in all directions
for [...]provisions - When saluting they catch
each other's hands and say Ai! Ai! But
the general mode introduced probably by the
Arabs is to take hold of the right hand and say
Marhaba (welcome)
A wall eyed ill looking fellow who helped to
urge on the attack in our first visit
and the man to whom I gave cloth to
prevent collision came about us dis-
guised in a jacket - I knew him well
but said nothing to him -

23^d

When we marched this morning we
passed the spot where an animal had
been burned in the [...]fire - on enquiry
I found that it is the custom when a
leopard is killed to take off the skin and
consume the carcass thus because the
Makonde do not eat it - the reason

23 April
1866

they gave for not eating flesh which is freely eaten by other tribes is "that the leopard eats men" this shews the opposite of an inclination to cannibalism

All the rocks we had seen shewed that the plateau consists of grey sandstone capped by a ferruginous sandy conglomerate We now came to blocks of silicified wood lying on the surface - These are so like recent wood that no one who has not handled it would conceive it to be stone & not wood - The outer surface preserves the grain or woody fibre the inner is generally silica

Buffaloes bitten by Tsetse again - shew no bad effects from it - One mule is dull and out of health - thought that this might be the effect of the bite till I found that his back was so strained that he could not stoop to drink and could eat only the tops of the grasses - An ox would have been ill in two days after the biting on the 7th

A carrier stole a shirt and went off unsuspected - When the loss was ascertained the man's companions went off with Ben Ali by night - got him in his hut collected the headmen of the village who fined him about four times the value of what had been stolen - They came back in the morning without seeming to think that they had done aught to be commended this was the only case of theft we had noticed and the treatment shews a natural sense of justice

[0060]

24th
April
1866

We had showers occasionally but at night all the men were under cover of screens - the fevers were speedily cured - no day was lost by sickness but we could not march more than a few miles owing to the slowness of the Sepoys - They are a heavy drag on us & of no possible use except acting as sentries at night

When in the way between Kindany and Rovuma I observed a plant here called Mandare the root of which is in taste & appearance like a waxy potato - I saw it once before at the falls of below the Barotse valley in the middle of the Continent It had been brought there by an emigrant who led out the water irrigation and it still maintained its place in the soil Would this not prove valuable in the soil of India? I find that it is not cultivated further up the country of the Makonde but I shall get Ali to secure some for Bombay -

25th

A serpent bit Jack our dog above the eye Chuma saw it and set up a loud laugh at the terror shewn by the dog - The upper eyelid swelled very much but no other symptoms appeared - next day all swelling was gone The serpent was either harmless or the quantity of poison injected very small - The pace of the camels is distressingly slow and it suits the Sepoys to make it still slower than natural by sitting down to smoke & eat - Grass very high and ground under it damp and steamy

26th

On the 25th we reached Narri and resolved to wait next and buy food as it is not so plentiful in front - people eager traders

[0061]

55

26th

April

1866

in meal fowls eggs & honey - women very rude
Yesterday I caught a Sepoy Pando belabouring
a camel with a big stick as thick as any part of
his arm - the path being narrow it could not get
out of his way - shouted to him to desist. He did not
know I was in sight - Today the effect of the bad
usage was seen in the animal being quite unable
to move its leg - Inflammation had set up in the
hip joint. I am afraid that several bruises
which have festered on the camels and were to
me unaccountable have been wilfully bestowed
this same Pando & another left Zanzibar drunk -
He then stole a pair of socks from me and has
otherwise been perfectly useless - a pimple on his
leg was an excuse for doing nothing for many
days - We had to leave this camel at Narri under
charge of the headman

The hills on the North now retired out of our
sight. A gap in the Southern plateau gives passage
to a small river which arises in a lakelet of
some size eight or ten miles inland - The
river and Lakelet are called Nañgadi - The
Lakelet is so broad that men cannot be dis-
tinguished even by the keen eyes of the natives
on the other side - It is very deep and abounds
in large fish - The people are Mabiha -
a few miles above this gap the southern
highland falls away and there are lakelets
on marshes also abounding in fish - An
uninhabited space next succeeds and
then we have the Matambwe country which
extends up to Ngomano - the Matambwe
seem to be a branch of the Makonde and
a very large one - The country extends a
long way south - and is well stocked with
elephants and gum copal trees

[0062]

Their language is slightly different from that of the Makonde but they understand each other The Matambwe women are according to Ali very dark but very comely. Though they do wear the lip ring. They carry their ivory gum copal and slaves to Ibo or Wibo

29th April
1866

We spend Sunday 29th on banks of the Rovuma at a village called Nachuchu nearly opposite Konayumba the first of the Matambwe whose chief is called Kimbembe - Ali draws a very dark picture of the Makonde - He says they know nothing of a Duty - They pray to their mothers when in distress or dying - know nothing of a future state nor have they any religion except a belief in medicine and every headman is a doctor - No Arab has ever tried to convert them but occasionally a slave taken to the coast has been circumcised in order to be clean and some of them pray - says they know not the ordeal or muavi - The Nassick boys failed me when I tried to communicate some knowledge through them they say that they do not understand Makonde language though some told me that they came from Ndonde's which is the head quarters of the Makonde Ali says that the Makonde blame witches for disease and death - And one of a village dies the whole population departs saying that is a bad spot - They are said to have been notorious for fines but an awe has come over them and no complaints have been made though our animals in passing the gardens have broken a good deal of corn - Ali says they fear the English - An answer to my prayer for influence on the minds of the heathen - I regret that I cannot speak to them that good of his name which I ought

I went with the Makonde to see a specimen of the gum copal tree in the vicinity of this

[0063]

29th
April
1866

village - The leaves are in pairs like the
glossy green with the veins a little raised on both face
and back - The smaller branches diverge from same
point - The fruit of which we saw the shells seems

[Drawing of the nut.] to be a nut a little larger than this - some animal
had in eating cut them through thus- the bark of
the tree is light ashy in colour - the gum was oozing
from the bark at wounded places - and it drops
on the ground from the branches - in this process the
insects are probably imbedded - the people dig
in the vicinity of Modern trees in the belief
that the more ancient trees which dropped their
gum before it became an article of commerce
must have stood there - "In digging none may be
found on one day but God (Mungu) may give
it to us on the next" - to this all the Makonde
present assented, and shewed me though the
Arab idea was that they had no knowledge of a
supreme being No consciousness of his existence
was present in their minds - the Makonde get
the gum in large quantities - This attracts the coast
Arabs who remain a long time in the country
purchasing it - *Hernia humoralis* abounds
it is ascribed to beer drinking

Many ulcers burst forth on camels - some
seem old dhow bruises - They come back
from feeding bleeding in a way that no
rubbing against a tree would account
for - I am sorry to suspect foul play - the
buffaloes and mules are badly used - but I
cannot be always near to prevent it -

Bang is not smoked but tobacco is - people
have no sheep or goats - only fowls, pigeons,
and muscovy ducks are seen - Honey very
cheap - a good large pot of about a gallon
with four fowls was given for 2 yards of
calico - buffaloes again bitten by Tsetse

[0064]

30th
April
1866

and by another fly exactly like the house fly
but having a straight hard proboscis instead of
a soft one - other large flies make the blood
run - the tsetse does not disturb the
buffaloes but these other and smaller
flies do - the Tsetse seems to like the camel
best - these they are gorged with blood - they
dont seem to care for the mules
and donkeys

1st May
1866

We now came along through a country
comparatively free of wood - We could
move on without perpetual cutting &
clearing - It is beautiful to get a good
glimpse out on the surrounding scenery -
though it still seems nearly all covered
with great masses of umbrageous foliage
mostly of a dark green colour - Most
of the individual trees posses dark glossy
leaves like laurel. We passed a gigantic
specimen of the Kumbe or gum copal
tree - Kumba means to dig -. Changkumb[e]
or things dug is the name of the gum
the Arabs call it Sandarusē - Did the people
give the name Kumbe to the tree after
the value of the gum became known
to them - The Malole from the fine
grained wood of which all the bows
are made had shed its fruit on the
ground, the fruit looks inviting to the
eye - an oblong peach looking thing
with a number of seeds inside but
it is eaten by maggots only -

When we came to Ntande village we
found it enclosed in a strong stockade
from a fear of attack by Mabiha who
come across the river and steal their
women when going to draw water - this is

[0065]

59

for the Iboe market - they offered to pull
down their stockade and let us in if we
would remain overnight but we declined
Before reaching Ntande we passed the
ruins of two villages - the owners were the
attacking party when we ascended the Rovuma
in 1862 - I have still the old sail with four
bullet holes through it which they fired after
we had given cloth and got assurances of
friendship - the father and son of this village
were the two men seen by the 2^d boat after
preparing to shoot - the fire of the 2^d boat
struck the father on the chin and the son on
the head - It may have been for the best
that the English are known as people who
can hit hard when unjustly attacked as
as we on this occasion were. Never
was murderous assault more unjustly made
or unprovoked - They had left their villages
and gone up over the highlands away
from the river their women came to look at us -

May
[18]66

Mountains again approach us and we
pass one which was noticed in our first
ascent as like a table mountain - It is 600 or 800
feet high
[Drawing of the table mountain.] and called Liparu - It is the plateau
now become mountainous - A perennial stream
comes down from its western base and forms
a lagoon in the meadow land which flanks the
Rovuma - the trees which love these perpetual
streams spread their roots all over the surface
of the boggy banks & form a firm surface
but at spots one may sink a yard deep
We had to fill up these deep ditches with branches
and leaves - unload the animals & lead them
across - spent night on the banks of the
Liparu and then proceeded on our way -

[0066]

3 May
1866

We rested in a Makoa village the head of which was an old woman - the Makoa or Makoane are known by a half moon figure on their foreheads or elsewhere - our poodle dog Chitani chased the dogs of this village with unrelenting fury - His fierce looks inspired terror among the wretched pariah dogs of a yellow & white colour and those looks were entirely owing to it being difficult to distinguish at which end his head or tail lay - He enjoyed the chase of the yelping curs immensely - and if one of them had turned he would have bolted the other way

A motherly looking woman came for[-]ward and offered me some meal - this was when we were in the act of departing - others had given food to the men and no return had been made I told her to send it on by her husband and I would purchase it - It would have been better to have accepted it. some give merely out of kindly feeling & with no prospect of a return

Many of the Makoa men have their faces thickly tattooed in double raised lines of about half an inch in length

[Drawing of the lined tattoos.] after the incisions are made charcoal is rubbed in and the flesh pressed out so that all the cuts are raised above the level of the surface - It gives them rather a hideous look and a good deal of that fierceness which our Kings and other [...] of old put on when having their portraits taken

[0067]

4th
May
1866

The stream embowered in perpetual shade
and over spread with the roots of of water loving
broad leaved trees we found to be called Nkonya
the spot of our encampment was an island
formed by a branch of it parting & reentering
it again - The owner had used it for rice

Buffaloes bitten again by the Tsetse on 2^d and
also today From the bites of other flies which
look much more formidable than tsetse blood
of arterial colour flows down - This symptom
I never saw before but when we slaughtered
an ox which had been tsetse bitten we obser[-]
-ved that the blood had the arterial hue - The
cow has inflammation of one eye and a
swelling on the right lumbar portion of the pelvis
The grey buffalo has been sick but this
I attributed to unmerciful loading - His back is
hurt -The camels do not seem to feel the
fly though they get weaker from the horrid
running sores upon them & hard work -
No symptoms of Tsetse in Mules [o]r donkey
but one mule has had his shoulder sprained
and he cannot stoop to eat or drink

We saw the last of the flanking range
on the North - the country in front is plain
with a few detached granitic peaks shot
up - The Makoa in large numbers live
at the end of the range in a place called
Nyuchi -At Nyamba a village where
we spent the night of the 5th was a doctor

5th

and rain maker - she presented a large
basket of Soroko or as they called it in
India "Mung" and a fowl she is tall &
well made with fine limbs and feet
she was profusely tatooed all over - Even
hips and buttocks had their elaborate
markings - no shame is felt in exposing these parts.

5th May
1866

a good deal of salt is made by lixiviation
of the soil and evaporating by fire
One head woman had a tame Khanga
tore or tufted guinea fowl with bluish
instead of white spots

In passing along westwards after
leaving the end of the range we came first
of all on sandstone hardened by fire
Then granitic masses as if that had been
contained the igneous agency of partial
metamorphosis - It had also lifted up the
sandstone so as to cause a dip to the East
then the syenite or granite seemed as
if it had been melted for it was all in
striae which striae as they do elsewhere run
East and West - With the change in
Geological structure we have a different
vegetation - Instead of the laurel leaved
trees of various kinds we have African
ebonies - acacias & mimosae - the grass
is shorter and more sparse and we
can move along without wood cutting
We were now opposite a hill on the
South called Simba a lion from its
supposed resemblance to that animal
A large Mabiha population live there
and make raids occasionally over
to this side for slaves

Tsetse again: animals look drowsy -
cows eye dimmed - when punctured
skin emits a stream of scarlet blood

6th

People seem intelligent and respectful
At service a man began to talk but
when I said "Kusoma mungu" to pray
to God he desisted - It would be interesting to
know what the ideas of these men are
and ascertain what they have gained

[0069]

63

in their communings with nature during the ages past. They do not give the idea of that boisterous wickedness & disregard of life which we read of in our own dark ages, but I have no one to translate - I can understand much of what is said on common topics chiefly from knowing other dialects

[7]th
May
[1]866

A camel died during night and the grey buffalo in convulsions this morning - The cruelty of these sepoys vitiates my experiment and I quite expect many camels - one buffalo and one mule to die yet - they sit down and smoke and eat leaving the animals loaded in the sun - If I am not with them it is a constant dawdling - They are evidently unwilling to exert themselves - They cannot carry their belts and bags and their powers of eating and vomiting are a caution - The Makonde villages are remarkably clean but no sooner do we pass a night in one than the fellows soil all about it - The climate does give a sharp appetite but these Sepoys indulge it till relieved by vomiting & purging - They breakfast then an hour afterwards they are sitting eating the pocketfuls of corn ^ maize they have ^ stolen & brought for the purpose - I have to go ahead, otherwise we may be misled into a zigzag course to see Ali's friends, and if I remain behind to keep the Sepoys on the move, it deprives me of all the pleasure of travelling - We have not averaged 4 miles a day in a straight line yet the animals have often been kept in the sun for eight hours at a stretch - When we get up at 4 AM - we cannot get underweight before eight - Sepoys are a mistake

[0070]

64

7th May

1866

-We are now opposite a mountain called Nabungala which resembles from the North East an Elephant lying down Another camel a very good one died in the way - shiverings & convulsions are not at all like what we observed in horses and oxen killed by Tsetse but such may be the cause however The only symptom pointing to the Tsetse is the arterial looking blood but we never saw it ooze from the skin after the bite of the gad fly as now

8th May

We arrived at a village called ^ or Liponde Iponde which lies opposite a granite hill on the other side of the river where we spent a night on our boat trip - It is called Nakapuri. rather oddly for the words are not Makonde but Sichuana - goat's horn from the masses jutting out from the rest of the mass - I left the Havildar Sepoys and Nassick boys here in order to make a forced march forward where no food is to be had and send either to the South or westwards for supplies so that after they have rested the animals & themselves five days they may come - one mule very ill - one buffalo drowsy & exhausted one camel a mere skeleton from bad sores - another with an enormous hole at the point of the pelvis which sticks out at the side - I suspect that this was made maliciously for he came from the field bleeding profusely - no tree would have perforated in a round hole in this way. I take all the goods and leave only the Sepoys' luggage which

is enough for all the animals now -

[0071]

65

[9]th May
1866

I went on with the Johanna men and 24 carriers. It was a pleasure to get away from the sepoys and Nassick boys - The two combined to overload the animals - I told them repeatedly that they would kill them, but no sooner had I adjusted the burdens, and turned my back than they put on all their things - sneaking deception is so dear to these Nassick boys I suspect they have been sold out of their own countries for crimes - It was so unpleasant for me to be scolding them, and then find them with their inveterate low cunning depositing their things slyly under the goods, that I gave up speaking not only did they not carry their own beds or blanket but they accumulated food & loaded the beasts with that - one boy had a bag of maize stowed on the mule and it fell down under this addition - He was foolish enough to let out what the others probably thought for he refused point blank to do the small modicum of work I could get out of them namely to lead a mule or a buffalo - This implied nothing but walking before it for they never drew the beast aside on coming to a stump or tree but let its burden shove it aside and of course strain his muscles. As he shouted out his determination to do nothing and growled out in addition something about the crime I had been guilty of in bringing them into this wild country I applied a stick vigorously to a part of his body where no bones are likely to be broken till he came to his senses - on the first gentle application he said "You may take your gun and shoot me I'll do nothing" - This shewed me that a gentle chastisement would not do and I gave at him in earnest till he was satisfied he had made a mistake in ringleading

[0072]

66

It was however such continual vexation
to contend with the sneaking slave spirit
that I gave up annoying myself by
seeing matters, though I felt certain that
the animals would all be killed - We

10th
May
1866 -

did at least eight miles pleasantly well
and slept at Moeda a village - Rocks
still syenite - passed a valley with
the large athorny acacias of which canoes
are often made - and a Euphorbaceous
tree with seed vessels as large as Mandarin
oranges with three seeds inside - We
were now in a country which in
addition to the Mazite invasion was
suffering from one of those inexplicable
droughts to which limited and sometimes
large portions of this country are subject
It had not been nearly so severe æon the
opposite or south side and hither too
the Mazite had not penetrated - Rust,
which plagued us nearer the coast is
now not observed - the grass is all
crisp & yellow - many of the plants
dead and many leaves fallen off the
trees as if winter had begun - Many
leaves are also discoloured - the ground
is covered with open forest with
here and there thick jungle on the
banks of streams - All the rivulets
we have passed are mere mounttain
torrents filled with sand in which
the people dig for water -

We passed the spot where an Arab
called Birkal was asked payment
for leave to pass - After two and a
half days parley he fought [&] killed two
Makonde & mortally wounded a headman

[0073]

which settled the matter - no fresh demand has been made - Ali's brother also resisted the same sort of demand - fought several times or until three Makonde and two of his people were killed - They then made peace and no other exactions have been made

11th May
1866

We now found a difficulty in getting our carriers on account of exhaustion from want of food. In going up a sand stream called Nyelle we saw that all moist spots had been planted with maize & beans so the loss caused by the Mazite who swept the land like a cloud of locusts will not be attended by much actual starvation - We met a runaway woman - she was seized by Ali and it was plain that he expected a reward for his pains - He thought she was a slave but a quarter of a mile off was the village she had left and it being doubtful if she were a runaway at all the would be fugitive slave capture turned out a failure

12th

About 4' EW.E of Matawatawa or Nyamatolole our former turning point.

13th

We halted at a village at Matawatawa a pleasant looking lady with her[...] face profusely tatoored came forward with a bunch of sweet reed or Sorghum saccharatum and laid it at my feet saying - "I met you here before" pointing to the spot at on the river where we turned - I remember her coming then and asking the boat to wait while she went to bring us a basket of food - I think it was given to Chiko and

no return made - It is sheer kindness
that prompts them sometimes - Though
occasionally people do make presents
with a view of getting a larger one in return
it is pleasant to find it not always so -

[0074]

68

13th
May
1866

She had a quiet dignified manner both
in talking and walking - I now gave
her a small looking glass - and she went
and brought me her only fowl and a
basket of cucumber seeds from which
oil is made - from the amount of oily
matter they contain they are nutritious
when roasted and eaten as nuts - if she
made an apology saying ~~it was~~ they were hungry
times at present - I gave her a cloth
and so parted with Kanañgone or
as her name may be spelled Kanañone
Carriers very useless from hunger
and we could [not] buy anything for them
country all dried up & covered sparsely
with mimosas & thorny acacias

14th

Could not get the carriers on more
than an hour and three quarters - men
tire very soon on empty stomachs
We had reached the village of Hassane
opposite to a conical hill named Chisulwe
It is on the south side of the river and
evidently of igneous origin - It is tree
covered while the granite always shews
lumps of naked rock - All about great
patches of beautiful dolomite lie -
It may have been formed by baking
of the tufa which in this country
seems always to have been poured

out with water after volcanic
action - Hassane's daughter was just
lifting a pot of French beans boiled
in their pods off the fire when we
entered the village - He presented them
to me and when I invited him to partake
but he replied that he was at home
and would get something while I was

[0075]

69

14th
May
[1]866

a stranger on a journey - He like all the other
head men is a reputed doctor and his wife
a stout old lady a doctress - He had never
married any wife but this one and he had
four children all of whom lived with their
parents - We employed one of his sons to
go to the south side and purchase food.
sending at the same time some carriers to buy
for themselves - The siroko and rice bought
by Hassane's son we deposited with him
for the party behind when they should arrive
The amount of terror the Mazite inspire
cannot be realized by us - observed that a
child would not go a few yards for necessary
purpose unless grandmother stood in sight
They shake their shields and the people fly like
stricken deer - Matumore or as the Arabs
call the chief at Ngomano gave them a
warm reception and killed several of them
This probably induced them to retire -

15th

Miserably short marches from hunger - I
sympathize with the poor fellows - sent them

16th

to buy food for themselves on the south bank
but misled by a talkative fellow named
Chikungu they went off North where we
knew nothing can be had - His object was to
get paid for three days while they only
loitered here - I suppose hunger has taken
the spirit out of them - but I told them that a
day in which no work was done did not
count - They admitted this - We pay about
2 feet of calico per day and a fathom or six
feet for three days carriage -

17th

With very empty stomachs they came on
a few miles and proposed to cross to
south side - as this involved crossing
the Loendi too I at first objected but

[0076]

70

17th
May
1866

in hopes that we might get food for
them we consented and were taken over
in two very small canoes - sent Ali
and Musa meanwhile to the South
to try and get some food - got a little
given Sorghum for them and paid them
off- These are the little troubles of travelling
and scarce worth mentioning - a
granitic peak now appears about 15'
off to the West NS West
[Drawing of the peak.] It is called
Chihoka

18th

At our crossing place metamorphic
rocks of a chocolate colour stood
on edge - and in the country round
we have patches of dolomite sometimes
as white as marble - country all dry
grass & leaves crisp & yellow - though
so dry now yet the great abundance
of the dried stalks of a water loving
plant - a sort of herbaceous acacia
with green pea shaped flowers - shews
that at other times it is damp enough

feet
now

the marks of peoples footing floundering
in slush but no dry shews that the
country can be sloppy

The headman of the village where we
spent night of 17th is a martyr to
Rheumatism - He asked medicine &
when I gave him some he asked me to
give it to him out of my own hand
He gave me a basket of siroko and
of green Sorghum as a fee which
I was very glad for my own party
were suffering and I had to share
the little portion of flour I had reserved
to myself -

[0077]

71

[19th] May
[18]66

Coming on with what carriers we could
find at the crossing place we reached the
confluence without seeing it and Matumora
being about two miles up the Loendi we
sent over to him for aid - He was over this
morning early a tall well made man
with a somewhat severe expression of
countenance from a number of wrinkles
on his forehead - He took us over the Loendi

which is decidedly the parent stream of the
 Rovuma though that as it come from the
 West still retains the name - Loendi from the
 South West here and is from 150 to 200 yards
 wide while Rovuma above Matawatawa is
 from 200 to 250 [yards] - full of islands rocks &
 sandbanks - Loendi has the same character
 We can see the confluence from where we cross
 about 2' to the North - They are both rapid shoal
 and sandy - small canoes are used on them
 and the people pride themselves on their skilful
 management - In this the women seem in no
 ways inferior to the men -In looking up
 the Loendi we see a large granitic peak
 called Nkanje some 20' off and beyond it
 the dim outline of distant highlands in which
 seams of coal are exposed - Pieces of the
 mineral are found in Loendi's sands - -
 Matumora has a good character in the country
 and many flee to him from oppression
 He was very polite - sitting on the right
 bank till all the goods were crossed over
 then coming in the same canoe with me
 himself - opened a fish bask in a weir
 and gave me the contents - then a little
 green Sorghum - He literally has lost all
 his corn for he was obliged to flee with
 all his people to Marumba a rocky island
 in Rovuma about 6' above Matawatawa

[0078]

72

19th
 May
 1866.

Matumora says that both Loendi and Rovuma
 come out of Lake Nyassa - a boat could not
 ascend however because many waterfalls are
 in their course - It is strange if all is a myth
 Matumora asked if the people through whom
 I had come would preserve the peace I
 wished - He has been assalted on all sides by
 slave hunters - He alone has never hunted
 for captives - If the people in front should
 attack me he would come and fight them
 Had never seen a European before D^r Roscher

travelled as an Arab - nor could I learn
where Likumbu at Ngomano lives - It was
with him that Roscher is said to have left his
goods

The Mazite had women children oxen &
goats with them - the whole tribe lives on
plundering the other natives by means of the
terror their shields inspire - Had they gone
further down Rovuma no ox would have
survived the Tsetse

20th

Paid Ali to his entire satisfaction and sent
off a despatch "Nº 2 Geographical" and then
sent off four men South to buy food -
Here we are among Matambwe - Two of
Matumora's men act as guides. We are
about 2' South & by West of the confluence
Ngomano - Lat. 11° 26' 23". Long. 37° 49' 52' E

Abraham came up and said he had
been sent by the Sepoys who declared they
would come no further - It was with
the utmost difficulty they had come so far
or that the Havildar had forced them on
they would not obey him - Would not
get up in the mornings to march - Lay
in the paths and gave their pouches [&] muskets

[0079]

73

to the natives to carry - they make themselves utterly
useless - black buffalo dead - one camel Dº and one
mule left behind ill - It is difficult to dissassociate
the bad treatment and Tsetse bites - the experiment is
vitiated - were I not aware of the existence of the Tsetse
I should say they died from sheer bad treatment &
hard work -

Sent a note to be read to Sepoys - it stated
that I had seen their disobedience - unwillingness
and skulking and as soon as I recieved the
Havildar's formal evidence I would send them
back - I regretted parting with the Havildar only -
they excelled only in eating and vomiting - the
climate gives a keen appetite and unrestrained
indulgence then results in emesis

Leopard came a little after dark while moon
was shining and took away a little dog from among
us - It is said to have taken off a person a few
days ago - I

22^d

Men returned with but little food in return
for much cloth - Matumora very friendly but he
has nothing to give save a little green sorghum &

-

that he brings daily
A South wind blows strongly every afternoon
the rains ceased about the middle of May &
the temperature is lowered - A few heavy night
showers closed the rainy season

23^d - 24

Lunars &c

25th

Matumora is not Ndonde - that is a chief
to the South West of this - Matumora belongs to the
Matumbwe tribe

26th

Sent Musa Westwards to buy food and he
returned on evening of 27th without success
found an Arab slave dealer waiting in
the path and he had bought up all the food
about 11 P M - saw two men pass our door
with two women in a chain - one man

[0080]

carried fire in front - one behind a musket
Matumora admits that his people sell each
other

27th
May
1866

The Havildar and Abraham came up
Havildar says all I said in my note
was true and when it was read to the Sepoys
they bewailed their folly the Havildar says
though they were all sent away disgraced
no one would be to blame but themselves
He had brought them to Hassane's but
they were useless though they begged to be
kept on - May give them another trial
but at present they are a sad incumbrance
South West of this Manganja begin but if
one went by them there is a space beyond
in South West without people

The country due West of this is described
by all to be so mountainous and beset
by Mazite that there is no possibility
of passing that way - I must therefore
make my way to middle of Lake - cross
over and then take up my line of 1863 -

2 June

The men sent to the Matambwe South East of this
returned with a good supply of grain - The
Sepoys wont come - say they cannot a
mere excuse because they tried to prevail
on Nassick boys to go slowly like them;
and wear my patience out - They killed
one camel beating it till it died - They used
the but ends of their muskets - I thought
of going down disarming them all and
taking five or six of the willing ones but
it is more trouble than profit so I propose
to start Westwards on Monday 4th or Tuesday
5th Sepoys offered Ali eight Rupees to

take them to the coast so it has been a
regularly organized conspiracy

[0081]

75

2 June
1866

From the appearance of the cow buffalo I
fear the tsetse is its chief enemy but it has what
looks like a bayonet wound on its shoulder
and many of the wounds or bruises on the
camels were so probed that I suspect the sepoy
This suspicion is supported by my lighting on one
of them belabouring a camel with a thick stick
and next day the beast was unable to move from
inflammation on the hip joint from blows on the
Trochanter Major - This, had I not seen & shouted to the
fellow I should have set down to natural causes

Many things African are possessed of as great
vitality in their line as the African people - The white
ant was imported accidentally into St Helena
from the coast of Guinea and have committed
such ravages in the town of St James that many
people have been ruined & the Governor calls out
for aid against them - In other so called new
countries a wave of English weeds follows the tide of
English Emigration - and so with insects - the
European house fly chases away the blue bottle fly
in New Zealand - settlers have carried the house fly
in bottles & boxes for their new locations but what
European insect will follow us & extirpate
the tsetse - the Arabs have given the Makonde bugs
but we have no house fly wherever we go and
in addition blue bottle flies - another fly like the
house fly but with a sharp proboscis - and
several enormous gad flies - Here there is so
much room for everything - In New Zealand
the Norwegian rat is driven off by even the
European mouse - not to mention the Hanoverian
rat of Waterton which is lord of the land - the Maori
say that ["]as the white man's rat has driven
away the native rat - so the European fly drives
away our own - and the clover kills our fern
so will the Maori disappear before the white
man himself" - the hog placed ashore by

[0082]

76

2 June
1866

by Captain Cook has now overran one side of the island and is such a nuisance that a large farmer ^ of 100 000 acres has given sixpence per head for the destruction of some 20 000 & without any sensible diminution - this would be no benefit here for the wild hogs abound and do much damage besides affording food for the Tsetse - They brutes follow the ewes with young and devour the poor lambs as soon as they make their appearance

3^d June

The cow buffalo fell down foaming at the mouth and expired - She had what seemed to be a bayonet wound on the shoulder ^ in which ^ the weapon had broken the ridge of the scapula - The meat looks fat & nice - and is relished by the people - a little glairiness seemed to be present on the foreleg and sometimes think that notwithstanding the dissimilarity of the symptoms observed in the camels & buffaloes now and those we saw in oxen & horses the evil may be the Tsetse after all - But they have been badly used without a doubt - the calf has a cut half an inch deep - the camels have had large ulcers - and at last a peculiar smell which portended death - I feel perplexed & not at all certain as to the real causes of death -

The Sepoys are a nuisance - I have sometimes thought of going back disarming half and sending them back so this might be disapproved by the military authorities in India - on the other

hand in going back armed they

[0083]

77

may use these arms among the Makonde
and bring disgrace on the English name

If I had known their language it might
have been different but here they have stood
and hindered my progress some twelve days
I had however ready translators ever at
hand in the Nassick boys - I must go forward
for I have to send some forty mules for food
and am wearing out my other men while
the Sepoys sit and talk - It seems certain that
they gave Ali eight Rupees to take them back
to the coast without ever asking leave to go -

Asked Matumora if the Matambwe
believed in God - He replied that he did not
know him and I was not to ask the people
among whom I was going if they prayed to
Him because they would imagine that
I wished them to be killed - Told him that we
loved to speak about Him - &c He said when
they prayed they offered a little meal and
then prayed but did not know much about
him - They have all great reverence for the
Deity and the deliberate way in which they
say we dont know him is to prevent speaking
irreverently and that may injure the country -
The name is Mulungu - Makodiera afterwards
said that "He was not good because he
killed so many people["]

4 June

Left Ngomano - I was obliged to tell
the Nassick boys that they must either
work or return - It was absurd to have
them eating up our goods and not even
carrying their own things and I would
submit to it no more - Five of them
carry bales & two the luggage of the rest
Abraham & Richard are behind - I gave
them bales to carry & promised them
ten Rupees per month to begin on this
date - Abraham has worked hard all along

[0084]

78

5th
June
1866

and his pay may be due from seventh
April the day we started from Kindany

We slept at a village called Lamba
on the banks of Rovuma here a brawling
torrent ^ 50 150 yards or 200 [yards] perhaps with many islands & rocks in it
country covered with open scraggy
forest with patches of cultivation
everywhere but all dried up at present
and withered partly from drought &
partly from the cold of winter -We
passed a village with good ripe sorghum
cut down and the heads or ears all laid
neatly in a row - This is to get it dried in
the sun and not shaken out by the wind
by waving to & fro - It is also more easily
watched from being plundered by birds -
The sorghum occasionally does not yield
seed - It is then the *Sorghum saccharatum*
for the stalk contains abundance of sugar
and is much relished & planted by the
natives - Now that so much has failed
to yield seed - much of indeed being just in
flower the stalks are chewed as if sugar
cane and the people are fat thereon
but the hungry time is in store when these
stalks are all done - they make the best
provision in their power against this
by planting beans & maize in moist
spots - The common native pumpkin
forms a bastard sort in the same way
but that is considered very inferior
to the common pumpkin

6th

Great hills of granite are occasionally
got a glimpse in the North but the trees

though scraggy close in the view -
We left a village called Mekosi and soon
came to a slaving party by a sandstream

[0085]

79

they said that they had bought two slaves but
they had run away from them - They asked us
to remain with them - more civil than inviting -
So we came on to Makodiera the principal head
man in this quarter and found him a merry
laughing mortal without any good looks to
recommend his genial smile - low forehead
covered with deep wrinkles - flat nose somewhat
of the Assyrian shape - a big mouth & scraggy
person - complained of the Maclinga a Waiyau
tribe north of him & Rovuma stealing his people
Lat. of vil 11°22'49" South - The river being about
2' north still shews that it makes a trend to
the North after we pass Ngomano - He has been
an elephant hunter - few acknowledge as a
reason for slaving that sowing & spinning cotton
for clothing was painful - Waited some days
for Nassick boys who are behind though we
could not buy any food except at enormous
prices and long distances off

7th June

The Havildar and two sepoys came up with
Abraham but Richard a Nassick boy still
behind from weakness - sent three off to help
him with the only cordials we could muster
the sepoys sometimes profess inability to
come on but it is unwillingness to encounter
hardship - I must move on whether they
come or not for we cannot obtain food here
I sent Sepoys some cloth and on the 8th
proposed to start but every particle of food
had been devoured the night before so we sent
off two parts to scour the country round &
give any price rather than want -

I could not prevail on Makodiera to give me
a specimen of poetry - He was afraid - neither
he nor his forefathers had ever seen an
Englishman - He thought that God was not
good because he killed so many people

D^r Roscher must have travelled as an Arab if he came this way for he was not known

[0086]

80

9th
June
1866

We now left and marched through the same sort of scraggy forest gradually ascending in altitude as we went West Then we came to huge masses of granite or syenite with flakes peeling off - They are covered with a plant with grassy looking leaves and rough stalk which peels off into portions similar to what are put round candles as ornaments It makes these hills look light grey with patches of black rock at the more perpendicular parts - The same at about ten miles off look dark blue - The ground is often hard and stoney but all covered over with grass and plants - Looking down at it the grass is in tufts and like that on the Kalahari desert - Trees shew uplands that of which bark cloth is made a Pterocarpus is abundant - Timber trees seen here and there but scragginess & a height of some 20 or 30 feet predominates We spent the night by a hill of the usual rounded form & called Njeñgo - the Rovuma comes close by but leaves us again to wind among similar great masses Lat 11° 20' 05 S -

10th

a very heavy march through same kind of country no human habitation appearing - passed a dead body recently it was said starved to death - the large tract between Makocherás and

our next station at Ngozo hill is without
any perennial stream - water is
found often by digging in the same
streams which we several times
crossed - sometimes it was a trickling
rill but suspect that at some

[0087]

81

[10th] June
1866

other seasons all is dry - and people are
made dependent on the Rovuma alone -
The first evidence of our being near the
pleasant haunts of man was a [...] nice little
woman drawing water at a well - I had become
separated from the rest - on giving me
water she knelt down and as country
manners require held it up to me with both
hands - I had been misled by one of the carriers
who got confused though the rounded mass
of Ngozo was plainly visible from the
heights we crossed East of it -

An Arab party bolted on hearing of our
approach - they dont trust the English &
this conduct increases our importance
among the natives Lat 11° 18' 10" South -

[1]1th

Carriers refuse to go further because
they say that they fear being captured here
on their return - This is one of the
troubles of travelling - and not worth
mentioning

12th

Paid off carriers and wait for a set
from this - visited by a respectable man

called Makoloya or Impande - He wished to ask some questions as to where I was going how long I should be away - Had heard from a man who came from Iboe or Wibo about the bible - a large book which was consulted -

13

He brought his wife and a little corn - says that his father told him that there is a God but nothing more = the marks on their foreheads and bodies meant only to give beauty in the dance - they seem a sort of heraldic ornament for they can at once tell by his tatoo to what tribe or portion of tribe he belongs - the

[0088]

82

13th
June
1866

tattoo or tembo of the Matambwe and upper Makonde very much resembles the drawing of the old Egyptians - wavy lines such as the ancients made to signify water - Trees and gardens enclosed in squares seem to have been meant of old for the inhabitants who lived on the Rovuma and cultivated also - The son takes the tattoo of his father and thus it has been perpetuated through the meaning seems now lost - The Makoa have the half or nearly full moon but it is they say all for ornament

[Diagram of the setting/tattoos for different tribes.]
some blue stuff is rubbed in to the cuts
they say charcoal and the ornament
shews brightly in persons of light complexion who are common

the Makonde & Matambwe file their
front teeth to points - the Machunga
a Wayau tribe leave two points on
the sides of the front teeth
[Drawing of two teeth.] and
knock out one of the middle incisors
above and below - Their marking is

[Drawings of the tattoos.] and sometimes
[Drawings of more tattoos.]

[0089]

83

[14]th
[Ju]ne
[18]66

As much dependant on carriers as if I had
never bought a beast of burden but this is poor
stuff to fill a journal with - Went off to Mataba
to see if chief there would lend some men
the head man Kitwanga went a long way to convoy
us there turned saying he was going to get men
for Musa next day - We passed near the base of
the rounded masses Ngozo & Mekanga and think
from a near inspection that they are over
2000 feet above the plain - possibly 3000 feet &
nearly bare with only the peculiar grassy plant
on some parts not very perpendicular - people
are said to have stores of grain on them - and
on one the chief said there is water - Knows of no
stone buildings of the olden time in the country -
Passed many masses of ferruginous conglomerate
and most of the grass dips Westwards - the
striae seem as if the rock had been partially
molten and at times the strike is N. & S. at others
East & West - When we come to what may have
been its surface it is as if the striae had been
stirred with a rod while soft -
Slept at a point of the Rovuma above a cataract
where a reach of comparatively still water ^ from 150 to 200 yards wide allows
a school of Hippopotami to live - When the
river becomes fordable in many places
as it is said to do in August & September they
must find it difficult to live

15th

Another three hours march brought us from the sleeping place on Rovuma to Mataba the chief of which Kinazombe is an elderly man with a cunning & severe cast of countenance nose Assyrian in type - Has built a large reception house in which a number of half caste Arabs had taken up their abode A great many of the people have guns - and it is astonishing to see the number of taming sticks

[0090]

84

15th

June

1866

[Drawing of taming stick.] abandoned along the road as the poor wretches gave in and professed to have lost all hope of escape - many huts have been built by the Arabs to screen them[-] selves from the rain as they travelled - At Kinazombe, the second crop of maize is ready so the hunger will not be very much felt -

16th

Heard very sombre accounts of the country in front - four or five days to Mtarika and then ten days through jungle to Mataka Little food at Mtarika's but plenty at Mataka who is near the Lake - The Rovuma trends Southerly after we leave Ngozo and Masusa on that River is pointed out as S.W from Metaba so at Ngozo the river may be said to have it furthest Northing - Masasa is said to be five days or at least fifty miles from Metaba the route now becomes S. W.

The cattle of Africa are like the Indian buffalo only partially tamed - They never

give their milk without the presence
 of the calf or its stuffed skin - The "Tulchan"
 The women adjacent to Mosambique partake
 a little of the wild animals nature for
 like the most members of the inferior
 races of animals they ^ women refuse all inter-
 course with their husbands after pregnancy
 is established - and they continue to avoid
 the male for about three years afterward
 or until the child is weaned - which
 usually happens about the third year -
 I was told on most respectable authority
 that many fine young native men
 marry one wife and live happily
 with her till she becomes pregnant

[0091]

85

[1]6th
 [Ju]ne
 1866

Nothing will induce her to continue to cohabit with
 him and as the separation is to continue for three
 years the man is almost compelled to take up
 with another wife - This was mentioned to me
 as one of the great evils of society - The same
 absurdity prevails on the West Coast and
 there it is said that the men acquiesce from
 ideas of cleanness and uncleanness -

It is curious that trade Rum should form so
 important an article of import on the West Coast
 while it is almost unknown on the East
 Coast - The same people began the commerce
 in both instances - If we look North of Cape
 Delgado we might imagine that the religious
 convictions of the Arabs had something to do
 with the matter but the Portuguese south of
 Cape Delgado have scruples in the matter
 and would sell their grandfathers with the
 rum if they could make money by the
 transaction - The have even erected distilleries
 to furnish a vile spirit from the fruit of the
 cashew and other fruits & grain but the trade
 does not succeed - they give their slaves
 also rewards of spirit or "mata bicho"

"kill the creature" or craving within, and you may meet a man who having had much intercourse with Portuguese may beg spirits but the trade does not pay - the natives will drink it if furnished gratis - The indispensable dash of Rum - Its presence in every political transaction with independent chiefs is however quite unknown - The Moslems would certainly not abstain from trading in spirits were they profitable - They often asked for brandy from me in a sly way - as medicine - and when reminded that their religion forbade it would say "Oh but we can drink it in secret" -

[0092]

86

16th

June

1866

It is something in the nature of the people quite inexplicable - Throughout the Makonde country Hernia Humoralis prevails to a frightful extent - It is believed by the natives to be the result of beer drinking so they cannot be considered as abstemious Here again we have children in the arms and others at the knee - or a woman with a child two years old or so and pregnancy far advanced - This too among Makoa who are the same people with those on the mainland of Mosambique

18th

June

1866

Finding that Musa did not come up with the goods I left in his charge and fearing that all was not right we set off with all our hands who could carry after service yesterday morning and after six hours hard tramp arrived here just in time

for a tribe of Wanindi or Manindi who are either Gawas (Wayau) or pretended Mazitu had tried to cross Rovuma from North bank - They come as plunderers and Musa having recieved no assistance was now ready to defend the goods A shot or two from the people of Kitwanga made the Wanindi desist after they had entered the water -

Six Sepoys had come up this length - and Simon - Reuben & Mabruki reported Richard to be dead - This poor boy was left with the others at Liponde and I never saw him again - I observed him associating too much with the sepoy - felt inclined to reprove him as their conversation is usually very bad but I could not of my own knowledge say so - He came on with the others as far as Hassane or Pachassane

[0093]

87

[1]8th June
[1]866

There he was too weak to come further and as the Sepoys were notoriously skulkers I feared that poor Richard was led away by them - I knew that they had made many attempts to draw away the other Nassick boys from their duty - When however Abraham came up, and reported Richard left behind by the Sepoys I became alarmed and sent off three boys to [...] cordials to help him on - Two days after Abraham left he seems to have died and I feel very sorry that I was not there to do what I could - I am told now that he never consented to the Sepoy temptation said to Abraham that he wished he were dead He was so much trouble - People where he died not very civil to Simon -

The Sepoys had now made themselves such an utter nuisance that I felt that I must take the upper hand with them - so I called them this morning and asked if they knew the punishment they had incurred by disobedience of orders & attempting to tamper with the Nassick boys to

turn back - they not only remained in the way when ordered to march but offered eight Rupees to Ali to take them back - the excuse of sickness was of naught for they had eaten heartily three meals a day while pretending sickness - They had no excuse to offer so

18th
June

I disgraced the Naik or corporal and sentenced the others to carry loads - If they behave then they will get fatigue pay [...] for doing fatigue duty if ill nothing but their pay - Their limbs are becoming contracted from sheer idleness - While all the other men are well & getting stronger they alone are disreputably slovenly & useless looking - their filthy habits soiling all about the huts instead of going afield

[0094]

88

18th
June
1866

are to be reformed, and if found at their habit of sitting down and sleeping for hours on the march or without their muskets and pouches they are to be flogged - Sent two of them back to bring up two comrades left behind yesterday and another to strengthen himself by carrying a small load on his head for an hour - All are comparatively strong who

have done work - I promised them fatigue duty pay if they behaved better from this time forward - but none if they conducted themselves

ill -

19th June

Gave Sepoys light loads in order to inure them to exercise and strengthen them - they carried willingly so long as the fright was on them but when the fear of immediate punishment wore off they began their skulking again - One, Perim reduced his load of about 20 lbs of tea by throwing away the lead in which it was rolled and then about 15 lbs of the tea thereby diminishing our stock to 5 lbs -

(198

(. Lighted on a telegram today ."your mother died at noon on the 18th June" (1865) which affected me not a little -)

Passed a woman tied by the neck to a tree and dead - The people of the country explained that she had been unable to keep up with the other slaves of a gang, and her master had determined that after rest she should not become the property of anyone else - I may mention here that we saw others tied up in a similar manner and one lying in the path shot or stabbed as she was in a pool of blood - the explanation we got invariably was that the Arab who owned these victims was enraged at losing his money by the slaves becoming unable to march and vented his spleen

[0095]

89

by murdering them but I have nothing more than common report in support of attributing this enormity to the Arabs -

20th
June
1866

Having returned to Metaba we were told by Kinazombe the chief that no one had grain to sell but himself He had plenty of powder and common cloth from the Arabs and our only chance with him was parting with our finer cloths and other things that took his fancy - He magnified the scarcity in front in order to induce us to buy all we could from him - but he gave me an ample meal of porridge & guinea fowl before starting

21st

We had difficulties about carriers but on reaching an island in Rovuma called chimiki we found the people Makoa and more civil & willing to work than the Waiyau and sent men back to bring up the Havildar to a very civil head man called Chirikaloma

22^d

A poor boy with prolapsus Ani was carried yesterday by his mother many a weary mile lying over her right shoulder the only position he could find ease in - An infant at the breast occupied the left arm and on her head were carried two baskets - The mother[']s love was seen in binding up the part when we halted, and the coarseness of low civilization in the laugh with which some black brutes looked at the protruding part -

23^d

the country is covered with forest much more open than further East - We are now some 800 feet above the sea - People all cultivate maize near the Rovuma and on islands where moisture helps them - Nearly all possess guns & plenty of powder and fine beads - Red ones strung on the hair and fine blue ones in rolls on the neck fitted tightly like soldiers['] stocks - Lip ring universal - Teeth filed to points

24th
June
1866

Immense quantities of wood are cut down collected in heaps and burned to manure the land but this does not prevent the country having an appearance of forest - Divine service at 8-30 AM great numbers looking on - They have a clear idea of the Supreme being but do not pray to him - Cold South winds prevail - Temp . 55° - Mule very ill - was left with Havildar when we went back to Ngozo and was probably left uncovered at night for as soon as we saw its illness was plainly visible - Whenever an animal has been in their power the Sepoys have abused it - It is difficult to feel charitably to fellows whose scheme seems to have been to detach the Nassick boys from me after the animals were all killed - and then the Johannamen and then they could rule me as they like or go back and leave me to perish - but I shall try to feel as charitably as I can in spite of it all - the mind has a strong tendency to brood over the ills of travel - I told the Havildar when I came up to him at Metaba what I had done and that I was very much displeased with the sepoys for compassing my failure if not death - an unkind word had never passed my lips to them - to this he could bear testimony - He thought that they would only be a plague & trouble to me but he "would go on and die with me" -

Stone boiling is unknown in these countries but ovens are made in anthills & the ground for baking the heads of large game as the zebra-feet of Elephants - Humps of Rhinoceros & the production of fire by drilling between the palms of the hands is universal - It is quite common to see the sticks so used attached to the clothing or bundles in travelling - they wet the blunt end of the ^ upright stick with the tongue

[0097]

and dip it in the sand to make some particles of silica adhere before inserting it in the horizontal piece - The wood of a certain wild fig tree is esteemed as yielding fire readily -

But in wet weather they prefer to carry fire in the dried balls of elephant dung which are met with - the male's being about eight inches in diameter and about a foot long - They also employ the stalk of a certain plant which grows on rocky places for the same purpose

We bought a senze or Aulacaudatus Swinderianus It had been dried over a slow fire - This custom of drying fish flesh & fruits on stages over slow fires is practised very generally - The use of salt for preservation is unknown -

Besides stages for drying the Makonde use them about six feet high for sleeping on these stages keep them off the damp ground - A fire beneath helps to keep off the mosquitoes and they are used by day as convenient resting places & for observation

Pottery seems to have been known to the Africans from the remotest times for fragments are found everywhere, and even among the oldest fossil bones in the country - Their pots for cooking - holding water & beer are made by the women and the form preserved by the eye alone - no sort of [..]Machine is ever used - A foundation or bottom is laid and a piece of bone or bamboo is used to scrape it or smooth over pieces added to increase the roundness - This is left a night a piece added to the rim - as the air is dry several rounds may be added and all carefully smoothed off, and then it is thoroughly sun dried - a light fire of dried new dung -

[0098]

92

24th
June
1866

or corn stalks - or straw, and grass with twigs is made in a hole in the ground for

their final baking - ornaments are made on them of black lead - or before being hardened by the sun they are ornamented for a couple or three inches near the rim - all ornaments being in imitation of plaited basket work

Chirikaloma says that the surname of the Makoa to whom he belongs is Mirazi - others have the surname Melola or Malola-chimposola All had the half moon mark when in the South East but now they leave it off a good deal and adopt the [...]Waiyau [Drawing of tribal marks.] marks because living in their country - They shew no indications of being named after beasts & birds - Mirazi was an ancestor and they eat all clean animals but refuse the Hyaena - Leopard or any beast that eats dead men

25th

on leaving Chirikaloma we came on to Namalo whose village that morning had been deserted the people moving off in a body towards the Matambwe country where food is more abundant - a poor little girl left in one of the huts from being too weak to walk and probably an orphan - the Arab slave traders flee from the path as soon as they hear of our approach - Rovuma from 50 to 80 yards wide here - No food to be had for either love or money -

Near many of the villages we observe a wand bent and both ends inserted into the ground [Drawing of bent wands.] a lot of medicine usually the bark of trees is buried beneath it - When sickness is in a village - the men proceed to the spot- wash themselves with the medicine & water - creep through beneath the bow then bury the medicine and the evil influence

[0099]

[2]5th June

[1]866

together - This is also used to keep off evil spirits
wild beasts & enemies -

Chirikaloma told us of a child born deformed
in his tribe - He had an abortive toe where his knee
should have been - some said to his mother "kill
him" but she replied "how can I [...]kill my son?"
and he grew up and had many fine sons &
daughters but none deformed like himself -
This was told in connection with an answer
to my question about the treatment of Albinos -
He said they never killed them but they never
came to anything but die before they come to
manhood - On enquiring if he had ever heard
of Cannibals or people with tails he replied "Yes
but we have always understood that these -
and other [...]monstrosities were met with only
among us Sea going people["] - the other monstrosities
he referred to were those who are said to have eyes
behind the head as well as in front - I have
heard of them before but then I was near
Angola in the West -

The rains are expected here when the Pleides
appear in the East soon after sunset - they
go by the same name here as further South -
Lemila or the "hoeings" -

In the route along the Rovuma we pass among
people who are so well supplied with white
calico by the slave trade from Kilwa that it is
quite a drug in the market - We cannot get
food for it - If we held on West wards we
should cross several rivers flowing into
the Rovuma from the Southward as the
Zandulo, the Sanjenze - the Lochiringo and
then in going round the North end of Nyassa
go among the Nindi who now inhabit
the parts vacated by the Mazite and
imitate them in having shields and in

[0100]

marauding - An Arab party went in and got out again only by paying a whole bale of calico - It would not therefore be wise in me to venture there at present by if we return this way we may their venture Meanwhile we shall push on to Mataka's who is only a few days off from the middle of the Lake and has abundance of provisions

26th
June

Last mule died - In coming along in the morning we were loudly accosted by a well dressed woman who had just had a very heavy slave taming stick put on her neck she called in such an authoritative tone to us to witness the flagrant injustice of which she was the victim that all the men stood still and went to hear the case - she was a near relative of Chirikaloma, and was going up the river to her husband when the old man at whose house she was now a prisoner caught her - took her servant away from her - and now kept her in the degraded state we saw - the withs with which she was bound were green & sappy - the old man said in justification that she was running away from Chirikaloma, and he would be offended with him (the old man) if he did not secure her - I asked the officious old gentleman in a friendly tone what he expected to receive from Chirikaloma - He said "Nothing" several slaver looking fellows came about and I felt sure that the woman had been seized in order to sell her to them - so I gave the old man a cloth to pay to Chirikaloma if he were offended, and to say that - I feeling ashamed to see one of his relatives in a slave stick had released her - and would

[0101]

95

take her on to her husband - she is evidently a

lady among them, having many fine beads & some strung on elephants hair - and she had a good deal of spirit for on being liberated she went into the old mans house, and took her basket & calabash - a virago of a wife shut the door & tried to prevent her as well as cut off the beads from her person, but she resisted like a good one and my men thrust the door open & let her go but minus the slave she had - The other wife for old officious had two, joined her sister in a furio[...]-us tirade of abuse - the elder holding her till I burst into a laugh in which the younger wife joined sides in regular fishwife fashion ^- I explained to the different headmen in front of this what I had done and sent messages to Chirikaloma explanatory of my friendly deed to his relative so that no misconstruction should be put on my act -

Passed a slave woman shot or stabbed through the body and lying on the path - a group of men stood about a hundred yards off on one side and another ~~on the~~ of women on the other side looking - They said An Arab who passed early that morning had done it in anger at losing the price he had given

27th Passed a man dead from starvation as he was very thin - one of our men wandered & came upon a number of slaves with slave sticks on, abandoned by their master from want of food, they were too weak to be able to speak & say where they had come from - some were quite young - crossed Tulesi a stream coming from South about 20 yards wide

At Chenjewala's The people are usually much startled when I explain that the numbers of slave we see dead on the road have been killed partly by those who sold them - If they sell they are like the man who holds the victim while the Arab performs the murder -

[0102]

96

Chenjewala blamed Machemba a chief above him on the Rovuma for encouraging the slave trade - told him I had travelled so much among them that I knew all the excuses they could make - Each head man blamed some one else & It would be better if they kept their people and cultivated more largely - "Oh Machemba sends his men and robs our gardens after we have

cultivated - One man said the Arabs who come
and tempt them with fine clothes were the
cause of their selling - This was childish” So
I told them they would very soon have
none to sell - Their country was becoming
jungle - and all their people who did not
die in the road would be making gardens
for Arabs at Kilwa & elsewhere -

28th
June
1866

When we got about an hour from
Chenjewala’s we came to a party in the
act of marauding - The owners of the gardens
made for the other side of the river and
waved to us to go against the people of
Machemba - but we stood on a knoll with
all our goods on the ground and waited to
see how matters would turn up - Two of the
Marauders came to us and said he had captured
five people - I suppose he took us for Arabs
as he addressed Musa - They then took some
green maize and so did some of my people
believing that as all was going they who
were really starving might as well have a
share - I went on a little way with the two
marauders and by the foot prints thought
the whole might be four or five with guns
Gardens & huts all deserted - one poor
woman was sitting cooking green maize
and one of the men ordered her to follow
him - I said to him ”let her alone she is dying”

[0103]

97

”Yes” said he, ”of hunger” & went on without her
Passed village after village & gardens all deserted
We were now between two contending parties
We slept at one garden & as we were told by
Chenjewala’s people to take what we liked and
my men having no food we gleaned what congo
beans we could - bean leaves & Sorghum stalks -
Poor fare enough but all we could get -

29 June
1866

Came on to Machemba's brother ^ Chimseia who gave us food at once - The country is now covered with deeper soil and many large acacia trees grow in the deep loam - The holmes too are large and many islands afford convenient maize grounds - One of the Nassick lads came up & reported his bundle containing 240 yards of calico had been stolen - He went aside leaving it on the path - (probably fell asleep) and it was gone when he came back I cannot impress either them or the Sepoys that it is wrong to sleep on the march

Akosakone the lady we had liberated had now arrived at the residence of her husband who was another brother of Machemba - she behaved like a lady all through sleeping at a fire apart from the men - was condoled with by the ladies of the different villages we passed and to [...] whom she related the indignity that had been done to her - bought food for us for having a good address we saw that she could get double for the cloth what any of our men could purchase - ^and when we came to Machemba's ^ brother Chimseia she introduced me to him, and got him to be liberal to us in food on account of the service we had rendered to her - She took leave of us all with many expressions of thankfulness, and we were glad that we had not mistaken her position or lavished kindness on the undeserving. spoke up for us when any injustice was attempted and when we were in want of carriers volunteered to carry a bag of beads on her head

[0104]
98

one Johanna man caught stealing maize - then another after I had paid for the first - I sent a request to the chief not to make much of a row about it as I was very much ashamed at my men stealing He replied that he had liked me from the first and I was not to fear as whatever he could do he would most willingly do it to save me pain & trouble - A Sepoy then came up having given his musket to a man to carry, the man demanded payment As it had become a regular nuisance for the sepoy to employ people to carry for them and telling them that I would pay I demanded why he had promised in my name "O it was but a

little way he carried the musket” Chimseia warned
us next morning 30th June

30th
June
1866

against allowing any one to straggle or steal
in front for stabbing and plundering were the rule
The same Sepoy who had employed a [...]man to carry
his musket now came forward with his eyes
fixed and shaking all over - This I was to under-
-stand meant extreme weakness but I had accidentally
noticed him walking quite smartly before this
exhibition - and now ordered him to keep close
to the donkey that carried the Havildar's luggage
and on no account to remain behind the
party - He told the Havildar that he would sit
down only for a little while - and I suppose
fell asleep for he came up to us in the
evening as naked as a Robin - saw another
person bound to a tree and dead - a sad sight
to see whoever was the perpetrator - so many
slave sticks lay along our path that I suspect
the people hereabout make a practice of
liberating what slaves they can find on the
march and selling them again

[0105]

99

[3]0th
[J]un[...]e
[1]866

a large quantity of maize cultivated at Chimsaka's
to whose place we this day arrived - We got a supply
but being among thieves we thought advisable to
move on to the next place (Mtarika's) When
starting we found that fork, kettle, pot & shot pouch -
had been taken - the thieves I observed, kept up a
succession of jokes to Chuma & Wikatani, and
when the latter was enjoying them gaping to the sky
they were busy putting the things of which he had charge
under their cloths - spoke to the chief and he got the

three first articles back for me - a great deal if not

[1]st July

[1]866

all the lawlessness of this quarter is the result of the slave trade for the Arabs buy whoever is brought to them and in a country covered with forest as this is kidnapping can be prosecuted with the greatest ease - Elsewhere the people are honest and have a regard for justice

As we approached Mtarika's place the country becomes more mountainous and the land sloping for a mile down to the South bank of the Rovuma supports a large population some were making new gardens by cutting down trees & piling the branches for burning - others had stored up large quantities of grain and were moving it to a new locality but they were all so well supplied with calico (Merikano) that they would not look at ours - the market was glutted by slavers from (Quiloa)' Kilwa - On asking why people were seen tied to trees to die as we had seen them they gave the usual answer that the Arabs tie them thus, and leave them to die because they are vexed when the slave can walk no further that they have lost their money by them - the path is almost strewn with slave sticks and though the people denied it I suspect that they make a practice

[0106]

100

1 July

1866

of following slave caravans and cutting off the sticks from those who fall out in the march and thus stealing them - By selling them again they get the quantities of cloth we see - some asked for gaudy prints of which we had none because we knew that the general taste of

the Interior African is for strength rather than
shew in what they buy -

Rovuma here is about 100 yards broad &
still keeps up its character of a rapid stream
with sandy banks and islands - the latter
are generally occupied as being defensible
when the river is in flood

2 July
1866

We rested at Mtarika's old place - and
though we had to pay dearly with our best
table cloths for it we got as much as
made one meal a day - At the same dear
rate we could give occasionally only two
ears of corn to each and if the Sepoys got their
comrades corn in their hands they eat it without
shame - We had to bear a great amount
of staring - the people who are Waiyau
have a great deal of curiosity and are
occasionally rather rude - They have all
heard of our wish to stop the slave trade
and rather taken aback when told that by
selling they are art and part guilty of the
mortality of which we had been unwilling
spectators - Some were dumfounded
when shewn that in the eye of their maker
they are parties to the destruction of human
life which accompanies this traffic
both by sea & land -If they did not sell
the Arabs would not come to buy -
Chuma & Wikatani give what is said
very eloquently in Waiyan - Most of the
people being of their tribe with only a
sprinkling of slaves - Chimseia -

[0107]

101

[2] July
[18]66

- Chimsaka - Mtarika - Mtende - Makanjela -
- Mataka - and all the chiefs & people in our route

to the Lake are Waiyau - or Waiau -

On the Southern slope down to the river there are many oozing springs & damp spots - when rice has been sown and reaped - The adjacent land has yielded large crops of sorghum - congo beans & pumpkins - successive crowds of people came to gaze - My appearance and acts often cause a burst of laughter - sudden standing up produces a flight of women & children - To prevent peeping into the hut which I occupy and making the place quite dark I do my writing in the verandah - Chitane the poodle dog - the buffalo calf and only remaining donkey are greeted with the same amount of curiosity and laughter exciting comment as myself.

Every evening a series of loud musket reports are heard from the different villages along the River - These are imitation evening guns - All imitate the Arabs in dress & chewing tobacco with "nora" lime made from burnt river shells instead of betel nut & lime The women are stout well built persons with thick arms and legs - The heads incline to the bullet shape - The lip rings are small the tattoo a mixture of Makoa & Waiyau Fine blue & black beads are in fashion and so are arm coils of thick brass wire - Very nicely inlaid combs are worn in the hair - - the inlaying is accomplished by means of a gum got from the root of an orchis called Nangazu -

[0108]

102

3 July
1866

A short march brought us to Mtarika's new place - The chief made his appearance only after he has ascertained all he could about us - The population is immense - they are making new gardens, and the land is laid out by straight lines about a foot broad cut with the hoe - one goes miles without getting beyond the marked or surveyed fields -

Mtarika came at last - a big ugly man with large mouth & receding forehead - asked to

see all all our curiosities as the watch - Revolver
breech loading rifle - sextant - I gave him a
lecture on the evil of selling his people - Wished
me to tell all the other chiefs the same thing -
They dislike the idea of guilt being attached to
to them for having sold many who have lost
their lives in their way down to the Sea Coast -
We had a long visit from Mtarika next day
gave us meal, and meat of wild hog - and a
salad made of bean leaves - a wretched Swaheli
Arab ill with Rheumatism came for aid and
got a cloth - they all profess to me to be buying
ivory only -

5 July

We left for Mtende's who is the last before
we enter on a good eight days march to Mataka
We might have gone to Kandul's who is near
Rovuma & more to the North but all are so
well supplied with everything by slave traders
that we have difficulty in getting provisions
at all - Mataka has plenty of all kinds of food -
On the way we passed the burnt bones of a
person who was accused of having eaten
human flesh - poisoned or as they said
killed by poison (Muave?[]) & then burned
His clothes were hung up on trees by the
wayside as a warning to others - the country
was covered with scraggy forest but so

[0109]

103

[5] July
[1]866

undulating that one could [---]often se[---]e all around
from the crest of the waves - Great mountain masses
appear in South and South West - It feels cold &

[6]th

the sky is often overcast -
Lunars yesterday - after which Mtende invited us to
eat at his house - He had provided a large mess of
rice porridge and bean leaves as a relish - Many
Arabs pass him and many of them die in their
journeys - He knows no deaf or dumb person
in the country - He says that he cuts the throats of all
animals to be eaten & does not touch Lion or
Hyaena -

[7] July

Got men from Mtende to carry loads & shew
the way - He asked a cloth to ensure his people
going to the journeys end & behaving - This is the
only case of anything like tribute being demanded
in this journey - I gave him a cloth worth -
Upland vegetation - Trees dotted here & there
among bush five feet high so one can often
see the horizon - fine blue and yellow flowers
We pass over a succession of ridges &
valleys as in Londa - Each valley has a running
stream or trickling rill - Garden willows in
full bloom & a species of sage with variegated
leaves beneath the flowers - camp Lemile R^t

When the Sepoy Perim threw away the tea &
the lead lining I only reproved him & promised
him punishment if he committed any other
wilful offence - He and another skulked behind
and gave their loads to a stranger to carry with
a promise to him that I would pay - We waited
two hours for them and as the Havildar
said that they would not obey him I gave
Perim and the other some smart cuts with
a cane but I felt that I was degrading
myself and resolved not to do the
punishment myself again -

[0110]

104

8 July
1866

Hard travelling through a depopulated country -
the trees about the size of hop poles - abundance

of tall grass - soil sometimes a little sandy - at
other times that reddish clayey soil that yields
native grain so well - the rock seen upper
most is often a ferruginous conglomerate &
that lies upon granite rocks - the gum copal
tree is here a mere bush and no digging takes
place for the gum - It is called here Mchenga
and yields gum when wounded as also
bark cloth and cordage when stripped - Mountain
masses all around us - sleep at Linata M^{tn}

9th

Many Masuko fruit trees about - It has the
same name here as in the Batoka country
also Rhododendrons of two species but the
flowers white - Sleep in a wild spot near M^t Leziro with
many lions roaring about us - one hoarse
fellow serenaded us a long time but did
nothing more - Game is said to be abundant
but we saw none save an occasional
Diver springing away from the path -
Some streams ran to the N. W. to Lismyando & it fr for Rovuma
others to the South East for Loendi -

10th &
11th

Nothing to interest but the same weary
trudge - Our food scarce - We could only
give a handful or ½ a lb of grain to each
person per day - Masuka fruit formed
but not ripe till rains begin - very few
birds seen or heard though there is both
food and water in the many grain bearing
grasses & running streams which at the
junction of every two ridges we cross -
A dead body in a hut by way side - the
poor thing had begun to make a garden
by the stream probably in hopes of living
long enough 2 months or so on wild fruits to reap a
crop of maize

[0111]

[1]2 July

[1]866

a drizzling mist set in during the night & continued this morning - We set off in the dark however leaving our last food for the Havildar and s[...]-epoys who had not yet come up - The streams are now of good size - An Arab brandy bottle was lying broken in one called Msapa - We hurried on as fast as we could to the Luatize our last stage before getting to Mataka - This stream is rapid - about 40 yards wide - waist deep - with many podostemons on the bottom - country getting more & more undulating & all covered with masses of green foliage chiefly Masuko trees which have large hard leaves - there are hippopotami further down on its way to the Loendi - a little rice which [...]had been kept for me I divided but some did not taste -

[1]3 July

A good many stragglers behind but we push on to get food and send it back to them - The soil all reddish clay - the roads baked hard by the sun & many weary feet are sore on ours - A weary march and long - It is perpetually up & down now. I counted fifteen running streams in one days march - They are at the bottom of the valley which separates the ridges - We got to the brow of a ridge about an hour from Mataka's first gardens and all were so tired that we remained to sleep - then invited volunteers to go & on & buy food, and bring it back early next morning - the volunteers had to be pressed to do this duty -

14th

As our volunteers did not come at 8 AM I set off to see the cause and after an hour of perpetual up & down march as I descended the steep slope which overlooks the first gardens I saw my friends start up at the apparition - They were comfortably cooking porridge for themselves - I sent men of

Mataka back with food to the stragglers behind

[0112]

106

14 July
1866
Moembe
the
Town
of
Mataka

and came on to Mataka's - An Arab Seph Rupa or Rubéa head of a large body of slaves on his way to the coast most kindly came forward and presented an ox, bag of flour and some cooked meat - all which were extremely welcome to half famished men - Or indeed under any circumstances - He had heard of our want of food and of a band of sepoys and what could the English think of doing but putting an end to the slave trade - Had he seen our wretched escort all fear of them would have vanished - He had a large safari or caravan under him - This body is usually divided into ten or twelve portions, and all are bound to obey the leader to a certain extent - This had eleven parties and the traders numbered about 60 or 70 who were dark Coast Arabs - Each underling had his men under him and they were busy making the pens of branches ~~intowhich~~ their slaves and they sleep - Seph came on with me to Mataka's and introduced me in due form with discharges of gun powder - I asked him to come back next morning & presented three cloths & a request that he would assist the Havildar & Sepoys as he met them with food - This he generously did.

We found Mataka's town situated in an elevated valley surrounded by mountains the houses numbered at least one thousand and there were many villages around - The mountains were pleasantly green and had many trees which the [...]people were incessantly cutting down - they have but recently

come here having been attacked by Mazitu
at their former location West of this - and after fighting
four days they left unconquered.

[0113]

107

[15] July
[18]66
Moembe
town
Mataka

Mataka kept us waiting some time in the verandah
of his large square house and then made his
appearance smiling with his good natured face
He is about sixty years of age - dressed as an Arab
and if we may judge from the laughter with
which his remarks were always greet[...]-ed some
what humorous - He had never seen any
but Arabs before - Gave me a square house to
live in - and indeed the most of the houses here
are square and the Arabs are imitated in everything
They have introduced the English pea, and we
were pleased to see large patches of it in full
bearing and in many places ripe in moist
hollows which had been selected for it - The
numerous springs which come out in various
parts are all made use of - Generally by drainage
to dry the too wet parts and then leading the
water by real irrigation to beds & ridges regularly
laid out - We had afterwards occasion to
admire the very extensive draining which
has been effected among the hills - Pease &
tobacco were the chief products raised by
irrigation but batatas and maize were often
planted too - Wheat would succeed if introduced -
The altitude is about 2700 feet above the sea - the
air at this time cool and many people have coughs
Cassava is cultivated on ridges along all the
streets in the town which give it a somewhat
regular & neat appearance

Mataka soon sent a good mess of porridge &
cooked meat (beef) he has plenty of cattle - & sheep
next day he sent plenty of milk - We stand a
good deal of staring unmoved though it is
often accompanied by remarks by no means
complimentary They think that they are not

understood and probably I misunderstand
sometimes - the Waiyau jumble their words

[0114]

108

15th
July
1866
Town
of
Mataka
Moembe

as I think and Mataka thought that weI did not
enunciate anything but kept my tongue still
when I spoke -

The safari under Seph set off this morning for
Kilwa - Seph says that about 100 of the Kilwa
people died this year - So, slaving is accom-
panied with loss of life as well as philanthropy, - We saw about
seven of their graves - the rest died on the
road up - there [are] two roads from this to the
Lake one to Loséwa which is West of this
and opposite Kotakota - the other to Makate
is further South - the first, five days ~~but~~
through deserted country chiefly, the other,
seven but among people & plenty of
provisions all the way -

It struck me after Seph had numbered up
the losses that the Kilwa people sustained by
death in their endeavours to enslave people
similar losses on the part of those who go to
"proclaim liberty to the captives - the opening of
the prison to them that are bound" to save &
elevate, need not be made so very much of
as they sometimes are -

Soon after our arrival we heard that a number
of Mataka's Waiyau had without his knowledge
gone to Nyassa, and in a foray carried off cattle
and people - When they came home with the
spoil Mataka ordered all to be sent back
whence they came - When he came up to visit
me I told him that his decision was the best
piece of news I had heard in the country,
He was evidently pleased with my approbation
and turning to his people asked if they heard

what I said - He repeated my remark, and
said you silly fellows think me wrong
in returning the captives but all wise men
will approve of it & scolded them roundly -

[0115]

109

16th
[Ju]ly
[18]66
[To]wn of
[Mat]aka
[Mo]embe

I was accidentally spectator of the party going back
for on going out of town I saw a meat market
opened and people buying with maize & meal -
on enquiring, I was told that the people & cattle there
were the Nyassa ones, and they had slaughtered an
ox in order by the exchange of meat for grain to
have provisions for the journey - the women
and children numbered 54 and about a dozen
boys were engaged in milking the cows - the
cattle were from 25 to 30 head -

[17]th

The change from hard & scanty fare caused illness
in several of the party - I had tasted no animal
food except what turtle doves & guinea fowls
could be shot since we passed Matawatawa - a
fowl was given by Mtende - The last march
was remarkable for the fewness of birds,
so eight days were spent on porridge & rice - with-
-out relish

I gave Mataka a trinket to be kept in remembrance
of his having sent back the Nyassa people - He
replied that he would always act in a similar
manner - As it was a spontaneous act it was
all the more valuable -

The Sepoys have become quite intolerable,
and if I cannot get rid of them we shall all
starve before we accomplish what we wish -
They dawdle behind picking up wild fruits, and

in our last march which we accomplished
on the morning of the eighth day they took from
fourteen to twenty two days - Retaining their
brutal feelings to the last they killed the donkey
which I lent to the Havildar to carry his things by
striking it on the head when in boggy places
into which they had senselessly driven it
loaded - then the Havildar came on his men
pretending they could go no further from
weakness - as soon as his back was turned

[0116]

110

Mataka's
town
14-28
July
1866

they moved off the road slaughtered the
buffalo calf which was quite strong &
hearty and enjoyed themselves - They have
gone on employing people to carry their
things - one came up with a woman
carrying his musket & belts - He had promised
the woman three cubits in my name - I
paid it because she was a woman - The buffalo
eaters came up quite briskly & strong - they
said it had died, and tigers came & eat it they saw
them - Did you see the stripes of the tiger - all declared
that they saw the stripes distinctly - This, as there
no striped tiger in all Africa gave us an idea
of their truthfulness - A Nassick boy called
Mabruki came up with the Havildar, and his
load reduced to a very small bulk - He had either
stolen the cloths it contained 8 or 9 - & 1 fathom
of calico or allowed the sepoy to do it while
he remained out of sight - This was practised
by another Nassick boy Reuben - He carried a
small ammunition case - When opened about
250 or more ball cartridges had been extracted,
When I was proceeding to open it - He said "I dont
know sir, perhaps when I went to cut wood
the Sepoys may have stolen from it" - He knew
perfectly well by the decreased weight but
he was strongly suspected as a thief, he was

described as selling a stolen cloth - The day after we left Mataka Reuben feeling that his character was gone resolved to return & stay with Mataka - gave a packet of cartridges to a man to carry his load back to a village & there sat till we sent for him -. A happy riddance - All who resolved on skulking or other bad behaviour invariably took up with the Sepoys - their talk seemed to suit evil doers - and the Sepoys were such

[0117]

111

[Ma]taka
[to]wn
[14-]28
[Jul]y
[186]6

a disreputable looking lot that I was quite ashamed of them - the Havildar had no authority, and all bore the sulky dogged look of people going where they were forced but hated to go - This hang dog expression of countenance was so conspicuous that I many a time have heard the country people remark "these are the slaves of the party" They have neither spirit nor pluck as compared to the Africans and if one saw a village he turned out of the way to beg in the most abject manner or lay down & slept the only excuse being "my legs were sore" - One stopped two days at a village in sight of this because he got some food and when asked why he did so uttered the usual complaint "his legs were sore" Having allowed some of them to sleep at the [---]fire in my house they began a wholesale plunder of everything they could sell - as cartridges cloths, meat - so I had to eject them - One of them then threatened to shoot my interpreter Simon if he got him in a qui[---]et place away from the English power - As this threat had been uttered three times, and I suspect that something of the kind had prevented the Havildar exerting his authority, I resolved to get rid of them by sending by the first trader back to the coast - It is likely that some sympathizers

will take their part but I strove to make them
useful - they had but poor & scanty fare
in a part of the way but all suffered alike -
They made themselves thoroughly disliked by their
foul talk and abuse - and if any thing tended more
than another to shew me that theirs was a moral
unfitness for travel it was the briskness assumed
when they knew they were going back to the Coast -
I felt inclined to force them on but it would have
been acting from revenge, and to pay them out
so I forbore - I gave Mataka 48 yards of

[0118]

112

Town of
Mataka
14-28
July 1866
Moembe

of calico, and to the sepoy 18 yards, and
conveyed that he should give them food till
Suleiman a respectable trader should arrive -
He was expected every day and we passed him
near the town - If they chose to go & get their
luggage it was of course all safe for them
behind - The Havildar begged still to go on with me
and I consented though he is a drag on the party
but he will count in any difficulty -

Abraham recognized his uncle among
the crowds who came to see us - On making
himself known he found that his mother
and two sisters had been sold to the Arabs
after he had been - The uncle pressed him
to remain, and Mataka urged, and so did
another uncle, but in vain - I added my
voice and could have given him goods
to keep him afloat a good while, but
he invariably replied "How can I stop where
I have no mother and no sister"? The
affection seems to go to the maternal side,
I suggested that he might come after he
had married a wife, but I fear very
much that unless some European would
go none of these Nassick boys would come -
The Nassick system seems to convey to their minds

an extravagant idea of the value of their labour -
It would be decidedly better if they were taught
agriculture in the simplest form as the Indian -
Mataka would have liked to put his oxen to use
but, Abraham could not help him with that
He is a smith or rather a nothing for unless he
could smelt iron he would be entirely without
materials to work with - The only specimen Mataka
will have, Reuben, can teach nothing and
has always been a nuisance to us.

[0119]

113

[Moe]mbe
[To]wn
[M]ataka
[14 -] 28
[July] 1866

In calling at Mataka's I found as usual a large crowd
of idlers who always respond with a laugh everything
he utters as wit - He asked if he went to Bombay
what he ought to take to secure some gold - I replied
"Ivory" He rejoined would slaves not be a good
speculation, I replied that "if he took slaves there for
sale they would put him in prison." the idea of the
great Mataka put in "chokee" made him wince &
the laugh turned for once against him - He said
that as all the people from the Coast crowd to him
they ought to give him something handsome for
being here to supply their wants - I replied if he
would fill the fine well watered country we had
passed over with people instead of sending them off
to Kilwa he would confer a benefit on visitors
but we had been starved in the way to him - told
him what the English would do in a road making
in a fine country like this - This led us to talk of
railways - ships - ploughing with oxen - this
last idea struck him most - I told him that I should
have liked some of the Nassick boys to remain &
teach this & other things - but they might be afraid to
venture lest they should be sold again - The men who
listened never heard such decided protests against selling
each other into slavery before - the idea of guilt probably
floated but vaguely in their minds, but the loss of life we
have witnessed, and in the guilt of which the sellers as
well as they buyers participate comes home very

forcibly to their minds - Mataka has been an active hand
in slave wars himself, though now he wishes to settle
down in quiet - The Waiyau or Waiaou generally
are still the most active agents the slave traders have -
The safari from Kilwa arrives at a Waiau village
shews the goods they have brought - are treated
liberally by the elders and told to wait & enjoy
themselves - They will procure slaves enough
to purchase all - Then a foray is made against
the Manganja who have few or no guns

[0120]

114

Moembe
Mataka's
town
14-18
July
1866

The Waiau who come against them are
abundantly supplied with both by their coast
guests - Several of the low Coast Arabs
who differ in nothing from the Waiau usually
accompany the foray and do business on
their own account - This is the usual
way in which a Safari is furnished with
slaves

Makanjela a Waiyau chief about a third
of the way from Mtende's to Mataka has
lost the friendship of all his neighbours by
kidnapping and selling their people - if any
of Mataka's people are found in the district
between Makanjela & Moembe they [...]are considered
fair game & sold - Makanjela's people cannot
pass Mataka to go to the Manganja so do what
they can by kidnapping & plundering all
who fall into their hands - When I employed
two of Mataka's people to go back on the
14th with food to the Havildar & sepoy
they went a little way and relieved some
but would not venture as far as the
Luatize for fear of losing their liberty
by Makanjela's people - I could not
get the people of the country to go back -
- could not ask the Nassick boys who had
been threatened by the sepoy with assassination

and some had even sworn after being
abused by the sepoy tongue that they would
never help one of them in any circumstances
- nor could I ask the Johanna men to go
back for the stragglers, because though
Mahometans the Sepoys had called them
Caffirs &c and they all declared "we are
ready to do anything for you but we
will do nothing for these Hindis["] - I
sent back a sepoy giving him provisions

[0121]

115

[Moe]mbe
14 - 28

he sat down in the first village, ate all the
food and returned - This difficulty resulted
from the slave trade -

An immense tract of country lies uninhabited -
to the North East of Moembe we have at least fifty
miles of as fine country as can be seen anywhere
still bearing all the marks of having once supported
a prodigious iron smelting, grain growing population
The clay pipes which are put on the nozzles of their
bellows and inserted into the furna[...][ce] are met with
everywhere - they are often vitrified - Then the
ridges on which they planted maize - beans - cassava
and sorghum and which they find necessary to
drain off the too abundant moisture of the rains,
still remain unleveled to attest the industry of
the former inhabitants - the soil being clayey
resists for a long time the influence of the weather
They are very regular for in crossing the old
fields [...]as the path often compels us to do one
foot treads regularly on the ridge and the other
in the hollow for a considerable distance
Pieces of broken pots with the rims orna-
mented with very good imitations of basket
work attest that the lady potters of old followed
the example given them by their still more
ancient mothers rude but better than we can
make without referring
[Drawing of markings on the edges of the broken pottery pieces.]
to the original,

no want of water has here acted to drive the
people away as has been the case further
South - It is a perpetual succession of ridge
and valley with a running stream or oozing
bog where ridge is separated from ridge -
The ridges become steeper and narrower
as we approach Mataka's - I counted fifteen
running burns of from one to ten yards
wide in one days march of about six hours

[0122]

116

Being in a hilly ~~on~~ or rather mountainous
region they flew rapidly and have plenty
of water power - In July any mere
torrent ceases to flow but these were brawling
burns even now - the water too cold for
us to bathe in (61°) whose pores were all
open by the sweaty regions nearer the
coast - The sound of gushing water
dashing over rocks so un African was
quite familiar to our ears - This district
which rises up West of Mataka's to 3400 feet
above the sea, catches a great deal of the moisture
brought up by the Easterly winds - Many of
the trees are covered with lichens - While here
we had cold southerly breezes, and a sky so
overcast every day after 10 AM that we could take no Astronomical
observations - Even the latitude was too poor
to be much depended on - $12^{\circ} 53' S$ may have
been a few miles from this -

The cattle rather, a small breed - black & white
in patches, and brown - with humps - give
milk which is duly prized both by the Waiyau - the
s[...]-heep are the large tailed variety and generally
of a black colour - Fowls & pigeons are the
only other domestic animal we saw if we
except the wretched dog which our poodle
had immense delight in chasing.

The Waiyau are far from a handsome race
but they are not the prognathous beings one
sees on the West Coast either - their heads are
of a round shape - compact foreheads but
not particularly receding - The alae nasi are
flattened out - lips full and a small lip ring
just turns them up to give additional thickness
their style of beauty is exactly that which
was in fashion when the stone deities were
made in the caves of Elephanta & Kenora

[0123]

117

near Bombay - a favourite mode of dressing
the hair into little knots which was in fashion
the[...] re is more common in some tribes than
in this - The mouths of the women would not be
so hideous with a small lip ring if they did not
file the teeth to points
[Drawing of four filed teeth.] but they seem strong
and able for the work which falls to their lots.
The men are large strong boned fellows &
capable of enduring great fatigue - They under[-]
-go a rite which once distinguished the Jews
about the age of puberty, and take a new name
on the occasion - This was not introduced
by the Arabs the advent of whom is a recent
event, and they speak of the time before they
were inundated with European manufactures
in exchange for slaves as quite within their
memory -

Young Mataka gave me a dish of peas, and usually
brought something every time he made a visit - Seems
a nice boy and his father in speaking of learning to
read said he & his companions could learn but he
himself was too old: The soil seems very fertile for
the sweet potatoes become very large and we bought
two loads of them for three cubits and two needles -
they quite exceeded 1 cwt - the maize becomes very
large too - One cob had 1600 seeds - the abundance of
water - the richness of soil - the available labour for
building square houses (with which every son of
a somebody requires possession & the rains do not
rea[...]dily wash them down) the coolness of the climate
make this nearly as desirable a residence as
Magomero, but alas instead of three weeks
easy sail up the Zambesi & Shire we have
spent four weary months in getting here - I
shall never cease bitterly to lament the abandon[-]
ment of the Magomero mission - Any other society
would have prized [...]the advantages there with delight
while this O.C.M. affair let them slip through sheer want
of pluck -

[0124]

Moembe
14 to 28
July 1866

Moaning seems a favourite way of spending the time with some sick folk - For the sake of the warmth I allowed a Nassick boy to sleep in my house - He & I had the same complaint dysentery, and I was certainly worse than he but did not moan - while he played at it as often as he was awake - I told him that people moaned only when too ill to be sensible of what they were doing - the groaning ceased though he became worse - Three sepoys played at groaning very vigorously outside my door - they had nothing the matter with them except perhaps fatigue which we all felt alike - As these fellows prevented my sleeping, I told them quite civilly that, if so ill that they required to groan they had better move off a little way as I could not sleep - They preferred the verandah, and at once forbore groaning - An English sailor of the Pioneer moaned lustily when ill - and one morning after he became quite well, on awaking he forgot that he had recovered, and commenced a sonorous groan which ceased on being awaked fairly by the laughter of the spectators in the same boat with him -

The abundance of grain and other food is accompanied by great numbers of rats or large mice which play all manner of pranks by night - and white ants have always to be guarded against - anyone who would find an antidote to drive them away would confer a blessing - the natural check is the driver ant which when it visits a house is a great pest for a time but it clears the other out -

[0125]

[...]

We proposed to start today but Mataka said that he was not ready yet - The flour was yet to grind and he had given us no meat - He had sent plenty of cooked food almost every day - He asked if we would slaughter the ox he would give here or take it on - We preferred to kill it at once - He came on the 28th with a good lot of flour for us and men to guide us to Nyassa - He said that this was Moembe and his district extended all the way to the Lake - He would not send us to Loséwa as that place had lately been plundered and burned - In general the chiefs have shewn an anxiety to promote our safety - The country is a mass of mountains On leaving Mataka's we ascended considerably and about the end of the first days march near Magola's village the Barometer shewed our greatest altitude about 3400 feet above the sea - There were villages of these mountaineers everywhere - The springs were made the most use of that they knew - The damp spots drained and the water given a free channel to & made use of in irrigation further down - most of these springs shewed the presence of iron by the oxide oozing out - A great many patches of peas in full bearing & flower - Trees small and scraggy except in hollows - plenty of grass and flowers near streams and on the heights - the villages often consisted of from 100 to 150 houses many of them square The mountain tops may rise two or three thousand feet above their flanks along which we wind and go perpetually up & down the steep ridges of which the country is but a succession -

One fine straight tall tree in the hollows seemed a species of fig - Its fruit was just forming but it was too high & the tree (Turn over 2 leaves

[0126]

120

(Parenthesis - Geological note - The plateaux on each side of the Rovuma are masses of grey sandstone capped with masses of ferruginous conglomerate apparently an

aqueous deposit - When we ascend the Rovuma about sixty miles a great many pieces & blocks of solidified wood appears on the surface of the soil at the bottom of the slope up the plateaux - this in Africa is a sure indication of the presence of coal beneath but it was not observed cropping out - the plateaux being cut up in various directions by wadys well supplied with grass & trees on deep & somewhat sandy soil - but at the confluence of the Loendi highlands appear in the far distance which are probably continuations of the right bank plateau for in the sands of the Loendi pieces of coal are quite common -

Before reaching the confluence or say about ninety miles from the sea the plateau is succeeded by a more level country having detached granitic masses shot up some 500 or 700 feet - The sandstone of the plateau has at first been hardened then quite metamorphosed into a chocolate coloured schist - then as at Chilole hill we have igneous rocks apparently Trap capped with masses of beautiful white dolomite We still ascend in altitude as we go Westwards and come upon long tracts of Gneiss with hornblende - The gneiss is often striated all the striae looking one way - Sometimes North & South & at other times East & West - these rocks look as if a stratified rock had been nearly melted and the strata fused together by the heat

[0127]

121

From these striated rocks have shot up great rounded masses of granite or syenite whose smooth sides & crowns contain scarcely any trees and are probably from 3000 to 4000 feet above the sea - The elevated plains among these mountain masses shew great patches of ferruginous conglomerate - which when broken look like yellow Haematite with madrepore holes in it - this had made the soil of a red colour - On the Watershed we have still the rounded granitic hills jutting above the plains if such they may be called which are all ups & downs

and furrowed with innumerable running
rills the sources of the Rovuma & Loendi -
The highest rock observed with mica schist
at an altitude of 3440 feet - The same
uneven country prevails as we proceed
from the watershed about forty miles
down to the Lake and along its Eastern
shore we have mica schist & gneiss foliated
with a great deal of hornblende but the most
remarkable feature of it is the rocks are all
tilted on edge or slightly inclined to the Lake
The active agent in effecting this is not
visible - It looks as if a sudden rent had been
made so as to form the Lake and tilt all these
rocks nearly over - On the East side of the
Lower part of the Lake we have two ranges of
mountains evidently granitic - the nearer one
covered with scraggy trees & lower than the other
the other jagged & bare or of the granitic forms
But in all this country no fossil yielding
rock was visible except the grey sandstone
referred to at the beginning of this note -
The rocks are chiefly the old crystalline forms)
end of note -

[0128]

122

28 July
1866

without branches for me to ascertain -
It is called Unguongo - The natives dont eat
the fruit but they eat the large grubs which
come out of the fruit - The leaves were 15
inches long by five broad -

29th

At Magola's village - As we are now rid of the
sepoys we cannot yet congratulate ourselves on
being rid of the lazy habits of lying down in the
path which they introduced - A strong scud
comes up from the South bring[ing] much moisture
with it Temp in mornings 55° It blows so

hard above this may be a storm on the coast -

30th July

a short march brought us to Pezimba's vil.
which consists of 200 houses & huts - It is placed
very nicely on a knoll between two burns
which as usual are made use of for irrigation
& peas in winter time - The headman said that
if we left now we had a good piece of jungle
before us and would sleep twice in it before
reaching Mbanga - We therefore remained
An Arab party hearing of our approach took
a circuitous route among the mountains
to avoid coming in contact with us - In
coming to Pezimba's we had commenced
our Western descent to the Lake for we were
now lower than Magola's by 300 feet - We
crossed many rivulets and the Lochesi a
good sized stream - the watershed parts some
streams for Loendi & some for Rovuma
There is now a decided scantiness of trees
Many of the hill tops are covered with grass
or another plant - there is pleasure now in
seeing them bare Ferns Rhododendrons - & a foliaged tree
which looks in distance like silver fir
The Mandare root is here called Nyumbo
When cooked it has a slight degree of bitterness
with it which cultivation may remove

[0129]

123

Mica schist crowned some of the heights on the water[-]
shed - then gneiss and now as we descend further
we have igneous rocks of more recent eruption
Porphyry & gneiss with hornblende rocks - a
good deal of ferruginous conglomerate with holes
in it covers many spots - When broken it looks
like yellow Haematite with black linings to the holes.
This is probably the ore used in former times
by the smiths of whose existence we now
find still more evidence than further East -

31st
July
1866

I had presented Pezimba with a cloth and he cooked for us handsomely last night and this morning desired us to wait a little as he had not yet sufficient meal made to present - We waited and got a generous present - It was decidedly milder here than at Mataka's and we had a clear sky In our morning's march we passed the last of the population, and went on through a fine well watered fruitful country to sleep ~~by~~ near a mountain called Mtewire by a stream called Msapo - A very large Arab slave party were close by our encampment and I wished to speak to them but as soon as they knew of our being near they set off in a pathless course across country and were six days in the wilderness, we heard this at Cazembes

[1] Aug
1866

We saw the encampment of another Arab party - It consisted of 10 pens each of which from the number of fires it contained may have held from eighty to a hundred slaves - The people of the country magnified the numbers saying that they would reach from this to Mataka's but from all I can learn I think that from 300 to 800 slaves is the commoner gang - this second party went across country very early this morning we saw the fire sticks which the slaves had borne with them - The fear they feel is altogether the effect of the English name

[0130]

124

for we have done nothing to cause their alarm.

2 Aug
1866

Something very cheering to me in the sight at our encampment of yellow grass & trees

dotted over it as in the Bechuana country -
The birds were singing merrily too inspired by the
cold which was 47° & by the vicinity of some
population - Gum copal trees & bushes here as
well as all over the country but gum is never
dug for probably because the trees were never
large enough to yield the fossil gum - Marks of
smiths very abundant - some furnaces still standing
Much cultivation must formerly have been
here where now all is jungle =

We arrived at Mbanga a village embowered
in tree - chiefly of the Euphorbia so common
in the Manganja country further South
Kandulo the headman had gone to drink
beer at another village but sent orders
to give a hut & to cook for us - We remained
next day look Lunars -

We had now passed through at the narrowest
part the hundred miles of depopulated country
of which about seventy are on the N - E - of
Mataka - the native accounts differ as to
the cause - Some say slave wars - and assert
that the Makoa from the vicinity of Mosambique
played an important part in them - others
say famine - others that the people have
moved to & beyond Nyassa - What is certain
is from the potsherds strewed over the country
and the still remaining ridges on which beans
sorghum - maize - cassava - were planted
is that the departed population was prodigious
the Waiau who are now in the country
came from the other side of the Rovuma &
they probably supplanted the Manganja

[0131]

125

an operation which we see going on at the present
day.

4 Aug
1866

An hour & a half brought us Miule a village on
same level with Mbanga and the chief pressing
us to stay on the plea of our sleeping two nights
in the jungle instead of one if we left early
next morning we consented - Asked him what

had become of the very large iron smelting popu[-]
 lation of this region - He said many had died of
 famine - others had fled to the west of Nyassa
 the famine is the usual effect of slave wars and
 much death is thereby caused probably much
 more than by the journey to the coast - We had
 never heard any tradition of stone hatchets having
 been used - nor of stone spear heads or arrow
 heads of that material - He had never heard of
 any being turned up by the women in hoeing
 The Makonde as we saw use wooden spears
 where iron is scarce - I saw wooden hoes used
 for tilling the soil in the Bechuana & Batoka
 countries but never stone ones - In 1841 I saw
 a bushwoman in the Cape Colony with a round
 stone and a hole through it -
 [Drawing of a round stone.] on being asked
 she shewed me how it was used by inserting the
 top of a digging stick into it and digging a root

[Drawing of a stone with a stick through the central hole, possibly being held by a
 person.] - It was to give the stick weight -

The stones still used as anvils and
 smiths when considered from their point of
 view shew sounder sense than if they were ~~to be~~
 burdened with the great weights we use - They are
 unacquainted with the process of case hardening
 which applied to certain parts of our anvils
 gives them their usefulness - and an anvil
 of their soft iron would not do so well as a
 hard stone - It is true a small light one might
 be made but let any one see how the hammers

[0132]

126

of their iron bevel over and round in the
 faces with a little work and he will percieve
 that only a wild freak would induce and
 sensible smith to make a mass equal to
 a sledge hammer & burden himself with
 a weight for what can be better performed
 by a stone - If people are settled as on
 the coast then they gladly use any mass
 of cast iron they may find, but never
 if as in the Interior where they have no certainty
 of remaining any length of time in one spot

5th
Aug.
1866

We left Miule and commenced our march towards Lake Nyassa and slept at the last of the streams that flows to the Liendi In Mataka's vicinity N - E - there is a perfect brush of streams flowing to the river - One forms a Lake in its course - and the sources of the Rovuma lie in the same region - After leaving Mataka's we crossed a good sized one flowing to Liendi and the day after leaving Pezimba's another going to the Chiringa or Lochiringa which goes to the Rovuma - Passed

6th Aug

Passed two cairns this morning at the beginning of the very sensible descent to the Lake - they are very common in all this Southern Africa in the passes of the mountains and all meant to mark divisions of countries perhaps burial places but the Waiyau who accompanied us thought that they were merely heaps of stone collected by someone making a garden - the cairns were placed just about the spot where the blue waters of Nyassa first came fairly into view
We now came upon a stream the

[0133]

127

7th

Misinje flowing into the Lake - We crossed it five times - It was about 20 yards wide & wthhigh deep - We made but short stages where we got on the lower plateau for the people had great abundance of food. and made great presents of it if we

rested - one man gave four fowls - three large
baskets of maize - pumpkins - Elands fat
a fine male as seen by his horns & pressed us
to stay that he might see our curiosities as
well as others - He said that at one days distance
south of him all sorts of animals as buffaloes
eland - Elephants - Hippopotami & antelopes
could be shot.

8th
Aug
1866

We came to the Lake at the confluence of the
Misinje and felt grateful to that hand which had
protected us thus far on our journey - It was
as if I had come back to an old home I never
expected again to see - Pleasant to bathe in the
delicious waters again - Hear the roar of the
sea or dash in the rollers - Temp. 71° at 8 AM
while the air was 65° - I feel quite exhilarated -

The head-man here ^ Mokalaose is a real Manganja & he
and all his people exhibit the greater darkness
of colour consequent on being in a warm
moist climate - He is very friendly - presented
millet porridge - cassava & Hippopotamus
meat boiled - asked if I like milk as he had
some of Mataka's cattle here - People bring
Sanjika - the best Lake fish for sale -they
are dried on stages over slow fires and
lost t[...]-heir fine flavour by it but they are
much prized inland - I bought fifty for a
fathom of calico - When fresh they taste exactly like
the best herrings - i. e. as we think but vo[...]-yagers
and travellers appetites are often so whetted as to be
incapable of giving a true verdict in matter of
taste -

[0134]

128

10 Aug.
1866

I sent Seyed Majids letter up to Jumbe but
the messenger met some coast Arabs at the

Loangwa which may be fiseve n miles from
this - and they came back with him - haggled
a deal about the fare and then went off
saying that they would bring the dhow here
for us - Finding that they did not come I
sent Musa who brought back word that they
had taken the dhow away over to Jumbe at
Kotakota or as they pronounce it Ngotagota -
very few of the coast Arabs can read - In
words they are very polite but truthfulness
seems very little regarded - I am resting myself
and people - working up journal, - Lunars
Alts- but will either move South or go to the
Arabs North soon

Mokalaose's fears of the Waiyau will make
him welcome Jumbe here and then the
Arab will some day have an opportunity
of scattereding his people as he has done those
at Kotakota - He has made Losiwa too
hot for himself - When the people there
were carried off by Mataka's people Jumbe
seized their stores of grain & now has no
port to which he can go there - The Loangwa
Arabs give an awful account of Jumbe's
murders and sellings of people but one
cannot take it all in - At the mildest, it
must have been bad - This is all they
ever do - they cannot form a state
or independent kingdom - slavery & the
slave trade are insuperable obstacles to any
perman[...]-ence inland - slaves can escape
so easily - All therefore that the Arabs
do is to collect as much money
as they can by hook & by crook and then
leave the country.

[0135]

129

We notice a bird called Namtambwe which sings
very nicely with a strong voice after dark here at the
Misinje confluence

11th
August
1866

Two headmen came down country from villages
where we slept bringing us food and asking

how we are treated - They advise our going S.
to Mukate's where Lake is narrow.

12 - 14

Map making - but my energies were sorely taxed by the lazy Sepoys - and I was usually quite tired out at night - some men have come down from Mataka's and report the arrival of an Englishman with cattle for me - "has two eyes behind as well as two in front" this is enough of news for a while.

Mokalaose has his little afflictions and he tells me of them - a wife ran away - asked how many he had - He has twenty in all - I thought he had nineteen t[...]-oo many - He answered with the usual reason "But who would cook for strangers if I had but one"? saw clouds of "Kungu" on the Lake - They are not eaten here - an ungenerous traveller coming here with my statement in his hand and finding the people denying all knowledge of how to catch & cook them might say that I had been romancing in saying I had seen them made into cakes in the Northern part of the Lake - When asking here about them - a stranger said they know how to use them in the North, we do not -

Mokalaose thinks that the Arabs are afraid that I may take their dhows from them and go up to the North - He and the other headmen think that the best way will be to go to Mukate's in the South - All the Arabs flee from me - the English name being in their minds inseparably connected with recapturing slavers - They cannot conceive that I have any other object in view. They cannot read Seyed Majids letter

[0136]

130

21 Aug
1866

started for the Loangwa of the East side of the Lake - Hilly all the way about seven miles Loangwa may be 20 yards wide near its confluence - The Misinje is double that - Each

has accumulated a promontory of deposit
and enters the Lake near its apex - We got
a house from a Waiyau man on a bank
about 40 feet above the level of Nyassa

21 Aug

could not sleep for the manoeuvres of a
crowd of the minute ants which infested it
They chirrup distinctly - they would not allow
the men to sleep either though all were pretty

22^d

ti[red by the rough road up - We removed to
the South side of the Loangwa where there are
none of these little pests -

23 Aug

Proposed to the Waiyau headman to send
a canoe over to call Jumbe as I did not
believe in the assertions of the half caste
Arab here that he had sent for his - All the
Waiyau had helped me and why not he
He was pleased with this but advised
waiting till a man sent to Losewa should
return

24th

A leopard took a dog out of a house next to ours
He had bitten a man before but not mortally

Engaged in writing the following Despatch
part of which was written down country
I am very anxious not to appear as if
reflecting on others as Col - Pelly and often
altered in order to make it mild but it is
his policy that has allowed the Zanzibar
slave trade to go on -

29th

News come that the two dhows have
come over to Losewa Loséfa - Mazitu chased
Jumbe up the Hills - Had they said on
to an island I might have believed
them

[0137]

Copy - East Africa Lat. 11 ° 18' South
Political Long. 37 10' East - 11th June
slave trade 1866
N^o 1

The Right Honourable
The Earl of Clarendon
My Lord

Having been specially
instructed "to confine one series of Reports to
Geographical subjects and matters connected
with them; and to make distinct and separate
reports to you upon political subjects and on the
slave trade" I accordingly devoted part of the
time of my detention at the Island of Zanzibar
to a careful and earnest study of our political
relations with the Sultan; and to a minute
investigation of the causes which have prevented
those parts of Eastern Africa subject to Arab
influences from reaping the same advantages
by the policy of H. M. Government against
the slave trade which have been realized in
large portions of Western Africa inhabited by
less promising races of people.

The subject seemed of the more importance
inasmuch as the Island of Zanzibar is now
about the only place in the world where from
one to three hundred slaves are daily exposed for
sale in open market - This disgraceful scene
I several times personally witnessed = And
on the adjacent seas, the slave trade which
everywhere else is declared to be a grievous
offence against public law, is by treaty
allowed to be a legal traffic -

But I could not bring my mind to a hasty
condemnation of a policy which emanated
from officers eminent for the zeal and
ability with which they have long & earnestly
laboured to promote the welfare of both oppressors

and oppressed

[0138]

132

Despatch
11th June
& 20th
August
1866

and it was only after pondering deeply on the sad facts revealed at Zanzibar - and on the still more sorrowful scenes which now at the source of the slave trade meet the eye that I felt forced to express my overpowering conviction that, out policy on the East Coast requires reconsideration -

Whatever the motive for legalising the slave trade on the seas adjacent to Zanzibar may have been, the actual purchasers before my eyes were Northern Arabs & Persians whose dhows lay anchored in the harbour, or beached for repairs in the creek; and on the strength of the exception in our treaty, virtually made in their favour, these men were daily at their occupation - examining the teeth limbs and gait of the slaves that were to form their cargoes as openly as horse dealers engage in their business in England

These preparations were of peculiar significance because made during certain months in which by the Sultan's prohibition no slaves may be carried Coast wise - and this prohibition applies only, but precisely, to those months when the Northerly Monsoon blows so strongly that, as a rule, no dhows can proceed to the North. When however the Monsoon changes and Southerly winds blow, the preparations will all be completed - the prohibition will no longer be in force - and the late busy frequenters of the Zanzibar slave market may even obtain the Sultans legal pass, which will screen their slave cargoes as far North as Lamoo on their way home[-] wards to the Red Sea and Persian Gulph

Despatch

[11] June

[20] Aug.

[1]866

The reasons assigned for the continuance of this very unsatisfactory state of affairs derive their force and speciousness partly from political considerations, and partly from forebodings of the evils of change, though that change might be for the better - A bright hope too that, by the slow and steady influence of trade and imported civilization, the Arabs may be led to change their ways, giulds the whole subject -

Among the political considerations are specified - that the Northern Arab slave traders are lawless pirates whom the Sultan, however willing, cannot coerce - His power on the island of Zanzibar is very limited - and on the Coast line of the adjacent [...]Continent, he possesses but a mere shadow of power In fact to the Arabs he represents that leader only, who first guided them down the East Coast for conquest - They acknowledge him as their chief (Syed) but not their Sultan - and since the present occupant of the chieftainship has been separated from those possessions in Asia whence his father the old Imaum of Muscat drew all his military power, [...]Syed Majid the son, can muster no force to controul either the Zanzibar or the Northern Arab slave traders - His utter powerlessness to withstand the slaving propensities of the Northern pirates & kidnappers who annually infest his island and seas, has been thus forcibly, though hypothetically expressed - Should the Sultan attempt the abolition of the slave trade in his dominions so intimately linked is that traffic with the whole system of slavery in which he is placed, the proclamation would ensure a revolution his own expulsion, or even death-

In judging of the weight due to these and similar ~~considerations~~ assertions, it must never be left out of view ^ for a moment Syed Majid is the creature of English power alone -

Despatch
 11 June
 20 Aug
 1866

When his elder brother, the present Imaum of Muscat was on the point of asserting his right of primogeniture, and by means of the military force he inherited in Arabia, taking possession of his all the dominions of his deceased father, we interfered, and by our arms gave effect to a will which appoitioned Zanzibar to the younger brother, and confined the elder to Muscat - and it is by the continued influence of English power that Syed Majid retains his place - He resembles one of the Indian protected princes, but destitute of any organized force by land or sea, which his Political Resident might wield for his or his subjects benefit -

>Our Treaty with the Sultan's father furnishes a more important consideration than anything else - This Treaty allowed the slave trade to be carried on within certain specified limits, and for the avowed object of permitting supplies of labour to be carried to the more Southerly territories of the late Imaum this concession of a limited slave trade, was no doubt made in the hope that at some no very distant date the way would be paved for the complete cessation of the trade in slaves - It certainly never was contemplated by either of the contracting parties that a special stipulation for a small & well defined permission of the traffic should be made, as now it is made, the means of erecting the island of Zanzibar into a great slave emporium - and extending the ocean slave trade to the Red Sea and Persian Gulph - an argument based on entirely unknown data - that if the islands of Zanzibar and Pemba were

[D]espatch

[11] June

[20] Aug

[18]66

not supplied with a continuous stream of slaves from the mainland they would soon become depopulated seems to have been entirely an afterthought - The open sale and annual export from both these islands shew but small concern for the permanence of the population - still though our object in the treaty has been perverted and we have been practically overreached, treaty obligations ought to be respected till that alteration is made in the stipulations which the present aspect of the ocean slave trade throughout the world demands -

That His Highness the Sultan has not been pressed with greater emphasis to make an alteration in the Treaty of his late father which would render the trade in slaves by sea everywhere illegal, has been owing of late years, to a very curious anxiety not to interfere with what is called "the status of slavery in the island of Zanzibar." Recognising to the utmost extent that common sense will allow, the broad principle that however much we may detest slavery, we have no right to meddle with the internal policy and domestic institutions of other nations, it is yet quite clear that if we over strain this principle we must desist from all our noble efforts on the Coast of Africa lest we should interfere with the status of slavery in Cuba and elsewhere - Anxiety to preserve the status of slavery in the island of Zanzibar intact, at the expense even of rendering the efforts of our cruizers to suppress the traffic unavailing - and of leaving out of view the enormous inland slave trade, which is fast depopulating large districts of the adjacent continent is so remarkable in Englishmen who cannot be conceived as nursing a delicate sensibility to the rights of the wrongdoers

[0142]

Despatch
11 June
20 Aug
1866

and a total insensibility to the woes of their victims that it will be worth while to examine certain forebodings which have been made to serve as arguments for the continuance of the present system -

It has been alledged that if we should with the Zanzibar slave trade interfere ^so as to stop the stream of slaves that annually flows to the island, but ultimately goes on to the Red Sea and Persian Gulph, we shall risk the expulsion of "a king - the utter depreciation of existing property - social confusion - the slaves themselves might become foodless - landless - hutless - No one can concieve the ruin that would ensue when the island is tramped by a hundred thousand discarded slaves" -

These sombre anticipations were the result of viewing the helplessness of the Sultan without police - without land or sea forces - and in the midst of large numbers of Northern Arabs infuriated by the capture of their vessels - but let us calmly view the subject of stopping the eternal slave trade in connection with what is universally admitted to be the normal condition of slavery among the Arabs - It is of the mildest possible form - The master lives with his slaves as the father of a family - He dislikes toil and is too indolent to force others to work for more than the mere necessities of life - This indolence is frankly avowed at Zanzibar - and as the Arabs there form no exception to the generality of Arabian slave holders, it does not appear very obvious why the mere cessation of large additions to the existing number of slaves should

[0143]

Despatch

produce the frightful convulsions predicted - The abolition of the eternal slave trade would leave the relationship of master and slave exactly as it is at present? with the exception that the slave would be of increased value, and therefore less likely to be discarded than before -

But there is a sort of charm in the prospect of gradual amelioration of the state of slavery by the steady advance of trade and civilization yet all experience proves the prospect to be delusive - It is in the Patriarchal state alone that slavery is endurable - So long as that state continues there is but little disparity between master and man - Each enjoys the general indolence - but let society advance - artificial wants increase - and luxuries become necessities - the distance between owner and slave becomes proportionably widened - In fact just as the love of gain is developed in the master, the lot of the slave becomes the harder, for as soon as labour becomes compulsory & for the sole profit of the master, the interests of owner and slave diverge: and this divergence increases with every advance in trade, civilization, and luxury - The frightful evils of American slavery arose, not because our cousins ~~were~~ had less humanity than Arabs, but because the divergence mentioned had become excessive - to anticipate therefore a gradual change to freedom by the influence of trade and civilization is to expect improvement though all experience shews that the lot of slaves does not improve with the advance of the masters - and to look for a gradual reformation of society where the tendency is to become congealed in oppression, is to hope for a gradual growth of fitness for freedom under a system

[0144]

Despatch
11th June
& 20
Aug
1866

whose curse is to unfit for a better, and
towards that point where change by violent
convulsion becomes inevitable -

Another of those gloomy forebodings which
have formed a sort of setting round the argument
for the continuance of the Zanzibar slave trade
is, that the stoppage of the present system
would have the evil result of locating a
a series of Arab colonies on the East
Coast in which slavery would be as rife
as ever - and where slaves would be more
plentiful and cheaper than at Zanzibar
where also they could carry on the slave
trade more easily than they do at present
and quite beyond any efficient controul -
This theory, thought unquestionably advanced
in all sincerity, is purely imaginary
and founded on a misapprehension of
what is essential to the existence of a slave
trading colony on the Coast of Africa - An
island or spot with a natural barrier
that can be easily gaurded is quite indispensible
for the safety of slave property - Neither
Mosambique nor Zanzibar could ever
have been Slave Emporia but for their
insular situation - the very existence of
many Portuguese settlements depended on
the regular payment of native chiefs to
catch their runaway slaves - Kilwa &
Mombas might become slave trading colonies
in the sense intended, but so such settle-
ment could be formed in the Interior
The ease with which slaves can escape
in their own country forms an effectual
barrier to the erection of any important
slave state by Arabs or by any one else

[0145]
139

Continuation of Despatch Lake Nyassa
20 August
1866
My Lord

I find it quite impossible to transmit any letters to the Sea Coast- I have nearly met seven slave traders on their way from this district to Kilwa but all, save one, took to their heels as soon as they heard that the English were coming, and scoured across the country in the pathless forests - The man we met was just on the point of entering a tract of very fine well watered country, which took us eight days hard marching to cross - We were nearly famished - In the last two days I had made forced marches in order to buy food and send it back to the men, most of whom were unable to keep up with four who bore me company, and this Arab met & presented an ox & bag of flour - He could not wait till I had written - I guessed the number of slaves he had at eight hundred - the number of under traders seemed between forty & fifty - The other caravans did not give me a chance of estimating their numbers - The depopulated country was about one hundred miles broad and so broad there was no possibility of going round either end - It bore all the marks of having been densely peopled at some former period - The ridges on which the natives plant grain and beans were everywhere visible, and from the numbers of calcined clay pipes - used in furnaces - it is evident that they worked extensively in iron - The country was very beautiful - mountainous - well wooded and watered - I counted in one days march fifteen running burns though it was the dry season, and some were from four to ten yards broad - The sound of gushing water though not associated in our minds with Africa became quite familiar - It

[0146]

140

Despatch

was too cold to bathe in with pleasure
The elevation being between 2000 & 3000 feet
above the sea -

The process of depopulation to which I have
adverted in the first part of this Despatch goes on
annually - The Coast Arabs from Kilwa come
with plenty of ammunition and calico to the

tribe called Waiyau or Ajawa and say that they want slaves - Marauding parties immediately start off to the Manganja or Wa[...]-nyassa villages and having plenty of powder & guns overpower and bring back the chief portion of the inhabitants those who escape usually die of starvation - This process is identical with that of which we formerly saw so much in the hands of the Portuguese in the Shire valley - I cannot write about it without a painful apprehension that to persons at a distance I must appear guilty of exaggeration - But I beg your Lordship to remember that whenever my statements have been tested on the spot they have been found within and not beyond the truth - Even the grand Victoria falls were put down at less than half their size - It was ignorance of this gigantic evil, while I was familiar only with the wild industrious tribes of the great Interior, that led me formerly to believe that much might be made of their labour - I still believe in their capabilities, but this useful system that flourishes chiefly within three hundred miles of the Coast must be first put down -

The perpetrators of the great annual mischief would themselves be shocked were the guilt not subdivided - the Kilwa and Zanzibar slave traders do not personally make forays - These are the

[0147]

work of the Waiyau or Waiau known in the Shire valley as Ajawa - Those who perish by starvation after a foray, are probably never seen by the marauders after their flight from their villages - Then those who die on their way to the Coast do so piecemeal - The only victims which might disturb the Arab conscience are those who are tied to trees and allowed to perish - We saw three adult bodies fastened by the ne[...]-ck to trees and their hands secured - It was declared by all the country people, that the Arabs when vexed at losing their money by a slave being able no longer to march vent their spleen in this inhuman way - but it is probably only the work of those vile half castes that swarm about every caravan -

I took occasion to explain to the different chiefs that those who sold their people participated in the guilt of the deaths, evidence of which we had seen strewed along the way to the Coast - It always caused evident alarm, and especially when it was asserted, that in selling their people they were as guilty before Him who saw the whole from the bargain to the ensuing death, as if they had held the victim while the Arab cut his throat - Their uneasy excuses were somewhat those of children - "If so & so gives up selling so will we" "He is the greatest offender in the country" "It is the fault of the Arabs who tempt us with fine clothes powder and guns -" "I would fain keep all my people to cultivate more land, but my next neighbour allows his people to kidnap mine and I must have ammunition to defend them" &c &c

I would therefore earnestly recommend that His Highness the Sultan be pressed so as to alter the Treaty with his late Father as to cancel our permission of a limited

[0148]

142

Despatch

slave trade - It puts us in a false position - and unless all bona fide slavers are to be legal captures wherever found at sea, the evils touched on above will still go on unchecked -

The alteration will require to be pressed with emphasis - The Sultan will generally be found bland - compliant, and apparently devoid of energy, but let the status of Zanzibar as a slave Emporium be touched in the remotest degree, and he will at once shew decision and even obstinacy - He may talk in a maundering way about "cutting off his right hand" - or "taking half of his dominions, but the most indirect interference with the island being continued as a great slave mart at once evokes strenuous opposition from his counsellors and himself - Like all Orientals they give us no credit in our policy but that of pursuing our

own self interests -

This alteration cannot fairly be called injurious to the status of slavery on the island of Zanzibar - It is a sheer absurdity to imagine that the reigning family imports three thousand slaves annually for domestic purposes - and that the inhabitants generally import twelve thousand for similar purposes - They are all intended for exportation to the North - and the Coast towns - Kilwa - Mombas &c receive far more slaves from the Interior than they ever make use of for cultivation -

To render the measure I have ventured to propose efficient, an English man of war should always be present in the harbour of Zanzibar during the visits of the Northern Arabs; and during the months

[0149]

143

Despatch

When the dhows are known to our slaves the force usually stationed on their route should have a depot in their vicinity, so that after a single capture the cruiser may not, as usually happens, be obliged to retire & land the slaves at the most important crisis for action -

The lack of information as to the benefits which have been the result of the repressive measures of H M G^t has often struck me in conversing with the officers of our cruisers - If an Epitome of the advantages which have accrued to lawful trade of the West Coast - the entire suppression the comparative smallness of the present export of slaves of Piracy there ^establishment missions & schools at various points on the seaboard, and [...]the prevention of wars inland - say, such information as is contained in Lord Russell's Despatch to the French Government which led to the abolition of the Engagé system, and also in the Report of Colonel Ord, were put into the hands of officers about to proceed to either East or West Coast, we should not hear the ignorant doubts we have been pained to hear - Another suggestion as to the time

which might be counted as service, would
with increased information proposed
greatly increase to Zeal of all the officers
employed, and being the result of much thought
and a great deal of intercourse, may, should
it please your Lordship, be submitted to the
Lords of Admiralty
I have the honour to be
My Lord
Your most obedient Servant
David Livingstone
H. M. Consul -
Inner Africa

[0150]

144

[0151]

145

[0152]

146

[0153]

147

Continuation of Journal 30 August 1866

The fear which the English have inspired into the
Arab slave traders is rather inconvenient - all flee
from me as if I had the plague and I cannot
in consequence, transmit letters to the coast or
get across the Lake - they seem to think that if
I get into a dhow I will be sure to burn it -
As the two dhows on the Lake are used for
nothing else but the slave trade their owners have
no hope of my allowing them to escape - so after
we have listened to various lies as excuses
we resolve to go southwards and cross at the
point of departure of the Shire from the Lake -
I took Lunars several times on both sides of the moon

and have written a despatch for Lord Clarendon -
besides a number of private letters

3 Sept
1866

Went down to confluence of the Misinge
came to many of the eatable insect "Kungu"
they are caught by a quick motion of the hand holding
a basket - We got a cake of these same insects
further down - they made a buzz like a swarm
of bees and are probably the perfect state of some
Lake insect

[Drawing of the insect.] this is about their size - two
wings and no proboscis like the Mosquito -

Observed two beaches of the Lake - one about
fifteen feet above the present high water mark
and the other about forty above that but
between the two the process of disintegration
by splitting of the boulders common by the
colds & heats of this country have gone on
so much that seldom is a well rounded
smoothed one seen - the lower one is
very well marked

The strike of a large mass of foliated
gneiss is parallel with the major axis
of the Lake and all are tilted on
edge - some are a little inclined to the Lake

[0154]

148

as if dipping to it Westwards but others are
as much inclined the opposite way or
twisted

Made very good blue ink from the
juice of a berry - the fruit of a creeper
which is the colour of port wine when
expressed - A little Ferri. carb. ammon.
add to this is all that is required -

4th
Sept
1866

The Sepoys introduced the practice of remaining behind till sent for - This has been followed by the Nassick boys when they have been offended or sulked in any way - one - Andrew sulked because he got a blanket & bag only a few pounds more to his load than he liked ^ as it was a second offence - gave him twelve cuts with a ratan and told him that he might leave us and go to his own people as he had come to do but if he remained he must do what he was told - He preferred to go and I was glad to get rid of him - Mataka's place has great attractions for them as they got plenty to eat there & had nothing to do - It is questionable if slave boys however educated will ever except in rare exceptions go to a tribe and work as missionaries for the good of that tribe - They cling for support to their liberators - they might be useful as assistants to a mission but only if held with a tight rein - The Nassick boys seem to have been nurtured with the idea of the very great value of their labour as smiths - carpenters - shoemakers but none save the carpenters can be of any use in this country - Of agriculture they know nothing

[0155]

149

The Poodle dog chitane is rapidly changing the colour of its hair - all the parts corresponding to the ribs and neck are rapidly becoming red the majority of country dogs are of this colour -

The Manganja or Wany-assa are an aboriginal race - have great masses of hair and but little if any of the prognathous in the profile - bodies and limbs very well made and countenance of men often very pleasant - Women very plain & lumpy but very industrious in their gardens from early morning till about 11 AM then from 3 PM till dark or pounding corn & grinding it the men making twine or nets by day & at their fisheries in the evenings and nights - They build the huts the women plaister them -

A black fish the Nsaka makes a hole

with raised edges - which with the depth
from which they are taken is from 15 to 18
inches and from 2 to 3 feet broad - It is
called by the natives their house - The pair
live in it for some time or until the
female becomes large for spawning - This
operation over the house is left.

Gave Mokalaose some pumpkin seed
and peas - He took me into his house
and gave a quantity of beer - I drank a
little and seeing me desist from taking
more he asked if I wished a servant
girl to "pata mimba" not knowing
what was meant I offend the girl
the calabash of beer & told her to drink
but this was not the intention - He asked
if I did not wish more - took the vessel
and as he drank the girl performed
the operation on himself - Placing herself

[0156]

150

in front she put both hands round his
waist below the short ribs & pressing gradually
drew them round to his belly in front - He
took several prolonged draughts and at each
she repeated the operation as if to make
the liquor go eq[ua]lly over the stomach
Our toppers dont seem to have discovered
the need for this -

5th
Sept
1866

March along the shore to Ngombo promontory
which approaches so near to Senga or
Tsenga opposite as to narrow the Lake
to some 16 to 18 miles - It is
a low sandy point - the edge fringed on
the North West & part of the South with
a belt of Papyrus & reeds - the central parts
wooded - Part of the south side has
high sandy dunes blown up by the
South wind which strikes it at right angles

6th

then - one was blowing as we marched along the Southern side Eastwards and was very tiresome - We reached Panthinda's village by a brook called Lilole - Another we crossed before coming to it named Libesa - These brooks form the favourite spawning grounds of the Sanjika & Mpsa two of the best fishes of the Lake - The Sanjika is very like our herring in shape and taste & size; the Mpsa larger every way - They live on green herbage found at the bottom of the Lake & rivers.

7th

Chiramba's village being on the South side of a long lagoon we preferred sleeping on the mainland though they offered their cranky canoes to ferry us over - the Lagoon is called Pansangwa

[0157]

151

8th
Sept
1866

In coming along the Southern side of Ngombo promontory we look Eastwards but when we leave it we turn Southwards having a double range of lofty mountains on our left - These are granitic in form the nearer range being generally the lowest and covered with scraggy trees - The second or more Easterly being some 6000 feet above the sea - bare and rugged with jagged peaks shot high into the air - This is probably the newest range - The oldest people have felt no earthquake but some say that they have heard of such from their elders

We passed very many sites of old villages which are easily known by the tree Euphorbias planted round - another tree an Umbelliferous one

and the sacred fig - one species here throws
 out strong buttresses instead of roots from branches
 in the manner of some mangroves - These
 with millstones - stones for holding the pots in
 cooking and upraised clay benches which have
 been turned into brick by fire in the destruction
 of the huts, shew what were once the "pleasant
 haunts of men" The ridges & broken pots shew
 where cultivation was carried on - but no stone
 implements ever appear - This is remarkable
 since the eyes must in walking be almost
 always directed to the ground to avoid
 stumbling on stones or stumps - In some
 parts of the world stone implements are so
 common they seem to have often been made
 and discarded as soon as formed possibly
 by getting better tools - if indeed - The manufacture
 is not as modern as that found by M^r
 Waller - Passing in the city some men
 digging for the foundation of a house he
 observed a very antique looking vase
 wet from the clay standing on the bank -
 He gave a sovereign for it and having

[0158]

152

8th
 Sept
 1866

to pass that way next day saw another placed
 quite as invitingly & wet with clay on the sam[e]
 spot!

Here the destruction is quite recent & by
 some who entertained us very hospitably on
 the Misinje before we came to the confluence
 the woman chief Ulayelenge or Njelenje bore a part in
 it for the supply of Arab caravans - It was
 the work of the Masininga a Waiya tribe
 of which her people form a part - They
 nearly quite depopulated the broad fertile
 tract of some three or four miles between
 the mountain range & the Lake along
 which our course lay - It was wearisome
 to see the skulls and bones scattered about
 everywhere - one would fain not notice

them but they are so striking as one trudges
along the sultry path - eyes down - that
it cannot be avoided -

9th
Sept
1866

We spent Sunday at Kandango's village
the men killed a Hippopotamus when
it was sleeping on the shore - a full
grown female ten feet nine inches from
snout to insertion of tail - and four feet
inches high at withers - The bottom
here and all along Southwards now is
muddy - Many of the glanis siluris
are caught equal in length to eleven or
twelve Pound Salmon - but a great
portion is head - slowly roasted on
a stick stuck in the ground before the
fire they seemed to me much more
savoury than I ever tasted them before
With the mud we have many shells-
North of Ngombo scarcely a shell
can be seen and there it is sandy
or rocky

[0159]

153

10th
Sept
1866

In marching Southwards we came close to the
range then found the Lake close to that but we
could not note the bays which it forms - crossed
two mountain torrents from 60 to 80 yards broad
and now only ankle deep - In flood they bring
down enormous trees which are much
battered and bruized among the rocks in their
course - They spread over the plain too and
would render travelling here in the rains
impracticable After spending the night at a
very civil headman's - chefu - we crossed the

11th

Lotende another of these torrents - - Each very
lofty mass in the range seemed to give rise to
a torrent - Nothing of interest occurred as
we trudged along - a very poor headman
Pamawawa present a roll of salt instead
of food - This was grateful to us as we
have been without that luxury some time -

12

Crossed the Rivulet Nguena and then
went on to another with a large village by it
It is called Pantoza Pangone. The headman
had been suffering from sore eyes for four
months and pressed me to stop and give
him medicine - Whi[...]ch I did -

13th

crossed a strong brook called Nkore - My
object in mentioning the brooks which were
flowing as this which is near the end of the dry
season is to give an idea of the sources of
supply of evaporation - The men enumerate
the following North of the Misinje - those which
are less are mark - those which are greater +

1

Misinje 20 yards wide and thigh deep up country -
near Lake 40 yards and crossed by a canoe

2

- Loangwa 3 - Leséfa 4 - Lelula 5 - Nchamanje 6

7

+ Musumba 8 - Fubwe 9 - Chia 10 + [...]Kisanga 11.

12

- Bweka + 13 Chifumoro (has canoes on it)

-

14

Loangwa - 15 Mko 16 Magwelo at N. end of
Lake

[0160]

154

13 Sept

1866

These twenty or twenty four perennial
brooks and torrents give a good supply of
water in the dry season - In the wet
season they are supplemented by a number
of burns which though flowing now have
their mouths blocked up with bars of
sand and give nothing except by percolation
the Lake rises at least four feet perpendicu[-]
-larly in the ~~dry~~ [...]wet season and has enough
during the year from these perennial
brooks to supply the Shire's continual flow.

13th

In the course of this days march we
were pushed close to the Lake by Mount Gome
and being now within three miles of the
end of the Lake could see the whole plainly
there we first saw the Shire emerge & there
we first gazed on the broad waters of
Nyassa - Many hopes have been
disappointed here - far down on the

right bank of the Zambesi lies the dust
of her whose death changed all my
future prospects, and here instead of
a check being given to the slave trade
by lawful commerce on the Lake,
slave dhows prosper - an Arab slave
party fled on hearing of us yesterday:
It is impossible not to regret the
loss of good bishop Mackenzie who
sleeps far down the Shire and with him
all hope of the gospel being, introduced
into central Africa - the silly abandon-
-ment of all the advantages of the Shire
route by the bishops successor, I
shall ever bitterly deplore - no other
society would have acted so blindly
to obvious facilities, but all will
come right some day, though I may

[0161]

155

not live to participate in the joy - or even
see the commencement of better times -

In the evening we reached the village of Chere-
-kalongwa on the brook Pamchololo, and was very
jovially recieved by the headman with beer -
He says that Mukate - Kabinga - & Mponde alone
supply the slave traders now ^ by raid on Manganja - but they go S.W.
to the Maravi who impoverished by a Mazitu
raid sell each other as well -

14th

Sept

1866

At Cherekalongwa's who has a skin disease
believed by him to have been derived from eating
fresh water turtles we were requested to remain
one day in order that he might see us - he had heard
much about us - had been down Shire and as
far as Mosambique but never had an Englishman
in his town before - as the heat is great now we
were glad of the rest and beer with which he very
freely supplied us

Saw skin of a "phenembe" a species of Lizard
which devours chickens - here it is named "Sakata"
It had been flayed by a cut up the back body 12 inches

across the belly 10 inches –

After nearly giving up the search for D^r Roschers point of reaching the Lake because no one either Arab or native had the least idea of either "Nusseewa" or "Makawa" I discovered it in Leséfa. The accentuated é being sounded as our e in set - This word would puzzle a German philologist as being the origin of "Nussewa" But the Waiyau pronounce it Loséwa the Arabs Lusséwa - and Roschers servant transformed the L and é into N and ee - hence Nusseewa - In confirmation of this rivulet Leséfa which is opposite Kotakota or as the Arabs pronounce it Nkotakota the chief is Mangkaka("Makawa") or as there is a confusion of names as to

[0162]

156

14 Sept
1866

chief it may be Mataka whose town and district is called Moembe - the town Pamoembe = "Mamemba" - Kingomango I could not recognize but rest content with so far verify the place to which he arrived two months after we had discovered Lake Nyassa - He deserved all the credit due to finding the way thither, but he travelled as an Arab and no one suspected him to be anything else - our visits have been known far and wide and great curiosity excited - but his merits the praise only of preserving his incognito at a distance from Kilwa & is perhaps the only case of successfully assuming the Arab guise known - Burckhart is the exception - When M^r Palgrave came to Muscat or a town in Oman where our Political agent M^r Desborough was stationed he was introduced to that functionary by an interpreter as Hajee Ali &c - M^r Desborough replied "you are no Hajee Ali nor anything else but Clifford Palgrave with whom I was school fellow at the charter house" M^r Desborough said he knew him at once

from a peculiar way of holding his head -
and Palgrave begged him not to disclose his
real character to his interpreter on whom
and some others he had been imposing
I was told this by M^r Dawes a Lieut^t in the
Indian Navy who accompanied Colonel
Pelly in his visit to the Nejed - Riad &c
and took observations for him.

[0163]

157

14th
Sept.
1866

Tañgare - the name of a rather handsome bean
which possesses intoxicating qualities - to
extract this it is boiled then peeled & new water
supplied - after a second, and third boiling,
it is pounded, and the meal taken to the river,
and the water allowed to percolate through it
several times - twice cooking leaves the
intoxicating quality, but if eaten then it does
not cause death - It is curious that the natives

do

not use it expressly to produce intoxication
When planted near a tree it grows all over it
and yields abundantly - the skin of the pod is
velvety like our broad beans.

Another bean with a pretty white mark on
it grows easily & is easily cooked & good
It is here called Gwiñgwiza

[1]5 Sept
1866

We were now a short distance south of the
Lake and might have gone West to Mosauka's
called by some Pasauka's to cross the Shire there, but
thought that my visit to Mukate's - a Waiyau

chief still further south might do good - He -
Mponda and Kabinga are the only three chiefs who
still carry on raids against the Manganja at the
instigation of the coast Arabs, and they are now
sending periodical marauding parties to the
Maravi (here named Malola) to supply the
Kilwa slave traders - We marched three hours South[-]
wards then up the hills of the range which flanks
all the lower parts of the Lake. The altitude of the
town is almost 800 feet above the Lake - The
population by the chief is large and all the heights
as far as the eye can reach are crowned with
villages - The second range lies a few miles
off and is covered with trees as well as the
first - the nearest high mass is Mañgoche

[0164]
158

15th
Sept
1866

The people live in plenty - All the chiefs visited
by the Arabs have good substantial square houses
built for their accommodation - He (Makate)
never saw a European before - and everything
about us is an immense curiosity to him &
to his people - We had long visits from him
He tries to extract a laugh out of every remark -
He is darker than the generality of Waiyau -
has a full beard trained on [...]the chin as all
the people hereabouts do - Arab fashion -
the courts of his women cover a large
space - our house being on one side of them
I tried to go out that way but wandered
the ladies sent a servant to conduct me
out in the direction I wished to go, and
we found egress by going through some
huts with two doors in them.

16th

At Mukaté's - The prayer book does
not give ignorant persons any idea of

an unseen Being addressed - It looks more
like reading or speaking to the book -
Kneeling and praying with eyes shut is
better than our usual way of holding
Divine Service -

We had a long discussion about the slave
trade - the Arabs have told him that our
object in capturing slavers is to get them
into our own possession, and make them
of our own religion - The evils which we
have seen the skulls - the ruined villages -
the numbers who perish on the way to the
coast and on the sea - the wholesale
murders committed by Waiyau to build
up Arab villages elsewhere - these Mukate
often tried to turn off with a laugh but
our remarks are safely lodged in many
heards -. next day as we went along

[0165]

159

16
Sept
1866

our guide spontaneously delivered their substance
to the different villages along our route - Before
we reached him a headman in convoying me
a mile or two whispered to me "speak to Mukate
to give his forays up" It is but little we can
do but we lodge a protest against a vile system
in the heart, and time may ripen it - Their
great argument is "What could we do without
Arab cloth?" The answer "Do what you did
before they came into the country" - At the
present rate of destruction of population the
whole country will soon be a desert"

An Earthquake happened here last
year - that is about the end of last year or begin[-]
-ning of this - They count five months to a year
the crater on the Grand Comoro island smoked
for three months about that time - It shook
all the houses and everything but they observed
no other effects - no hot springs known
here -

[1]7th
Sept
1866

Marched down from Mukate's and to about the middle of Lakelet Pamalombe - Mukate had no people with canoes nearer the usual crossing place and he sent a messenger to see that we were fairly served - Here we got the Manganja headman to confess that an Earthquake had happened - all the others we have enquired at have denied it - Why I cannot concieve - The old men said that they had felt Earthquakes twice - once near sunset and the next time at night - They shook everything and were accompanied with noise - and all the fowls cackled - no effect on the Lake observed - they profess ignorance of any tradition of the water having stood higher Their traditions say that they came originally from the West or

[0166]

160

17th
Sept
1866

or West Nor West which they call "Maravi" that their forefathers taught them to make nets & kill fish. No trace of any teaching by a higher instructor - have no carvings or writings on the rocks - and never heard of a book until we came among them - Their forefathers never told them that after or at death they went to God but they had heard it said of such a one who died "God took him" -

18th

We embarked the whole party in eight canoes went up the Lake to the point of junction between it & the prolongation of Nyassa above it - called Massangano - meetings - which took us two hours - A fishing party there fled on seeing us though we shouted that we were a travelling party (or Loendo) - Mukates people here left us and I walked up to the village of the fugitives with one attendant only - The suspicious of the villagers w[ere] so thoroughly aroused that they would do nothing - The headman Pima was said to be absent - They could not lend us a hut but desired us to go on to Mponda's - We put up a shed for ourselves, and next morning though we pressed them for a guide no one would come -

From Puma's village we had a fine view of Pamalombe - The range of hills on its West[ern] edge - the range which flanks the lower parts of Nyassa on part of which Mukate lives the gap of low land South of it behind which Shirwa Lake lies - And Chikala & Zomba nearly due South from us -. People say hippopotami come from one Lake into the other - A great deal of vegetation in Pamalombe - gigantic rushes -

[0167]

161

Duckweed - and great quantities of aquatic plants on bottom - one shiny translucent plant is washed ashore in abundance - fish become very fat on these plants - one called "Kadiakola" I eat much has a good mass of flesh & on it

It is probable that the people of Tanganyika Nyassa - Shire and Zambesi are all of one stock the dialects vary very little - Take observations on this point. An Arab slave party hearing of us decamped.

19th

Sept

1866

When we proceeded a mile this morning we came to three or four hundred people making salt on a plain impregnated with it - They

livivate the soil and boil the water which
 has filtered through a bunch of grass in a hole
 on the bottom of a pot, till all is evaporated
 and a mass of salt left - We held along the
 plain till we came to Mponda's a large
 village on ^ the plain with a stream running
 past - The plain at the village is very fertile
 and has many large trees on it - The cattle of
 Mponda are like fatted Madagascar beasts
 the hump seems as if it would weigh 100 lbs
 the size of body is so enormous that their
 legs as remarked by our men seemed very
 small - Mel Mponda is a blustering sort
 of person but immensely interested in
 everything European - He says that he
 would like to go with me - "would not care
 though he were away ten years - He may
 die on the journey - He will die here as
 well as there but he will see all the wonderful
 things of our country" He knew me having
 come to the boat and ^ had taken a look incognito -

We found an Arab slave party here - and
 went to look at the slaves - When going Mponda
 was alarmed lest we should proceed to violence
 in his town but I said to him that we want to

[0168]

162

19th Sept
 1866

look only - Eighty five slaves were in a pen
 formed of Dura stalks - (Holcus sorghum) - the
 majority were boys of almost eight or ten years
 of age - others were grown men & women - nearly
 all were in the taming stick - A few younger ones
 were in thongs - the thong passing round the
 neck of each - Several pots were on the fires
 cooking dura & beans - A crowd went with
 us expecting a scene but I sat down and
 asked a few questions about the journey in front
 The slave party consisted of five or six half[-]
 -caste coast Arabs - They said that they came from
 Zanzibar - The crowd made such noise that
 we could not hear ourselves speak - I asked if
 they had any objections to my looking at the

slaves - The owners pointed out the different slaves, and said that after feeding them - and accounting for the losses in the way to the coast they made little by the trip - I suspect that the gain is made by those who ship them to the ports of Arabia for at Zanzibar most of the younger slaves we saw went at about seven dollars a head - I said to them it was a bad business altogether - they presented a fowls to me in the evening -

20th
Sept^r
1866

The chief begged so hard that I would stay another day and give medicine to a sick child that I consented - He promised plenty of food and as an earnest of his sincerity sent an immense pot of beer in the evening - The child had been benefitted by the medicine given yesterday - He offered more food than we chose to take -

The agricultural class does not seem to be a servile one - all cultivate and the work is esteemed - The chief was out at his garden when we arrived and no disgrace

[0169]

163

[2]0
Sept^r
1866

is attached to the field labourer - The slaves very likely do the chief part of the work but all engage in it, and are proud of their skill - Here a great deal of grain is raised though nearly all the people are Waiyau or Machinga - This is remarkable as they have till lately been marauding & moving from place to place - The Manganja possessed the large breed of humped cattle which fell into the hands of the Waiyau

and knew how to milk them - their present
owners never milk them and they have
dwindled into a few instead of the thousands
of former times -

A lion killed a woman early yesterday,
morning and ate most of her undisturbed -

It is getting very hot now - the ground to the
feet of the men "burns like fire" after Noon -
so we are now obliged to make short marches
and early in the morning chiefly -

Wikatani - bishop Mackenzie's favourite boy -
met a brother here, and he finds that he has an
elder brother at Kabingas and a sister - The
father who sold him into slavery is dead - He
wishes to stop with his relatives, and it will be
well if he does - Though he has not much to
say what he does advance against the slave
trade will have its weight - and it will all be
in the way of preparation for better times
and more light -

The elder brother was sent for, but had not
arrived when it was necessary for us to leave
Mponda's on the Rivulet Ntemangokwe - I
therefore gave Wikatani some cloth - a flint
gun instead of the percussion one he carried
some flints - paper to write upon, and commanded
him to Mponda's care till his relatives arrived -
He has lately shown a good deal of levity, and

[0170]

164

perhaps it is best that he have a touch of what
the world is in reality - a blessing go with him -

21st
Sept
1866

Marched Westwards making across the base
of Cape Maclear - Two men employed as
guides & carriers went along grumbling that their
dignity was so outraged by working - only fancy
Waiyau carrying like slaves!! - They went but
a short distance and I being in front laid down
the loads one of which consisted of the Havildar's
bed & cooking things - Here they opened the other
bundle and paid themselves - the gallant Havildar

sitting & looking on - He has never been of the smallest use and lately has pretended to mysterious pains in his feet - no swelling or other symptom accompanied this complaint - On coming to Pima's village he ate a whole fowl and some fish for supper - slept soundly till daybreak - then on awaking commenced a furious groaning "his feet were so bad" - I told him that people usually moaned when insensible, but he had kept his till he awaked - He sulked at this, and remained all day there though I sent a man to carry his kit for him - I sent another man, and when he came up he had changed the seat of his complaint from his feet to any part of his abdomen - He gave off his gun belt & pouch to the carrier - This was a blind to me for I examined & found that he had already been stealing & selling his ammunition - This is all preparatory to returning to the coast with some slave trader - nothing can exceed the ease & grace with which sepoys can glide from swagger into the most abject begging of food from the villagers - He has remained behind -

[0171]

165

[2]2
[Se]pt
1866

The hills we crossed were about 700 feet above Nyassa - generally covered with trees no people seen - We slept by the brook Sikoche - Rocks of hardened sandstone rested on mica schist which had an efflorescence of alum on it. Above this was dolomite - the hills often capped with it and calc spar giving a snowy appearance We had a Waiyau party with us - six handsomely attired women carried huge pots of beer for their husbands who very liberally invited us to partake -

[2]2^d

After seven hours hard travelling we came to the village where we spend Sunday on torrent Usangazi

[2]3^d

and near a remarkable mountain Namasi. The chief a one eyed man was rather coy - coming incognito to visit us, and as I suspected that he was present, I asked if the chief were an old woman afraid to look at & welcome a stranger - all burst into a laugh and looked at him, when he felt forced to join in it & asked what sort of food we liked best - Chuma put this clear enough by saying "He eats everything eaten by the Waiyau["] - This tribe or rather the Machinga now supersede the Manganja - We passed one village of the latter near this - a sad tumble down affair, while the Waiyau villages are all very neat with handsome straw or reed fences all around their huts -

[2]4th

We went only 2 ½ miles to the village of Marenga - a very large one situated at the Eastern edge of the bottom of the heel of the Lake - The chief is ill of what they in imitation of Arabs and Portuguese call "Buboes" a secondary syphilitic affection of the skin which is very common - Raised patches of scab of circular form disfigure the face & neck as well as other parts - The chiefs brother

[0172]

166

24 Sept
1866

begged me to see him, and administer some remedy. He is at a village a little way off

and though sent for was too ill to come or be carried - They have got this disease from the Arabs - The tribe is of Babisa origin - Many of these people had gone to the Coast as traders and returning with arms and ammunition joined the Waiyau in their forays on the Manganja and eventually set themselves up as an independent tribe - The women do not wear the lip ring though the Majority of them are Waiyau -. They cultivate largely and have plenty to eat - They have cattle but do not milk them -

The bogs ^ or earthen sponges of this country occupy a most important part in its physical geography and probably explain the annual inundation of most of the rivers - Wherever a plain sloping towards a narrow opening in hills or higher ground exists there we have the conditions requisite for the formation of an African bog ^ or sponge - The vegetation not being of a healthy or peat forming kind, falls down, rots and forms rich black loam - In many cases a mass of this loam two or three feet thick rests on a bed of pure river sand which is revealed by crabs and other aquatic animals bringing it to the surface - At present in the dry season - the black loam is cracked in all directions, and the cracks are often as much as three inches wide and very deep - The whole surface has now fallen ^ down in, & rests on the sand, but when the rains come the first supply is nearly all absorbed in

[0173]

167

the sand - The black loam forms soft slush & floats on the sand - The narrow opening prevents it from moving off in a landslip, but an oozing spring rises at that spot - All the pools in the lower portion of this spring[-] course are filled by the first rains, which happen south of the Equator when the sun goes vertically over any spot - the second or greater rains happen in his course North again - when all the bogs & river courses being wet

the supply runs off and forms the inundation
This was certainly the case as observed on the
Zambesi & Shire and taking the different times
for the suns passage North of the Equator
explains the inundation of the Nile -
see Note on the climate beginning on page D 8 August

Marungu the country referred to below is very
mountainous and steeply undulating - Travelling is
perpetually up and down but a high rim of
volcanic rocks near to Tanganyika seems to
prevent the free offlow of the water - and the rivulets
flood their banks and make the passage through very dif-
ficult A partial inundation takes place between
Kabuire and Tanganyika which renders the
country impassable for about four months in
the year - There cannot be much slope there
otherwise channels capable of letting the water run
off quickly would have been worn in the historic
period - The Altitude as measured by Captain Speke
is probably erroneous - the Lualaba being very
winding in its course shews also a country not
greatly depressed and it is to the West of Tangan-
yika - The R. Lofunso flows from the East in
Kabuire and Lobemba away NW into the
Lualaba - entering it a few miles below the
village of Mpweto

[0174]

168

25th
Sept
1866

Marenga's town is very large and his people
collected in great numbers to gaze at the stranger
The chief's brother asked a few questions &
I took the occasion as good for telling some[-]
thing about the bible & the future state - they
men said, that their fathers had never told them
aught about the soul but they thought that
the whole man rotted & came to nothing -
What I said was very nicely put by a volunteer
spokesman who seemed to have a gift that way
for all listened most attentively & especially
when told that our Father in Heaven loved all
and heard prayers addressed to him.

On reaching Marenga who is living by the shore of Nyassa he came dressed in a red figured silk shawl, and attended by about ten court beauties - who spread a mat for him, then a cloth above ~~that~~, then sat down as if to support him - Asked me to examine his case inside a hut - Here he leaned on the bosom of one of his women - all of whom were nice clean skinned strongly built women - He exhibited his loathesome skin disease - and he being blacker than his wives the blotches with which he was covered made him appear very ugly - I asked if any of his wives had taken the complaint Five had!! - but all six now present were most assiduous in their attention to him - Was it conjugal affection that prompted it - We must not enquire too closely, but position has a great influence here as it has in more civilized countries - They helped him to count the number of the infected apparently not conscious that their own fine light brown skins may hence recieved the seed of the contagion - The dirty black husband was

[0175]

169

scratching himself all over - He thought that the disease was in the country before Arabs came - The new disease acquired from them

Sept
26th
1866

was the small pox-

An Arab passed us yesterday - his slaves going by another route across the base of Cape Maclear - He told Musa that all the country in front was full of Mazitu - that forty four Arabs & their followers had been killed by them at Kasungu & he only escaped. Musa and all the Johanna men now said that they would go no further - Musa said "No good country that" "I want to go back to Johanna to see my father & mother and son" -

I took him to Marenga and asked the chief about the Mazitu, He explained that the disturbance was the Manganja finding that Jumbe brought Arabs & ammunition into the country every year resented it & would not allow more to come because they were the sufferers - and their nation was getting destroyed - I explained to Musa that we should avoid the Mazitu - Marenga added there are no Mazitu near where you are going - but Musa's eyes stood out with terror and he said "I no can believe that man" - but I enquired how can you believe the Arab so easily - "I ask him to tell me true and he say true true" &c - When we started all the Johanna men walked off leaving the goods on the ground - They have been such inveterate thieves that I am not sorry at getting rid of them - though my party is now inconveniently small - I could not trust them with flints in their guns - nor allow them to remain behind for their object was invariably to plunder their loads -

[0176]

170

26 Sep^r
1866

With our goods in canoes we went round the bottom of the heel of Nyassa slept among reeds - and next morning

27th

landed at Msangwa which is nearly opposite Kimasusa's or Katosa's as the Makololo called him - A man had been taken off by a crocodile last night - He had been drinking beer and went down to the water to cool himself, lay down & the brute seized him - the water very muddy stirred up by an East wind which lashed the waves into our

canoes & wet our things - the loud wail
of the women is very painful to hear -
it sounds so dolefully -

28th

Reached Kimasusa's below Mount
Mulundini of Kirk's range - The chief
absent but he was sent for immediately
His town much increased since I saw
it last -

29th

Another Arab passed last night with
the tale that his slaves had all been taken
from him by the Mazitu - It is more
respectable to be robbed by them than
by the Manganja who are much despised
and counted nobodies - I propose to go
West of this among the Maravi until
quite away beyond the disturbances
whether of Mazitu or Manganja -

I ought to have mentioned in the
foregoing page that the stealing of the Johanna
men was not the effect of hunger - It
attained its height when we had plenty -
if one remained behind we knew his
object in delay was stealing - He gave
what he filched to the others, and Musa
shared the dainties they bought with it,

[0177]

171

When spoken to he would say "I every day
tell Johanna men no steal D^r things" As he
came away, and left them in the march I in[-]
sisted on his bringing up all his men - This
he did not relish - and the amount stolen was
not small - one stole fifteen pounds of fine
powder - another seven - another left six
table cloths out of about twenty four - another
called out to a man to bring a fish & he would
buy it with beads - the beads being stolen - and

Musa knew it all and connived at it - but
it was terror that drove him away at last -

[3]0th
[Se]pt
1866

We enjoy our Sunday here - We have abundance
of food from Msusa's wife - The chief wished me
to go alone and enjoy his drinking bout and then
we could return to this place together - but this
was not to my taste -

It seems to have been a mistake to imagine that

Private

the Divine Majesty on High was too exalted to take
any notice of our mean affairs - The great
minds among men are remarkable for the
attention they bestow on minutiae - An Astronomer
cannot be great unless his mind can grasp an
infinity of very small things each of which if
unattended to would throw his work out - A
great General attends to the smallest affairs of his
Army - The Duke of Wellingtons letters shew
his constant attention to minute details - and so
with the Supreme Mind of the Universe - As
he is revealed to us in His son. "the very hairs
of your head are all numbered" - "A sparrow
cannot fall to the ground without Your Father"

”

He who dwelleth in that light which no man can

”

approach unto, condescends to provide for the

”

minutest of our wants - directing, guarding

”

and assisting us, each hour and moment,

”

with an infinitely more vigilant & exquisite care

”

than our own ^ utmost self love can ever attain to.”

[0178]

172

Private

With the ever watchful loving eye constantly upon me I may surely follow my bent and go among the heathen in front bearing the message of peace & good will - All appreciate the statement that it is offensive to our Common Father to sell & kill his children - I will therefore go and may the Almighty help me to be faithful -

1st Oct^r

1866

KiMsusa or Mehusa came this morning and seemed very glad again to see his old friend - Sent off at once to bring an enormous ram which had either killed or seriously injured a man - He came tied to a pole to

keep him off the man who held it while a lot more carried him - He was prodigiously fat - this is a true African way of shewing love give plenty of fat & beer - accordingly the chief brought a huge basket of "pombe" the native beer and another of "nsima" or porridge & a pot of cooked meat - to these were added a large basket of maize - so much food had been brought to us that we had at last to explain that we could not carry it -

KiMsusa says that they felt earthquakes at the place Mponda now occupies but none where he is now - He confirms the tradition that the Manganja came from the West or W-N-W- speaks more rationally about the Deity than some have done & adds that it was by following my advice and not selling his people that his village is now three times its former size - He has another village besides, and he was desirous that I should see that too - that was the reason he invited me to come - but the people would come & visit me -

[0179]

173

2 Oct

1866

KiMsusa made his appearance early with a huge basket of beer - 18 inches high & 15 inches in diameter - He served it out for a time taking deep draughts himself, and he then became extremely loquacious - took us to a fine shady tree in the dense thicket behind his town which has been left on purpose to be cloacae if that term may be applied to a mass of tangled tropical vegetation among numbers of lofty trees many of which I have seen no where else - that under which we sat bears a fruit in clusters which is eatable & called "Mbedwa" a space had been cleared and we were taken to this shady spot as that in which business, of importance & secrecy, is transacted - Another enormous basket of beer was brought here by his wives & there was little need for it for Msusa talked incessantly

and no business was done -

3 Oct

The chief came early and sober - I rallied him on his previous loquacity, and said one ought to find him in the morning, if business was to be done - He took it in good part - one of his wives joined in bantering him - she is the wife & the mother of the sons in whom he delights & who will succeed him - I proposed to him to send men with me to the Babisa country, and I would pay them there where they could buy ivory for him with the pay & bringing it back he would be able to purchase clothing without selling his people - He says that his people would not bring [...]the pay or anything else back - When he sends to purchase ivory he gives the price to Arabs or Babisa and they buy for him & bring back, but his people, they Manganja, cannot be trusted, This shews a remarkable state of distrust and from previous information it is probably true -

[0180]

174

3 Oct^r
1866

A party of the Arab Khambui's people went up lately to the Maravi country above this, and immediately West of Kirk's range to purchase slaves - They were attacked by the Maravi and dispersed with slaughter - This makes Msusa's people afraid to venture there - They had some quarrel with the Maravi also of their own, and no intercourse now took place - A path further South was followed by Mponda lately and great damage done so it would not be wise to go on his footsteps - Msusa said he would give me carriers to go up to the Maravi but wished to be prepaid, to

this I agreed, but even there he could not prevail on any one to go - He then sent for an old Babisa man who has a village under him, and acknowledges Msusa's power - He says that he fears that should he force his Manganja to go they would leave us on the road or run away on the first appearance of danger but this Babisa man would be going to his own country and would stick by us - Meanwhile the chief over-stocks us with beer and other food -

4th

The Mobisa man sent for came but was so ignorant of his own country not knowing the names of the chief Babisa town or any of the rivers, that I declined his guidance - He would only have been a clog on us and anything about the places in front of us we could ascertain by enquiry as well as he at the villages where we touch -

[0181]

175

4th

Oct

[1]866

A woman turned up here and persuaded Chuma that she was his aunt - He wanted to give her at once a fathom of calico & beads - He wished me to cut his pay down for the purpose I persuaded him to be content with a few beads for her - He gave her his spoon & some other valuables fully persuaded that she is a relative though he was interrogated first as to his fathers name & tribe &c before she declared herself - It shews a [...]most forgiving disposition to make presents to those who if genuine relations actually sold them - But those who have been caught young know nothing of the evils of

slavery, and do not believe in its ills - Chuma for instance believes now that he was caught and sold by the Manganja & not by his own Waiyau - Though it was just in the opposite way that he became a slave - He asserted & believes that no Waiyau ever sold his own child - When reminded that Wikatani was sold by his own father - He denied it - Then that Chimwala another boy's father sold him his mother and sister - he replied "These are Machinga" This is another tribe of Waiyau, but this shewed that he was determined to justify his countrymen at any rate - This matter is mentioned because though the Oxf & Camb mission have an advantage in the instruction of boys taken quite young from slavers yet these same boys forget the evils to which they were exposed & rescued, and it is even likely that they will like Chuma deny that any benefit was conferred upon them by their deliverance - This was not stated broadly by Chuma but his tone led one to believe that he was quite ready to return to the former state.

[0182]

176

5th Oct
1866

The chief came early with as usual an immense basket of beer - We were ready to start - He did not relish this, but I told him it was clear that his people set very light by his authority - He declared that he would force them or go himself with his wives as carriers - This dawdling and guzzling had a bad effect on my remaining people - Simon for instance overheard two [...] words which he understood these were "Mazitu" & "lipululu" or desert & from these he conjured up a picture of Mazitu rushing out upon us in the jungle and killing all without giving us time to say a word - To this he added scraps of distorted information - Khamburi was a very bad chief in front &c - all shewing

egregious cowardice - yet he came to give
me advice - On asking what he knew as
he could not speak the language - He replied
that he heard the above two words, and that
Chuma could not translate them, but he
had caught them & came to warn me -

The chief asked me to stay over today and
he would go with his wives tomorrow
I was his friend and he would not see me
in difficulties without doing his utmost -
He says that there is no danger for people
carrying loads - It is probable that Khambuir's
people went as marauder's, and were
beaten off in consequence -

6 Oct
1866

We marched about seven miles to the
North to a village opposite the pass Tapiri
and on a rivulet Godedza - It was very
hot - Kimasusa behaves like a king
his strapping wives came to carry loads
and shame his people many of the

[0183]

177

6th
Oct
1866

young men turned out & took the loads, but it
was evident that they feared retaliation if they
ventured up the pass - One wife carried beer
another meal - and as soon as we arrived
cooking commenced - Porridge and roasted goats
flesh made a decent meal - A preparation
of meal called "Toku" is very refreshing - It
brings out all the sugary matter in the grain -
He gave me some in the way & seeing I liked
it a calabash full was prepared for me in
the evening - Msusa delights in shewing me
to his people as his friend - If I could have

used his Pombe or beer it would have put some fat on my bones, but it requires a strong digestion - many of the chiefs & their wives live on it almost entirely - a little flesh is necessary to relieve the acidity it causes and they keep all flesh very carefully no matter how high it may become - Drying it on a stage over a fire prevents entire putridity -

7th
Oct^r
1866

Hooping cough heard in the village - We found our visitors so disagreeable that I was glad to march - They were Waiyau & very impudent demanding gun or some medicine to enable them to shoot well - They came into the hut uninvited, and would take no denial - It is probable that the Arabs drive a trade in gun medicine - It is inserted in cuts made above the thumb and on the forearm - Their superciliousness shews that they feel themselves to be the dominant race - The Manganja trust to their old bows and arrows - they are much more civil than Ajawa or Waiyau

[0184]

178

7th Oct
1866

A Manganja man who formerly presented us the whole haul of his net came and presented four fowls - some really delight in shewing kindness When we came near the bottom of the Pass Tapiri Kimsusa's men became loud against his venturing further he listened then burst away from them - He listened again - then did the

same and as he had now got men
for us I thought better to let him go
In three hours and a quarter we had
made a clear ascent of 2200 feet above
the Lake - The first persons we
met were two men and a boy who
were out hunting with a dog and
basket trap
[Drawing of basket trap.] This is laid down

[Drawing of basket trap.]

in the run of some small animal
The dog chases it & it goes into the basket
which is made of split bamboo,
and has prongs looking inwards
which prevent its egress - Mice
traps are made in the same fashion
I suspected that the younger of the
men had other game in view and
meant if fit opportunity offered
to insert an arrow in a Waiyau who
was taking away his wife as a slave
He told me of this before we had gained
the top of the ascent - some Waiyau
had come to a village separated from
his by a small valley - picked a
quarrel with the inhabitants and
they went & took the wife and child
of a poorer countryman to pay these
pretended offences -

[0185]
179

Our carriers did well - and after we gained the
village where we slept sang & clapped their
hands vigorously till one o'clock in the morning
when I advised them to go to sleep -

8th
Oct^r
1866

At the first village we found that the
people up here and those down below were

mutually afraid of each other - Kiemasusa came to the bottom of the range - his last act being the offer of a pot of beer and giving a calabash of Toku which ^ latter was accepted - I paid his wives - and now found the men he at last provided very faithful and easily satisfied - Here we found the headman Kawa of Mpalapala quite as hospitable - In addition to providing a supper it is the custom here to give breakfast before starting - Resting on the 8th to make up for the loss of rest on Sunday we went on Tuesday,

9th

but were soon brought to a stand by Gombwa whose village Ta miala stands on another ridge Gombwa a laughing good natured man, said there he had sent for all his people to see me - and I ought to sleep to enable them to see one the like of whom had never come their way before - Intending to go on, I explained some of my objects in coming through the country - advising the people to refrain from selling each other as it ends in war & depopulation - He was cunning and said "Well you must sleep here and all my people will come & hear those words of peace" I explained that I had employed carriers who expected to be paid though I had gone but a small part of a day - He replied "but they will go home & come again tomorrow, and it will count but one day" I was thus constrained to remain -

[0186]

180

9th Oct
1866

Both Barometer and Boiling point shewed an Altitude of upwards of 4000 ft above the sea - This is the hottest month but the air is delightfully clear & delicious The country is very fine lying in long slopes with ~~mym~~ mountains rising all

around to from two to three thousand feet above this upland - They are mostly jagged & rough - (not rounded like those near to Mataka's) The long slopes are nearly denuded of trees and the patches of cultivation are so large & often squarish in form that but little imagination is requisite to transform the whole into the cultivated fields of England - but no hedgerows exist The trees are in clumps on the tops of the ridges or at the villages or at the places of sepulture - Just now the young leaves are come out but not turned green - In some lights they look brown but ~~in~~with transmitted light or when one is near them crimson prevails - A yellowish green is met sometimes in the young leaves & Brown Pink & orange red. - The soil is rich but the grass is excessively rank only in spots ^ in general it is short. - A kind of trenching of the ground is resorted to - they hoe deep, and draw it well to themselves - this exposes the other earth to the hoe [Drawing of greenery followed by a trench.] The soil is burned too - the grass & weeds are placed in ^ flat heaps & soil placed over them - the burning is slow & most of the products of combustion are retained to fatten the field -

[0187]

181

89th
Oct^r
1866

The people raise large crops - ~~then~~Men & women and children engage in field labour but at present many of the men are engaged in spinning Buaze and cotton - The former is made into a coarse sacking looking stuff - immensely strong - It seems to be worn by the women alone - the men are clad in uncomfortable goat skins - No wild animals seem to

be in the country, and indeed the population is so large they would have very unsettled times of it - At every turning we meet people or see their villages - all armed with bows and arrows - The bows are unusually long I measured one made of Bamboo & found that along the bowstring it measured 6 ft 4 in. Many carry large knives of fine iron - & indeed the metal is abundant - Young men and women wear the hair long - a mass of small ringlets comes down & rests on the shoulders giving them the appearance of the ancient Egyptians - one side is often cultivated and the mass hangs jauntily on that side - some few have a solid cap of it not many women wear the lip ring - the example of the Waiyau has prevailed so far but some of the young women have raised lines crossing each other on the arms which must have cost great pain They

[Drawings of the crossing lines on a woman's arm, the small ornamental cuts on the shoulders, collar bone, and upper chest.] have also small cuts covering in some cases the whole body - The Maravi or Manganja here may be said to be in their primitive state - We find them very liberal with their food - We give a cloth to the headman of the village where we pass the night, and he gives a goat or at least cooked fowls & porridge at night & morning.

[0188]

182

9th
Oct^r
1866

We were invited by Gombwa in the afternoon to speak the same words to his people that we used to himself in the morning - He nudged a boy to respond which is considered polite though he did it only with a rough hem! at the end of each sentence - as our general discourse we mention our

relationship to one Father - His love to
all his children - The guilt of selling
any of his children - The consequence
it begets war for they dont like to
sell their own & steal from other villagers
who retaliate - Arabs & Waiyau are invited
into the country by then selling foster
feuds and war & depopulation ensue
We mention the Bible - Future state
Prayer - advise union - that they
should unite as one family to expel
enemies who came first as slave
traders, and ended by leaving the
country a wilderness - In reference
to Union we shewed that they ought
to have seen justice done to the man
who lost his wife and child at their
very doors but this want of cohesion
is the bane of the Manganja - they
dont care if the evil does not affect
themselves who it injures - and
Gombwa confirmed this by saying
that when he routed Khambuiri's
people the villagers West of him fled
instead of coming to his aid -

We hear that many of the Manganja
up here were fugitives from Nyassa

[0189]

183

9th
Oct^r
1866

Kawa & his people were with us early
this morning, and we started from
Tamiala with them - The weather lovely -
The scenery though at present tinged with
yellow from the grass might be called
glorious - The bright sun & delicious air
made were quite exhilarating - We passed
a fine flowing rivulet called Levize going
into the Lake & many smaller runnels
of delicious cold water - On resting by a dark
sepulchral grove a tree attracted the attention
as nowhere else seen - it is called Bokonto
and said to bear eatable fruit - Many fine

flowers were just bursting into full
blossom - After about four hours march
we put up at Chitimba the village of Kañgomba
and were introduced by Kawa who came all
the way for the purpose.

11th
Oct

a very cold morning with a great bank
of black clouds in the East whence the wind
came - therm - 59° in hut 69° The huts are
built very well - The roof ^ with lower part plastered is formed so as
not to admit a ray of light & the only
visible mode of ingress for it is by the
door - This care shews that winter is cold -
on proposing to start - breakfast was not
ready - Then a plan was formed to keep
me another day at a village close by
belonging to one Kulu a man of
Kauma to whom we go next - It was
effectual, and here we are ^ detained another day -
a curiously cut out stool is in my
hut made by the Mkwisa who are SW of
this - it is of one block but hollowed out

[Drawing of a stool.] and all the spaces indicated
are howlow too - It is
about 2 ½ feet long by 1 ½ high

[0190]

184

12 Oct
1866

March Westerly with a good deal of Southing
Kulu gave us a goat & cooked liberally for us
all - set off with us as if to go to Kauma's
in our company, but after we had gone
a couple of miles he slipped behind and
ran away - Some are naturally mean
and some naturally noble - The mean cannot
help shewing their nature nor can the noble,
but the noble hearted must enjoy life most,

Kulu got a cloth and he gave us at least its value but he thought he had got more than he gave, and by running away he had done us nicely without troubling himself to go & introduce us to Kauma - I usually request a headman of a village to go with us - They give a good report of us, if for no other reason, for their own credit, because no one likes to be thought giving his countenance to people other than respectable, and it costs little -

We came close to the foot of several squarish mountains having perpendicular sides - one called "Ulazo pa Marungo" - is used by the people whose villages cluster round its base as a storehouse for grain - large granaries stand on its top - the food to be used in case of war - a large cow is kept up there - It is supposed capable of knowing & letting the owners know when war is coming - There is a path up but it was not visible to us - The people are all "Kanthunda" or climbers - not Maravi - Kiemasusa said that he was the only Maravi chief but this I took to be an ebullition of beer bragging - The natives up here however confirm this and assert that they are not Maravi who have markings down the side of the face

[Drawing of the side view of a man's face, revealing four diagonal markings.]

[0191]

185

12 Oct
1866

We spent the night at a Kanthunda village on the Western side of a mountain called Phunze (the h being an aspirate only) Many villages are planted round its base but in front Westwards we have plains & there the villages are as numerous - Most are within half a mile of some other & few are a mile from other hamlets - Each village has a clump of trees around it - These are partly for shade and partly for privacy from motives of decency - The heat of the sun causes the effluvia to exhale quickly so

they are seldom offensive - The rest of the country where not cultivated is covered with grass ^ the seed stalks about knee deep - It is gently undulating - lying in low waves stretching N - E and S.W. The space between each wave is usually occupied by a boggy spot or water course which in some cases is filled with pools with trickling rills between - All are engaged at present in making mounds six or eight feet square & from two to three feet high - The sods in places not before hoed, are separated from the soil beneath & collected into flattened heaps - ^ the grass undermost When dried fire is applied and slow combustion goes on most of the products of the burning being retained in the ground - much of the soil is incinerated - The final preparation is effected by the man digging up the subsoil round the mound passing each hoofful into his left hand, which pulverizes, and carries it on to the heap It is this virgin soil on the top of the ashes and burned ground of the original heap - very clear of weeds - At present many mounds have beans & maize about four inches high - holes a foot in diameter & a few inches deep are made irregularly over the surface of the mound and about

[0192]

186

12th Oct
1866

eight or ten grains put into each - These are watered by hand & calabash - and kept growing till the rains set in when a very early crop is secured -

13th

After leaving Phunze we crossed the Leviñge a rivulet which flows Northwards and then into the Lake Nyassa - the lines of gentle undulation tend in that direction -

Some hills appear on the plains but
after the mountains which we have
left behind they appear mere mounds -
We are over 3000 feet above the sea and the
air is delicious, but we often pass
spots covered with a plant which grows
in marshy places and its heavy smell
always puts me in mind that at other
seasons this may not be so pleasant a
residence - The fact of even maize
being planted on mounds where the
ground is naturally quite dry tells a tale
of abundant humidity of climate -

Kauma, a fine tall man with a bald
head and pleasant manners told us that
some of his people had lately returned from
the Chibisa or Bibisa country whither
they had gone to buy ivory, and they would
give me information about the path -
He took a fancy to one of the boy's blankets
offered a native cloth much larger in exchange
& even offered a sheep to boot but the
owner being unwilling to part with his
covering, Kauma told me that he had
not sent for his Bibisa travellers on
account of my boy refusing to deal
with him - a little childish this, but
otherwise he was very hospitable - gave
a fine goat which unfortunately my

[0193]

187

13th
Oct^r
1866

people left behind - their carelessness may mean insult -

No Arabs ever came his way nor Portuguese
native traders - When advising them to avoid the
first attempts to begin the slave trade as it would
inevitably lead to war & depopulation - Kauma
said that the chiefs had resolved to unite
against the Waiyau of Mponde should he come
again on a foray up the highlands - but they
are like a rope of sand - there is no cohesion
among them and each village is nearly quite

independent of every other - They mutually dis-
-trust each other -

14th

Spend Sunday here - Kauma says that
his people are partly Kanthunda & partly
Chipeta - The first are the mountaineers
the second dwellers on the plains - The
Chipeta have many lines of marking
[Drawing of markings across the shoulders.]
They are all only divisions of the great
Manganja tribe - Their dialects differ
very slightly from that spoken by the same
people on the Shire - The population is very
great - very ceremonious - When we
meet anyone he turns aside & sits down
We clap the hand on the chest & say, "Re
peta - re peta" - or we pass or "let us pass"
This is responded to at once by clapping
of the hands together - When a person is called
at a distance he gives two loud claps of
assent - or if he rises from near a
superior he does the same thing which
is a sort of leavetaking.

We have to ask who are the principal
chiefs in the direction which we wish to
take and decide accordingly - Zomba was
pointed out as a chief on a range of
hills on our West - Beyond him lies
Undi in Senga - I had to take this

[0194]

188

15th
Oct^r
1866

route as my people have a very vivid
idea of the danger of going Northwards
towards the Mazitu - We made more
southing than we wished - One day beyond
Zomba & West S - West is the part called

Chindando where the Portuguese formerly
went for gold - They dont seem to have
felt it worth while to come here, as neither
ivory nor gold could be obtained here,
The country is too full of people to allow
any wild animals elbow room -
Even the smaller animals are hunted down
by means of nets & dogs -

We rested at Pachoma - the head
man offered a goat & beer but I declined
and went on to Molomba - Here Kauna's
carriers turned because a woman had
died that morning as we left the village
They asserted that had she died before
we started not a man would have
left - This shews a reverence for death -
the woman was no relative of any of
them - The head man of Molomba was
very poor but very liberal - cooking for
us and presenting a goat - Another head
man from a neighboring village
a laughing good natured old man
named Chikala brought beer and a fowl

16th
Mironga

in the morning - Asked him to go on
with us to Mironga, it being important
as above mentioned to have the like in
our company - They feel bound even
for their own credit to make a favour-
-able report of the strangers & it is not
expensive - We saw Mount Ngala in
the distance like a large sugar loaf shot
up in the air - In our former route to
Kasungu we pass North of it -

[0195]

189

16th
Oct^r
1866

Crossed rivulet Chikuyo going N - for the Lake and Mironga being but 1 ½ hours off we went on to Chipanga - this is the proper name of what on the Zambesi is corrupted into Shu-panga - The headman a miserable hemp consuming leper fled from us - offered a miserable hut which we refused - Chikala meanwhile went through the whole village seeking a better which we ultimately found. It was not in him to be generous though Chikala did what he could in trying to indoctrinate him - When I gave him a present, he immediately proposed to sell a goat! We get on pretty well however -

Zomba is in a range of hills to our West called Dzala nyama - The Portuguese in going to Cazembe went still further west than this -

17th

Went on to a smithy, and found the founder at work drawing off slag from the bottom of his furnace. He broke through the hardened slag by striking it with an iron instrument inserted in the end of a pole - when the material flowed out of the small hole left for the purpose in the bottom of the furnace - the ore was like sand and was put in at the top of the furnace mixed with charcoal - only one bellows was at work - a goat skin - & the blast very poor - The ore seemed the black oxide - Many of these furnaces or their remains are met with

^ on knolls

those at work have a peculiarly tall hut built over them

On the ^ Eastern edge of a valley lying North & South with the Diampwe stream flowing along it and the Dwala nyama range on the Western side are two villages screened by fine specimens of the Ficus Indica - one of these is owned by the headman Theresa & there we spent the night - We made very short

17 Oct.
1866

marches - the sun is very powerful & the soil is baked hard & is sore on the feet - No want of water however is felt for we come to supplies every mile or two - People look very poor having few or no beads - the ornaments being lines & cuttings on the skin - they trust more to Buaze than cotton - I noticed but two cotton patches - The women are decidedly plain, but monopolize all the Buaze cloth - The men wear goatskins Theresa was excessively liberal - and having informed us that Zomba lived some distance up the range and was not the priencipal man in these parts We to avoid climbing the hills turned

18th
Oct^r

away to the North in the direction of the paramount chief C[...]^rhisumpi whom we found to be only traditionally great - In passing along we came to a village embowered in fine trees - The headman Kaveta - a really fine specimen of the Kanthunda - tall - well made with a fine forehead and Assyrian nose He proposed to us to remain overnight with him, and I unluckily declined - convoying us out a mile we parted with this gentleman and then came to a smiths village - where the same invitation was given & refused - A sort of infatuation drove us on and after a long hot march we found the great C[...]^rhisumpi the facsimile in black of Sir Colin Campbell; his nose mouth & the numerous wrinkles on his face were identical with those of the great general, but

[0197]

191

18th
Oct^r
1866

here all resemblance ceased - Two men had preceded us to give information, and when I followed I saw that his village was one of squalid misery - the only fine things about being the lofty trees in which it lay Chisumpi begged me to sleep at a village about half a mile behind - His son was brow beating him on some domestic affair & the ^ older man implored me to go - Next morning he came early to that village and arranged for our departure offering nothing, and apparently not wishing to see us at all - I suspect that though the paramount chief he is weak minded & has lost thereby all his influence but in the people's eyes he is still a great one.

19th

Several of my men exhibiting symptoms of distress I inquired for a village in which we could rest Saturday & Sunday and at a distance from Chisumpi - a headman volunteered to lead us to one West of Kisumpi In passing the sepulchral grove of Chisumpi our guide remarked "Chisumpi's Fore fathers sleep there" - This was the first time I have heard the word "sleep" applied to death in these parts - The trees in these groves, and around many of the villages ^ the trees are very large and shew what the country would become if depopulated -

We crossed the Diampwe or Adiampe from 5 to 15 yards wide & well supplied with water even now - It rises near Ndomo mountains and flows North[-] wards - into the Lintipe & Lake - We

found Chitokola's village ^ called Paritala a pleasant one
on the East side of the Adiampwe valley
many elephants & other animals feed
in the valley & we saw the ^ Bechuana Hopo again
after many years -

[0198]
192

20th
Oct^r
1866

Note the Ambarre otherwise Nyumbo plant
has a pea shaped or rather papilionaceous
flower with a fine scent - It seems to
grow quite wild - flowers yellow

Chaola is the poison used by the
Maravi for their arrows. It is said
to cause mortification

21st
Oct^r

one of the wonders usually told of us in this
upland region is that we sleep without fire -
The boys blankets suffice for warmth during
the night when the thermometer sinks to 64° - 60° -
but no one has covering sufficient except
them - some huts in process of building here
shew that a thick coating of plaster is put on outside
the roof before the grass thatch is applied - Not
a chink is left for the admission of air -

The lines ^ of tattoo of the different tribes serve for
ornaments - and are resorted to most by the
women - It is a sort of Heraldry closely resem-
-bling the Highland Tartans

[0199]

193

20th
Oct^r
1866

Chitikola was absent ^ from Paritala when we arrived on some milando or other - These milandos are the business of their lives - They are like petty lawsuits - if one trespasses on his neighbours rights in any way it is a milando and the headmen of all the villages about are called on to settle it - Women are a fruitful source of milando - a few ears of Indian corn had been taken by a person, and Chitikola had been called a full days journey off to settle this milando - He administered Muave & the person vomited, therefore innocence was clearly established! He came in the even[-]

21st

ing of the 201th footsore and tired = an elderly man with Assyrian nose & features - and at once gave us some beer - This perpetual reference to food & drink is natural insomuch as it is the most important point in our intercourse - While the chief was absent we got nothing - the queen even begged a little meat for her child who was recovering from an attack of small pox - There being no shops we had to set still without food I took observations for Longitude and whiled away the time by calculating the Lunars - Next day the chief gave us a goat cooked whole and plenty of porridge -

22^d

We started with Chitikola as our guide and he led us away Westwards across the Lilongwe R^e then turned North till we came to

a village called Mashumba the headman of
which was the only chief who begged anything
except medicine - gave him less than we
were in the habit of doing in consequence -
We gave a cloth usually and clothing being
very scarce this was considered munificent

[0200]

194

23^d
Oct^r
1866

We had the Zalanyama range on our
left and our course was generally
North, but we had to go in the direction
of the villages which were on friendly
terms with our guides - and sometimes
we went but a short way as our
guides & carriers studied to make the
days as short as possible - The headman
of the last village Chitoku was with us &
he took us to a village of smiths - four
furnaces & one smit[...]hy being at work -
We crossed the Chiniambo a strong R^r coming
from Zalanyama & flowing into the Miringwe
which again goes into Lintipe - in our way
to the smiths whose chief was named Mpanda
The country near the hills becomes covered
with forest the trees are chiefly Masuko
Mochenga (the gum copal tree) the bark
cloth tree and Rhododendrons - the heath
known at the Cape as "Rhinoster bosch"
occurs frequently and occasionally
we have thorny acacias - grass short -
but plenty of it -

24th

Mpanda led us through the forest by
what he meant to be a short cut to Pa -
-chim[...]una's - Came on a herd of about 15
elephants - many trees laid down by these
animals - they seem to relish the roots of

some kinds, and spend a good deal of time
digging them up - they chew woody roots
& branches as thick as the handle of a spade
many buffaloes feed here and we came
upon a herd of elands - they kept out of
bow shot only. a herd of the baama or
hartebeest stood at 200 paces and one was
shot - While all were rejoicing over the
meat we got news of the Mazitu out on

[0201]

195

24th
Oct^r
1866

a foray by the inhabitants of a large village in
full flight - While roasting & eating meat I
went forward with Mpanda to get men from
Pachimuna to carry the rest. but was soon
recalled - another village passed close by the
hartebeest - the people were running straight to
Zalanyama range regardless of their feet -
making a path for themselves through the
forest - they had escaped from the Mazitu that
morning - they saw them - Mpanda's people
wished to leave and go to look after their own
village but we persuaded them on pain of a
milando to take us to the nearest village - that
was at the bottom of Zalanyama proper, and we
took the spoor of the fugitives - the hard grass
with stalks nearly as thick as quills must have
hurt their feet sorely, but what of that in compa[-]
-rison with dear life - We meant to take our
stand on the hill and defend our property in case
of the Mazitu coming near - and we should
in the event of being successful be a defence
to the fugitives who crowed up its rocky sides -
but next morning we heard that the enemy
had gone to the South - Had we gone forward for
the men to carry the meat we should have
met the marauders for the men of the
second party of villagers had remained
behind guarding their village till the Mazitu
arrived and they told us what a near escape

I had had from walking into their power -

25th

came along Northwards to Pa[...]chimuna's vil
a large one of Chipeta with many villages
around - our path led through the forest and as
we emerged into the open strath in which the villages
lie we saw large anthills each the size of
the end of a one storied cottage covered with
men on gaurd watching for the Mazitu -

[0202]

196

25th
Oct^r
1866

A long line of villagers were just arriving
from the South and we could see at some
low hills in that direction the smoke arising
from the burning villages - None but men
were present - the women and the chief were
at the mountain called Pambe - all were
fully armed with their long bows - some flat
in the bow others round and it was common
to have the quiver in the back | and a bunch
of feathers stuck in the hair like those in our Lancers
chakos - But they remained not to fight but
to watch their homes & stores of grain from
robbers of their own people in case no
Mazitu came - They gave a good hut &
sent off at once to let the chief at Pambe know of
our arrival - We heard the
cocks crowing up there as we passed in
the morning - Pamalōa is the name of
his village - Chimuna the man - He
came in the evening and begged me to
remain a day as he was the greatest
chief the Chipeta had - I told him all
wished the same thing & if I listened to
each chief we should never get on & the
rains were near - but we had to stay over

26th

with him. All the people returned today
from Pambe - and crowded to see the
strangers - they know very little beyond
their own affairs - though these require
a good deal of knowledge and we
should be sorely put about if without
their skill we had to maintain an
existence here [-] Their furnaces are rather
bottle shaped

[Drawing of bottle shaped furnace with three circles across bottom described in text.] and
about seven feet
high by three broad - one toothless
Patriarch had heard of books & Umbrellas
but had never seen either - The oldest

[0203]

197

26 Oct
1866

inhabitant had never travelled far from the
spot in which he was born - Yet he has a
good knowledge of soils & agriculture -
hut building - basket making - pottery & the
manufacture of bark cloth & skins for clothing
as also making of nets - traps - cordage -

27th

Chimuna had a most ungainly countenance
yet did well enough - very thankful for a
blister on his loins to ease rheumatic pains
there - presented a huge basket of porridge
before starting

[Drawing of rectangular basket of porridge.] with a fowl and asked
me to fire a gun that the Mazitu might here
and know that armed men were here
they all said that these marauders flee from
firearms, so I think that they are not Zulus

at all though adopting some of their ways
In going to Mapuio's we passed several
large villages each surrounded by the usual
Euphorbia hedge & having large trees for
shade - We are on a level or rather gently
undulating country rather bare of trees -
At the junctions of these earthen waves we
have always an oozing bog - often this
occurs in the slope down the trough
of this terrestrial sea - bushes are common
& of the kind which were cut down as
trees - Yellow Haematite very abundant
but the other rocks scarcely appear
In the distance we have mountains
both on the East & West -

On arriving at Mapuio's village he
was as often happens invisible, but
he sent us a calabash of fresh made
beer which is very refreshing - gave
us a hut & promised to cook for us
in the evening - We have to employ
five or six carriers and they rule

[0204]

198

27th
Oct
1866

the length of the days march - Those from
Chimuna's village growled at the cubit of
calico with which we paid them - A few
beads pleased them perfectly and we parted
good friends - It is not likely I shall ever
see them again but I always like to please
them because it is right to consider their
desires - Is that not what is meant in
”

Blessed is he that considereth the
poor

” - There is a great deal of good
in these poor people - In cases of milando

they rely on the nearest distant relations
and connections to plead their cause,
and seldom are they disappointed though
time at certain seasons, as for instance
at present, is felt by all to be precious,
The men all appear with hoe or axe
on shoulder, and they often only sit
down as we pass and gaze at us till
we are out of sight [...] or often resuming
it when we are a couple of hundred yards
off -

Many of the men have large slits
in the lobe of the ear - they have their
distinctive tribal tattoo - the women
indulge in this painful luxury more
than the men probably because they
have very few ornaments - the two
central front teeth are hollowed at the
cutting edge

[Drawing of front teeth with hollowing described in text.] - Many have quite the
Grecian facial angle - Mapuio has
thin lips & a quite a European face -
Delicate features & limbs are common &
the spur heel as scarce as among
Europeans - Small feet & hands are
the rule -

Clapping the hands in various

[0205]

199

27th

Oct^r

1866

ways is the polite way of saying "allow
me" - "I beg pardon" "Permit me to pass" -
"Thanks" "Respectful introduction" and [...] leave
taking" "Hear Hear" When inferiors are called
they respond by two brisk claps of the hands
meaning "I am coming" - they are very
punctilious among each other - A large
ivory bracelet marks the headman of a
village - there is nothing else to mark differences
of rank.

28th

We spent Sunday at Mapuio's - Had a long talk
with him - country in a poor state from the
continual incursions of the Mazitu who are
wholly unchecked -

29th

We marched Westwards to Makosa's vil-
and could not go further as next stage is long
and through an ill peopled country - the morning
was lovely - the whole country bathed in bright
sunlight - not a breath of air disturbed the
smoke as it slowly curled up from the heaps
of burning weeds which the native agriculturist
wisely destroys - The people generally busy
hoeing in the cool of the day - One old man
in a village where we rested had trained the
little hair he had left into a tail which well
plastered with fat he had bent on itself & laid
flat on his crown - another was carefully
paring a stick for stirring the porridge - and
others were enjoying the cool shade of the wild
fig trees which are always planted at villages -
It is a sacred tree all over Africa & India -
the tender roots which drop down towards
the ground are used as medicine - A
Universal remedy - Can it be a tradition of its
being like the tree of life which Archp Whately
conjectures may have been used in Paradise
to render man immortal? One kind of fig tree

[0206]

200

29th

Oct

1866

is often seen hacked all over to get the sap
which is used as bird lime - Bark cloth is
made of it too - I like to see the men weaving
or spinning or reclining under these glorious

canopies - as much as I love to see our more
civilized people lolling on their sofas or
ottomans -

The first rain - a thunder shower fell
in the afternoon - Air in shade before it
92° Wet bulb 74° - At Noon the soil
in the Sun was 140° - perhaps more but I
was afraid of bursting the instrument as
it was graduated only a few degrees above that
This first rain happened at the same time
that the Sun was directly overhead in his way
South. The rain was but a quarter of an
inch but its effect was to deprive us
of all chance of getting the five carriers we
need - All were off to their gardens to commit
the precious seed to the soil - We got three
but no one else would come so we have

30th

to remain here over today 30th Oct^r

The black traders come from Tette to this,
to buy slaves - and here we come to bugs again
which we left when we passed the Arab
slave traders beat - The route taken by former
Portuguese in going to Cazembe seems to have
been much to the West of this - a good deal
further indeed than map maa imagine
they do not appear to have asked for the
names of places so much as for those
of persons - The different "Mfumos or head
men only are indicated and as they frequently
change it is difficult to identify their
dwelling places - Each spot has its own
name as well as that of its chief - Mashinga
and Muxinga mean mountains only -

[0207]

201

30th
Oct^r
1866

It is remarkable that no mention is made of
the chief Undi the paramount chief of Senga

which district extends far to the North - His father was their greatest & most powerful enemy - the absence of his name shews that as I have said their route was much nearer the greater Loangwa that enters the Zambesi at Zumbo than is usually supposed -

Paragraph left out of vol. printed

”

It is well known to Physicians that if a child

sleeps with an elderly person, a transference of vitality sometimes takes place; the younger loses, and the elder gains in vital force, and the child becoming sickly and old looking can only be restored to a blooming condition by being allowed to sleep ~~in~~ alone in its own crib - The like happens when old men marry young wives, as was well known to the harsh physicians who tried to prolong the life of King David; and this physiological fact led us to observe that in cases where Portuguese officers had black wives, a transference of colour as well as of vitality takes place - they became decidedly darker than any of us - this was particularly marked in one whom we had an opportunity of observing for eight years - the Arabs in similar circumstances acquire the peculiar which want of cleanliness develops in some Africans and many months of bathing

”

are said to be needed to get rid of it -”

In speaking to Professor Owen about this passage he thought that there is another and deeper reason for man & wife becoming assimilated in features - For several months at least in each pregnancy the woman or rather wife

[0208]

202

has the blood of a being only half her own
circulating through every part of her system
and no wonder a similarity ensues
directly between her & the child & remotely with

the father -

In connection with this subject I
observed that my Zambesians who were
taken to India with the African odour
strongly developed - lost it entirely in the
course of a year and acquired the peculiar

mousy smell of some East Indians

31th
Oct^r
1866

Proceed westwards & a little South through
a country covered with forest - Trees thickly
planted but small - generally of "Bark
cloth - & Gum copal trees - Masuko's -
Rhododendrons & a few acacias - Saw
ten wild hogs in a group but no other
animal though marks of elephants, buffaloes

& other animals having been there in the wet season were very abundant - The first few miles were rather more scant of water than usual but we came to the Leile a fine little stream with plenty of water - It is said by the people to flow away Westwards into the Loangwa - It was from 25 to 30 yds wide -

In the evening we made the Chigumokire a nice rivulet where we slept and next

1 Nov^r
1866

morning we proceeded to Kangene's whose village is situated on a mass of mountains & to reach which we made more Southing than we wished - Our appearance on the ascent of the hill caused alarm and we were desired to wait till our spokesman had explained the unusual phenomenon of a white man

[0209]

203

1st Nov
1866

This kept us waiting in the hot sun among heated rocks, and the chief being a great ugly public house keeper looking person excused his incivility by saying that his brother had been killed by the Mazitu, and he was afraid that we were of the same tribe - On asking if Mazitu wore clothes like us, he told some untruths - and what has been an unusual thing began to beg powder and other things - I told him how other chiefs had treated us which made him ashamed - He represented the country in front to the N - W - to be quite impassable from want of food - the Mazitu have stripped it of all provisions & the people are living on what wild fruits they can pick up.

2 Nov

Kangene is very disagreeable naturally, and as we have to employ five men as carriers we are in his power - We can scarcely enter into the feelings of those who are harried by marauders Like Scotland in the twelfth & thirteenth centuries harassed by Highland Celts on one side, and by English marchmen on the other, and thus kept in the rearward of civilisation, this people have rest neither for many days nor for few. When they fill their garner they can seldom reckon on eating the grain for the Mazitu come when the harvest is over - catch as many able bodied young persons as they can to carry away the corn - Thus it was in Scotland so far as security for life & property were concerned - but the Scotch were apt pupils of more fortunate nations. To change of country they were as indifferent as the Romans of the olden times - they were always welcome in France either as pilgrims, scholars, or merchants or soldiers but the African is different - If let alone

[0210]

204

2 Nov^r
1866

The African's his mode of life is rather enjoyable - they love agriculture, and land is to be had anywhere - They know nothing of other lands countries [...] But they have imbibed the idea of property in man. Thus Kangene told me that he would like to give me a slave to look after my goats, I believe that he would rather give a slave than a goat.

3^d, 4th - 5

Detained by the illness of Simon - When he recovered we proposed to the headman to start with

five of his men, and he agreed to let us have them - but having called them together a demand was made for prepayment & the wages so enormous that on the 7th Nov^r

7th

we took seven loads forward through a level uninhabited country generally covered with small trees - slept there, and on the morning

8th

of the 8th after leaving two men at our depot came back, and took the remaining five loads - Kangene was disagreeable to the last He asked where we had gone & having described the turning point as near the hill Chimbimbe he complimented us on going so far - and then sent an offer of three men, but I preferred that unless he could give five & take on all the loads not to have those who would have been spies - He said that he would find the number, and after detaining us some hours brought two one of whom primed with beer babbled out that he was afraid of being killed by us in front - I asked whom we had killed behind and moved off - The headman is very childish - - does womans work - cooking & pounding - and in all cases of that kind the people take after their head - The chiefs have scarcely any power unless they are men of energy - they have to court the people rather than be courted - We came much further back

[0211]

205

8 Nov^r
1866

in our course from Mapuio's than we liked
In fact our course is like that of a vessel baffled
with foul winds - This is mainly owing to being
obliged to avoid places stripped of p[ro]visions or
suffering this spoilation - The people too can
give no information about others at a distance
from their own abodes - Even the smiths who
are a most plodding set of workers are as ignor-
-ant as the others - They supply the surrounding
villages with hoes & knives & combining agri-
-culture with handi[cra]ft pass through life - An
intelligent smith came as our guide from
Chimbimbe hill on the 9th and did not know
a range of mountains about twenty miles off
"It was too far off for him to know the name"

9th

The country over which we actually travel
is level and elevated, but thesre are mountains
all about which when put on the map
make it appear to be a mountainous region -
We are on the Watershed apparently between
the Loangwa of Zumbo on the West & the Lake
on the East - The Leué or Leuia is said by
the people to flow into the Loangwa - the
Chigumokire coming from the North in front

East^{ds}

of Irongwe the mountains on which Kangene
skulks out of sight of Mazitu, flows into the
Leué, and North of that we have the Mando
a little stream flowing into the Bua - The
rivulets on the West flow in deep defiles,
and the elevation on which we travel
makes it certain that no water can
come from the lower lands on the West - It
seems that the Portuguese in travelling to
Cazembe did not enquire of the people
where the streams they crossed went for
they are often wrongly put and indicate
the direction only in which they appeared at

9th
Nov^r
1866

their crossing places - the natives have a good idea generally of the rivers into which the streams flow though ~~generally~~ very deficient in information as to the condition of the people that live on their banks - Some of the Portuguese questions must have been asked through slaves who would shew no hesitation in answering; Maxinga or Machinga means "mountains" only - once or twice it is put down saxa de Maxinga or Machinga or Mcanga which translated from the native tongue means "rocks of mountains or mountains or rocks" the names of headmen are mostly given, as Mfumo so & so, and as changes are constantly taking place in chieftainships & more frequently in the localities they occupy, one cannot find out where their route lay - It must have been considerably to the West of where the geographers have placed it -

written
1869
footnote

but they were dragged back Eastwards in order to cross the Chambeze where it is narrow and seem to have followed their guides blindly without asking any questions - they were led to this silence by the fact that these guides had come to Tette from Cazembe and of course knew their way back again - It would have appeared impertinent to dictate to such able guides but it does seem surprising that no information was given about Bangweolo from which the line of march deviated - Possibly the guides felt as their chief Cazembe did when told that I wished to see Bangweolo - "It is a piece of water like Mofwe or Luapula or any other

water and what can he see in it - can he
draw cloth out of it - the Portuguese did not
draw any out of Mofwe -”

[0213]

207

10th
Nov^r
1866-

We found the people on the Mando to be
Chawa or Ajawa but not of the Waiyau
race as that people is sometimes so named
by the Manganja - They are Manganja and
this is a village of smiths - We got five
men readily to go back & bring up our
loads - and the sound of the hammer is constant
shewing a great deal of industry - They combine
agriculture - hunting with nets with their handi-
-craft -

12th

A herd of buffaloes came near the village and
I went & shot one thus, procuring a supply of
meat for the whole party & villagers too - The
hammer which we hear from dawn till
sunset is a large stone bound with the strong
inner bark of a tree and loops left which
form handles
[Drawing of natives using hammer described in text.] Thus pieces of
bark form the tongs & a big stone
sunk into the ground the anvil - They
make several hoes in a day and the
metal is very good, it is all from
yellow haematite which abounds
all over this part of
the country the bellows
two goat skins with sticks at
the open ends which are opened & shut
at every blast.

13th

a Lion came last night and gave
a growl or two on finding he could
not get our meat - a man had lent us
a hunting net to protect it & us from
intruders of the sort - The people kept
up a shouting for hours afterwards
in order to keep him away by the human
voice

We might have gone on but I had a
galled heel from new shoes - Wild figs
are rather nice when quite ripe

[0214]
208

14th
Nov^r
1866

We marched Northwards round the end of
Chisia hill and remained for the night at
a blacksmiths or rather founder's village.
The two occupations of founder & smith are
always united and boys taught to be smiths
in Europe or India would find themselves
useless if unable to smelt the ore - a good
portion of the trees of the country have been
cut down for charcoal - and those which
now spring up are small - certain fruit
trees alone are left - the long slopes on the
undulating country clothed with fresh
foliage look very beautiful - The young
trees alternate with patches of yellow grass
not yet burned - The hills are covered
with a thick mantle of small green trees
with as usual large ones at intervals.
The people at Kalumbi on the Mando
where we spent four days had once a
stockade of wild fig (ficus Indica) and
Euphorbia round their village which has
a running rill on each side of it, but
the trees which enabled them to withstand
a seige by Mazitu fell before elephants &
buffaloes during a temporary absence
of the villagers - the remains of the Stockade
are all around it yet Lions sometimes

enter huts by breaking through the roof -
Elephants certainly do for we saw a
roof destroyed by one - the only chance
for the inmates is to use the spear
in the belly of the beast while so engaged.

15th

A man came & reported the Mazitoto
be at Chəanyandula's village where we are
going - the headman advised remaining
at his village till we saw whether they
came this way or went by another path

[0215]
209

15th
Nov^r
1866

The women were sent away but the men
went on with their employments - two proceeded
with the building of a furnace on an ant hill
where they are almost always placed, and
they keep a look out while working - We have
the protection of an all embracing Providence
and trust that He whose care of his people
exceeds all that our utmost selfove can attain
will shield us and make our way prosperous -
An elephant came near enough last night to
scream at us but passed on warned perhaps
by the shouting of the villagers not to meddle
with man -

16th

No Mazitu having come we marched on & crossed
the Bua 8 yards wide & knee deep - It rises in the
North in hills a little beyond Kanyindula's village
winds round his mountains & away to the East.
The scenery among the mountains very lovely - They
are covered with a close mantle of green - with here

and there red and light coloured patches shewing where
grass has been burned off recently & the red clay soil
is exposed - the lighter portions are unburned grass
or rocks - Large trees are here more numerous
and give an agreeable change of contour to the
valleys & ridges of the hills - the leaves of many
still retain a tinge of red from young leaves -
We came to the Bua again before reaching Kanyanje
as Kanyindula's place is called - The iron trade
must have been carried on for an immense time
in the country for one cannot go a quarter of
a mile without meeting pieces of slag & broken
pots - calcined pipes & fragments of the furnaces
which are converted by the fire into brick - It
is curious that the large stone sledge hammers
now in use are not called by the name
stone hammers but by a distinct word
"Kama" Nyundo is one made of iron

[0216]

210

16th
Nov^r
1866

When we arrived at Kanyanje, Kanyindula was
out collecting charcoal. He sent a party of
men to ask if we should remain next day - an
old unintellectual looking man was among the
number sent - He had 27 rings of elephants skin
on his arm - all killed by himself by the spear
alone - Had given up fighting elephants since
the Mazitu came - They had not come to this
village lately as we heard. They passed away
to the [...]South East of it - They took all the crop
of last year, and the chief alone has food -
He gave us some which was very acceptable
as we got none at the two villages south of this
Kanyindula came himself in the evening
an active-stern looking man but we got
on very well with him -

17th

Kanyindulas people say that they were taught to smelt iron by Chisumpi which is the name of Mulungu (God) & that they came from Lake Nyassa originally - If so they are greatly inferior to the Manganja on the Lake in pottery for the fragments as well as modern whole vessels are very coarse The ornamentation omitted or by dots [Drawing of ornamentations described in text.] they never heard of Eorohtes but know hail - the lightning strikes trees. The tree Mfu or Mō having sweet scented leaves yields an edible plum in clusters Buabwa another edible fruit tree with palmated leaves. Mbéu a climbing arboraceous plant yields a very pleasant fruit which tastes like gooseberries - seeds very minute -

18th

Rain fell heavily yesterday afternoon & was very threatening today - remain to sew

19th

a calico tent.

[0217]

211

20th

Nov^r

[1]866

Kanyindula came with three carriers this morning instead of five, and joined them in demanding prepayment - It was natural for him to side with them as they have more power than he has - In fact the chiefs in these parts all court their people, and he could feel more interest in them than in an entire stranger whom he might never see again.

We came on without his people leaving two to guard the loads - About four miles up the valley we came to a village named Kanyenjere Mponda at the fountain eye of the Bua - & thence sent men back for the loads while we had the shelter of good huts during a heavy thunder shower which fell & made us willing to remain all night - The valley is lovely in the extreme the mountains on each side are gently rounded, and as usual covered over with tree foliage - except where the red soil is exposed by recent grass burnings - The valley itself has many large trees which give it quite an English park appearance Quartz rocks jut out, and much drift of the material [...]has been carried down by the gullies into the bottom - These gullies being in compact clay - The water has but little power of erosion so they are worn deep but narrow - some fragments of titaniferous iron ore with Haematite changed by heat and magnetic, lay in the gully which had worn itself a channel of the North side of the village - The Bua like most African streams whose sources I have seen rises in an oozing boggy spot - Another stream the Tembure rises near the same spot & flows N. W. into the Loangwa - we saw Shuare palms in its bed -

[0218]

212

21st
Nov^r
1866

Left Bua fountain ^ Lat. 13° 40 South and made a short march to Mokatoba a stockaded village where the people refused to admit us till the headman came - They have a little food here and sold us some - we have been on rather short commons for some time, and this made our detention agreeable We rose a little in Altitude after leaving this morning, then though in the same valley made a little descent towards the NNW High winds came driving over the Eastern

range which is called Michinje, and
bring [...] large masses of clouds which are
the rain givers - - They seem to come
from the South East - Scenery of the
valley lovely & such in the extreme - All
the foliage is fresh washed & clean -
young herbage is bursting through the
ground - air deliciously cool - The
birds are singing joyfully - one called
Mzie is a good songster with a loud
melodious voice - Large game abound[
ant but we do not meet with it.
We are making our way slowly to the
North where food is said to be abundant
I divided about 50 lbs of powder among
the people of my following to shoot
with, and buy goats, or other food as
we could - This reduces our extra loads
to three - four just now Simon being
sick again - He rubbed goats fat on a blistered surface
this causes an eruption of pimples -
People assent by lifting up the head
instead of nodding it down as we
do - Deaf Mutes are said to do the
same -

[0219]

213

22^d
Nov^r
1866

Leave Mokatoba village and proceed down the
valley which on the North is shut up apparently by
a mountain called Kokwe - We crossed the Kasamba
about two miles from Mokatoba & yet found it
though so near its source four yards wide & knee
deep - Its source is about a mile above Mokatoba
in the same valley with the Bua & Tembwe - We
were told that Elephants were near & we saw where
they had been an hour before but after looking
about could not find them - An old man in the
deep defile between Kokwe & Yasika mountains
pointed to the latter & said "Elephants! why
there they are - they are always there - Elephants
or tusks walking on foot are never absent"
but though eager for flesh we could not give him

credit and went down the defile which gives rise to the Sandili R^r Where we crossed it in the defile it was a mere rill having large trees along its banks - Yet it is said to go to the Loangwa of Zumbo N. W or N.N.W. We were now in fact upon the slope which inclines to that river, and made a rapid descent in altitude - We reached Sihibe's vil on the base of a rocky detached hill - no food to be had - all taken by Mazitu & Sihibe gave me some Masuko fruit instead - They find that they can keep the Masitu off by going up a rocky eminence and hurling stones & arrows down on the invaders - They can defend themselves also by stockades & these are becoming very general.

23^d

On leaving Sihibe's vil. we went to a range of hills & after passing through found that we had a comparatively level country on the North - It would be called a well wooded country if we

[0220]

214

23^d
Nov^r
1866

looked at it only from a distance - It is formed into long ridges all green & wooded but clumps of large trees where villages have been or are still situated shew that the sylvan foliage around & over the whole country is that of mere hop poles - The whole of this upland region might be called woody - If we bear in mind that where the population is dense, & has been long undisturbed the trees are kept down to the size of low bush - Large districts are kept

to about the size of hop poles growing on
pollards three or four feet from the
ground by charcoal burners who in all
instances are smiths too - Here the trees are
somewhat largers but mere poles except
round villages, and at sepulchral groves
which shew what the country would
become were it entirely uninhabited -

On reaching Zeore's village on the
Lokuzhwa we found it stockaded &
the stagnant pools round three sides of it
the Mazitu had come - pillaged all the
surrounding villages - looked at this &
went away - so they had food to sell
People here call themselves Echéwa &
have a different marking from the
Atumboka - The men have the hair
dressed as if a number of the hairs of
Elephants tails were stuck around the
head - women wear a small lip ring
and a straw or piece of stick in the lower
lip which dangles down about level
with the lower edge of the chin - their
clothing in front very scanty - the
men know nothing of distant places
the Manganja being a very stay at home

[0221]

215

people - the stockades are crowded with
huts & the children have but small room to
play in the narrow spaces between.

25th
Nov^r
1866

Sunday at Zeore's - men thought we
prayed for rain which was much needed
the cracks in the soil have not yet come
together by the swelling of soil produced
by moisture - I disabused their minds
about rain making prayers - The head[-]
man is intelligent -

26th

I did not intend to notice the Lokuzhwa
It is such a contemptible little rill and
not at present running, but in going to
our next point Mpande's village we go
along its valley & cross it several times,
as it makes for the Loangwa in the
North - The valley is of rich dark red
loam - and so many lillies of the
Amaryllis kind have established them[-]
selves [...]so completely ^ as to mask the colour
of the soil - They form a cover[...]ing of pure
white where the land has been cleared by the
hoe - as we go along this valley to the
Loangwa We descend in altitude - It is
said to rise at "Nombe rume" as we
formerly heard - country covered with
diminutive forest - Elephants had been
digging their food in the night but we
saw none -

Zeore's people would not carry without
prepayment, so we left our extra loads
& went on - sent men back for them,
they did not come - till 27th & then two

27th

of my men got fever - I groan in
spirit and do not know how to make
out gear into nine loads only - It is the
knowledge that we shall be detained some two
to three months during the heavy rains that
makes me cleave to it as means of support.

[0222]

216

28th

Nov^r

1866

Two Men sick with fever - advantage has
been taken by the people of spots where
the Lokuzhwa goes round three parts

of a circle to erect their sotcekaded villages
 this is the case here, and the water
 being stagnant engenders disease - -
 The country abounds in a fine ^ light olive
 flowering ^ perennial pea which the people make
 use of as a relish - at present the
 blossoms only are collected - & boiled,
 on enquiring the name - Chilobe -
 the men asked me if we had none
 in our country - On replying in the
 negative, They looked with pity on us,
 "What a wretched country not to have
 Chilobe" - It is on the highlands alone;
 We never saw it elsewhere - another species

chilobee
 Weza
 its name

of pea ^ with reddish flowers is eaten in the same way but
 it has [...]spread [...]but little - ^ in comparison = It is worth remarking
 that Porridge of maize or sorghum is never
 offered without some pulse - beans, or
 bean leaves - or flowers - They seem to feel
 the need of it or of pulse which is richer
 in flesh farmers, than the porridge -

Last night a loud clapping of hands by
 the men was followed by several half
 suppressed screams by a woman - they
 were quite eldrich, as if she could not get
 them out - Then succeeded a lot of utterances
 as if she were in extacy - to which a man
 responded "Moio" "Moio" - the utterances so
 far as I could catch were in five syllable
 snatches - abrupt - laboured - I wonder
 if this "bubbling or boiling over" has been
 preserved as the form in which the true
 prophets by old gave forth their "burdens"
 one sentence frequently repeated towards

[0223]

217

the dose of the effusion was "linyama uta"
 "flesh of the bow" shewing that the Pythoness ~~loved~~
 loved venison killed by the bow - The people
 applauded, and attended, I suppose hoping
 that rain would follow her efforts - next

day she was duly honoured by drumming & dancing -

The beliefs prevalent seem to have been persistent in certain tribes - that strange idea of property in man that may be sold to another is [...]among the Arabs - Manganja - Makoa - Waiyau but not among Kaffers or zulus - & Bechuanas. If we exclude the Arabs two families of Africans alone are slavers on the East side of the Continent.

29th
Nov
1866

March to Chilunda's on Embara's still on the Lokuzhwa now a sand stream about 20 yards wide with pools in its bed - Its course is pretty much North or N.N.W. We are now near the Loangwa ~~and not far from its source~~ country covered with dense d[...]warf forest - & the people collected in stockades - This v[...]illage is on a tong[...]ue of land (between Lokuzhwa & another sluggish rivulet) chosen for its strength - It is close to a hill named Chipemba, and there are ranges of hills both East and West in the distance - Emboro came to visit us soon after we arrived, a tall man with a yankee face - Was very much tickled when asked if he were a Matumboka - After indulging in laughter at the idea of being one of such a small tribe of Manganja he said proudly "that he belonged to the Echewa who inhabited all the country to which I was going". They are generally smiths a mass or iron had just been brought in to him from some outlying furnaces - It is made into hoes which are sold for native cloths down the Loangwa.

[0224]

218

3^d Dec
1866

March through a hilly country covered with
dwarf forest - to Kande's village still on the
Lokuzhwa - We made some Westing - The village
was surrounded by a dense hedge of bamboo &
a species of bushy fig that loves ed[...]-ges of water
bearing streams - It is not found where
the moisture is not perennial - Kande is
a fine tall smith - a volunteer joined us here
asked Kande if he knew his antecedents - He
had been bought by Babisa at Chipeta, and
left at Chilunda's & therefore belong to no one
Two Waiyau then volunteered and as they
declared their masters were killed by the
Mazitu and Kande seemed to confirm them
we let them join - In general run away
slaves are bad characters but these two
seem good men, and we want them to fill
up our complement - The first volunteer
we employ as goat herd -

A continuous tapp tapping in the villages
shews that bark cloth is being made - The
bark on being removed from the tree is
steeped in water or in a black muddy hole
till the outer of the two inner barks can
be separated - Then commences the tapping
with a mallet to separate & soften the
fibres - The head is often of ebony & the
face cut into small furrows
[Drawing of pattern described in text.] which

[Drawing of mallet described in text.] without breaking separate &
soften the fibres

4 Dec^r

Marched Westwards over a hilly
dwarf ^ forest covered [-...]country As we advanced
trees increased in size but no people

at
Katette

inhabited it - spent a miserable night
wettered by heavy thunder shower which
lasted a good while - Morning Muggy

clouded all over & rolling thunder in distance

[0225]

219

5th
Dec^r
1866

Went three hours with for a wonder no water - made Westing chiefly & got on to the Lokuzhwa again - All the people are collected on it and this village had been selected for the sake of its strong bamboo hedge -

6th

Too ill to march.

7th

Went on & passed Mesumbe's village - also protected by Bamboo's & came to the hill Mparawe with a village perched on its Northern base & well up its sides Lokuzhwa flows at the bottom - the top of hill is rounded off as if of granite below it is fine grained schist like that of Lupata near Tette - - Mazitu have caused this congregation on hills & strongly fenced spots - The Babisa have begun to imitate them by attacking and plundering Manganja villages - Muasi's brother was so attacked & now is here & eager to attack in return - In various villages we have observed miniature huts about two feet high - very neatly thatched and plastered Here we noticed them in dozens - On enquiring we were told that when a child or relative dies one is made

and when any pleasant food is cooked or beer brewed, a little is placed in the tiny hut for the departed soul which is believed to enjoy it.

The Lokuzhwas is here some fifty yards wide & running - Numerous large potholes in the fine grained schist in its bed shew that much water has flowed in it.

A good deal of beans called Chitetta is eaten here - Chiteta is an [...]old acqu[-]aintance in the Bechuana country

[0226]

220

8th
Dec^r
1866

where it is called Mositsane & is a mere plant, then it becomes a tree from 15 to 20 feet high - The root is used for tanning - The bean is pounded & then put into a sieve of bark cloth to extract by repeated mashings the excessively astringent matter it contains - Where the people have plenty of water, as here, it is used copiously in various processes - Among Bechuanas it is scarce and its many uses unknown - The pod becomes from 15 to 18 inches long - & an inch in diameter

9th

A poor child whose mother had died was unprovided for - no one not a relation will nurse another's child - It called out piteously for its mother by name - and the women like the servants in the case of the poet Cowper when a child, said "She is coming" I gave it a piece of bread - but it was too far gone & is dead today

An alarm of Mazitu sent all the

villagers up the sides of Mparawe ~~this~~
 this morning - the affair was a chase
 of a hyaena - but everything is Mazitu,
 Babisa came here but were surrounded
 and nearly all cut off - M[...]-uasi was
 so eager to be off with a party to return
 the attack on the Mazitu that when deputed
 by th headman to give us a guide he
 got the man to turn at the first village
 We had to go on without guides & made
 almost due North -

11th

detained in forest at a place called Chonde ^ Forest
 by set in rains - It rains every day
 & generally in the afternoon but the
 country is not wetted till the "set in"
 rains commence - the cracks in the

[0227]

221

11th
 Dec^r
 1866

soil then fill up - Everything rushes
 up with astonishing rapidity - the grass
 is quite crisp & soft - After the fine
 grained schist we came on granite with large
 flakes of talc in it - Forest of good sized trees
 many of them Mopane - the birds now
 make much melody & noise - all intent
 on breeding.

12th

Across an undulating forest country
 N. got a man to shew us [the] way if a
 pathless forest can so be called - He
 used a game path as long as it ran N - but

left it when it deviated - Rested under a
Baobab tree with a Marabou's nest -
a bundle of sticks - on a branch - young ones
uttered a hard Chuck chuck when the old
ones flew over them - a sun bird with
bright scarlet throat & breast had its nest
on another branch - it was formed like
the weaver's nest but without a tube

[Drawing of sun bird's nest.] Observed the dam picking out
insects from the bark & leaves of
the Baobab keeping on the wing
the while - It would thus appear to be
insectivorous as well as a honey biber
Much spoor of Elands - zebras - gnus
Kamas - Pallahs - buffaloes - Reedbucks
with tsetse their parasites

13th

Reached the Tokosusi which is
said to rise at Ñombe Rume - about
20 yards wide & knee deep - swollen
by the rains - had left a cake of black
tenacious mud on its banks - (Got
(a pallah & a very strange flower
called Katende - It was a whorl of

~~14~~th

72 flowers spring from a flat
round root - but it cant be described)

[0228]

222

143th
Dec^r
1866

Our guide would have crossed the
Tokosusi which was running N W to
join the Loangwa & then gone to that

river but always when we have any
difficulty the "lazies" exhibit themselves,
We had no grain & three remained
behind spending 4 hours at what we
did in an hour & a quarter - our guide
became tired & turned, not before securing
another, but he would not go over the
Loangwa - no one likes to go out of his
own country - He would go Westwards
to Maranda's & no where else - a "set in"
rain came on after dark, and we

14th

went on through slush - the trees sending
down heavier drops than the showers
as we neared the Loangwa we
forded several deep gullies all flowing
N. or N W into it - the paths were
running with water - and when
we emerged from the large Mopane
forest we came on the plain of excessive[-]
ly adhesive mud on which Maranda's
strong hold stands - the village is on
the left bank of Loangwa, here a good
sized river - people all afraid of
us - and we mortified to find that
food is scarce - the Mazitu have
been here three times, and the fear
they have inspired, though they were
successfully repelled, has prevented
agricultural operations from being
carried on -

15th

A flake of reed is often used in
surgical operations among the
natives as being sharper than their
knives -

[0229]

16th
Dec^r
1866

We could get no food at any price on 15th so crossed the Loangwa & judged it to be from seventy to a hundred yards wide - Deep at present and it must always be so for some Atumboka submitted to the Mazitu, and ferried them over & back again - The river is said to rise in the North - has alluvial banks with large forest trees along them and all the other water courses - bottom sandy & great sand banks are in it like the Zambesi - no guide would come so we went on without - the "lazies" of the party seized the opportunity of remaining behind wandering as they said though all the cross paths were marked - this evening we secured the Latitude 12° 40' 48" S which would make our crossing place about 12° 45' S - clouds prevented observations as they usually do in the rainy season -

17th

Went on through a bushy country without paths and struck the Pamazi a river of 60 yards wide in steep banks & in flood - held on as well as we could through a very difficult country - the river holding us N.W. Heard Hippopotami in it - game abundant but wild shot two Poku's here called Tsebuelas which drew a hunter to us who consented for meat and pay to shew us a ford - He said that the Pamazi rises in a range of mountains we can now see - In [...] general we could see no high ground during our marches for the last fortnight - We forded it thigh deep on one side & breast deep on the other - We made only about 3 miles of North[-] ing and found the people on the left bank uncivil - Would not lend a hut so we soon put up a tent with cloth & branches - a piece of prepared

[0230]

17th
Dec^r
1866

of D^r Stenhouse's process was invaluable
on this & many other occasions - It
is far superior to Mackintosh's

18th

As the men grumbled at their feet being
pierced by thorns in the trackless portions
we had passed, I was anxious to get a
guide but the only one we could secure
would go to Molenga's only, so I submitted
though this led us East instead of North -
When we arrived we were asked what
we wanted seeing we bought neither
slaves nor ivory - replied it was much
against our will we came, but the guide
had declared that this was the only way
to Cazembe's our next stage - to get
rid of us they gave a guide & we set
forward Northwards through Mopane
forest the trees of which were very
large - It is perfectly level & after rains
the water stands in pools - but during
most of the year it is without water
the trees here were very large & planted
some 20 or 30 yards apart - no branches
on their lower parts enables the game to
see very far - now the lower parts
where the rain had stood a few hours
wore a carpet of bright green short
grass instead of water - shot a gnu but
wandered in coming back to the party
and did not find them till it was
getting dark - many parts of the plain
are thrown up into heaps of about the
size of one's cap by crabs probably which
now being hard are difficult to walk
over - Under the trees it is perfectly smooth
the Mopane is the iron wood of the Portuguese
Pao Ferro

[0231]
225

18th
Dec^r
1866

It is pretty to travel & in & look at in the bright sunshine of early morning but the leaves hang perpendicularly as the sun rises high & afford little or no shade through the day - the land is clayey & becomes hard baked thereby - We observed that the people had placed corn granaries at different parts of this forest & had been careful to leave no track to them - a provision in case of further visits of Mazitu - King-hunters abound and make the air resound with their stridulous notes which commence with a sharp shrill cheep & then follow a succession of notes which resemble a pea in a whistle - Another bird is particularly conspicuous at present by its chattering activity - it is nest consists of a bundle of fine seed stalks of grass the free ends being left untrimmed - & no attempt of concealment made - they hang at the ends of branches - many other birds are now active and so many new notes are heard that it is probably this is a richer ornithological region than the Zambesi - Guinea fowl & francolins are in abundance and so indeed are all the other kinds of game as zebras - Pallahs - gnus -

19th

Got a fine male Kudu - We have no grain and live on meat alone - I am better off than the men in as much I get a little goats milk besides - the kudu stood 5 ft 6 in high - horns 3 feet on the straight

20th

Cazembe's a miserable hamlet of a few
huts - people here very suspicious -
will do nothing but with a haggle for
prepayment - could get no grain nor
even native herbs though we rested a
day to try -

[0232]
226

21st
Dec^r
1866

All the "heavy hung" Africans are slave dealers
or vendors - the more moderately developed
are neither - ?

After a short march we came to the
Nyamazi another considerable rivulet
coming from the North to fall into the
Loangwa - It has the same character
of steep alluvial banks as Pamazi &
about same width but much shallower
loin deep but somewhat swollen -
from 50 to 60 yards wide - We came to
some low hills of coarse sandstone,
and on crossing these we could see by
looking back that for many days we
had been travelling over a perfectly level
valley clothed with a mantle of forest,
The barometers had shown no difference of
level from about 1800 feet about the sea
We began our descent into this great
valley when we left the source of the Bua,
and now these low hills called Ngale or
Ngalao though only 100 or so above
the level we left, shewed that we had
come to the shore of an ancient Lake
which probably was let off when the
rent of Kebra basa on the Zambesi was
made; for we found immense
banks of well rounded shingle above
They may be called mounds of shingle,
all of hard silicious schist with a

few pieces of fossil wood among them
The gullies reveal a stratum of this
well rounded shingle lying on a soft
greenish sandstone which again lies
on the coarse sandstone first observed
This shingle formation is identical
with that observed formerly below the

[0233]

227

21st
Dec
1866

Victoria falls, and the Nyamazi which
above the hills takes a NW - course (as we
go up) or rather South East course runs
in the shingle - We have the mountains
still on our N & N.W. & the called mountains
of Bisa or Babisa & from them the Nyamazi
flows while Pamazi comes round the
end or what appears to be the end of their

22^d

higher portion - shot a bush buck, and slept
on the left bank of Nyamasi - all the
people subsist on wild fruits & roots -
the Motondo is the most palatable fruit -
Kigelia seeds are a miserable fare - but the
fruit a huge thing is roasted & then the seeds
pounded - All complain of having had
their all taken by Mazitu, and are living
in expectation of a fresh visitation from
these pests; hence no corn is sown but
the old sorghum is left to sprout & give what
it will -

23^r

Hunger sent us on; for a meat diet is
far from satisfying - We all felt very

weak on it, and soon tired on a march,
but today we all hurried on to Kavimba's
who successfully beat off the Mazitu -
it is very hot, and between three & four
hours is a good days march - On
sitting down to rest before entering the
village we had been observed & all the
force of the village issued to kill
us as Mazitu - but when we stood up
the mistake was readily perceived & the
arrows were placed again in their quivers
In the hut I occupy four Mazitu shields
shew that they did not get it all their
own way - they are miserable imitations
of Zulu shields made of Eland & ~~bush~~
water buck's hides & ill sown -

[0234]

228

23^d
Dec^r
1866

A very small return present was
made by Kavimba and nothing could be
bought except at exorbitant prices - We

24th

remained all day on the 24 haggling and
trying to get some grain - He took a fancy
to a shirt and left it to his wife to bargain
for it - she got the length of cursing and
swearing - and we bore it but could get
only a small price for it - We resolved
to hold our christmas some other day and
in a better place - the women seem ill
regulated here - Kavimba's brother had
words with his spouse and at the end
of every burst of vociferation on both
sides called out "Bring the Muavi bring
the Muavi" or ordeal -

25th

no one being willing to guide us to
Moerwa's I hinted to Kavimba that
should we see a Rhinoceros I would
kill it - He came himself and led us on
where he expected to find these animals
but we saw only their footsteps -
We lost our four goats some where
stolen or strayed in the pathless forest
we do not know but the loss I felt
very keenly for whatever kind of food
we had a little milk made all right,
and I felt strong & well - but coarse
food hard of digestion without it
was very trying - We spent 26th in
searching for them but all in vain
Kavimba had a boy carrying two huge
elephant spears - with these he
attacks [...]at large animal single handed
We parted as I thought good friends
but a man who volunteered to
act as guide saw him in the forest
afterwards & was counselled to leave

[0235]

229

[2]6th

Dec^r

[1]866

us as we would not pay him - This hovering
near us after we parted makes me
suspect Kavimba of taking the goats but
I am not certain - The loss affected me more
than I could have imagined - A little indigestible
porridge of scarcely any taste is now my fare
and it makes me dream of better -

27

Our guide asked his cloth to wear in the way
as it was wet & raining & his bark cloth was

a miserable covering - I consented & he bolted the first opportunity - the forest being so dense he was soon out of reach of pursuit He had been advised to this by Kavimba & nothing else need have been expected - We then followed the track of a travelling party by Babisa - the grass springs up over the paths and they are soon lost - the rain had fallen early in these parts & the grass was all in seed - In the afternoon we came to the hills in the North where Nyamazi rises - went up the bed of a rivulet for some time & then ascended out of the valley - At the bottom of the ascent & in the rivulet the shingle stratum was sometimes 50 feet thick - then as we ascended we met Mica schist tilted on edge - then grey gneiss & last an igneous trap among quartz rocks with a great deal of bright mica & talc in them - on resting near the top of the first ascent two honey hunters came to us - they were using the honey guide as an aid - the bird came to us as they arrived - waited quietly during the half hour they smoked & chatted and then went on with them -

The tsetse which were very numerous at the bottom came up the ascent with

[0236]

230

27th
Dec^r
1866

us but as we increased our altitude by another thousand feet they gradually dropped off & left us - only one remained in the evening - and he seemed out of spirits - near sunset we encamped near water on the cool height & made our shelters with boughs of leafy trees Mine rendered perfect by Stenhouse's invaluable patent cloth which is very superior to Mackintosh - Indeed the India Rubber cloth is not to be named

on the same day with it

28th

Three men going to hunt bees came to us as we were starting and assured us that Moerwa's was near - The first party had told us the same thing and so often have we gone long distance as "pafupi" near, when in reality they were "patari" far - We think pafupi means "I wish you to go there" & patari the opposite - in this case near meant an hour and three quarters from our sleeping place to Moerwa's -

When we look back from the height to which we have ascended we see a great plain clothed with dark green forest except at the line of yellowish grass where probably the Loangwa flows - on the East & South East this plain is bounded as the extreme range of our vision by a wall of dim blue mountains 40 or 50 miles off - The Loangwa is said to rise in the Chibale country due North of this - (Malambwe in which district Moerwas village is situated) and to flow SE then round to where we found it

[0237]

231

[2]8th

[D]ec^r

[1]866

Moerwa came to visit me in my hut - a rather stupid man though he has a well shaped & well developed forehead - tried the usual little arts of getting us to buy all we need here though the prices are exorbitant - "no people in front" - "great hunger there" - "We must buy food here & carry it to support us" On asking the names of the next headmen he would not tell, till I told him to try and speak like a man - He then told us that the

first Lobemba chief was Motuna & the next Chafunga
We have nothing as we saw no animals in
our way hither and hunger is ill to bear - By giving
Moerwa a good large cloth he was induced to cook
a mess of Maére or Millet & elephants stomach,
It was so good to get a full meal that I could have
given him another cloth - and the more so as it was
accompanied by a message that he would cook
more next day & in larger quantity - on enquiring
next evening he said "the man had told lies" he
had cooked nothing more - He was prone to lie
himself and was a rather bad specimen of a chief

The Babisa have round bullet heads - snub
noses - often high cheek bones - upward slant of
eyes - look as if they had a lot of bushman blood
in them - a good many would pass for Bushmen
or Hottentots - Both Babisa and Waiyau may have
a mixture of the race giving them their roving
habits - the women have the fashion of exposing
the upper part of the buttocks by letting a very
stiff cloth fall down behind - Teeth filed to

[Drawing of fashion of women's skirt described in text.] points - no lip ring - the hair
plaited

so as to lie in a net at the back part
of the head - the mode of salutation
among the men is to lie down (nearly)
on the back clapping the hands &
making a rather inelegant half kissing
sound with the lips -

[0238]

232

29th
Dec^r
1866

Remain a day at Malambwe but get nothing
save a little Maere which grates in the teeth &
in the stomach - to prevent the Mazitu starving
them they cultivate small round patches placed
at wide intervals in the forest with which
the country is covered - the spot some ten
yards or a little more in diameter is manured
with ashes & planted with this millet & pumpkin
in order that should Mazitu come they may be
unable to carry off the pumpkins and be

be unable to gather the millet the seed of which is very small - they have no more valour than the other Africans but more craft and are much given to falsehood - They will not answer common questions except by misstatements, but this may arise in our case from our being in disfavour because we will not sell all our goods to them for ivory -

30th

Marched for Chitembo's because it is said he has not fled from the Mazitu & therefore has food to spare - While resting in the way Moerwa with all his force of men women & dogs came up on his way to hunt elephants - the men furnished with big spears - the dogs to engage the animals attention while they spear it - The women to cook the meat, and make huts - and a smith to mend any spear that may be broken -

We pass over level plateaux on which the roads are wisely placed & do not feel that we are travelling in a mountainous region - it is all covered with dense forest which in many cases is poll[...][-] ed from being cut for bark cloth or for hunting purposes - Masuko

[0239]
233

30th
Dec^r
1866

abounds - From the Caesalpiniae & gum copal trees bark cloth is made - grass short seeding at 2 ^ & 3 feet

We now come to large masses of Haematite which is often ferruginous conglomerate too - much many quartz pebbles being intermixed - It seems as if when the Lakes existed in the lower lands, the higher gave forth great

quantities of water from chalybeate fountains
which deposited this iron ore - Grey granite
or quartz with talc in it or gneiss lie under
the Haematite -

The forest resounds with singing birds
intent on nidification - Francolins abound
but are wild - "Whip poor wills" & another
which has a more a more laboured ^ treble note &
voice "oh oh oh" - gay flowers blush unseen - but the
people have a good idea of what is eatable
and what not - I looked at a womans basket
of leaves which she had collected for supper,
and it contained eight or ten kinds - ^ with mushrooms
& orchidaceous flowers - We have a succession
of showers today from NE & ENE - We are
uncertain when we shall come to a village as
the Babisa will not tell us where they are
situated - In the evening we encamped beside
a little rill running Northwards, and made
our shelters but we had so little to eat that I
dreamed the night long of dinners I had eaten,
and might have been eating; but I shall make
this beautiful land better known - which is
an essential part of the process by which
it will become the "pleasant haunts of men"
it is impossible to describe its rich luxuriance
but most of it running to waste through
the slave trade & internal wars -

[0240]

234

31st
Dec^r
1866

When we started this morning after rain
all the trees & grass dripping, a lion roared
but we did not see him - A woman had
come a long way & built a neat miniature
hut in the burnt out ruins of her mother's
house - The food placed in it & the act of
filial piety no doubt comforted this poor
mourner's heart -

Arrived at Chitembo's village & found
it deserted - the Babisa dismantle their
huts and carry off the thatch to their gardens
where they live till harvest is over - this

fallowing of the framework destroys many insects, but we observed that whereon Babisa and Arab slavers go they leave the breed of the domestic bug - ! It would be well if that were all the ill they did - Chitembo was working in his garden when we arrived, but soon came and gave us the choice of all the standing huts - an old man much more frank & truthful than our last headman - says that Chitapanga is paramount chief of all the Abemba

Three or four women whom we saw performing a rain dance at Moerwas were here doing the same - their faces smeared with meal, and axes in their hands, imitating as well as they could the male voice - Got some Maére or millet here and a fowl -
(We now end 1866 - has not been so fruitful or useful as I intended - Will try to do better in 18667 and be better - more gentle & loving and may the Almighty to whom I commit my way bring my desires to pass, and prosper me - Let all the sins of /66 be blotted out for Jesus sake)

[0241]

235

[1]st
[J]anuary
[1]867 -

May he who was full of grace & truth impress his character on mine - grace = eagerness to shew favour
truth = truthfulness - sincerity - honour - for his mercy's sake -

We remain today at Mbulukuta - Chitembos district by the boy's desire & because it is Newyearsday & because we can get some food - It is also set in rain

2^d
3^d

Remain on account of a threatened set in rain & cleared up - 3^d showery - & drizzly all day - Bought a senze - Aulocaudatus Swinderianus - a rat looking animal but I was glad to get anything in the shape of meat -

4th

a set in rain - Boiling point shews an altitude of 3565 feet above the sea - Barometer 3983 ft D^o - We get a little Maere here I prefer it to getting drenched and our goods spoiled - we have neither sugar nor salt so have no soluble goods, but cloth & gunpowder get damaged easily - It is hard fare & scanty - I feel always hungry and am constantly dreaming of better food when I should be sleeping - savoury viands of former times come vividly up before the imagination, even in my waking hours - this is rather odd as I am not a dreamer; indeed scarcely ever dream but when going to be ill or actually so -

We are on the Northern brim or North Western rather of the great Loangwa vally we lately crossed, and the rain coming from the East strikes it & is deposited both above & below while much of the valley itself was not yet well wetted - Here all the grasses have run up to seed - yet are not more than two feet ^ or so in the seed stalks - The pasturage is very fine - The people employ these continuous or set in rains for hunting the elephant - they get bogged and sink in from fifteen to eighteen inches in soft mud & even he, the strong one, feels it difficult to escape

[0242]

236

5th

Jany
18667

Still storm stayed - rains heavy - we shall be off as soon as we get a fair day -

6th

After service two men came & said that they were going to Lobemba & would guide us to Motuna's village - another came a day or two ago but he had such a villainous look we all shrank from him - this man['s] face pleased us, but he did not turn

7th

out all we expected for he guided us away Westwards without a path - It was a drizzling rain and this made us averse to striking off in the forest without him - no inhabitants now except at wide intervals - and no animals either - In the afternoon we came to a deep ravine full of gigantic with the Mavoche R^r at bottom timber trees & Bamboos - ^the dampness had caused the growth of lichens all over the trees & the steep descent was so slippery that two boys fell & he with the chronometers twice - this was a misfortune as it altered the rates as was seen by the first comparison of them together in the evening - no food at Motuna's village yet the headman tried to extort two fathoms of calico on the ground that he was owner of the country - Offered to go out of his village and make our own sheds on "God's land" - That is where it is uncultivated rather than have any words about it - He then begged us to stay - a mountain called Chikokwe appeared W - SW - from this village - It was very high and the people there are called Matumb[a] this part here is named Lokumbi - but whatever the name all the people are Babisa or the dependants of the Babisa reduced by their own slaving habits to a miserable jungly state - They feed

[0243]

7th

January

1867

much on wild fruits - roots & leaves yet are
generally plump - they use a wooden hoe
for sowing their Maere -
[Drawing of the v-shaped wooden hoe described in text.] It is a sort of
V shaped implement made from a branch
with another springing out of it is, about an
inch in diameter at the sharp point & with
it they claw the soil after scattering the seed
about a dozen young men were so employed
in the usual small patches as we passed

8th

in the morning -

The country now exhibits the extreme of leafiness
the undulations are masses of green leaves -
As far as the eye can reach with distinctness
it rests on a mantle of that hue, and beyond the
scene becomes dark blue - Near at hand many
gay flowers peep out - Here & there the scarlet martagon
(Lilium Chalcedonicum) - bright blue or yellow gingers -
Red - orange - yellow & pure white orchids - pale
lobelias &c but they do not mar the general
greenness - as we ascended higher on the plateau
grasses which have pink & reddish brown
seed vessels imparted distinct shades of their
colours to the lawns & were grateful to the eye
We turned aside in our march early to avoid
being wetted by rains & took shelter in some
old Babisa sheds - these when the party is a
slaving one are built so as to form a circle
with but one opening - A ridge pole or rather a
succession of ridge poles form one long shed
all round with no partitions in the roof shaped
hut.

[9]th

Ascended a hardened sandstone range - Two men
who accompanied our guide calling out
every now & then to attract the attention of
the honey guide, but none appeared - A
water buck had been killed & eaten at one spot

the ground shewing marks of a severe struggle

[0244]

238

9th
Jany
1867

but no game was to be seen - Buffaloes & Elephants come here at certain seasons at present they have migrated elsewhere The valleys are very beautiful - The oozes are covered with a species of short wiry grass, which gives the valleys the appearance of well kept gentlemen's parks, but they are full of water to overflowing - Immense sponges in fact, and one has to watch carefully in crossing them to avoid plunging into deep water hole made by ^ the feet of elephants or buffaloes - in the ooze generally the water comes half way up the shoe & we go plash, plash, plash! in the lawn like glade - No people here now in these lovely wild valleys, but today we came to mounds made of old for planting grain, and slag from iron furnaces - The guide rather offended because he did not get meat or meal though he is accustomed to leaves at home, and we had none to give except by wanting ourselves - He found a mess without much labour in the forest - My stock of meal went done today, but Simon gave me some of his - It is not the unpleasantness of eating unpalatable food that teases one, but we are never satisfied - I could brace myself to dispose of a very unsavoury mess, and think no more about it - but this "Maere" engenders a craving which plagues day and night incessantly -

10th

Came near a herd of buffaloes
but heard them only - the under parts of the
trees are without branches & the animals
can see us long before we see them &
are off at full gallop - Cross Muasi flowing
strongly to the East to Loangwa -

[0245]

239

10th
[J]any
1867

In the afternoon an excessively heavy
thunderstorm wet us all to the skin before any
shelter could be made - Two wandered, and
other two remained behind - lost as our track
was washed out by the rains - The country is
a succession of enormous waves all
covered with jungle & no traces of paths -
We were in a hollow & our firing was not

11th

heard till this morning we ascended a
height and were answered - Thankful that
none was lost for a man might wander
a long time before reaching a village - Simon
gave me a little more of his meal this
morning, and went without himself - Took
my belt up three holes to relieve hunger - got
some wretched wild fruit like that called Jambos
in India, and at midday reached village of
Chafunga - Famine here too, but some men
had killed an elephant & came here to sell the
dried meat - it was high & so were their prices -
but we are obliged to give our best by this craving
hunger -

12th

Sitting down this morning near a tree my
head was just one yard off a good sized cobra

coiled up in the sprouts at its root - but it
was benumbed with cold - a very pretty little
puff-adder lay in the path, also benumbed,
seldom is any harm done by these reptiles
here - It is different in India - Houses here
flatter in the roof than they are nearer the edge
of the plateau, and a vegetable called "Lobanga"
is planted in the gardens for the sake of
its palmated leaves - We bought up all the
food we could get, and it did not suffice
for the marches we expect to make to get
to the ~~Zambesi~~ or Chambesi where food is
said to be abundant - We were therefore

[0246]

240

12th
Jany
1867

again obliged to travel on Sunday - We
had prayers before starting, but I
always feel that I am not doing
right - It lessens the sense of obligation
in the minds of my companions,
but I have no choice - We went along
a rivulet till it ended in a small lake

Mapam-
pa or

"Chimbwe" about five miles long, and
1½ broad - It had Hippopotami; and
the Poku fed on its banks -

15th

We had to cross the Chimbwe at its Eastern
end where it is fully a mile wide -
The guide refused to shew another and
narrower ford up the stream which

emptied into it from the East, and I
being the first to cross, it I neglected
to give orders about the poor little dog
Chitane - The water was waist deep,
the bottom soft peaty stuff with deep
holes in it, and the Northern side was
infested by leeches - The boys were like
myself, all too much engaged with
preserving their balance to think of the
spirited little beast, and he must have
swam till he sank - He was so useful
in keeping all the country curs off
our huts - none dared to approach
steal, & he never stole himself - then in
the march he took charge of the whole
party - running to the front & again
to the rear to see that all was right -
He was becoming yellowish red in
colour, and poor thing, perished
in what the boys all call Chitane's
water - He shared the staring of the people
with his master -

[0247]

241

16th
Jany
1867

March through the mountains which are of
beautiful white & pink dolomite scantily covered
with upland trees & vegetation - rain as usual
made us halt early and wild fruits helped
to induce us to stay -
Lighted on a party of people living on Masuko
fruit & making mats of the Shuare Palm petioles
We have hard lives ourselves - nothing but
a little Maere porridge & dampers - we roast a
little grain & boil it, to make believe, it is coffee -
the guide - a maundering fellow - turned
because he was not fed better than at home,
& because he knew that but for his obstinacy
we should not have lost the dog - It is needless
to repeat that it is all forest on the Northern
slopes of the mountains - open glade & miles
of forest - ground at present all sloppy - oozes
full & overflowing feet constantly wet - Rivulets rushing strongly

with clear water though they are in flood -
We can guess which are perennial & which
mere torrents that dry up - they flow Northwards
and Westwards to the ZChambezie -

17th

Detained in an ^ old Babisa slaving encampment by
by set in rains till noon then set off in the
midst of it came to hills of dolomite but all the
rocks were covered with white lichens (ash coloured)
the path took us thence along a ridge which separates
the "Lotiri" running Westwards and the "Lobo" going
Northwards - we came at length to the Lobo &
went along its banks till we reached the
village called "Lisunga" It was about five
yards broad & very deep - now in flood with clear water

[0248]

242

17th

January

1867

All the rivulets are now very deep and can
be crossed only by felling a tree on the bank
& letting it fall across - They do not abrade their
banks - vegetation protects them - Observed
that the Brown Ibis - a noisy bird - took
care to restrain his loud harsh noise when
driven from the tree in which his nest
was placed - and when about a quarter of
a mile off then commenced his loud
"Hā Hā Hā"

We came to Haematite - when in our descent
from the range behind "~~Mpini~~" Chitane we came to
Bar. 24.7 at 3 P.M. air 82° Probably the
springs which deposited this ore & formed the
conglomerate which it often is were not higher
than what this indicates -

18th

The headman of Lisunga - Chaokila - took our present
 & gave nothing in return - a deputy from
 Chitapangwa came afterwards & demanded a
 a larger present as he was the greater man,
 and if we gave him two fathoms of calico
 he would order all the people to bring plenty
 of food, not here only but all the way to
 the paramount chief of Lobemba, Chitapanga
 proposed that he should begin by ordering
 Chaokila to give us some in return for our
 present - This lad, as Chaokila told us, to the
 cloth being delivered to him - and we saw that
 all the starvelings south of the ZChambezie were
 poor dependants on the Babemba or
 rather their slaves who cultivate little, and in
 the rounded patches above mentioned, so as to
 prevent their conquerors from taking away
 more than a small share - the subjects are
 Babisa - a miserable lying lot of serfs -
 this tribe engaged in the slave trade & do still
 slave & the evil effects are seen in their

[0249]

243

[1]9th
 [J]anuary
 [1]867

depopulated country & utter distrust of every[-]
 one - Raining most of the day - Worked out
 the Longitude of the mountain station said to
 be Mpini but better to name them Chitane's
 as I could not get the name from our maunder[-]
 -ing guide - He probably did not know it -

[T]op of
 [M]ountain
 [B]ar -
 [5]638 ft

[Two lines of geographical calculations.]
 Famine and famine prices - people live on
 Mushrooms & leaves - of Mushrooms we observed

that they choose five or six kinds & reject
ten sorts - One species becomes as large as the
crown of a man's hat - It is pure white with
a blush of brown in the middle of the crown -
and is very good roasted - It is named "Mo-
tente"

[Drawing of a mushroom.] another Mofeta
[Drawing of a mushroom.] 3^d Bosefwe
[Drawing of a mushroom.]

brownish
yellow

[Drawing of a mushroom.] 4th Nakabausa 5th Chisimbe
[Drawing of a mushroom.]
lobulated - green outside & pink & fleshy inside - as a relish to others
and they reject about ten sorts - some experience
must have been requisite to enable them to
distinguish the good from the noxious -

We got some elephant meat from the people
but high is no name for its condition - It was
very bitter, but used as a relish to the Maere porridge
none of the animal is wasted - skin & all is cut
up and sold - not one of us would touch it with
the hand if we had aught else - the gravy in which
we dip our porridge is like an aqueous solution
of aloes, but it prevents the heart-burn which
Maere causes when taken alone - I take Mushrooms
boiled instead, but the meat is never refused -
when we can purchase it, as it seems to ease
the feeling of fatigue which jungle fruit and
fare engenders - The appetite in this country is
always very keen and makes hunger worse to
bear - the want of salt probably makes
the gnawing sensation worse —

[0250]

244

20th
January
1867

A Guide refused so we marched without
one - Two Waiyau who joined us at

Kande's now deserted - they had been
very faithful all the way and took our
part in every case - Knowing the language
well they were extremely useful & no one
thought that they would desert for now
they were free men - Their masters had been
killed by the Mazitu, and this circumstance
and their uniform good conduct made,
us trust them the more than we should
have done any others who had been slaves -
They now left us in the forest and heavy
rain came on obliterating every vestige of
their footsteps - To make the loss the
more galling they took what we could least
spare - the medicine box - and they would
throw it away as soon as they came to ex-
amine their booty - One exchanged his load
that morning with a boy called Baraka who
had charge of the medicine box because he was
so careful - this was done, because with
it were associated five large cloths & all
Barakas clothing & beads of which he was
very careful - He offered to carry it a stage
to help him while he gave us his own load in
which there was no cloth in exchange - the
forest was so dense & high there was no chance
of getting a glimpse of them - They took all the
dishes - a large box of powder - the flour
we had purchased dearly to help us as far
as the Chambeze - the tools - two guns - &
a cartridge pouch - but the medicine chest

&

was the sorest loss of all - I felt as if
I had now recieved the sentence of death like
poor bishop Mackenzie - All the other goods
I had divided in case of loss or desertion
but never dreamed of losing the precious
quinine & other remedies - other losses

[0251]

20th
[J]anuary
1867

and annoyances I felt as just part s of that under-current of vexations which is not awanting in even the smoothest life - & certainly not worthy of being moaned over in the experience of an explorer anxious to benefit a country & people - but this loss I feel most keenly - Everything of this kind happens by the permission of One who watches over us with most tender care, and this may turn out for the best by taking away a source of suspicion among more superstitious charm-dreading people further North - I meant it as a source of benefit to my party & to the heathen -

We returned to Li[---]sunga - and got two men off to go back to Chafunga's village, and intercept the fugitives if they went there, but it is likely that having our supply of flour, they will give our route a wide berth & escape altogether - It is difficult to say from the heart - "Thy will be done" - but I shall try - These Waiyau had few advantages - sold into slavery in early life - they were in the worst possible school for learning to be honest & honourable - they behaved well for a long time, but we having had hard & scanty fare in Lobisa - wet & misery in passing through dripping forests - hungry nights & fatiguing days - their patience must have worn out, & they had no sentiments of honour or at least none so strong as we ought to have, they gave way to the temptation which their good conduct had led us to put in their way - Some we have come across in this journey seemed born essentially mean & base - a great misfortune to them & all who have to deal with them - they cannot be so blameable as those who have no natural tendency to meanness, & whose education has taught them to abhor it - True, yet this loss of medicine box gnaws at the heart terribly

[0252]

246

21st &
22^d

January
1867

Remained at Lisunga - raining nearly all day - and we bought all the Maere the chief would sell - We were now forced to go on and made for the next village to buy food - Want of food & rain are our chief difficulties now - More rain falls here on this Northern slope of the upland than elsewhere - clouds come up from the North & pour down their treasures in heavy thunder shews which deluge the whole country South of the edge of the plateau, the ^ rain clouds came from the West chiefly -

23^d

A march of 5 $\frac{3}{4}$ hours brought us ^ yesterday to a village, ^ Chibanda's stockade where "no food" was the case as usual - We crossed a good sized ^ the Mapampa Rivulet 10 yds probably, dashing along to the East - All the rest of the way was in dark forest -

24th3^d

Sent off the boys to the village of Muasi to buy food - If successful tomorrow we march for the Chambeze on the other side of which all reports agree in the statement that there plenty of food is to be had - We all feel weak & easily tired & an incessant hunger teases us, so it is no wonder though so large a space of this paper is occupied by stomach affairs - It has not been merely want of nice dishes, but real biting hunger & faintness -

24th

Four hours through unbroken dark forest brought us to the Movushi which here is a sluggish stream winding through & filling a marshy valley

a mile wide - It comes from S - E - & falls into the Chambeze as the Zambezi is here also called ^ a mistake about 2' North of our encampment - The village of Moaba is on the East side of the marshy valley of the Movushi & very difficult

[0253]

247

24th
[J]anuary
1867

to be approached as the water is chin-deep in several spots - I decided to make sheds on the West side & send over for food which - thanks to the Providence which watches over us, we found at last - A good supply of Maere & some ground nuts - but through all this upland region the trees yielding bark cloth or Nyanda are so abundant that the people are all well clothed with it, and care but little for our cloth - Red & pink beads are in fashion, and fortunately we have red-

25th

Remain and get our Maere ground into flour - Moaba has cattle, sheep & goats - The other side of the Chambeze has everything in still greater abundance - so we may recover our lost flesh - there are buffaloes in this quarter, but we have not got a glimpse of any - If game was to be had should I should have hunted but the Hopo way of hunting prevails, and we pass miles of hedges by which many animals must have perished - In passing through the forests it is surprising to see none but old footsteps of the game; but the Hopo destruction accounts for its absence - When the hedges are burned then the manured space is planted with pumpkins & calabashes

observed at Chibanda's a few green mushrooms which on being peeled shewed a pink fleshy inside - they are called Chisimba &

only one or two are put into the mortar in
which the women pound the other kinds
to give relish it was said to the mass - Could
not ascertain what properties Chisimba had

enquire

when taken alone - but Mushroom diet in
our experience is good only for producing
dreams of the roast beef of bygone days - The saliva
runs from the mouth in these dreams and the
pillow is wet with it in the mornings -

[0254]

248

25th
January
1867

Nothing can exceed the distrust of these
Babisa - nothing is done without prepayment
and we found that giving a present to a
chief was only putting it in his power to
cheat us out of a supper - They give
nothing to each other for nothing - If this
is enlargement of mind produced by
commerce, commend me to the untrading
African -
Fish now appear in the Rivulets - higher altitudes
have only small things not worth catching
an owl called "~~Tyune~~" makes the woods
resound by night & early morning with his notes which consist
of a loud double initial note & then a succession
of lower descending notes - Another new
bird or at least new to me makes the
forests ring -

When the vultures see us making our sheds
they conclude that we have killed some
animal, but after watching a while, &
seeing no meat, depart - this is suggestive
of what other things prove that it is only
by sight they are guided -

The colouring matter "Nkola" which seems
to be camwood is placed as an ornament

on the head and some is put on the bark
cloth to give it a pleasant appearance
the tree when cut is buried to bring out the
strong colour & then when it is developed
the wood is powdered

The Gum copal trees now pour out
gum where wounded and I have seen
masses of it fallen on the ground which
no doubt is the way the so called fossil
gum was formed - This tree is very
plentiful all over the regions we have
traversed - yields strong cordage & cloth -

[0255]

249

26th
January
1867

Went Northwards along Movushi near to its con[-]
-fluence with Chambeze and then took lodging in
a deserted temporary village - Went out in the
evening and got a Poku or Tsebula - full grown
male - It measured from snout to insertion of tail 5 ft 3
tail - 1 foot .. height at withers 3 feet
circumference of chest 5 feet
Face to insertion of horns 9½ inches
Horns measured on curve 16 inches
12 rings on horns & one had a ridge behind
½ inch broad - ¼ high & tapering up horn - Probably
accidental
colour Reddish yellow - dark points in front
of foot & on the Ears - Belly mainly white - The
shell went through from behind shoulder to spleen
and burst on the other side - yet he ran 100 yards
I felt very thankful to the Giver of all good for
this meat -

27th

Set in rain all morning but having meat
we were comfortable in the old huts - In changing
dress this morning I was frightened at my own
emaciation

28th

Went 5 miles along Mavushi & Chambeze to a crossing place said to avoid three rivers on the other side which require canoes just now and have none - Our Lat 10° 34' South - the Chambeze was flooded with clear water but the lines of bushy trees which shewed its real banks were not more than 40 yards apart - the ZChambeze shewed its usual character of abundant animal life in its waters and on its banks as it winded its way Westwards the canoe man was excessively suspicious when prepayment was asceded to he asked a price more then when promised that when we were all safely over he would have it kept the East on the South side as a hostage for this but - then ran away - they must cheat each other sadly -

[0256]

250

28th

January

1867

Went Northwards wading across two miles of flooded flats on to which the Clarias Capiusis - or s[...]-pecies of Siluris comes to forage out of the river - We had the Likindazi a sedgy stream with hippopotami in on our right - slept in forest without seeing anyone - Then next day we met with a party who had come from their village to look for us - We were now in Lobemba but these villagers had nothing - but hopes of plenty at Chitapangwa's - this village had half a mile of ooze & sludgy marshy in front of it - a stockade as usual - We observed that the people had great fear of animals at night - shut the gates carefully every night even of temporary villages - When at Molembe Chitapangwa's village afterwards two men were killed by a lion - and great fear of crocodiles was expressed by our canoe man at Chambeze where one washed in the margin of that river - there was evidence of abundance of game Elephants & buffaloes

but we saw none -

29th

When near our next stage end we were shewn
where lightning had struck - It ran down a gum copal
tree without damaging it - then ten yards horizontally,
dividing these into two streams it went up an anthill
the withered grass shewed its course very plainly -
Next day ^ (31st) on the banks of the ~~Lopure~~ Mabula we saw a dry
tree which had been struck - large splinters had
been riven off & thrown a distance of 60 yards in
one direction and thirty yards in another - only
a stump left and large patches of withered grass
where it had gone horizontally

30 -

Northwards through almost trackless dripping
forests & across oozing bogs -

31

Through forest but gardens of larger size
than in Lobisa now appear - A man offered
a thick bar of copper for sale - a foot by 8 inches
the huts all stockaded - The hard leafed acacia

[0257]

251

[3]1st
[Ja]nuary
[18]67

in abundance & mohempi - the valleys with
the oozes have a species of grass having
pink seed stalks & yellow seeds - this is very
pretty - At midday we came to the Lopiri the
rivulet which waters Chitapanga's stockade

and soon after found that his village has a triple stockade the inner being defended also by a deep broad ditch & hedge of a solanaceous thorny shrub - it is about 200 yards broad & five hundred long - the huts not planted very closely

The rivulets were all making for Chambeze they contain no fish except very small ones probably fry - On the other or Western side of the ridge near which "molemba" is situated fish abound worth catching -

Chitapangwa or Motoka as he is also called, sent to enquire if we wanted an audience - "We must take something in our hands the first time we came before so great a man" Being tired marching I replied "Not till the evening" sent notice at 5 PM of my coming - We passed through the inner stockade and then on to an enormous hut where sat Chitapangwa with three drummers and ten or more men with 2 rattles in their hands

[Drawing of a rattle.] the drummers beat furiously & the rattlers kept time to the drums two of them advancing & receding in a stooping posture with rattles near the ground, as if doing the chief obeisance but still keeping time with the others - I declined to sit on the ground and an enormous tusk was brought for me - chief saluted courteously a fat jolly face - legs loaded with brass & copper leglets - I mentioned our losses by the desertion of the Waiyau but his power is merely nominal & he could

[0258]

252

31st
January
1867

do nothing - After talking a while he came along with us to a group of cows & pointed out one "that is yours" said he The tusk on which I sat was sent after me too as being mine because I had sat upon it, He put on my cloth as token of acceptance

and sent two large baskets of sorghum to the hut afterwards - then sent for one of the boys to pump him after dark -

We found a small party of black Arab slave traders here from Bagamoio on the coast

1st
Feby
1867

and as the chief had behaved handsomely as I thought, I went this morning & gave him one of our best cloths - but when we were about to kill the cow a man interfered and pointed out a smaller one - Asked if this were the orders of the chief - the chief said that the man had lied but I declined to take any if he did not give it willingly - the slavers - the headman of which was Magaru Mafupi came & said that they were going

2^d

off on the 2^d but by payment I got them to remain a day and was all day employed in writing despatches -

3^d

Magaru Mafupi left this morning with a packet of letters for which he is to get Rs 10 at Zanzibar - they came by a much shorter route than we followed - in fact nearly due West or West SouWest but not a soul would tell us of this way of coming into the country - Bagamoio is only 6 hours North of Kinday harbour - It is possible that the people of Zanzibar did not know of it themselves as this is the first time they have come so far - the route is full of villages ^ and people who have plenty of goats and very cheap - they number 15

[3]^d
 [Fe]by
 [18]67

stations or sultans as they call the chiefs
 and will be at Bagamoio in two months

1st Chasa 2 Lombe 3 Uchere 4 Nyamiro
 5 Zonda 6 Zambi 7 Lioti 8 Merere 9 Kiranga -
 - bana 10 Nkongozi 11 Sombago 12 Sure
 13 Lomolasenga 14 Kapass 15 Chanze - They
 are then in the country adjacent to Bagamoio -
 Some of these places are two or three days apart
 from each other

They came to three large rivers - Rivers 1 Wembo - 2 Luaba
 3 Luvo - but I had not time to make further enquiries
 They had one of Spekes companions to Tanganyika
 with them named Ianje or Ianja who could
 imitate a trumpet by blowing into the palm of his
 hand - I ordered another supply of cloth and beads
 and I sent for a small quantity of coffee - sugar
 candles - French Preserved meats - a cheese in tin
 6 bottles port wine - quinine calomel & Resin of Jalap
 to be sent to Ujiji

[4]th

I proposed to go a little way East with their ^ route
 to buy goats but Chitapangwa got very angry
 saying I came only to shew my things & would
 buy nothing - Then altered his tone & requested
 me to take the cow first presented & eat it
 As we were all much in need I took it - We were
 to give only what we liked in addition - but this
 was a snare and when I gave two more
 cloths he sent them back and demanded a
 blanket - The boys alone have blankets
 told him they were not slaves & I could not
 take from them what I had once given - Though
 it is disagreeable to be this victimized - It is
 the first time we have tasted fat for six
 weeks & more -

6th

He came with his wife to see the instruments
I explained them as well as I could and the
books as well as the book of Books - to my

[0260]

254

6th

Feby

1867

statements he made intelligent remarks - Boys
sorely afraid of him - When Abraham does
not like to say what state he says to me I
"dont know the proper word" but when I speak
without him he soon finds them - He & Simon
though that talking in a cringing manner was
the way to win him over, so I let them try it
with a man he sends to communicate with
us - The result was this fellow wanted to open
their bundles - pulled them about, and kept them
awake most of the night. Abraham came at
night "Sir what shall I do" they wont let me
sleep" - you have had your own way and
must abide by it - He brought them over to me

7th

in the morning but soon dismissed both him
& them - Sent to the chief either to come to
me or say when I should come to him & talk;
said he would come when shaved but
afterwards sent a man to hear what I had to
advance - This I declined & when rain ceased
went myself -

Stated that I had given him four times
the value of his cow but if he thought
otherwise, let us take the four cloths to his
brother Moamba, and if he said that I had
not given enough I would buy a cow & send
it back - This he did not relish at all - "Oh
Great Englishman why should we refer

a dispute to an inferior - I am the great
chief of all this country" - "Ingleze mokolu"
You are sorry that you have to give so
much for the ox you have eaten - you
would not take a smaller & therefore, I
gratified your heart by giving the larger,
and why should not you gratify my
heart by giving cloth sufficient to cover
me & please me - " I said my cloths would

[0261]

255

[7]th
[Fe]by
[18]67

cover him & his biggest wife all over - He
laughed at this but still held out, and as we
have meat & he sent maize & calabashes,
I wait a day or two - He turns round & puts
the blame of greediness on me - I cannot
enter into his ideas, or see his point of view -
cannot in fact enter into his ignorance
his prejudices or delusions - hence cannot
pronounce a true judgment - It is as one
who has no humour cannot understand
one who has -

Rain & clouds so constantly, I could not get our
Latitude till last night 10° 14' 6" South - On 8th
got Lunars Long 31° 46' 45" East - Alt. above sea
4700 feet by Boiling Point & Barometer -

8th

Chief demands one of my boxes & a blanket -
Explained that one days rain would spoil their
contents & the boys who have blankets not being
slaves I could not take from them what I had
or more probably his men say
given - says he will take us back to the Loangwa
- make war and involve us in it - deprive us
of food - &c - Boys all terrified - He thinks that we
have some self interest to secure in passing

through the country, & therefore he has a right - to
a share in the gain - When told it was for
a public benefit - He pulled down the underlid
of the right eye - He believes we shall profit
by our journey though he knows not in
what way - .

It is possible only a coincidence but no
sooner do we meet with one who accom-
-panied Speke & Burton to Tanganyika than
the system of mulcting commenced - I have no
doubt but Janje told how his former
employers paid down whatever was demand[-]
-ed of them - Unfortunately my boys are
cowardly in the extreme, otherwise I question

[0262]

256

9th
Feby
1867

if this Chitapangwa or Motoka would dare
to follow us - they come to me & Simon
the most chickenhearted, was spokesman,
said the danger from which the Johanna men
fled was imaginary, this was real, therefore
they could not move though I wished to go -
I afterwards remembered that of this imaginary
danger. The same Simon conjured up all
our deaths by hundreds of Mazitu and all the
ground he had to go upon was two words
namely "Mazitu & Lipululu"! Therefore I
would have a good thick stick ready and if
he sat still when I said "go" I would soon make
him jump and do as he was bidden, but
those who have been slaves generally cringe
till "the end of the chapter" -

10th

Had service in the open air many looking
on - Spoke afterwards to the chief but
he believes nothing save what Speke and

Burton's man has told him - He gave
us a present of corn and ground nuts -
says he did not order the people not to sell
grain to us - We must stop & eat green
maize - He came after evening service

10th

and I explained a little to him - & shewed
woodcuts in Bible Dictionary which he
readily understood

11th

Chief sent us a basket of Hippopotamus
flesh from Chambeze, and a large one
of green maize - He says the three cloths
I offered are still mine - all he wants is a
box & blanket - if not a blanket a box must
be given - a tin one. He keeps out of my
way by going to the gardens every morning.
He is good natured and our intercourse is
a laughing one - but the boys betray their terror
in their tone of voice & render my words power -less

[0263]

257

[12]th
[Feb]ruary
1867

The black and white, and the brownish
grey water wagtails are remarkably tame - they
come about the huts & even into them and
no one ever disturbs them - they build their
nests about the huts - In the Bechuana country
a fine is imposed on any man whose boys
kills one but why no one can tell me - the
boys with me aver that they are not killed
because the meat is not eaten! - or because
they are so tame!!

Gave one of the boxes he offering a heavy Arab wooden one to preserve our things - declined to take it - as parted with our own partly to lighten a load -

[...]th

Abraham unwittingly told me that he had not given me the chief's statement in full when he pressed me to take his cow - It was take and eat the one you like & give me a blanket - Abraham said he has no blanket - Then he said to me "Take it & eat it & give him any pretty thing you like -" I was thus led to mistake the chief - and he believing that he had said explicitly he wanted a blanket for it naturally held out - It is difficult to get wretched cringing slavelings to say what one wants uttered - They either with enormous self conceit give other & as they think better statements - suppress them altogether or return false answers - This is the great & crowning difficulty of my intercourse -

I got ready to go but chief was very angry came with all his force & said that I wanted to go against his will & power though he wished to adjust matters & send me away nicely - does not believe that we have no blankets - It is hard to be kept waiting here

[0264]

258

13th
Feby
1867

but all may be for the best - It has always turned out so I trust in him on whom I can cast all my cares - The Lord look on this and help me - though I have these 9 boys they are so thoroughly useless except for running away I feel quite alone -

Gave chief some seeds - pease & beans -
He seemed thankful & returned little presents
of food & beer frequently - The beer of Maere
is stuffed full of the growing grain as it
begins to sprout - is as thick as porridge
very strong - bitter - & goes to the head - It requires
a strong digestion to overcome it -

14th

shewed chief one of the boys blankets which
he is willing to part with for two of our
cloths each of which is larger than it -
He declines to recieve it because we have
new ones - invited him since he dis-
believed my assertions to look in our
boxes and if he saw none to pay us a
fine for the insult - He consented in a
laughing way to give us an ox - All our
personal intercourse has been of the good
natured sort - It is the communications
with the boys by three men who are our
protectors or rather spies that is disagreeable
I wont let them bring these fellows near
me.

15th

He came early in the morning & I shewed
that I had no blanket - He took the old
blanket & said that the affair was ended,
A long misunderstanding would have been
avoided had Abraham told me fully what
the chief said -

16th

The chief offered me a cow for a piece
of red serge - & after a deal of talk and
Chitapangwa swearing that no demand

[0265]

[1]6th
[F]eby
1867

would be made after the bargain was concluded - I gave the serge - a cloth & a few beads for a good fat cow - the serge was two fathoms - & some that Miss Coutts gave me when leaving England in 1858

The chief is not so bad as the boys are so cowardly - They assume a chirping piping tone of voice in speaking to him, and dont say what at last has to be said because in their cringing souls they believe they know what should be said better than I do - It does not strike them in the least that I have grown grey amongst these people, and it is immense conceit in mere crawling slavelings to equal themselves to me - The difficulty is greater because when I do ask their opinions I only recieve the reply - "It is as you please Sir" Very likely some men of character may arise & lead them but such as I have would do little to civilize -

[1]7th

Too ill with Rheumatic fever to have service - This is the first attack of it I ever had & no medicine! but I trust in the Lord who healeth his people -

[1]8th

This cow we divided at once - Last one we cooked & divided a full hearty meal to all every evening - boys as I knew did not like this - now they shew their taste by selling good fat beef for a few squashy young calabashes & pumpkins which are nearly all water - but to these they were accustomed in early youth

The boom booming of water dashing

against or over rocks is heard at a
good distance from most of the burns
in this upland region - Hence it is
never quite still - The boys are very

[0266]

260

18th
Feby
1867

useless as assistants in observing
When I noticed it first in Lobisa - they
thought it was drums beating in the distance
the change in loudness &c when rain
fell told me a different tale which was
confirmed by the natives -
The rocks here are argillaceous schist
red & white - (Keel, Scottice)

19th

Chitapangwa begged me to stay another
day that one of the boys might mend his
blanket - It has been worn every night since
April - I being weak & giddy consented -
a glorious day of bright sunlight - after
a nights rain - We scarcely ever have
a 24 hours without rain and never
half that period without thunder -

The Camwood ?is here called Molombwa
and grows very abundantly - The
people take the bark - boil and, grind
it fine - It is then a splendid blood red -
and they use extensively as an ornament
sprinkling it on the bark cloth, or smearing
it on the head - It is in large balls, and
is now called Inkola - The tree has
pinnated alternate lanceolate leaves,
and attains a height of 40 or 50 ft
with a diameter of 15 or 18 inches
(finely ^ & closely veined above more widely beneath)

[Drawing of veined leaf described in text.]

[0267]

261

[1]9th

[F]ebruary

[1]867

I am informed by Abraham that the Nyumbo
Numbo or Mumbo ^is easily propagated by cuttings or by cuttings
of the roots - a bunch of the stalks is preserved
in the soil for planting next year & small
pieces are cut off & take root easily - & has a
pea shaped flower but he never saw the seed -
It is very much better here than I have seen
it elsewhere - and James says that in his
country it is quite white & better still - What
I have seen is of a greenish tinge after it is
boiled -

[20]th

Told the chief before starting that my heart
was sore because he was not sending me
away so cordially as I liked - He at once ordered
men to start with us and gave me a brass
knife with ivory sheath which he had long
worn, as a memorial - Shewed that we ought
to go North as if we made Easting we should
ultimately be obliged to turn West and all our
cloth would be expended ere we reached the
Lake Tanganyika - Took a piece of clay off the
ground and rubbed it on his tongue as an
oath that what he said was true - came along
with us to see that all was right & so we parted -

We soon ascended the plateau which encloses
with its edge the village & stream of Molenaba
Wild pigs abundant - marks of former
cultivation - A short march brought us to an
ooze surrounded by hedges - game traps and
pitfalls where as we are stiff & weak
we spend the night - Rocks the same dolomite

kind as on the ridge further South between
Loangwa & Chambeze - covered like them with
lichens - orchids - Euphorbias - & upland
vegetation - hard leafed acacias - Rhododendrons
Masukos - The Gum copal tree when

[0268]

262

20th
Febry
1867

perforated by a grub exudes from branches
no thicker than one's arm masses of soft
glaury looking gum - brownish yellow - light
grey, as much as would fill a soup plate
this sinking into soil is no doubt the
origin of the fossil gum - It seems to yield
this gum only in the rainy season and
now all the trees are full of sap & gum -

21st

A night with loud and near thunder and much
heavy rain which came through the boys sheds
Roads all plashy or running with water
oozes full - & rivulets overflowing - rocks
of dolomite jutting out here & there - The
spikenard looking shrub six feet high &
a foot in diameter - The path led us West
against my will - found one going North
but boys pretended that they did not see
my mark & went West evidently afraid
of incurring Moamba's displeasure by
passing him - found them in an old
hut and made the best of it by saying
nothing - they said that they had wandered
that was had never left the West going path

22^d

March till we came to a perennial
Rivulet running North - The Merungu -
here we met Moamba's people but declined
going to his village as huts are disagreeable -
often have vermin - and one is exposed
to the gaze of a crowd through a very small
door way - The people in their curiosity
often make the place dark, and the impudent
ones make characteristic remarks - then
raise a laugh & run away - We encamped
on the Merungu right bank in forest
sending word to Moamba that we meant so
to do - He sent a deputation first of all
his young men to bring us - then of the

[0269]

263

[2]2^d
[F]eby
1867

old men & lastly came himself with about
sixty followers - I explained that I had become
sick by living in a little hut at Molemba -
that I was better in the open air - that huts
contained vermin , close up and that I did not mean to
remain any while here but go on our way
He pressed us to come to his village - gave a
goat & kid with a huge calabashful fulof beer
I promised to go over and visit him -
next day, and went accordingly -

[2]3^d

Moamba's village was a mile off & on
the left bank of the Merenge a large stream
than the Merungu and having its banks &
oozes covered with fine tall straight ever
green trees - It is five or seven yards wide
& flowing North - The village is surrounded
with a stockade and a dry ditch some
15 or 20 feet wide & as much deep - Had a
long talk with Moamba - a big stout public

house looking person with a slight outward
cast in his left eye - Is intelligent & hearty - I
presented him with a cloth and he gave
me as much Maere meal as a man
could carry with a large basket of ground
-nuts - Wished us to come to Merenge if not
into his village that he might see & talk
with me - Shewed him some pictures in
Smith's Bible dictionary which he readily
understood - spoke to him about the Bible
He asked me "to come next day and tell him
about prayer to God" - This is a natural
desire after being told that we prayed -

He was very anxious to know what we
were going to Tanganyika - for what we came
what we should buy there - if I had any
relatives there - shewed some fine large
tusks 8 ft 6 [inches] in length - What do you

[0270]

264

23^d
Feby
1867

wish to buy if not slaves or ivory
I replied "that the only thing I had seen
worth buying was a fine fat chief
like him as a specimen, with a
woman feeding him as he had, with beer"
He was tickled at this, and said that when
we reached our country I must put
fine clothes on him - This led us to speak
of our climate & the production of wool.

24th

Went over after service, but late as the
rain threatened to be heavy - a case was
in process of hearing, and one old man
spoke an hour on end - the chief listening
all the while with the gravity of a Judge -
He then delivered his decision in about

five minutes - the successful litigant
going off lullilooing - Each person before
addressing him turns his back to him
lies down on the ground clapping the
hands - This is the common mode of
salutation - Another here in Lobemba is
to rattle the arrows or an arrow on the
bow which all carry - We had a little
talk with the chief, but it was late
before the cause was heard through -
He asked us to come & find one night
near him on the Meronge & then go on -

25th

So we came over this morning to the
vicinity of his village - a great deal of
copper wire is here made - the wire drawers
using for one part of the process a
seven inch cable - They make very fine
wire, and it is used chiefly as leglets
and anklets - the chief's wives being
laden & obliged to walk in a stately style
from the weight - It comes from Katanga

[0271]

265

[2]6th
[Fe]by
[18]67

The chief wishes to buy a cloth with two
goats but his men do not bring them up quickly
one of the boys ill of fever (S) this induced me to
remain though moving from one place to
another is the only remedy we have in our
power - S - being a sly half caste is an obstinate
as a mule - the chief is liberal with food
gave me a calabash of sweet beer - very agreeable
a large potful of the thick bitter kind - a basket
of meal and cooked a basketful of Numbo
or Mumbo as the native potato is here called -
It is very good when salt is added -

[...] th

With the chief's men we do not get on well
but with himself all is easy - His men demanded
prepayment for canoes to cross the R - Loombe
but in the way that he put it the request was
not unreasonable as he gives a man to
smooth our way & get canoes or whatever
else is needed all the way to Chibue's - I gave
a cloth when he put it, thus, and he presented
a goat - a spear ornamented with copper
wire - abundance of meal and beer and
Numbo - so we parted good friends as his
presents are worth the cloth -

[...] th

Moamba kept us till he had ground meal
and made some more Pombe which led us
to make our starting on the following day

[...] March
1867

when we crossed Merungu near its juncture
with the Lokopa a stream ten or twelve
yards wide having Hippopotami in it &
flowing Westwards, said to go into Chambeze
Thence we went on to a deserted village & waited for
one who was sick - Here we were detained four

5th

days -
We had a N.W. course – descended into a deep
valley with fine burns running into the
centre where the Chikoshu flowed West

[0272]

5th

March

1867

Then Northwards to a streamlet called Likombe
The opposite side of this valley rose up to a high
ridge called Losauswa which runs a long way
Westward - It is probably a watershed between
streams going to the Chambeze & those that
go to the Northern rivers

[Map of rivers.Loombe, Lokopa and Nchelenge] We have the Lokopa - Loombe Nchelenge
then Lofubu or Lovu the last goes
North into Liembe but accounts are very
confused - The Chambeze rises in the
Mambwe country which is North East
of Moamba but near

The forest through which we passed yesterday
was dense but scrubby - trees unhealthy
no drainage except through oozes -
on Keel which forms a clay soil the
rain runs off and the trees attain a large
size - the roots are not soured by the slow
process of the ooze drainage - At present
all the slopes having loamy or sandy
soil are oozes & full now to overflowing
A long time is required for their discharge
their contents - The country generally may
be called one covered with forest - We

6th

came after a short march to a village
on the Molilanga flowing E into the
Loombe - Here We meet with bananas
for the first time - called as in Lunda
Nkonde - a few trophies from Mazitu
are hung up - Chitapanga had 24 skulls
hung up - the Babemba are decidedly
more warlike than any of the tribes South
of them - the villages are stockaded &
have deep dry ditches around them so it
is likely that Mochimbe will be effectually
checked & forced to turn his energies
elsewhere than to Marauding

[7]th
 [M]arch
 [18]67

Our man from Moamba here refused to go further and we were put on the wrong track by the headman - We waded through three marshes each at least half a mile broad People of first village we came to shut their gates on us - then came running after us but we declined to enter their village - It is a way of shewing their intedependence - We made our sheds on a height in spite of their protests - They said that it was done by the boys but where I pointed out the boy who had done it - He said that he had been ordered to it by the chief - If we had gone in now we should have been looked on as having come under considerable obligations -

8th

Went on to a village on the Loombe, where the people shewed an opposite disposition for not a soul was in it - all were out at their farms - When the good wife of the place came she gave us all huts which saved us from a pelting shower - the boys herding the goats did not stir as we passed down the sides of the lovely valley - The Loombe looks a sluggish stream from a distance - the headman said we were welcome & he would shew the crossing next day ^- also cooked some food for us -

Guided by our host we went along the Loombe Westwards till we reached the bridge rather a rickety affair which when the water is low may be used as a weir - The Loombe main stream is sixty six feet wide - six feet deep with at least 200 ft of flood beyond it - The water was knee deep on the bridge but clear - The flooded part beyond was waist deep - the water flowing fast on it across bends of the

main stream -

[0274]

268

9th
March
1867

All the people are now transplanting tobacco from the spaces under the eaves of the huts into the fields - it seems unable to bear the greater heat of summer - They plant also a kind of beans liranda proper for the cold weather - We thought that we were conferring a boon in giving Pease but we found them generally propagated all over the country already, and in the cold time too We went along the Diola R^t then across its ooze & get well drenched - Went to an old hut and made a fire - thence across country to another Rr called Loendawe 6 feet wide & 9 ft

10th

deep - cross it & go to its source -
Ill of fever ever since we left Moamba's
Every step I take jars in the chest & I am very weak - can scarcely keep up the march though formerly I was always first & had to hold in my pace not to leave them ^ people altogether - Though it may favour Homeo-pathy - I have a constant ringing in the ears and can scarcely hear the loud tick of the chronometers - The appetite is good but we have no proper food - chiefly Maere meal or beans - or Mapemba or ground nuts - rarely a fowl -
country full of "Hopo" hedges but the animals are harassed & we never see them -

11th

Detained by a set in rain - marks on masses
of dolomite elicited the information that
a party of Londa smiths came once and &
smelting iron ground their work into
shape here - We saw an old iron furnace
and masses of Haematite which seems
to have been the ore universally used -
Kapombo - spotted & striped skin of small
antelope - ground colour dark brown -

[0275]

269

[1]2th
[M]arch
1867

Rain held us back for some time but we
soon reached Chibue's stockaded village - Like
them all it is situated by a stream with a
dense clump of trees on the water side - these
are of some species of Mangrove. They
attain large size - have soft wood & succu-
-lent leaves - the roots intertwine in the mud -
& one has to watch that he does not step where
no roots exist otherwise he sinks up to the
thigh - In a village the people feel that we
are on their property & crowd upon us in-
-conveniently but outside where we usually
erect our sheds no such feeling exists - We are
each on a level & they don't take liberties -

The Bulunga are marked by three or four
little knobs on the temples - the lobes of the
ears are distended by a piece of wood which
is ornamented with beads bands of beads go
across the forehead & hold up the hair -

Chibue's village is at the source of the Lokwen-
-a, and goes N & NE - a long range of low hills
on our N.E. These are the Mambwe or
part of them - the Chambeze rises in them but
further south - are there the Lokwena round
whose source we came on starting this
morning to avoid wet feet, and all others
North & West of this go to the Lofu or Lobu
and it into Liemba Lake - Those from
the hills on our right go East into the
Loanzu & it into the Lake -

15

We now are making for Kasonso
the chief of the Lake & a very large country
all round it -

16th

Go along the Lochenjé 5 yds wide & knee deep
then to the charimba - all flow very
rapidly just now - all are flooded with
clear water

[0276]

270

18th

March

1867

Everyone carries an axe as if constantly
warring with the Forest - country all very
much alike - village & forest then Forest
& village again - My long continued fever
ill disposes me to enjoy it - We are evidently
on the ridge but people have not a clear
conception of where the rivers run -

19th

A part of young men came out of the
village near which we had encamped to force
us to pay something for not going into their
village - The son of a great chief ought to
be acknowledged &c - They had their bows &
arrows with their & all ready for action -
Told them we had remained near them
because they said we could not reach Kasongo
that day - Their headman had given us
nothing - after talking a while and threaten-
ing to do a deal tomorrow - they left and

through an Almighty Providence nothing was

19th

attempted - We moved on N-W- in Forest
with long green tree covered slopes on our
right - and came to a village of Kasongo
in a very lovely valley - Great green valleys
were now scooped out, and and many
running as the Kakanza run into Lovu
the country had changed by these great valleys
three or four miles wide to full of streamlets
all flowing to Liemba

20th

- the same features of country prevailed
Indeed it was impossible to count the streams
flowing N-W- We found Kasonso situated
at the confluence of two streams - "He shook
hands a long while - seems a frank sort of
man - a shower of rain set the Driver an[ts]
on the move, and about two hours after
we had turned in we were overwhelmed by them
they are called Kalandu or Nkalanda

[0277]

271

21

[M]arch

[1]867

To describe this attack is utterly impossible
I wakened covered with them - the hair full
one by one they cut into the flesh & the more
they are disturbed the more vicious are their
bites - they become quite insolent - I went
outside the hut but these they swarmed every[-]
where - They covered the legs biting furiously
It is only when they are tired that they leave off

One good trait of the Bulungu up here
is that they retire when they see food brought to

anyone - Neither Babisa nor Makoa had
the sense or delicacy - The Babemba are equally
delicate -

We have descended considerably into the
broad valley of the Lake & it feels warmer
than on the heights - cloth more valuable in-
-as much as bark cloth is scarce - skins of
goats and wild animals are used, and the
kilt is very diminutive among the women -

[2]2

cross Loela 30 feet wide & one deep - Tsetse
though we have seen none since we left Cluta-
-pangwa's - a grand reception from Kasonso -
men present from Tanganyika - see cassava
here but not in plenty - holes about three
feet deep and the same in width are made to
keep off the wild hogs from groundnuts

[...][2]8

"Set in rain" & chumas illness - cotton bushes
of very large size here - South American kind
of greater number of prominent upper teeth
than elsewhere - possible from filing only
the sides of the teeth
[Drawing of three filed teeth] children make
a doll of two cobs of maize tied end to
end & then on the back - After sleeping in
various villages & crossing numerous
streams we came to Mombo's village
near the ridge overlooking the Lake -

[0278]

272

31st
March
& 1st
April
1867

Too ill to march through I offered to go
on the 1st but Kasonso's son who was
with us objected (2^d April left very ill
with dysentery - This is private) - we went
up a low ridge of hills at its lowest
part, and soon after passing the summit,
the blue water loomed through the trees.
I was detained but soon heard the boys
firing their muskets on reaching the edge
of the ridge which allowed of an
unobstructed view - This is the S. Eastern
end of Liemba or as it is sometimes
called Tanganyika - We had to descend
at least two thousand feet before we
got to the level of the Lake - It seems about
18 or 20 miles broad, and we could see
about 30 miles up to the North - Four 4
considerable rivers flow into in the space
we see - The nearly perpendicular ridge of
about 2000 feet extends with breaks all
around & there embosomed in tree covered
rocks it lies peacefully ^ in the huge cup shaped cavity - I never saw
anything so still & peaceful as it lies
all morning - About noon a gentle
breeze springs up & causes the waves to
assume a bluer tinge - Several rocky
islands rise in the Eastern end which
are inhabited by fishermen who capture
abundance of fine large fish of which
they enumerate about twenty four species -
In the North it seems to narrow into a
gateway but the people are miserably
deficient in geographical knowledge &
can tell us nothing about it - They support
us, and we cannot get information,
and little else even -, I feel deeply thankful

[0279]

273

[...]
[Ap]ril
[1]867

at having got so far - I am excessively
weak - cannot walk without tottering, and
have constant singing in the head but

the Highest will lead me further -

Lat of the spot we touched at first
2^d April 1867 Lat 8° 46' 54" South - Long -
& my head is out of order
32° 08 - but I only worked out ^one set of Ob^{ns} -
Height above level of the ^ sea over 2800 feet -
by Boiling point & Barometers - People
wont let me sound it -

After being a fortnight at this Lake it
still appears one of surpassing loneliness -
Its peacefulness is remarkable though at
times it is said to be lashed up by storms -
It lies in a deep basin with its sides nearly
perpendicular but covered well with trees -
the rocks which appear are bright red ^ argillaceous schist- - - The
trees at present all green - down some of these
rock come beautiful cascades - and buffaloes
elephants & antelopes wander & graze on the
more level spots while lions roar by night -
The level place below is not 2 miles from
the perpendicular - The village ^ Pambete at which we
first touched the Lake is surrounded by
Palm oil trees - not the stunted ones of Lake
Nyassa, but the real West coast Palm oil tree
~~which~~ requiring two men to carry a bunch
of the ripe fruit - The Lake itself is still all
morning, but about noon a gentle
breeze ruffles its surface, and makes that
of darker blue - In the morning, & evenings
huge crocodiles may be observed quickly
making their way to their feeding ground -
Hippopotami snort by night & at
early morning

[0280]
274

[...] April
1867

The people have a fear of us they do
not understand our objects & keep
aloof - They promise everything and do
nothing - but for my excessive weakness
we should go on but we wait for a
recovery of strength -

After I had been a few days here I had a fit of insensibility which shews the power of fever without medicine - I found myself floundering outside my hut & unable to get in - tried to lift myself from my back by laying hold of two posts at the entrance but when I got nearly upright I let them go & fell back heavily on my head on a box - The boys had seen the wretched state I was in & hung a blanket at the entrance of the hut that no stranger might see my helplessness Some hours elapsed before I could recognize where I was -

29th

April

1867

These Bulungu as the people are called are greatly reduced in numbers by the Mazitu who carried off very large numbers of the women boys girls & children - They train or like to see the young men arrayed as Mazitu but it would be more profitable if they kept them to agriculture - They are all excessively polite - The clapping of hands on meeting is something excessive and then the string of salutations that accompany it would please the most fastidious Frenchman - It implies real politeness for in marching with them they carefully remove branches out of the path & indicate stones or stumps in it carefully to a stranger yet we cannot prevail on their to lend canoes to examine the Lake or to sell goats

[0281]

275

[...] th

[Ap]ril

[18]67

of which however they have very few
& all on one island

The Lake discharges its water North Westward or
rather Nor North Westwards - We observe the weeds
going in that direction, and as the Lonzua
the Kowe - the Kapata - the Luaze the Kalambwe
flow in to it near the East End, & the Lovú
or Lofubu or Lofu from the South West near the
end it must find an exit for so much
water - All these rivers rise in or near
the Mambwe country in Latitude 10 South
where too the Chambeze ~~or Zambesi~~ rises -
Liamba is said to remain of about the
same size as we go North West but this
we shall see for ourselves -

Elephants come all about us - one was
breaking trees close by - I fired into his ear
without effect - boys fled instantly - S -
with characteristic timidity made for a
hill before we went near the beast -
I am too weak to hold the gun steady -

[3]0th

We begin our return march from Liamba -
slept at a village on the Lake & went on next
day to Pambeta that at which we first touched
the Lake - the people pound tobacco leaves
in a mortar after it has undergone partial
fermentation by lying in the Sun - then put
the mass in the sun to dry for use -
The reason why no Palm oil trees grow
further East than Pambeta is said to be
the stoney soil there - this seems a valid
one for it loves rich loamy meadows

[1]st
[M]ay

We intended to go North West to see whether
this Lake narrows or not for all assert
that it maintains its breadth such as
we see it beyond Pemba as far as they
know it - but when about to start on

[0282]

2^d May
1867

the headman and his wife came & protested so solemnly that we should by going N - W walk into the hands of a party of Mazitu these that we deferred our departure - It was not with a full persuasion of the truth of the statement that I consented, but we afterwards saw good evidence that it was true, and that we were saved from being plundered - they have changed their tactics for they demand so many people, and so many cloths, and then leave, they made it known that their next scene of mulcting would be Mombo's village, and there they took 12 people - four slaves and many cloths - then went South to the hills they inhabit - a strict watch was kept on their movements by our headman & his men They trust to fleeing into a thicket on the West of the village should the marauders come - I have been informed on good authority that Kasongo was on his way to us when news arrived that his young son had died - He had sent on beer & provisions for us but

8th

The Mazitu having left we departed & slept half way up the ridge - Had another fit of insensibility last night - the muscles of the back lose all power - Constant singing in the ears - inability to do the simplest sum - cross the Aeezé which makes the water fall - 15 yds & knee deep - the streams like this are almost innumerable -

9th

Mombo's vil. - It is distressingly difficult to elicit accurate information about the

Lake & rivers - this is because the people do not think accurately - Mombo declared that two Arabs came when we were below & enquired for us but he denied our presence

[0283]

277

[M]ay
1867

thinking thereby to save us trouble & harm -
The cotton cultivated is of the Pernambucco species - bushes seven or eight feet high - much cloth was made in these parts before the Mazitu raids began - It was striped black & white, and many shawls are seen in the country yet - It is curious that this species of cotton should be found only in the middle of this country -

10th

In going Westwards on the upland the country is level & covered with scraggy forest as usual, - long lines of low hills or rather ridges of denudation run N & S - on our East - crossed two strong Rivulets & then slept by another flowing South then West into the Lofu - this is called Moami - country full of elephants but few are killed - They do much damage - eating the sorghum in the gardens unmolested - the beer or pombe is made of Maere & very thick & bitter - Boiling water is poured in and this takes up the finer portions - The rest sinks to the bottom & is rejected, but a strong stomach is requisite to bear it -

[1]1th

a short march brought us to a village on the same Moami & to avoid a Sunday in the

forest we remained - the Elephants had come
into the village and gone all about - To
prevent their opening the corn safes - the
people had bedaubed them with Elephants
droppings - When a cow would not give milk
save to its calf, a like device was used -

Kolobeng

the cow[']s droppings were smeared on the
teats, & the calf is too much disgusted to
suck - The cow then runs till it she is
distressed by the milk fever & is willing
to be relieved by the herdman.

[0284]

278

12th
May
1867

News that the Arabs had been fighting with
Nsama came but they made us rather
anxious to get Northward along Liemba

13th

and we made for Mokambola's village
near the edge of the precipice which overhangs
the Lake - Many Shuare palms grow
in the R^r which flows past it -

14th

As we began our descent we saw the Lofu
coming from the West & joining the Liemba
A branch of Liemba comes to meet it
and then the Liemba is said to go away
to the North or NorWest as far as my
informants knew - some pointed due

North - other NorWest so probably its
true course amounts to N-N-W- - We
came to a village about 2' W- of confluence
The headman affable & generous - village
has a meadow some four miles wide
on the land side in which buffaloes dis-
-port themselves but they are very wild,
& hide in the gigantic grasses - sorghum
groundnuts & voandzeia grown luxuriantly
Lofu a quarter of a mile wide but higher
up three hundred yards - The valley is always
clouded over at night so I could not get an
observation except early in the morning ~~only~~
when the cold had dissipated the clouds

15th

We remained here because - two were lame
and all tired by the descent of upwards of two
thousand feet - & the headman sent for fish
for us - He dissuaded us strongly from
attempting to go down the Liemba as the
son of Nsama (Kapoma) was killing all who
came that way in revenge for what
the Arabs had done to his fathers people
and might take us for Arabs - A Suaheli
Arab came in the evening and partly

[0285]

279

[...]w
[Ma]y
[186]7

confirmed the statements of the headman of
Karambo - Resolve therefore to go back to
Chitimba's in the South where the chief portion
of the Arabs were assembled and hear from
them more certainly -

[...]

The last we heard of Liemba was that at a great way NorWest it was dammed up by rocks, and surmounting them made a great Waterfall - It does not it is said diminish in but by bearings protracted it is 2 ' wide size so far - Return to Mokambola's vil and leave for Chitimba's - Baraka stopped behind at the village, and James ran away containing 3 chronometers to him leaving his bundle in the path - Sent back for them - James came up in the evening - had no complaint & no excuse - The two think it will be easy to return to their own country by begging though they could not point it out to me when we were much nearer to where it is supposed to be -

[19]th

Where we were brought to a stand still was miserably cold - 55° - So we had prayers & went on S & SW - to vil of chisaka,

[20]th

Chitimba's vil. was near in the same direction. Here we found a large party of Arabs - mostly black Suahelis - they occupied an important portion of the stockaded village, and when I came in politely shewed me to a shed where they are in the habit of meeting - After explaining whence I had come I shewed them the Sultan's letter - Hamees presented a goat - 2 fowls & a quantity of flour - It was difficult to get to the bottom of the Nsama affair - but that chief sent ~~for~~ an invitation to them, and when they arrived sent off for his people who came in crowds - as he said to view the strangers - I suspect that the Arabs

[0286]

21st
May
1867

became afraid of the crowds and began to fire - several were killed on both sides & Nsama fled leaving his visitors in possession of the stockaded village and all that it contained - Others say that there was a dispute about an elephant - & that Nsama's people were the aggressors - At any rate it is now all confusion those who remain at Nsama's village help themselves to food in the surrounding villages & burn them - While Chitimba sent for the party here to come to him, an hour or two after we arrived a body of men came from Kasonso with the intention of proceeding into the country of Nsama & if possible catching - "Nsama" he having broken public law by attacking people who brought merchandise into the country this party makes the Arabs resolve to go & do what they can to injure their enemy - It will just be a plundering foray - each catching what he can whether animal or human and returning when it is no longer safe to plunder -

This throws the barrier of a broad country between me and "Moero" but I trust in Providence a way will be opened - I think now of going Southwards & then Westwards, thus making a long detour round the disturbed district

[0287]
281

(Fishes of Liemba
Monde
Mbiri
Kawangwe
Pamba becomes very large & is said to kill men -
Kopi
Phende
Poloko is a sucking fish & kills the others on which it may fasten

Baza
Kongola
Timba
Motongolo
Koto
Kalukamatangx
Sende
Mianga
Namoanze
Sokonto
Singa
Sinka
Makalembe
Tumbwe
(Mbalala

Very few of these have the same names with the
fishes in Lake Moero - where they number 38 -

The name of the principal Arab is "Hamees
Wodim Tagh"

The other is "Saiyde bin Alle - bin Mansure"

they are connected with one of the most
influential native mercantile houses in
Zanzibar - Hamees has been particularly
kind to me in presenting food beads & cloth & getting
information.

Sthani bin Suaelim is the Arab to
whom my goods are directed at Ujiji

[0288]

282

24 May
1867

At Chitimba's waiting to see what
events turn up to throw light on our
Western route - Some of the Arabs and
Kasonso's men went off today - They will
bring information perhaps as to Nsama's
haunts and then we shall move South
& thence West - wrote to Sir Thomas Maclear
giving the position of Liemba to be kept
private for a while - Also to D^r Seward in
case other letters miscarried - The hot season
is beginning now - This corresponds to

Hot
Season
begins

July further South, it became cold again -
three goats killed by a leopard close to the
village in open day

28th
May
1867

Information came that Nsama begged
pardon of the Arabs, and would pay all that
they had lost - He did not know of his people
stealing from them - We shall hear in a day
or two whether the matter is to be patched up
or not - While some believe his statements others
say "Nsama's words of peace ~~were~~are simply to
gain time to make another stockade - In the
mean time Kasongo's people will ravage
all his country on the Eastern side

30th

Hamees is very anxious that I should remain
a few days longer till Kasongo's son Kam-
-pamba comes with certain information
and then he will see to our passing safely
to Chiwere's village from Kasongo's
All have confidence in this last named
chief as an upright man -

1st
June
1867

Another party of marauders went off this
morning to plunder Nsama's country to the
West of the confluence of Lofu - this is punish-
-ment for breach of public law - the men
employed are not very willing to go but
when they taste the pleasure of plunder will
relish more -

[0289]

283

24

[Ju]ne

[18]67

The watershed begins to have a Northern slope about Maomba's Lat 10 10' but the streams are very tortuous and the people have very confused ideas as to where they run - The Lokhopa for instance was asserted by all the men at Maomba's to flow into Lokholu & then into a river going to Liemba, but a young wife of Moamba who seemed very intelligent maintained that Lokhopo & Lokholu went to the Chambezé - I therefore put it down thus - The streams (feeders) of the ZChambezé & the Liemba, overlap each other and it would be only by a more extensive survey than I could give it that they might be disentangled - North of Maomba on the Merenge the slope begins to Liemba - Lofu begins in Chibue's country & with its tributaries we have long ridges of denudation each some 500 or 600 feet high, and covered with green trees - the valleys of denudation enclosed by these, guide the streams towards Liemba or the four rivers which flow into it - The country gradually becomes lower warmer & Tsetse & mosquitoes appear - We reach at last the remarkable cupshaped cavity in which Liemba reposes - The Southern sides of this cavity are very precipitous, and nowhere all around is there a level space of three miles from the bottom of the cliffs to the water's edge - Several streams fall down the nearly perpendicular cliffs & form beautiful cascades - Buffaloes - Elephants & Antelopes abound - The lines of denudation are continued - one range rising behind another as far as the eye can reach to the North & East of Liemba - & probably the slope continues away down to Tanganyika - the watershed extends Westwards to beyond Cazembe & the Luapida - Chambeze rises in the same parallels of Latitude there as does Lofu & Lowyua - here

[0290]

284

(28th)
May
1867

The Arabs inform me that between this and the sea, about 200 miles distant lies the country of the Wasango - called Usango - a fair people like Portuguese and very friendly to strangers - The Wasango possess plenty of cattle - Their chief is called Merere - they count this 25 days, while the distance thence to the sea at Bagamoio is 1 month & 25 days say 440 miles - Uchere is very far off North[-]wards but a man told me that he went to a salt manufactory in that direction in 8 days from Kasonso's - Merere goes frequently on marauding expeditions for cattle and is instigated thereto by his mother

(29th)

What we understand by Primeval Forest is but seldom seen in the Interior here though the country cannot be described otherwise than as generally covered with interminable forests = Insects kill or dwarf some trees - men maim others for the sake of the bark cloth - Elephants break down others and it is only here & there that gigantic specimens are seen - They may be expected in shut in valleys among mountains but on the whole the trees are scraggy - and the varieties not great the varieties of birds which sing among the branches seem to me to exceed those of the Zambesi region but I do not shoot them - the number of new notes I hear astonishes me

[0291]

285

[...]d
[J]une
[1]867

This is called by the Arabs and natives the Ulungu country that farther North West it is named Marungu - Hamees is on friendly terms with Mazitu (Watuta) - in the East who do not plunder - the chief sent a man to Kasongo lately & he having recieved a present went away highly pleased - Hamees is certainly very anxious to secure my safety some men came from the N-E- to enquire about the disturbance here they recommend that I should go with them & then up the East side of the Lake to Ujiji, but that would ruin my plan of discovering Moero & then following the watershed so as to be certain that this is either the watershed of the Congo or Nile - He was not well pleased when I preferred to go South & then Westwards as it looks like rejecting his counsel - but he said, if I waited till his people came then we should be able to speak with more certainty On enquiring if any large mountains existed in this country, I was told that Monfipa or Fipa opposite the lower end of the Lake is largest - one can see Tangan[-] -yika from it - It probably gives rise to the Nkalambwe River & the Luaze -

There is nothing interesting in a heathen town - all are busy in preparing food or clothing - mats or baskets - the women cleaning or grinding their corn which involves much hard labour - They first dry it in the sun - then put it into a mortar - then with a flat basket clean off the husks & the dust - this is a very labourious task - Then grind it between two stones - then bring wood & water to cook it - there is not much animation - The chief here was aroused the other day, and threatened to

[0292]

3^d

~~May~~ June

1867

burn his own house, and all his property
because the people stole from it - but
he did not proceed so far - It was probably
a way of letting the Arab dependants
know that he was aroused -
Some of the people who went to fight
attacked a large village & killed several
men but in shooting in a bushy place
they killed one of their own party &
wounded another -

On enquiring of an Arab who had
sailed on Tanganyika, which way the
water flowed, he replied to the South!

The wagtails build in the thatch of
huts - They are busy now and other
animals are active in the same way

14th

June

The cold seems to act as a stimulus in
much the same way that heat does
in England -

I am rather perplexed how to go
some Arabs seem determined to proceed
Westwards as soon as they can make
it up with Nsama - Others distrust
him - One man will send his people
to pick up what ivory they can but
he himself will retire to the Usango
country - Nsama is expected today
or tomorrow - It would be such a
saving of time & fatigue for us to go
due West, rather than South & then
West that I feel great hesitation as
to setting out to the circuitous route -

Several Arabs come from Liemba
side yesterday - One had sailed on
Tanganyika, and described the winds
there as very baffling but no one of
them has a clear idea of the Lake

[0293]

287

[1]4th
[Ju]ne
[18]67

they described the lower part as a "sea"
& thought it different from Tanganyika

("Ajesenga" salutation of the Usanga)

close observation of the natives of Ulungu
makes me believe them to be extremely polite -
the mode of salutation among relatives is to
place the hands round each others chests
kneeling & then clapping the hands putting
them close to the ground - Some more
abject individuals kiss the soil before a
chief - the generality kneel only with the
forearms close to the ground & the head
bowed down to them saying "O Ajadla chiusa"
"Mari a bivino" - The clapping of hands
to superiors & even equals is in some
villages a perpetually recurring sound -
Aged persons are usually saluted - How
this extreme deference to each other could
have arisen, I could not conceive - It does
not seem to be fear of each other that elicits
it - Even the chiefs inspire no fear, and
those cruel old platitudes about governing
savages by fear seem unknown, yet
governed they certainly are and upon
the whole very well - The people were not
very willing to go to punish Nsama's breach
of public law yet on the decision of the
chiefs they went. They came back, one with
a wooden stool another with a mat
a third with a calabash of ground nuts
or some dried meat, a hoe or a bow,
poor poor pay for a fortnights hard

work hunting fugitives & burning
villages -

[0294]

288

16th
June
1867

News came today that an Arab party
in the South West in Lunda lost about forty people
by the small pox "ndue" and that the people there
having heard of the disturbance with Nsama
fled from the Arabs and would sell neither
ivory or food - This looks like another
obstacle to our progress there -

17th

Harnees went to meet the party from the
South West probably to avoid bringing the
disease here - They remain at about 2 hours

19th

distance - Hamees reports that though the
strangers had lost a great many people
by small pox, they had brought good news
of certain Arabs still further West - One Seide
bin Umale or - Salem lived at a village near 10 days distant Cazembe,
and another Juma Merikano or Katata Katanga at another village
further North - and Seide bin Habib was at
Phueto which is nearer Tanganyika =
This party makes up the whole force of
Hamees and he now declares that he will
go to Nsama and make the matter up
He thinks that Nsama is afraid to come here
and now he will make the first approach
to friendship -

20th

On pondering over the whole subject
I see that tiresome as it is to wait, it is better
to do so than go South & then West for if
I should go, I shall miss seeing Moero,
which is said to be three days from
Nsama's present abode - His people go
there for salt, and I could not come to
it from the South without being known
to them & perhaps considered to be an Arab
Hamees remarked that it was the Arab
way first to smooth the path before enter[-]
-ing upon it. Sending men & presents
first & thereby ascertaining the disposition

[0295]

289

[...]th
[Ju]ne
[18]67

of the inhabitants - He advises patience, and is
in hopes of making a peace with Nsama. That
his hopes are not unreasonable he mentioned
that when the disturbance began, Nsama sent
men with two tusks to the village where he had
first been expelled, offering thereby to make the
matter up, but the Arabs suspecting treachery,
fired upon them & killed the carriers - then ten
goats & one tusk were sent with the same object
& met with a repulse - Hamees thinks that had
he been there the whole matter would have
been settled amicably -

[21]st
[22]nd

All complain of cold here - the situation is
elevated, and we are behind a clump of trees on
the rivulet Chiloe which keeps the sun off us in
the morning - This cold induces the people to
make big fires in their huts, and frequently their
dwellings are burned - Minimum temp - is as low

as 46° - sometimes 33°

[2]4th

The Arabs are all busy reading their Korán or Kurán and in praying for direction - tomorrow they will call a meeting to deliberate as to what steps they will take in the Nsama affair - Hamees it seems is highly thought of by that chief - who says "let him come" "and all will be right" - Hamees proposes to go with but a few people - these Zanzibar men are very different from the slaves or the Waiyau country -

[2]5th

The people though called did not assemble but they will come tomorrow.
Young wagtails nearly full fledged took wing - leaving one in the nest - from not being molested by the people they had lost pre-caution - ran out of the nest on the approach of the old ones & made a loud chirping
The old ones tried to make the last one come out

[0296]

290

1867
26th
June

too by flying to the nest & then making a sally forth turning around immediately to see if he followed - He took a few days longer -

It was decided at the meeting that Hamees with a few people only should go to Nsama on the first day after the appearance of the New moon - they are very particular on this point - the

present month having been an unhappy
one they will try the next -

28th

A wedding took place among the Arabs
today - about a hundred blank cartridges
were fired off, and a procession of males dressed
in their best marched through the village,
they sang with all their might though with
but little music in the strain - Women
sprinkled grain on their heads as wishes
for plenty -

29th

Nsama is said to be waiting for the Arabs
in his new stockade - It is impossible to
ascertain exactly who is to blame in this
matter - I hear one side only - but the
fact of the chiefs on this side of the
country turning out so readily to punish
his breach of public law, and no
remonstrance coming from him, makes
me suspect that Nsama is the guilty
party - If he had been innocent he
certainly would have sent to ask the
Bulungu or Baulungu why they
had attacked his people without cause -

30th

The Wasongo seem much like Zulus - they
go naked - have prodigious numbers
of cattle which occupy the same huts
with their owners - oxen two Shukahs each
plenty of milk - Merere very liberal with his

[0297]

[18]67

[...]th

[Ju]ne

cattle - gave everyone an ox - no rice but maize
& maere - Hamees left people to cultivate rice -
Merere had plenty of ivory when the Arabs came
first but now have none - they are very friendly
to strangers, and light coloured like Europeans -
so say the Arabs -

[J]uly

1st

New moon today - They are very particular as to
the time of offering up prayers, and in making
charms - one tonight was at 10 PM exactly -
A number of cabbalistic figures were drawn by
Halfani and it is believed that by these his where-
abouts may be ascertained - they are probably
remains of a secret arts which prevailed
among Arabs before Mahomet appeared -
The Suaheli Arabs appear to have come down
the Coast before that prophet was born -
They seem in doubt about Nsama - Sky now
clouded over makes it warmer -

3d

Kasonso's people are expected - all captives
taken to be returned, and a quantity of cloth
given to Nsama in addition - So far all seems
right - The new moon will appear tonight
the Arabs count from one appearance to the
next, not as we do from its conjunction
with the Sun to the next -

4th

Katawanya came from near Liemba to join
the peacemakers - He and his party came
to Liemba after we did, and sent his people
all around to seek ivory - they don't care for
anything but ivory and cannot understand

why I dont do the same -

5th

Kasonso is coming himself to go to Nsama
& help to make peace - this day was found
to be unlucky and the 7th is fixed upon for
the final starting of the peacemakers - I
can but wish them all success

[0298]

292

6th July
1867

An earthquake happened at 3 - 30 PM -
accompanied with a hollow rumbling
sound - It made me feel as if afloat, but
it lasted only a few seconds - The boys came
running to ask me what it was - nowhere
could it be safer - the huts would not fall
& there are no high rocks near - Bar - 25.0
Temp - 68 - 5 - Heavy cumuli hanging about
no rain Afterwards

7th

Hamees started this morning with about 300
followers dressed in all their finery - He
declares that his sole object is peace - Kasonso
Mombo - Chitimba send their people and
go themselves to lend all their influence in favour
of peace - Syed stops here - Before starting
Syde put some incense on hot coals - and
all the leaders of the party joined in a
short prayer - they seem earnest & sincere
in their incantations according to their knowledge
& belief - I wished to go too but Hamees
objected as not being quite sure whether
Nsama would be friendly, and he would
not like anything to befall me when with

him

8th

Kasonso found an excuse for not
going himself - Two men, Arabs, it was said
came to Chibue's & were there killed, and
Kasonso must go to see about it -
The people who go carry food with them
evidently not intending to live by plunder
this time -

10th

While the peacemakers are gone - I am
employing time in reading Smith's Bible
Dictionary - calculating different positions
which have stood over in travelling -
I don't succeed well in the Banlungu
dialect - my followers are the least

[0299]

293

[1]867

[...] th July

intelligent I ever had - they know nothing - ask
nothing and pretend to ignorance in matters
which they can scarcely but know - One of them
on being told to go & buy some food at Karambo
where everything is cheap refused & then told me
lies to justify himself - I stopped his extra pay
& sent another who went ninety miles in four days
but he is a Galla half caste - they would have been
better had they not seen I was dependent on them alone -
The owners of huts lent to strangers have a
great deal of toil in consequence - they have to
clean them after the visitors have withdrawn,
then, in addition to this to clean themselves all
soiled by the dust left by the lodgers - all their
bodies & clothes have to be cleansed - they add food

too in all cases of acquaintanceship, and then we have to remember the labour of preparing that food - My remaining here enables me to observe that both men & women are in almost constant employment - the women in winnowing pounding in order to extract the grain - separating the husk & sand - grinding between two stones then going for wood & water to cook the meal after it is prepared - the men are making mats or weaving or spinning - no one could witness their assiduity in their little affairs & conclude that they were a lazy people - the only idle time I observe here is in the mornings about seven oclock when all come & sit to catch the first rays of the sun as he comes over our clump of trees but that is often taken as an opportunity for stringing beads -

[...] th

some of Nsama's people had crossed the Lovu at Karambo to plunder in retaliation for what they have suffered - the people there were afraid to fish lest they should be caught by them at a distance from their stockade

[0300]

294

1867

12 July

- The Baulungu men are in general tall & well formed - They use bows over 6 feet in length & but a little bent - The facial angle is as good in most cases as in Europeans and they have certainly as little of the "Lark heel" as whites - One or two of the under front teeth are generally knocked out in women and also in men

14th

Syde added to his other presents some more beads
all have been very kind which I attribute
in a great measure to Seyed Majid's letter -
Hamees crossed the Lovu today at a
fordable spot - the people on the other
side refused to go with a message to Nsama
so Hamees had to go & compel them by
destroying their stockade - a second village
acted in the same way though told that
it was only peace that was sought of
Nsama - this stockade suffered the same
fate, and then people went to Nsama &
he shewed no reluctance to have inter-
-course - He gave abundance of food
Pombe & bananas - The country being
extremely fertile - Nsama also came
and ratified the peace by drinking
blood with several of the underlings
of Hamees = He is said to be an enormously
bloated old man - cannot move unless
carried, and women are constantly in
attendance pouring pombe into him -
Nsama gave Hamees ten tusks & promised
him twenty more as also to endeavour
to make his people return what goods
they plundered from the Arabs - He
is to send his people over here to call us

[0301]

295

[18]67

[1]5th

[Ju]ly

after the new moon appears.

It is tiresome beyond measure to wait
here, but I hope to see Moero for this exercise of
patience, and I could not have visited it had
Hamees not succeeded in making peace

[1]7th

A lion roared very angrily at the village last night - He was probably following the buffaloes that sometimes come here to drink at night - They are all very shy, and so is all the game from fear of arrows.

[1]8th

a curious disease has attacked my left eye -lid & surrounding parts - a slight degree of itchiness is followed by great swelling of the part - It must be a sort of lichen - exposure to the sun seems to cure it, and this led me to take long walks therein.

[23]^d

This is about 30° 19' East Long - Lat 8° 57' 55' S

[...] th

A fire broke out at 4 AM & there being no wind the straw roofs were cleared off in front of it on our side of the village - The granaries were easily unroofed as the roof is not attached to the walls - The Arabs tried to clear a space

[Drawing of a house with a straw roof.] on their side but were unable & then moved all their ivory & goods outside the stockade Their side of the village was all burned - three goats were burned -

[2]5

Chitimba has left us from a fear of his life he says - It is probable that he means this flight to be used as an excuse to N-sama after we are gone - "And I too was obliged to flee from my village to save my life" - "what could I do"

[2]6th

A good many slaves came from the two villages that were destroyed - on enquiring I was told that these would be returned when Nsama gave the ivory promised

[0302]

296

1867
26th
July

When Nsama was told that an Englishman wished to go past him to Moero - He replied "bring him and I shall send men to take him thither" -

27th

Hamees is building "atembe" or house with a ^ slat roof & walls plastered over with mud to keep his ivory from fire while he is absent - We expect that Nsama will send for us a few days after the 2nd August when the new moon appears, if they do not come soon Hamees will send men to Nsama without waiting for his message

28th

Prayers with the Litany - Slavery is a great evil wherever I have seen it - A poor old woman and child are among the captives - the boy about three years old seems a grandmother's pet - His feet sore from walking in the sun - He was offered for 2 fathoms & his mother or grandmother for one fathom - He understood & cried bitterly clinging to his mother - she had of course no power

to help him, they were separated at Karungu afterward

29th

Went 2 ½ hours west to village of Londa - where a head Arab called by the natives Tipotijo lives - His name is, Hamid bin Muhamaed in Juma, Borajib - He presented a goat - a piece of white calico, and four big bunches of beads also a bag of Holcus Sorghum & apologized because it was so little - He had lost much by Nsama - recieved two arrow wounds there - They had only 20 guns at the time but some were in the stockade, and though the people of Nsama were very numerous they beat them off - and they fled carrying the bloated carcass of Nsama with them - Some reported that boxes were found in the village which belonged to parties who had perished ^ before but Syde assured me that this

[0303]

297

[1]867

was a mistake - Moero is three days distant and as Nsama's people go thither to collect salt on its banks it would have been impossible for me to visit it from the south without being seen, and probably suffering loss -

[...]
[Ju]ly

The people seem to have no family names a man takes the name of his mother - or should his father die he may assume that, but no family name exists - marriage is forbidden to the first second and third degrees - they call first & second cousins brothers and sisters -

1st

A woman after cupping her child's temples
for sore eyes threw the blood over the roof of
her hut as a charm -

[A]ugust
1867

Hamees sends off men to trade at Chiwere's -
zikwe is the name for locust here - Nzige or
Zige & Pansi the Swaheli names - In calling the
Lake discovered by M^r Baker the "Luta Nsige"
Speke must have been misled by his interpreter
for both are foreign words -
A perforated stone had been placed on one of the
poles which form the gateway into this stockade
it is oblong - 7 or 8 inches long by a broad & bevelled off
on one side - the diameter of the hole in the middle
is about an inch and a half - It shews evidence
of the boring process in rings - it is of hard porphory
and of a pinkish hue - It resembles somewhat a
weight for a digging stick I saw in 1861 in the
hands of a bushwoman - I saw one at a gateway
near Kasonso's - the people know nothing
of its use except as a charm to keep away evil
from the village

[...]

Chronometer
[Drawing of chronometer.] stopped today without any
apparent cause except the Earthquake
- It is probably malaria that causes constant
singing in the ears ever since the illness at Lake
Liemba

[0304]

298

1867
3^d
August

We expect a message from Nsama every day - the new moon having appeared on the first of this month and he was to send after its appearance

5th

They came on the fourth with the message that Hamees must wait a little yet, as Nsama had not yet got all the ivory, and the goods which were stolen - they remained over yesterday - the headman Katala says that Lunda is eight days from Nsama or Moero and in going we cross a large river called Movue which flows into Luapula another river called Mokobwa comes from the South East into Moero - - Itabwa is the name of Nsamas country & people - A days distant from Nsama's place there is a hot fountain called "Pakapezhia" & around it the earth shakes at times - It is possible that the Earthquake we felt here may be connected with this same centre of motion

6th

The weather is becoming milder - an increase of cold was caused by the wind coming from the South

We have good accounts of the Wasonga from all the Arabs - their houses built for cattle are flat roofed and enormously large - one they say is a quarter of a mile long. Morere the chief has his dwelling house within it - milk, butter, cheese in enormous quantities - the tribe too is very large - I fear that they may be spoiled by the Arab under[-]

7th

lings Some of my people went down to Karambo and were detained by the chief who said I wont let you English go away and leave me in trouble with these

Arabs - a slave had been given in
in charge to a man here and escaped -
the Arabs hereupon went to Karambo

[0305]

299

[...]
[A]ug.
[18]67

and demanded payment from the chief there.
He offered clothing but they refused it, and would
have a man - He then offered a man but
this man having 2 children they demanded the
three - they bully as much as they please by
their firearms - after being spoken to by my
people the Arabs came away - the chief begged
that I would come and visit him once more
for only one day! but it is impossible,
for we expect to move directly - I sent the inform[-]
ation to Hamees who replied that they had
got a clue to the man who was wiling away
their slaves from them - my people saw
others of the low squad which always accom-
panies the better informed Arabs - bullying
the people of another village and taking
folols & food without payment - Slavery
makes a bad neighbourhood -

Hamees is on friendly terms with a tribe
of Mazitu who say that they have given up
killing people - they lifted a great many cattle
but have very few now - some of them came
with him to shew the way to Kasouso's -

[...]th

Slaves are sold here in the same open way
that the business is carried on in Zanzibar
slave market - a man goes about calling
out the price he wants for the slave who
walks behind him - if a woman she is
taken into a hut to be examined in a state
of nudity -

Some of the Arabs believe that meteoric stones
are thrown at Satan for his wickedness
they believe that cannon were taken up -
Kilimanjaro by the first Arab who came
into the country & there they lie - they deny
that Van Der Decken did more than go
round a portion of the base of the mountain

[0306]

300

1867
10,11th
August

He could not get on the mass of the mountain
all his donkeys & some of his men died by the
cold - Hamees seems to be Cooley's great geographical oracle

20th

The information one can cull from
the Arabs respecting the country on the
North West is very indefinite - they magnify
the difficulties in the way by tales of the
cannibal tribes where any one dying is
bought & no one ever buried - This does not
agree with the fact which also is asserted
that the cannibals have plenty of sheep &
goats - the Rua is about 10 days West of
Tanganyika and five days beyond it
a lake or river 10 miles broad is reached
It is said to be called Logarawa, all the
water flows northwards but no reliance
can be placed on the statements - Kiombo

21st

is said to be chief of Rua country -
A man asserts that Tanganyika flows
Northwards & forms a large water beyond
Uganda but no dependance can be placed

on the statements of these half Arabs - they
pay no attention to anything but ivory and
food -

25th

Insama requested the Arabs to give
back his son who was captured - some
difficulty was made about this by his
captor but Hamees succeeded in
getting him and about nine others and
they are sent off today - we wait only for
the people who are scattered about the country
it is a wearisome delay but had not this
peace been made I could not have ventured
to go to Moero - Hamees presented cakes
flour - a fowl & leg of goat with a piece of
eland meat - this animal goes by the same
name here as at Kolobeng - "Lofu" - Nimba

[0307]

301

[1]867

[2]6th

[A]ug

A fig tree here has large knobs on the bark
like some species of acacia, and another
looks like the Malolo of the Zambesi magnified
a yellow wood gives an odour like incense
when burned,

A large spider makes a nest inside the
huts - It consists of a pile of pure white paper
an inch & half broad stuck flat on the wall -
under this some forty or fifty eggs are
placed and then a quarter of an inch of
thinner paper is put round it apparently to
fasten the first firmly - When making the
paper the spider moves itself over the
surface in wavy lines, and she then sits
on it with her eight legs spread over all
for three weeks continuously - catching
& eating any insects, as cockroaches, that
come near her nest - After three weeks she

leaves it to hunt for food but always returns
at night - The natives do not molest
it.

A small ant masters the common fly
by seizing a wing or leg & holding on till the
fly is tired out - at first the fly can move
about on the wing without inconvenience
but it is at last obliged to succumb to an
enemy very much smaller than itself -

A species of Touraco new to me has a
broad yellow mask on the upper part of the bill
and forehead - the topknot is purple the wings
the same as in other species but the red is
roseate - the yellow of the mask plates is con-
spicuous at a distance -

A large callosity forms on the shoulders
of the regular Unyamwesi porters from
the heavy weights laid on them - I have noticed

[0308]

302

30th
August
1867

them an inch and a half thick along the top
of the shoulders - an old man was pointed
out to me who had once carried full rasilahs
of ivory from his own country to the coast
= 175 lbs

We marched today after 3 months & 10 days
delay - on reaching Londa 2½ hours distant
we found TipoTipo or Hamide bin Moham
-ad gone on & followed - passed a fine stream
flowing SW to the Lofu - TipoTipo gave me a
fine fat goat.

31st

- pass along a fine undulating district with
much country covered with forest, but
many open glades, and fine large trees

along the water courses - we were on the Northern
slope of the watershed and could see far-
crossed two fine rivulets - the oozes still
full and flowing -

1st Sept
1867

We had to march in the afternoon on
account of a dry patch existing in the direct
way - we slept without water though by
diverging a few miles to the North we should
have crossed many streams but this is the
best path for the whole year - two of the Nassick
boys remained behind - they take advantage
of our being with Arabs to skulk, and pretend
to being overladen & say "the English are said
to be good, but they are not so" - They carry
about one third of a slave's load - one of them
was offended because his very light load was
increased by three pounds of beads -

Baraka went back to TipoTipo's village thus
putting his intention of begging among the
Arab slaves into operation - He has only
one complaint & that is dislike to work He
tried perseveringly to get others to run away
with him - lost the medicine box, six table cloths

[0309]

303

Sept
1867

and all our tools by giving his load off to a
country lad while he went to collect mushrooms
He will probably return to Zanzibar & be a
slave to the Arab slaves after being a perpetual
nuisance to us for upwards of a year -

When we reached the ford of the Lofu we
found that we were at least a thousand feet
below Chitimba's - the last six hours of our
march were without water but when near to
Chungu's village at the ford we came to fine

flowing Rivulets some ten feet or so broad -
- Here we could see Westwards and Northwards
the long lines of hills of denudation in Insama's
country which till lately was densely peopled -
Insama is of the Babemba family
Kasonso - Chitimba - Kiwe - Urongwe are equals &
of one family - ^ Urungu - Chungu is a pleasant person
& liberal according to his means - Large game
very abundant through all this country -

The Lofu at the ford was 296 feet - the
water flowing briskly over hardened sandstone
flag and from thigh to waist deep - Elsewhere
it is a little narrower but not passable except by canoes -

[...]

Went seven hours West of Lofu to a village called
Hara, one of those burned by Hamees because the
people would not take a peaceful message to In-
sama - This country is called Itawa and Hara is one
of the districts - We waited at Hara to see if Insama
wished us any nearer to himself - He is very much
afraid of the Arabs, and well he may be for he
was until lately supposed to be invincible - He fell
before twenty muskets, and this has caused a
panic throughout the country - The country is full
of food though the people have nearly all fled -
the ground nuts are growing again from want
of reapers and 300 people living at free
quarters make no impression on the food

[0310]

304

9th
Sept
1867

Went three hours West of Hara & came to
Insama's new stockade built close by the old
one burned by TipoTipo as Hamdi bin Mohama's
was named by Insama - I sent a message
to Insama & recieved an invitation to
come & visit him but bring no guns - a

large crowd of his people went with us
 and before we came to the inner stockade they
 felt my clothes to see that no firearms were
 concealed about my person - When we reached
 Insama we found a very old man with a
 good head & face and a large abdomen shewing
 that he was addi[...].cted to Pombe - His people have
 to carry him - I gave him a cloth and asked for
 guides to Moero which he readily granted -
 and asked leave to feel my clothes and hair,
 I advised him to try & live at peace, but his
 people were all so much beyond the control
 of himself & [the] headman that at last after scolding
 them he told me that he would send for me
 by night, and then we could converse, but this
 seems to have gone out of his head - He sent
 me a goat, flour & Pombe and next day
 we returned to Hara -

Insama's people have generally small well
 chiselled features, and many are really handsome
 and have nothing of the West Coast negro about
 them but they file their teeth to sharp points
 and greatly disfigure their mouths - The only
 difference between them & Europeans is the
 colour - many of the men have very finely
 formed heads and so have the women, and
 the fashion of wearing the hair sets off their fore[-]
 heads to advantage - the forehead is shaved
 off to the crown the space narrowing as it goes
 up - then the back hair is arranged into knots
 of about ten rows

[0311]

305

[...]th
 [Se]pt
 [1]867

Some people of Ujiji had come to Insama's to
 buy ivory with beads but finding that the Arabs
 had forestalled them in the market they intend to
 return in their dhow ^ or rather canoe which is manned by about
 fifty hands - My goods are reported safe, and the
 meat of the buffaloes which died in the way
 is there and sun dried - I sent a box containing
 papers books & some clothes chiefly because the
 Nassick boys who carried it always remained

behind, and made the box an excuse -

14th

I remained at Hara, because I was ill and then Hamees had no confidence in Insama because he promised his daughter to wife by way of cementing the peace, but had not given her - Insama also told Hamees to stay at Hara and he would send him ivory for sale but none came, Nor do people come here to sell provisions as they do elsewhere - so Hamees will return to Chitimba's to guard his people & property there, and send on Syde Hamidi & his servants to Lopere, KaBuire & Moero to buy ivory He advised me to go with them as he has no confidence in Insama - Hamidi thought that this was the plan to be preferred, it would be slower as they would purchase ivory in the road but safer to pass his country altogether ~~than~~ than trust myself in his power - the entire population of the country has recieved a shock from the conquest of Insama - and their views of the comparative values of bows and arrows & guns have undergone a great change - Insama was the Napoleon of their countries - no one could stand before him - Hence the defeat of the invincible Insama has caused a great panic - the Arabs say that they lost about fifty men in all Insama must have lost at least an equal

[0312]

306

Sept
14th
1867

number - The people seem intelligent and will no doubt act on the experience so dearly bought -

In the midst of the doubts of Hamees a daughter of Insama came this afternoon to

be a wife and cementer of the peace, she
 came riding "pic a back" on a man's shoulders
 a nice modest good looking young woman,
 her hair rubbed all over with "Nkola" a red
 pigment made from the camwood, and
 much used as an ornament, she was
 accompanied by about a dozen young
 and old female attendants each carrying
 a small basket with some provisions as
 cassava, groundnuts &c the Arabs all
 dressed in their finery - the slaves in
 fantastic dresses, flourished swords
 fired guns & yelled, When she was brought
 to Hamees' hut she descended & with her
 maids went into the hut - she & her attendants
 had all small neat features - I had been
 sitting with Hamees & now rose up & went
 away, as I passed him He spoke thus
 to himself "Hamees Wodin Tagh! see to what
 you have brought yourself" -

15th

A guide had come from Insama to take
 us to the countries beyond his territory, Hamees
 set off this morning with his new wife to
 his father in law, but was soon met by his
 messenger who said that he was not ^ yet to come,
 We now sent for all the people who were
 out to go West or North West without
 reference to Insama -

16th

17th

Hamidi went to Insama to try & get guides
 but Insama would not let him come
 into his stockade unless he came up to it
 without either gun or sword - Hamidi would

[0313]

[1]7th
[Se]pt
[18]67

not go in on these conditions but Insama
promised guides, and they came after a visit
by Hamees to Nsama which he paid without

[1]8th

telling any of us - He is evidently ashamed of his
father in law -

[1]9

Those Arabs who despair of ivory invest their
remaining beads & cloth in new slaves

[2]0th

I had resolved to go to Nsama's and thence to
Moero today, but Hamees sent to say that
men had come and we were all to go with them
on the 22^d Insama was so vacillating that
I had no doubt but this was best -

[2]1st

Hamees wife seeing the preparations that were
made for starting thought that her father
was to be attacked, so she her attendants and the
guides decamped by night - [...] Hamees went
again to Insama & got other guides to enable

22nd

us to go off at once -

We went North for a couple of hours then descended
into the same ^ valley as that in which I found Insama -
This valley is on the slope of the watershed & lies East

and West - a ridge of dark red sandstone ^ covered with trees forms its side on the South - other ridges like this make the slope have the form of a stair with huge steps the descent is gradually lost as we insensibly climb up the next ridge - the first plain between the steps is at times swampy and the paths are covered with the impressions of human feet which being hardened by the sun making walking on their uneven surface very difficult - Mosquitos again - We had lost them during our long stay on the higher lands behind us

[2]3

A fire had broken out the night after we left Hara, and the wind being strong it got the upper hand and swept away at once the whole of the temporary village of dry straw huts - Hamees lost all his beads, guns powder

[0314]

308

23^d
Sept^r
1867

& cloth except one bale - News came this morning and prayers were at once offered for him with incense, some goods will also be sent as a little incense was - the prayer book was held in the smoke of the incense while the responses were made - These Arabs seem to be very religious in their way - the prayers were chiefly to "Harasji" some relative of Mohamad -

24th

Roused at 3 AM to be told that next stage had no water and we should be oppressed with the midday heat if we went now. We were to go at

2 PM - Hamidi's wife being ill yesterday put a stop to our march in that afternoon - After the first hour we descended from the ridge to which we had ascended - we had then a wall of tree covered rocks on our left of a more than a thousand feet in altitude - After flanking it for a while we went up, and then along it Northwards till it vanished in forest, slept without a fresh supply of water - Two of my attendants stole my water, and then when it was expended came and begged some to put me off my guard as to who the culprits were. I saw them stealing it. Some are slaves in heart - and mind in spite of all that has been done for them at the Government school, feeding clothing, educating, baptizing, confirming -

25th

Off at 5.30 AM through the same well grown forest we have passed, came to a village stockade, gates shut & men all outside in fear of the Arabs - then descended from the ridge on which it stood about 1000 feet into an immense plain with a large river in the distance some ten miles off - Another of my attendants lay down & pretended that he had too heavy a load - This was to excite the pity

[0315]

309

[2]5th
Sept
1867

of the Arabs & said to them "They say that the English are good but they are not good" &c the Arabs laughed & advised me to get other carriers as soon as I could - They never carry half a slaves load yet always grumble and skulk - Another seeing the success of this - sat down and said that he had a sore eye but forgot it for when the Arabs came up he held up his legs saying

that he could not walk - Syde gave his box to
a little boy who ran off with it on his head -

[2]6th

Two & a half hours brought us to the large river
we saw yesterday - It is more than a mile wide
& full of Papyrus and other aquatic plants - It
was very difficult to ford as the Papyrus roots are
hard to the bare feet, and we often plunged into holes
up to the waist - a loose mass floated in the middle
of our path - one could sometimes get on along
this while it bent & heaved under the weight but
through it one would plunge & find great difficulty
to get out - the water under this was very cold from
evaporation - It took an hour and a half to cross
it - It is called Chisera and winds to the
West to fall into ~~Moero~~ Kalongosi and Moero - on many animals as
Elephants - Tahetsis - zebras - buffaloes graze on
the long sloping banks of about $\frac{1}{4}$ of a mile
down while the ranges of hills we crossed as
mere ridges now appear behind us in the
South - People numerous and friendly,

[2]7th

one elephant was killed - we remained to
take the ivory from the dead beast - buffaloes
and zebras were also killed - It was so cloudy
that no observations could be taken to
determine our position - but Chisera
rises in Lopere - Further West it is free
of Papyrus and canoes are required to
cross it

[2]8

Two hours North brought us to the Kamosenga

[0316]

a river

eight yards wide of clear water ran strongly

29th

among aquatic plants - Hippopotami buffalo
& zebra abundant - This goes into the Chisera
Eastwards - country flat & covered with
dense tangled bush - Cassias & another
tree of the pea family are now in flower &
perfume the air - other two hours took us
round a large bend of this river -

30
Sept
1867

We crossed the Kamosenga or another but
a small stream near hills & reach Karunga's
Kamosenga divides Lopere from Kawa,
the latter being Insama's country - Lopere
is North West of it -

1st Oct
1867

Karungu was very much afraid of us
he kept everyone out of his stockade at first,
but during the time the Arabs sent forward
to try & conciliate other chiefs he gradually
became more friendly - He had little ivory
to sell, and of those who had Mtete ^ or Mtema seemed
inclined to treat the messengers roughly -
men were also sent to Insama asking him
to try and induce Mtema and Chtkongo to be
friendly & sell ivory and provisions, but
Insama replied that these chiefs were not
now under him, and if they thought themselves strong
enough to contend against guns he had nothing
to say to them - Other chiefs threatened to run
away as soon as they saw the Arabs approach[-]
-ing - these were assured that we meant to pass

through the country alone - and if they gave no guides to shew us how, we should avoid the villages altogether & proceed to the countries where ivory was to be bought - The panic was too great, no one would agree to our overtures, and at last when we did proceed one on the River Chome fulfilled his threat & left us three empty villages there were no people to see though the granaries

[0317]

311

Oct^r
4
1867

were crammed, and it was impossible to prevent the slaves from stealing - When Chikongo heard TipoTipo's message about buying ivory he said "and when did TipoTipo place ivory in my country that he comes seeking it" - yet he sent a tusk & said that is all I have, and he is not to come here - Their hostile actions are caused principally by fear - If Insama could not stand before the Malongwana or traders how can we face them - I wished to go on to Moero, but all declare that our ten guns would put all the villages to flight - they are terror struck - first rains of the season on the 5th -

10th

Had a long conversation with Syde - he thinks that the sSun rises and sets because the Koran says so, and he sees it - He asserts that Jesus foretold the coming of Mohamad - and that it was not Jesus who suffered on the cross but a substitute, it being unlikely that a true prophet would be put to death so ignominiously - He does not understand how we can be told that our saviour died for our sins -

An elephant killed by TipoTipo's men - It is
always clouded over & often not a breath of air
stirring -

16th

A great many of the women of this district &
of Lopere have the swelled Thyroid gland called
Goitre or Derbyshire neck - men too appeared
with it, and they in addition have Hydrocele of
large size

An Arab who had been long ill at Chitimba's
died yesterday and was buried in the evening - no
women allowed to come near - A long silent
prayer was uttered over the corpse when it was
laid beside the grave, and then a cloth was
held over the grave as men in it deposited
the remains beneath sticks placed slanting on the
side of the bottom of the grave - This keeps the
earth from coming directly into contact with the
body -

[0318]
312

1867
Oct^r
18th

A feast was made by the friends of the departed
and portions sent to all who had attended the
funeral - I got a good share -

The last we heard of Insama was that he would
not interfere with Chikongo - Two wives beat
drums & he dances to them - He is evidently in his
dotage - We hear of many Arabs in the West of
us -

20th

(very ill - am always so when I have no work
sore bones - much headache - then lost power
over the muscles of the back as at Liemba - Urine in

dribblets - no appetite & much thirst - Fever un-influenced by medicine)

21st

Syde sent his men to build a new hut in a better situation - I hope it may be a healthful

22

one for me - the final message from Chikongo was a discouraging one - no ivory - the Arabs however go West with me as far as Chisawe's He being accustomed to Arabs from Tangan[-]yika will give me men to take me on to Moero - the Arabs will then return and we move on -

23^d

TipoTipo gave Karingu some cloth and this chief is "looking for something" to give him in return, this detains us one day more -

24th

When a slave wishes to change his master he goes to one whom he likes better & breaks a spear or a bow in his presence - the transference is irrevocable - this curious custom prevails on the Zambesi, and also among the Wanyamwesi - if the old master wishes to recover his slave the new one may refuse ^ to part with him except when he gets his full price - A case of this kind happened here yesterday -

25th

Authority was found in the Koran for staying one day more here - This was very

[0319]

313

[2]5th
[O]ct^r
[1]867

trying - but the fact was our guide from Hara
hither had enticed a young slave girl to run
away & he had given her in charge to one of his
countrymen, who turned round and tried to
secure her for himself - and gave information
about the other enticing her away - nothing can
be more tedious than the Arab way of travelling

26

We went S.W. for five hours through an
undulating well wooded & well peopled country
The large game numerous - several trees give
out when burned very fine scents others do it
when cut - Euphorbias abundant - we slept
by a torrent which had been filled with muddy
water by late rains - It thunders every afternoon
and rains somewhere as regularly as it thunders
but these are but partial rains - they do not
cool the earth nor fill the cracks in it of the
dry season -

27

off early in a fine drizzling rain which con-
tinued for two hours - came onto a plain about
3 miles broad full of large game - These plains
are swamps at times, and they are flanked by
ridges of denudation some 200 or 300 feet above
them & covered with trees

[Drawing of hills.]

These ridges are generally hardened sandstone
marked with madrepores, and masses of
brown Haematite - It is very hot, and we

become very tired - There is no system in
the Arab marches - the first day was five
hours this 3 $\frac{3}{4}$ hours - Had it been reversed -
short marches during the first days &
longer afterwards inure the muscles to the
exertion - a long line of heights on our
South, point to the valley of Insama

28

Five hours brought us to the Choma river & the
villages of Chifupa but as already mentioned
chief & people had fled, and no persuasion

[0320]

314

28th
Oct^r
1867

could prevail on them to come & sell us
food - we shewed a few who ventured to
come among us what we were willing
to give for flour but they said, yes we
will call the women, & they will sell - none
came

29th

Rested all day on the banks of the Choma
which is a muddy stream coming from
the North & going to the South West to join
the Chisera - it has worn itself a deep bed in
the mud of its banks & is 20 yards wide
& in some spots waist deep at other parts
it is unfordable - It contains plenty of fish
and hippopotami & crocodiles abound,
I bought a few ground nuts at an exorbitant
price - the man evidently not seeing that
it would have been better to part with more
at a lower price than run off & have all

to be eaten by the slaves -

30th

Two ugly images were found in huts built for them - they represent in a poor way the people of the country, and are used in rain making & curing the sick ceremonies - this is the nearest approach to idol worship I have seen in the country -

31st

- We marched over a long line of hills on our West & in five & a half hours came to some villages where the people sold us food willingly and behaved altogether in a friendly way - We were met by a herd of buffaloes but Syde seized my gun from the boy who carried it and when the animals came close past me I was powerless, and not at all pleased with the want ^ of good sense shewn by my usually polite Arab friend

Note

- The Choma is said by Mohamad bin Saled to go into ~~Tanganyika~~ ? ? It goes to Kalongosi

[0321]

315

[1]st
Nov
[1]867

Came along between ranges of hills considerably higher than those we have passed in Itawa or Insama's country, and thickly covered with trees ^ some in full foliage, and some putting forth fresh red leaves - the hills are about 700 or 800

feet above the valleys - This is not a district of running rills - We crossed three sluggish streamlets knee deep - Buffaloes very numerous - the Ratel covers the buffalo droppings with earth in order to secure the scavenger beetles which bury themselves therein without rolling a portion away as usual - built our sheds on a hill side - our course was West & 6 ½ hours -

2^d

Still in the same direction, and in an open valley remarkable for the numbers of a small Euphorbia which we smashed at every step crossed a small but strong rivulet the Lipande going West to Moero - then an hour afterwards crossed it again now 20 yards wide & knee deep After descending from the tree covered hill which divides Lipande from Luao we crossed the latter to sleep on its Western bank - country very richly wooded with trees of a large size, the hills are granite now and a range on our left from 700 to 1500 feet high goes on all the way to Moero

These valleys along which we travel are beautiful - green is the prevailing colour but the clumps of trees assume a great variety of forms, and often remind one of English Park scenery - the long line of slaves & carriers brought up by their Arab employers adds life to the scene - They are in three bodies, and number 450 in all Each party has a guide with a flag, and when that is planted all that company stops till it is lifted, and a drum is beaten and a kudu's horn sounded

[0322]

316

2 Nov^r
1867

one party is headed by about a dozen leaders dressed with fantastic head gear of feathers

and beads - red cloth on the bodies & skins cut into strips & twisted - they take their places in line - the drum beats - the horn sounds harshly and all fall in - These sounds seem to awaken a sort of Esprit de Corps in those who have once been slaves - my attendants though lazy to the last degree when called on ^ by me to get up and be ready to march ^ now jumped up & would scarce allow me time to dress when they heard the sound of their childhood, and all day they were among the foremost - one said to me "that his feet were rotten with marching" and this though told that they were not called on to race along like slaves the Africans cannot stand sneers, When any mishap happens in the march, as when a branch tilts a load off a man's shoulder all who see it set up as a yell of derision, if any things is accidentally spilled, or if one is tired and sits down the same yell greets him, and all are excited thereby to exit themselves, they hasten on with their loads, and hurry into the sheds they build - the masters only bringing up the rear, and helping anyone who may be sick - The distances travelled were quite as much as masters or we could bear - Had frequent halts - as a half for a quarter of an hour, at the end of every hour or two been made but little distress would have been felt, but five hours at a stretch is more than men can bear in a hot climate - the female slaves held on bravely - nearly all carried loads on their heads - the head or lady of the party who is also the wife of the Arab was the only exception - she had a fine white shawl - with ornaments of

[0323]

317

[...]
Nov^r
[18]67

gold and silver on her head - These ladies had a jaunty walk, and never gave in on the longest march - many pounds weight of fine copper leglets above the ankles seemed only to help

the swag of their walk - As soon as they arrive at the sleeping place they begin to cook - and in this art they shew a good deal of expertness making savoury dishes for their masters out of wild fruits and other not very likely materials.

[...] Nov^r

The ranges of hills retire as we advance - soil very rich - At two villages the people did not want us so we went on & encamped near a third Kabwakwa ^where a son of Mohamad bin Saleh with a number of Wanyamwesi lives - the chief of this part is Muabo, but we did not see him - people brought plenty of food for us to buy - the youths father is at Cazembe's the country people were very much given to falsehood - Every place enquired for was near Ivory abundant provisions of all sorts cheap and plenty - our headmen trusted to the statements of this young man rather, and he led them to desist going further - Rua country was a he said - it is but 3 days off month distant ^& but little ivory there - (We saw it after three days) no ivory at Cazembe's or here in Buire or Kabuire - He was right as to Cazembe Letters however had come from Hamees with news of a depressing nature. Chitimba was dead, and so was Mambwe - Chitimbas people are fighting for the chieftainship, Great hunger prevails there now - the Arabs having bought up all the food - Moriri a chief dispossessed of his country by Insama wished Hamees to restore his possessions, but Hamees said that he had made peace and would not interfere.

[0324]

318

4th
Nov^r
1867

The unfavourable news from a part where the chief results of their trading were deported

made Syde & Tipotipo decide to remain in Buire only ten or twenty days, send out people to buy what ivory they could find & then retire.

As Syde & Tipotipo were sending men to Cazembe for ivory I resolved to go thither first instead of shaping my course for Ujiji

Very many cases of goitre in men and women here - I see no reason for it. this is only 3350 feet above the sea -

7th

Start for Moero, convoyed by all the Arabs for some distance - They have been extremely kind - We draw near to the mountain range on our left called Kakoma, and sleep at one of Kaputa's villages our course now being nearly South -

8th

Villages are very thickly studded over the valley formed by Kakoma range & another at a greater distance on our right - 100 or 200 yards is a common distance between these villages which like those in Londa or Lunda are all shaded with trees of a species of Ficus Indica - one of these villages belonged to Puta, and this Puta the paramount chief sent to say, that if we slept there & gave him a cloth he would send men to conduct us next day & ferry us across. I was willing to remain but his people would not lend a hut. so we came onto the Lake & no Ferry. Probably he thought that we were going across the Lualaba into Rua -

Lake Moero seemed of goodly size and is flanked by ranges of mountains on the East and West - Its banks are

[0325]

[...]th
Nov
1867

of coarse sand and slope gradually down to the water - outside these banks stands a thick belt of tropical vegetation in which fishermen build their huts - The country called Rua lies on the West, and is seen as a lofty range of dark mountains - Another range of less height, but more broken, stands along the Eastern shore, and in it lies the path to Cazembe - We slept in a fisherman's hut on the North Shore - They brought a large fish called Monde for sale - It has a shiny skin and no scales - a large head with tentaculæ like the siluridae and large eyes - The large gums in its mouth have a brush like surface like a whale's in miniature - It is said to eat small fish - A bony spine rises on its back I suppose for defence - It is 2 ½ inches long and as thick as a quill - they are very retentive of life.

The Northern shore has a fine sweeplike an inbent bow, and round the Western end flows the water that makes the river Lualaba, which before it enters Moero is the Luapula, and that again if the most intelligent reports speak true, is the Chambeze before it enters Lake Bemba or Bambeolo

[...]th

We came along the North shore till we reached the Eastern flanking range then ascended & turned South - people very suspicious shutting their gates as we drew near - We were alone and only nine persons in all but they must have had reason for fear. One headman refused us admission then sent after us saying that the man who had refused admission was not the chief He had come from a distance & had just arrived

9th
 Nov^r
 1867

It being better to appear friendly than otherwise,
 we went back, and were well entertained,
 Provisions were given when we went away,
 Flies abound & are very troublesome. They seem
 to be attracted by the great numbers of fish caught
 The people here are Babemba but beyond the
 river Kalongosi they are all Balunda

A trade in salt is carried on from different
 salt springs & salt mud to Lunda & elsewhere
 We meet parties of salt traders daily, and
 they return our salutations very cordially
 rubbing earth on the arms. We find
 our path to lie between two ranges of mountains
 one flanking the Eastern shore - the other about
 3 miles more inland, and parallel to it.
 They are covered thickly with trees and are of
 loosely coherent granite - there many villages in
 the space enclosed by these ranges but all insecure.

12th

We came to the Kalongosi or as the Arabs and
 Portuguese pronounce it Karungwesi - about 60 yds
 wide flowing fast over stones - It is deep enough
 even now when the rainy season is not com-
 -menced to require canoes - It is said to rise in
 Kumbi ^ or afar a country to the South East of our ford -
 Fish in great numbers are caught when ascending
 to spawn - They are secured by weirs, nets, hooks,
 Large strong baskets are placed in the rapids, and
 filled with stones - when the water rises these
 baskets are standing places for the fisherman
 to angle or throw their nets - Having crossed
 the Kalongosi we were now in Lunda or
 Londa

13th

The Kalongosi went North till it met a large meadow on the shores of Moero, and turning Westwards it entered there - the fisherman gave us the names of 39 species of fish in the Lake - They said that they never cease ascending

[0327]

321

13th
Nov^r
1867

the Kalongosi though at times they are more abundant than as others.

Monde - Mota - Lasa - Kasibe - Molobe - Lopembe
Motoya - Clupansa - Mpifu - Manda - Mpala -
Moombo - Mfeu - Mende - sense - Kadea nkololo
Etiaka - Nkomo - Lifisha - Sambamkaka - Ntondo
Sampa - Bongwe - Mabanga - Kise - Kuanya
Nkosu - Pale - Mosungu - Litembwa - Mechebere
Hominchia - Sipa - Lomembe - Mokuga -
Mironge - Nfindo - Lende -

[1]4th

Being doubtful as to whether we were in the right path sent to a village to enquire. Headman evidently one of the former Cazembe school came to us full of wrath - What right had we to come that way seeing the usual path was to our left - He mouthed some sentences in the pompous Lunda style, but would not shew us the path, so we left him & after going through a forest of large trees 4 ½ hours South, took advantage of some hut on the Kifurwa R^t ^built by bark cloth cutters -

[1]5th
Kifurwa

Heavy rains but we went on & found a village surrounded by Cassava fields & next day crossed the Muatoze 25 yards wide & running strongly towards

Moero - knee deep - The the R^t Kibukwa 7 yards wide
~also knee deep going to swell the Muatize -

[1]7th

cross a brook Chirongo 1 yard wide & 1 deep but
our march was all through well grown forest
chief Gum copal trees, and bark cloth trees - The
Gum copal is spewed out in abundance after
or during the rains from holes a quarter of an
inch in diameter made by an insect. In falls
and in time sinks into the soil a supply for
future generations - The small well rounded
features of Insama's country are common
here as we observe in the salt traders & villages,
Indeed this is the home of the negro, and the
Features such as we see in pictures of ancient
Egyptians as first pointed out by M^r Winwood
Reade - Sleep by the R^r Mandapala

[0328]

322

17th
Nov^r
1867

12 yards wide & knee deep
18th Rest by the Kabusi a sluggish narrow
rivulet - It runs into the Chungu a quarter of
a mile off - the Chungu is broad but choked
with trees & aquatic plants - Sapotas - Eschinomen
Papyrus & the free stream is 18 yards wide
and waist deep - We had to wade about 100
yards thigh & waist deep to get to the free stream

On this the Chungu D^r Lacerda died - It
is joined by the Mandapala & ~~Lunde~~ and
flows a united stream into Mo[...]ero. The
statements of the people are confused but
the foregoing is what I have gleaned from
many - There were some Ujiji people with
the Cazembe of the time - The Portuguese and
Ujijians began to fight, but Cazembe
said to them and the Portuguese you are all

my guests why should you fight & kill
each other - He then gave Lacerda ten slaves
and men to live with him & work, as in
building huts bringing firewood water &
He made similar presents to the Ujijians &c
quieted them - Lacerda was but ten days
at Chungu when he died - The place of his
death was about 9° 32' and not 8° 43' as
in M^r Arrowsmith's map. - The feud arose
from one of Lacerda's people killing an Ujijian
at the water - This would be a barrier to their movement

Palm oil trees are common West of the
Chungu but more appeared East of it
This is remarkable as the altitude above the
sea is 3350 feet - It is eaten by the people
as very nice & sweet.

Allah is a very common exclamation
among all the people West of Insama -

[0329]

323

[1]9th
Nov^r
1867

By advice of a guide we picked up at
Kifurwa we sent four fathoms of calico
to apprise Cazembe of our coming. the
Arabs usually send ten fathoms - In our case
a very superfluous notice for Cazembe is said
to have telegraphed to by runners at every stage
of our progress after crossing the Kalongosi.
We remain by the Chungu till Cazembe sends one of
his counsellors to guide us to his town. It has
been so perpetually clouded over that we have
been unable to make out our progress, and the
dense forest prevented our seeing Moero as we
wished - Rain & thunder perpetually - though the
rain seldom fell where we were -
saw pure white headed swallows ^ Psalidoprocne Albiceps skimming the
surface of the Chungu as we crossed it - the soil
is very rich - Cazembe's groundnuts are the
largest I have seen & so is the Cassava - I got over
a pint of Palm oil for a cubit of calico.

[2]0th

A fine young man whose father had been the Cazembe before this one came to see us. He is in the background now, otherwise he would have conducted us to the village - a son or heir

[2]1st

does not succeed to the chieftainship here. The R^r Lunde was five miles from Chungu - it is 6 yards wide where we crossed it but larger further down - springs were oozing out of its bed. We then entered on a broad plain covered with bush the trees being all cleared off in building a village - When one Cazembe dies the man who succeeds him invariably removes and builds his Pembwe or court at another place When D^r Lacerda died the Cazembe moved to near the North end of the Mofwe - There have been seven Cazembe in all - the word means a general

[0330]

324

21st
Nov^r
1867

The plain extending from the Lunde to the town of Cazembe is level and studded pretty thickly with red anthills from 15 to 20 feet high - Cazembe has made a broad path from his town to the Lunde about a mile & half long and as broad as a carriage path - The chief's residence is enclosed in a ~~high~~ wall of reeds eight or nine feet high, and 300 yards square. The gateway is ornamented with about sixty human skulls - a shed stands in the middle of the road before we come to the gate with a cannon dressed in gaudy cloths - a number of noisy fellows stopped our party & demanded tribute for the cannon

I burst through them & the rest followed without giving anything - They were afraid of the English - The town is on the East bank of the Lakelet Mofwe and ~~two or three~~ one miles from its Northern end - Mohamad bin Saleh now met us, his men firing guns of welcome - He conducted us to his shed of reception, and then gave us a hut till we could build one of our own - Mohamad is a fine -portly ^black Arab with a pleasant smile, and pure white beard - Mohamad had been more than ten years in these parts and lived with four Cazembes He has considerable influence here and also on Tanganyika -

An Arab trader ^ Mohamad Bogarib who arrived seven days before us with an immense number of slaves presented a meal of vermicelli- oil- and honey - Also Cassava meal cooked so as to resemble a sweet meat - I had not tasted [...]honey or ^sugar since we left Lake Nyassa in September 1866. They had coffee too.

[0331]

325

[21]st
[N]^{ov}^r
[18]67

Neither goats sheep nor cattle thrive here, so the people are shut up to fowls & fish. Cassava is very extensively cultivated - Indeed so generally is this plant grown that it is impossible ^ to know which is town & which is country - every hut has a plantation around it in which is grown Cassava - Holcus Soghum - maize, beans, nuts.

[...]th

Mohamad gives the same account of the river Luapula & Lake Bemba that Jumbe did, but he adds that the Chambezi where we crossed it is the Luapala before it enters Bemba - ^ or Bandeolo Bangweolo to a coming out of that Lake it goes South a little,

then turns round & comes away to the North,
as Luapala & without touching the Mofwe,
goes into Moero - On emerging thence at the
North West and, it becomes Lualaba - goes
into Rua - forms a Lake and then goes into
another Lake beyond Tanganyika.

The Lakelet Mofwe fills during the rains & spreads ^ Westward
much beyond its banks. Elephants wandering in the mud
flats covered are annually killed in numbers. If it
were connected with the Lake Moero the flood would
run off.

Many of Cazembe's people appear with the
ears cropped & hands lopped off - The present
chief has been often guilty of this barbarity.
One man has just come to us without ears or
hands - He tries to excite our pity by making
a chirruping noise by striking his cheeks with
the stumps of his hands.

A dwarf also with backbone broken comes
about us - He talks with an air of authority
and is present at all public occurrences,
The people seem to bear with him - He is a
stranger from a tribe in the North and works
in his garden very briskly. His height is
3 feet, 9 inches - His name Zofu

[0332]

326

24th
Nov^r
1867

We were called to be presented to Cazembe
in a grand reception - A headman stood
at the Eastern or principal gate with two
large illmade umbrellahs over his head, and
all his people behind him. He had to wait
for admittance, and so had we till Cazembe
had seen our present - This excited Mohamad's
anger, and he threatened to go home again,
but the gatekeepers who were smeared over
with mud entreated him to wait. We had
to wait only two or three minutes, and Cohen
admitted into the large square we saw Cazembe
seated in front of a gigantic hut with two
umbrellahs held over him - Behind him in the
doorway of the hut sat his principal wife

and a number of maids; On his right sat about 30 men with guns & on his left about 50 squatted, still further off on some 50 yards from his right sat seventy men, and about the ^ same distance off on the left an equal number; Mohamad and I with attendants were placed directly in front of Cazembe but 40 yards off, while behind us and on our right & left we had bands of musicians - A large drum was placed near to us which seemed to have a bell inside, and an open drum beside it were used to direct the ceremonies - Each band of musicians with marimbas, drums an instrument in a bag & a strange shaped drum

[Drawing of a drum.] when called on, walked slowly up to the chief made obeisance to him with their instruments and sat down on his left - I counted the men present before the musicians came up & found them to be about 300 - A group of women came behind the gaze at the spectacle - The whole company might amount to 500 - It certainly did not

[0333]

327

[2]4th
Nov^r
[1]867

number 600 in all

Cazembe was clothed in a common blue & white Manchester print edged with red serge, and arranged in large folds so as to resemble crinoline - His arms were encased up to the elbows in sleeves on which different coloured beads were sewed in neat patterns, - lozenge shaped prevailing - His legs were similarly ornamented and the whole part of his ^ head covered in like manner - From the crown arose a circle of yellow feathers (of the Egret or Paddy bird) When called on I saluted him in the English manner. An old counsellor then gave a long account of me which he had gathered from different sources - dwelling particularly on my have passed though Lunde before - That I was not a Portuguese, but an Englishman, and that there were but

three sovereigns in the world "Seyed Seyed - The Queen of England, the King of Rome -" this speech having recieved favourably the old man turned round to me & said that I was free in Cazembe's country to do whatever I liked - Cazembe then rose and went to an inner apartment whiter we followed with the present which had been in his charge all morning. Each article was produced and exhibited in detail - It consisted of eight yards of orange coloured serge - a large blue-white & red table cloth - another large cloth made at Manchester in imitation of West Coast native manufacture - This never fails to excite the admiration of natives and Arabs - lastly a large richly gilded comb of the size & shape worn by ladies 40 or 50 years ago, and an ornament for the neck - As it had been fully explained that my goods were nearly done on account of the length of our journey & were now going to Ujiji for more there was no disappointment - Indeed all the articles were highly

[0334]

328

24th
Nov^r
1867

appreciated - I knew what would suit the taste - The value might be £2-10 - He again expressed himself pleased with my visit & present & we came away.

The present Cazembe has a heavy uninteresting countenance without beard or whiskers and somewhat of the Chinese type - His eyes have an outward squint. He smiled but once during the day, and that was pleasant enough, though the cropped ears and cupped hands with human skulls at the gate made me indisposed to look on anything with favour His principal wife came with her attendants, after he had departed to look at the Englishman (Moengerese) she was a fine tall good featured lady with two spears in her hand - The principal men who had come around made way for her and called on me to salute, I did so but she

being forty yards off I involuntarily beckoned her to come nearer - this upset the gravity of all her attendants - all burst into a laugh and ran off -

Cazembe's smile was elicited by the dwarf making some uncouth antics before him
His executioner also came forward to look,
He had a broad Lunda sword on his arm, and a curious scizzor like instrument at his neck for cropping ears - on saying to him that his was a nasty work he smiled and so did many who were not sure of their ears a moment - Many men of respectability shew that at some former time they have been thus punished - Cazembe send us another large basket of fire dried fish in addition to that sent us at Chungu - 2 baskets of flour - one of dried Cassava and a pot of pombe or beer - Mohamad who was

[0335]

329

[2]6
Nov^r
[1]867

accustomed to much more liberal Cazembes thinks this one very stingy having neither generosity nor good sense - As we cannot consume all he gives we do not complain.

[2]7th

Cazembes chief wife passes frequently to her plantation carried by six or more commonly by twelve men in a sort of palanquin - She has European features but light brown complexion. a number of men run before her brandishing swords & battle axes and one beats a hollow instrument

[Drawing of a pant-shaped instrument[?].] giving warning to passengers to clear the way - she has two enormous pipes ready filled

for smoking - she is very attentive to her agriculture
Cassava is the chief product - sweet potatoes
maize - Sorghum - Pennisetum - millet, groundnuts.
cotton. The people seem more savage than any I have
yet seen - They strike each other barbarously from
mere wantonness, but they are civil enough to me.

Mohamad bin Saleh proposes to go to Ujiji
next month - He waited when he heard of our
coming in order that we might go together - He has
a very low opinion of the present Cazembe.
He has been here upwards of ten years & has seen
four Cazembes - The area which has served
for building the chief town at different times
is about 10 miles in diameter. Chungu nearer to
Mofwe than when we crossed ^ it seems to be that on
which D^r Lacerda died - If he had fever it is
quite excusable that he should make a mistake.

Mofwe is a shallow piece of water about 2
miles broad or less long full of sedgy islands.
The abodes of waterfowl - some are solid enough
to be cultivated - the bottom is mud though sandy
at the East shore - In the rainy season it spreads
over portions ^ in the West otherwise dry & elephants
venture in and are killed - It has no

[0336]

330

28th
Nov^r
1867

communication with the Luapula; the Lunde
Chungu & Mandapala are said to join & flow
into Moero. The fish are in great abundance (Perch)
on the West side there is a grove of Palm oil
palms, and beyond ^ West rises along range of
mountains of the Rua country fifteen or
twenty miles off

1st Dec^r
1867

An old man named Perembe is the
owner of the land on which Casembe

has built. They always keep up the traditional ownership - Munongo is a brother of Perembe and he owns the country East of the Kalongosi - If anyone wished to cultivate land he would apply to these aboriginal chiefs for it

2^d

3

4th

Asked a man from Casembe to guide me to South end of Moero. He advised me not to go as it was so marshy - the Lunde forms a marsh on one side and the Luapala lets water percolate through sand & mud and so does the Robukwe which makes the path often knee deep - He would send men to conduct me to Moero a little further down. He added besides that we had got very little to eat from him and he wanted to give more - Moero's South end is about 9° 30' South.

5th

Went to say good bye to Casembe or rather have some conversation - advised him not to sell his people but he broke off into along oration about his power and country which Mohamad mocked - He lifted up two spears which lay by his side several times and Mohamad took that as an insult. He wanted to impress me with the idea that he was a great warrior but he only drove away a son of the former Casembe who fled to his arms

[0337]

331

[...] th

Dec^r

1867

and is there still - He subsequently went West to a people living West of him and killed the owners of the skulls at his gate - He never was checked - has a very uninteresting old China man's face with outward squint of both eyes - a few hairs only on his chin, and his body is long, thin, and bent together with excesses.

[...]th

Old Perembe is a sensible man - Mohamad thinks him 150 years old. He is always on the side of liberality and fairness - brought me a present of pombe - says that the first Casembe was attracted to Mofwe by the abundance of fish in it - He has the idea of all men being derived from a single pair.

[...]th

It is very cloudy here - no observations can be made as it clouds over every afternoon and night - cleared off last night but intermittent fever prevented my going out

[...]3th
[...]th
[...]th

Set in rains - a number of fine young girls who live in Casembe's compound came and shook hands in their way - which is to cross the right over to the your ^left and clasp them then give a few claps with both hands & repeat the crossed clasp they want to tell it to their children

[...]th

announced to Cazembe our intention of going away - two traders got the same return present as I did, namely one goat and some fish, meal

and Cassava - always ill when not working
- was writing letters to be ready when we came
to Ujiji. Have been here a month and cannot

[...] th

get more than two Lunars. I got alts of the
Meridian of stars North & South soon after
we came but not lunars - Cazembe sent
a big basket of fire dried fish - two pots of
beer, and a basket of Cassava - He says we
may go when we choose

[0338]

332

19th Dec^r
1867

On going to say good bye to Cazembe he
tried to be gracious, said that we had
eaten but little of his food yet he allowed us
to go - He sent for a man to escort us and

22^d

on the 22^d we went to Lunde R^r crossed
it and went on to sleep at Chungu closely
the place where Casembe's court stood when
D^e Lacerda came - The town was moved
further West as soon as the D^e died. There
are many Palm oil palms about but no
tradition exists of their introduction.

23^d

Crossed the Chungu - rain from above
and cold & wet ^ to the waist below, as I do not lift my
shirt - The white skin makes all stare -
saw black monkeys - Chungu is joined
by the Kabusi and Mandapala before it

enters Moero - Casembe said that Lunde
ran into Mofwe, others denied this, and said
that it formed a marsh with numbers
of pools in long grass - It may ooze into
Mofwe thus - Casembe sent three men to
guide me to Moero

24th

Drizzly rain and we are in a miserable spot
by the Kabusi in a bed of brakens four
feet high. The guides wont stir in this
weather - gave beads to buy what could

25th

be got for Christmas - Drizzly showers
every now and then - soil black mud.

26th

About ten men came as guides and
as a convoy of honour to Mohamad

27

In two hours crossed Mandapala now
waist deep - This part was well stocked
with people five years ago, but Casembe's
severity in cropping ears & other mutilation
selling the children, for slight offences
made them all flee to neighbouring
tribes and now though he sent all over
the country he could not collect a thousand [...]

[0339]
333

? 8.37. So. Town of Kasembe 10th Dec^r 1867.
? 28.30. E. Lat. 9°37'13" South Long. 28° East.

N 2
Geographical

The Right Honourable
The Earl of Clarendon
footnote My Lord

The first
opportunity I had of sending a letter to the Coast
occurred in February last when I was at a E.
village called Molembe. C Lat. 10° 14' S. Long 31° 46'
in the country named Lobemba = Lobisa -
Lobemba and Ulungu and Itawa - Lunda are the names by
which the districts of an elevated region are known between
the parallels 11° and 8° South and Meridians 28°-33° long- East
the altitude of this upland is from 4000 to 6000
feet above the level of the sea - It is generally
covered with Forest, well watered by the numerous
rivulets - and comparatively cold. The soil is
very rich, and yields abundantly wherever cultiv-
-ated - This is the watershed between the Loangwa
a tributary of the Zambesi, and several rivers
which flow towards the North - of the latter
the most remarkable is the Chambeze, for
it assists in the formation of three Lakes, and
changes its name as often three times in the five or six hundred
miles of its course.

On leaving Lobemba we entered Ulungu, and
as we proceeded Northwards perceived by the
barometers and the courses of numerous
rivulets that a decided slope lay in that direction.
A friendly old Ulungu chief named Kasonso
on hearing that I wished to visit Lake Liemba
which lies in his country, gave me his son
with a large escort to guide me thither, and
on the 2^d April last we reached the brim
of the deep cuplike cavity in which the Lake

[0340]

334

Despatch
N° 2

reposes - The descent is 2000 feet, and still
the surface of the water is upwards of 2500 feet above

*This was not
sent because
I had no
paper to copy
it - another
was written
from near
Bangweolo in
July 1868*

the level of the sea - The sides of the hollow are very steep, and sometimes the rocks run the whole 2000 feet sheer down to the water. Nowhere is there three miles of level land from the foot of the cliffs to the shore But ~~both~~ top sides & bottom are covered with well grown wood and grass except where the bare rocks protrude. The scenery is extremely beautiful. The "Aeasy" a stream of 15 yards broad, and thigh deep came down alongside our precipitous path, and formed cascades by leaping 300 feet at a time, These with the bright red of the clay schist among the greenwood trees, made the dulllest of my attendants pause & remark with wonder Antelopes, buffaloes, and elephants abound on the steep slopes, and Hippopotami crocodiles and fish swarm in the waters Guns are here unknown, and these animals may live to old age if not beguiled into pit-falls. the elephants sometimes eat the crops of the natives and flap their ^ big ears just outside the village stockades. One got out of our way onto ^ a comparatively level spot. and then stood and roared at us, Elsewhere they make clear off at sight of man. -

The first village we came to on the banks of the Lake had a grove of Palm oil and other trees around it - This Palm tree was not the dwarf species seen on Lake Nyassa - a cluster of the fruit passed the door of my hut which required two men to carry it - The fruit seemed quite as large as those on the West Coast most of the natives live on two islands

[0341]

335

Desp.
N° 2

where they cultivate the soil - rear goats, and catch fish - The Lake is not large - from 15 to 20 miles broad and from 30 to 40 long - It is the receptacle of four considerable streams, and sends out an arm two miles broad to the

and it may be a branch of that Lake
N.N.W. it is said, to Tanganyika ^- one of the
streams, the Lonzua drives a smooth body of water
into the Lake fifty yards broad and ten fathoms
deep - bearing on its surface duckweed, and
grassy islands - I could see the mouths of other
streams - but got near enough to measure the
Lofu only, and at a ford fifty miles from
the confluence it was 100 yards wide, and
waist deep in the dry season.

We remained six weeks on the shores of the
Lake trying to pick up some flesh & strength; a
party of Arabs came into Ulungu after us in
search of ivory, and hearing that an Englishman
had preceded them naturally enquired where
I was. But our friends the Baulungu
suspecting that mischief was meant stoutly
denied that they had ever seen anything of
the sort - and then became very urgent that
I should go to one of the inhabited islands
for safety - I regret that I suspected them
of intending to make me a prisoner there
which they could easily have done by removing
the canoes - but where the villagers who
decieved the Arabs told me afterwards with
an air of triumph how nicely they had
managed, I saw that they had only been anxious
for my safety - On three occasions the same
friendly disposition was shewn, and when
we went round the West side of the Lake
in order to examine the arm or branch
^ above referred to the headman at the confluence of
the Lofu protested so strongly against my

[0342]

336

Desp.
Nº 2

going - the Arabs had been fighting, and I might
be mistaken for an Arab & killed that I felt
half inclined to believe him - Two Arab
slaves entered the village the same afternoon
in search of ivory and confirmed all he had
said - We now altered our course intending
to go South about the district disturbed by

the Arabs. When we had gone sixty miles we heard that the head quarters of the Arabs were twenty two miles further - They had found ivory very cheap, and pushed onto the West till attacked by a chief named Insama whom they beat in his own stockade - they were not at a loss which way to turn - on reaching Chitamba's village (Lat. 8° 57' 55 Long 30° 20' East) I found them about 600 in all, and on presenting a letter I had from the Sultan of Zanzibar was immediately supplied with provisions, beads & cloths They approved of my plan of passing to the South of Insama's country, but advised waiting till the effect of punishment which the Baulungu had resolved to inflict on Insama for breach of public law were known It had always been understood that whoever brought goods into the country was to be protected - and two hours after my arrival at Chitamba's the son of Kasouso our guide, marched in with his contingent. It was anticipated that Insama might flee - If to the North, he would leave me a free passage through his country - if to the South I might be saved from walking into his hands - But it turned out that Insama was anxious for peace - he had sent two men with elephants tusks to begin a negotiation, but treachery was suspected [...]

[0343]

337

Desp.
N° 2

they were shot down - another effort was made with ten goats & repulsed - this was much to the regret of the head Arabs - It was fortunate for me that the Arab goods were not all sold for Lake Moero lay in Insama's country, and without peace no ivory could be bought, nor could I reach the Lake - The peace making was, however, a tedious process occupying three and a half months - drinking each other's blood - This, as I saw it West of

this in 1854 not more is horrible than the thirtieth dilution of Deadly Nightshade or Strychnine is in Homeopathy - I thought that I could easily swallow that, but not the next means of cementing the peace - marrying a black wife. Insama's daughter was the bride, and she turned out very pretty - she came riding pig a back on a man's shoulders - This is the most dignified conveyance that chiefs and their families can command - She had ten maids with her, each carrying a basket of provisions, and all having the same beautiful features as herself - she was taken by the principal Arab, but soon shewed that she preferred her father to her husband, for seeing preparations made to send off to purchase ivory she suspected that her father was to be attacked and made her escape - I then visited Insama, and as he objected to many people coming near him took only three of my eight attendants - His people were very much afraid of fire arms, and felt all my clothing to see if I had any concealed on my person. Insama is an old man with head and face like those sculptured on the Assyrian monuments - He has been a great conqueror in his time

[0344]
338

Des
No 2

and with bows and arrows was invincible He is said to have destroyed many native traders from Tanganyika but twenty Arab guns made him flee from his own stockade and caused a great sensation in the country He was much taken with my hair, and woolen clothing, but his people heedless of his scolding so pressed upon us that we could not converse, and after promising to send for me to talk during the night our interview ended - He promised guides to Moero, and sent us more provisions than we could carry, but shewed so much distrust that after all we went without

his assistance.

Insama's people are particularly handsome many of the men have as beautiful heads as one could find in an assembly of Europeans - All have very fine forms with small hands and feet - None of the West Coast ugliness from which most of our ideas of the negroes are derived is here to be seen - No prognathous jaws nor Lark heels offended the sight - my observations deepened the impression first obtained from the remarks of Mr Winwoode Reade that the typical Negro is seen in the ancient Egyptian, and not in the ungainly forms which grow up in the unhealthy swamps of the West Coast - Indeed it is probable that this upland forest region is the true home of the negro - The women excited the admiration of the Arabs - they have fine small well formed features - their great defects is one of fashion which does not extend to the next tribe

[0345]

339

Des
No 2

they file their teeth to points - the hussies ! - and that makes their smile like that of the Crocodile -

Insama's country is called Itawa and his principal town is in Lat 8° 55' South and Long. 29° 21' E. From the large population he had under him, Itawa is in many parts well cleared of trees for cultivation, and it is lower than Ulungu being generally about 3000 feet above sea - Long lines of tree covered hills raised some 600 or 700 feet above their valleys of denundation prevent the scenery from being monotonous - Large game is abundant Elephants buffaloes and zebras grazed in large numbers on the long sloping banks of a river called Chisera a mile and a half broad - In going North we crossed this river or rather

marsh which is full of Papyrus plants & reeds - our ford was an elephants path, and the roots of the Papyrus though a carpet to these animals were sharp and sore to feet usually protected by shoes, and often made us shrink and flounder into holes chest deep - the Chisera forms a larger marsh West of this ~~which took us an hour and a half to ford~~, and it gives off its water to the Kalongosi a feeder of Lake Moero -

The Arabs sent out men in all directions to purchase ivory, but their victory over Insama had created a panic among the tribes which no verbal assurances could allay - If Insama had been routed by 20 Arab guns no one could stand before them but Kasembe - and Kasembe had issued strict orders to his people not to allow the Arab who fought Isama to enter his country - they did not attempt to force

[0346]

340

their way but after sending friendly messages and presents to different chiefs which these were not cordially recieved, turned off in some other direction, and at last despairing of more ivory turned homewards - From first to last they were extremely kind to me and shewed all due respect to the Sultan's letter - I am glad that I was witness to their mode of trading in ivory and slaves - It formed a complete contrast to the atrocious dealings of the Kilwa traders who are supposed to be, but are not, the subjects of the same Sultan - If one wished to depict the slave trade in its most attractive, or rather, least objectionable form, he would accompany these gentleman subjects of the Sultan of Zanzibar - If he would describe the land traffic in its most disgusting phrases he would follow the Kilwa traders along the road to Nyassa, of the Portuguese half-castes from Tette to the river Shire -

Keeping to the North of Insama all together and moving Westwards we our small party reached the North end of Moero on the 8th November last - There the Lake is

a goodly piece of water twelve or more miles
broad, and flanked on the East and West
by ranges of lofty tree covered mountains,
the range on the West is the highest and
is part of the country called Rua - Moero
gives off a river at its North West end
called Lualaba and receives the River
Kalongosi (pronounced by the Arabs Karungosi)
on the East near its middle, and the
rivers Luapula ^ and at its Rounkwe Southern extremity
the point of most interest in Lake
Moero is that it forms one of a chain

[0347]

341

of Lakes connected by a river some 500
miles in length - First of all the Chambeze
rises in the country of Mambwe N.E. of
Molembe - it then flows South West and West
till it reaches Lat. 11° South and Long. 29° East
where it forms Lake Bemba ^ or Bambedo - emerging
thence it assumes the new name Luapula -
~~which~~ and comes down here to fall into Moero -
on going out of this Lake it is known by the
name Lualaba as it flows N.W. in Rua to
form another Lake with many islands called
Urenge or Ulenge - Beyond this, inform-
-ation is not positive as to whether it enters
Tanganyika or another Lake beyond that -
When I crossed the Chambeze, the similarity
of names led me to imagine that this was
a branch of the Zambesi - the natives said
"N° - this goes South West and forms a very
large water there" - but I had become prepossessed
with the idea that Lake Liemba was that
Bemba of which I had heard in 1863 - and
we had been so starved in the South that I gladly
set my face North - the river like prolongation
of Lake Liemba might go to Moero, and then I worked
my way to this Lake when I could not follow
the arm of Liemba - Since coming to Cazembe's
the testimony of natives and Arabs has been
so united and consistent - that I am but ten
days from La[...]-ke Bemba ^ or Bambeolo that I cannot doubt
its accuracy - I am so tired of exploration
without a word from home or anywhere
- else ^ for two years that I must go to Ujiji or Tangangika
for letters before doing anything else -

the banks and country adjacent to Lake
Bambeolo are reported to be ^ now very muddy
and very unhealthy - ^ I have no medicine the inhabitants
suffer greatly from swelled thyroid gland
or Derbyshire neck, and Elephantiasis and this
is the rainy season & very un[...]safe for me -

[0348]

342

When at the lower end of Moero we
were so near Kasembe that it was thought
well to ascertain the length of the Lake, and
see Kasembe too - We came up between the
double range that flanks the East of the Lake,
but mountains, and plains are so covered
with well grown forest that we could
seldom see it - We reached Kasembe's town
on the 28th Nov^r It stands near the North end
of the Lakelet Mofwe - this is from one to three
miles broad and some six or seven long - it is
full of sedgy islands and abounds in fish
the country is quite level but fifteen or
twenty miles West of Mofwe we see a long
range of the mountains of Rua - Between
this range and Mofwe the Luapula flows
the Lake called Moero okata = the great Moero
past into ~~Moero~~ - Moero ^being about fifty
miles long - the town of Kasembe covers
~~about~~ a mile square of cassava plantations
the huts being dotted over that space - some
have square enclosures of reeds but no
attempt has been made at arrangment,
it might be called a rural village rather
than a town - no estimate could be
formed by counting the huts, they were
so irregularly planted, and hidden by Cassava
but my impression from other
collections of huts was that the population
was under a thousand souls - The court
or compound of Kasembe - some would
call it, a palace, is a square enclosure
of 300 yds by 200 yds - it is surrounded
by a hedge of high reeds - inside, where
Kasembe honoured me with a grand
reception, stands a gigantic hut for
Kasembe, and a score of small huts
for domestics - the Queen's hut stands

[0349]

343

behind that of the chief with a number of small huts also - Most of the enclosed space is covered with a plantation of Cassava - "curcas pungans" - and cotton - Kasembe sat before his hut on a square seat placed on Lion and leopard skins - He was clothed in a coarse blue and white Manchester print edged with red baize, and arranged in large folds so as to put on wrong side foremost look like a crinoline - His arms legs & head were covered with sleeves - leggings & cap made of various coloured beads in neat patterns. a crown of yellow feathers surmounted his cap - Each of his head-men came forward shaded by a huge ill made umbrellah, and followed by his dependants - made obeisance to Kasembe and sat down on his right & left - various bands of musicians did the same - When called upon I rose and bowed - and an old counsellor with his ears cropped, gave the chief as full an account as he had been able to gather during our stay of the English in general, and my antecedents in particular - My having passed through Lunda to the West of Kasembe, and visited chiefs of whom he scarcely knew anything excited most attention - He then assured me that I was welcome to his country to go where I liked and do what I chose - We then two boys carrying his train behing him - went ^to an inner apartment where the articles of my present were exhibited in detail - He had examined them privately before, and we knew that he was satisfied they consisted of eight yards of orange coloured serge - a large striped table cloth - another large cloth made at Manchester in imitation of West Coast native manufacture - It never fails to excite the admiration of

[0350]

344

Arabs and natives, and a large richly gilded comb for the back hair such as Indu

wore fifty years ago - It was given to me by a friend at Liverpool and as Kasembe & Insama's people cultivate the hair into large knobs behind, I was sure that this article would tickle the fancy, Kasembe expressed himself pleased, and again bade me welcome.

I had another interview, and tried to dissuade him from selling his people as slaves - he listened a while - then broke off into a tirade on the greatness of his country his power and dominion, which Mohamed bin Salh who has been here for ten years turned into ridicule, and made the audience laugh by telling how other Lunda chiefs had given me oxen and sheep while Kasembe had only a poor little goat & some fish to bestow - He insisted also that ^ there were but two sovereigns in the world - the Sultan of Zanzibar and Victoria - when we went on a third occasion to bid Kasembe farewell, he was much less distant & gave me the impression that I could soon become friends with him - but he has an ungainly look, and an outward squint in each eye. A number of human skulls adorned the entrance to his courtyard - and great numbers of his principal men having their ears cropped and some with their hands lopped off shewed his barbarous way of making his ministers attentive and honest - I could not avoid indulging a prejudice against him -

[0351]

345

The Portuguese visited Kasembe long ago - but as each new Kasembe builds a new town it is not easy to fix on the exact spot to which strangers came - the last seven Kasembes have had their towns within seven miles of the present one - D^e Lacerda - Governor of Lette on the Zambesi was the only visitor of scientific attainments, and he died at the rivulet called Chungu three or four miles from this - the spot is called Nshinda or Inchinda which the Portuguese wrote Lucenda or ^ Ucenda - the Latitude given is nearly fifty miles wrong, but the natives say that he lived only ten days after his arrival, and if, as is probably,

his mind was clouded with fever when
he ^ last observed, those who have experienced
what that is, will readily excuse any
mistake he may have made - His object
was to accomplish a much desired project
of the Portuguese to have an overland com-
munication between their Eastern & Western
possessions - this was never made by any
of the Portuguese nation, but two black traders
succeeded partially with a part of the distance -
crossing once from Cassange in Angola to
tette on the Zambesi, and returning with a
letter to from the Governor of Mosambique -
it is remarkable that this journey which was
less by a thousand miles than from sea to
sea and back again, should have for ever
quenched all white Portuguese aspirations
for an overland route

[0352]

346

The different Kasembe visited by the
Portuguese seem to have varied much in character
and otherwise - Pereira the first visitor said
(I quote from memory) that Kasembe had 20,000
trained soldiers, watered his streets ^ daily and sacrificed
twenty human victims every day, I could
hear nothing of human sacrifices now.
and it is questionable if the present Kasembe
could bring a thousand stragglers into the field,
When he usurped power five years ago
his country was densely populated, but he
was so severe in his punishments - cropping
the ears - lopping off the hands & other mutilations
^ selling the children for very slight offences - that his tribe subjects gradually
dispersed themselves in the neighboring
countries beyond his power - this is the
common mode by which tyranny is aired
in parts like these where fugitives are
never returned - the present Kasembe
is very poor - when he had people who
killed elephants he was too stingy to
share the profits of the sale of the ivory with
his subordinates - The elephant hunters
have either left him or neglect hunting
so he has now no tusks to sell to the Arab
traders who come from Tanganyika -
Major Monteiro the third Portuguese who
visited Kasembe appears to have been

badly treated by this man's predecessor
and no other of his nation has ventured
so far since - they do not lose much
by remaining away, for a little ivory
and slaves are all that Kasembe ever
can have to sell - about a month to the
West of this people of Katonga smelt
copper ore - (malachite) into large bars
shaped like the capital letter II. They

[0353]

347

may be met with of from 50 lbs to 100 lbs weight
all over the country, and the inhabitants draw
the copper into wire for armlets and leglets -
Gold is also found at Katanga, and specimens
were lately sent to the Sultan of Zanzibar-

As we came down from the watershed towards
Tanganyika we enter an area of the earth's surface
still disturbed by internal igneous action - a hot
fountain in the country of Insama is often used
to boil Cassava and maize - Earthquakes are
by no means rare - We experienced the shock
of one while at Chitimba's village, and they
extend as far as Kasembe's, I felt as if
afloat, and as huts would not fall there was no
sense of danger - some of them that happen at
night set the fowls a cackling - the most remarkable
effect of this one was that it changed the rates
of the Chronometers - no rain fell after it - no
one had access to the [...]chronometers but myself
and as I never heard of this effect before
I may mention that one which lost with great
regularity 1^s 5 daily, lost 15^s - another whose rate
since leaving the coast was - 15° lost 40^s and a
third which gained 6^s daily stopped altogether -
some of Insama's people ascribed the earth-
quakes to the hot fountain because it shewed
unusual commotion on these occasions,
another hot fountain exists near Tanganyika
than Insama's, and we passed one on the
shores of Moero -

We could not understand why the natives
called Moero much larger than Tanganyika
till we saw both - the greater Lake lies in
a comparatively narrow trough with highland
on each side which is always visible. but
when we look at Moero to the South of the

mountains of Rua on the West we have

[0354]

348

nothing but an apparently boundless sea horizon - The Luapula and Rounkwe form a marsh at the Southern extremity, and Kasembe dissuaded me from entering it but sent a man to guide me to different points of Moero further down - From the heights at which the Southern portions were seen it must be from forty to sixty miles broad - From the South end of the mountains of Rua (9° 4' South Lat.) it is thirty three miles broad - No native ever attempts to cross it even there - its fisheries are of great value to the inhabitants, and the produce is carried to great distances -

Among the vegetable products of this region that which interested me most was a sort of potato. It does not belong to the solanaceous family but to the Papulinaceous pea family and its flowers have a delightful fragrance, It is easily propagated by small cuttings of the root or stalk - The tuber is oblong like on a kidney potato, and when boiled tastes exactly like our common potato - When unripe it has a slight degree of bitterness, and it is a piece of the root eaten raw is a good remedy for nausea believed to be wholesome - It is met with on the uplands alone - and seems incapable of bearing much heat though I kept some of the roots without earth in a box which was carried in the sun almost daily for six months without destroying their vegetative power.

It is remarkable that in all the central regions of Africa visited the cotton is that known as the Pernambuco variety. It has a long strong staple, seeds clustered together & adherent to each other - The bushes eight or ten feet high have woody stems, and the people make strong striped black & white shawls of the cotton

[0355]

349

It was pleasant to meæ the Palm oil palm

(*Elaies Guineaensis*) at Casembe's which is over 3000 feet above the level of the sea - the oil is sold cheap, but no tradition exists of its introduction into the country -

I send no sketch of the country because I have not yet ^ passed over a sufficient surface to give a connected view of the whole watershed of this region - and I regret that I cannot recommend any of the published maps I have seen as giving even a tolerable idea of the country one audacious constructor of maps has tacked on 200 miles to the North West end of Lake Nyassa a feat which no traveller has ever ventured to imitate - another has placed a river in the same quarter running 3000 or 4000 feet uphill and named it the "New Zambesi" because I suppose the old Zambesi runs down hill - I have walked over both these mental abortions and did not know that I was walking on water till I saw them in the maps -

[0356]

350

[0357]

351

28 Dec^r
1867
31st

We came on to the Rivulet Chirongo and then to the Kabukwa where I was sick - Heavy rains kept the convoy back - I have had nothing but coarsely ground sorghum meal for some time back - and am weak - I used to be the first in the line of march, and am now the last, Mohamad presented a meal of finely ground porridge & a fowl - I felt the difference though I was not grumbling at my coarse dishes - It is well that I did not go to Bambeolo Lake for it is now very unhealthy to the natives and I fear that ^ without medicine continual swellings by fording rivulets might have knocked me up altogether, As I have mentioned they suffer greatly from

swelled Thyroid gland or Derbyshire neck
and Elephantiasis scroti -

1st January 1868

Almighty Father forgive the sins of the past year
for my son's sake - Help me to be more profitable
during this year - If I am to die this year, prepare
me for it

Bought five hoes at two or three yards of
calico each - They are 13 ½ inches by 6 ½ inches
many are made in Casembe's country &
this is the last place we can find them
When we come into Buire we can purchase
a good goat for one - one of my goats died
and the other dried up - I long for others
for milk is the most strengthening food
I can get - my guide to Moero came today -
visited Moero several times so as to get
a good idea of its size - the first fifteen
miles in the North are from twelve ^ or more to thirty
three miles broad - the great mass of Rua
mountains confines it thus - In a clear
day a lower range is seen continued from
the high point of the first mass away

[0358]

352

January
1868

to the West South West - this ends and sea
horizon is alone visible away to the South
and West - from the height we viewed it
at, the width must be over forty, perhaps
sixty miles - A large island called Kirwa is
situated between Mandapala & Kabukwa Rts
but ~~on~~ ^ nearest to the other shore - the natives never attempt
to cross any part of the Lake South of Kirwa.
Land could not be seen with a good glass
in the clearest day we had - I can understand
why the natives pronounced Moero to be
larger than Tanganyika - In the last named
they see the land always on both sides - it is
like a vast though flanked with highlands,
but at Moero nothing but sea horizon
can be seen when one looks South West

of the Rua mountains -

7th

At Kalongosi meadow - one of Mohamad's
men shot a buffalo and he gave me a leg
of the good beefy flesh - our course was
slow caused partly by rains and partly
by waiting for the convoy - the people at
Kalongosi were afraid to ferry us out of
Casembe's country and none of his people
in convoy - but at last we gave a good

9th

fee, and their scruples yielded - they were
influenced also by seeing other villagers
ready to undertake the job - the latter nearly
fought over us on seeing that their neighbors

10th

got all the fare - - We ^ then came along the
Lake & close to its shores - the moisture
caused a profusion of gingers, ferns &
tropical forest - buffalos, Zebras, elephants
numerous - the villagers at Chikosi
where we slept warned us against lions
and Leopards.

[0359]

353

Jany
1868

Sunday at Karembwe's vil. - the mountains
East of him are called Makunga - many villages
about - We went yesterday to the shore, and
by protraction Rua point was distant 33 miles.
Karembwe sent for us to have an audience -

a large man with a gruff voice but liked by his people and by strangers - I gave him a cloth and he gave me a goat - the enthusiasm with which I held on to visit Moero, had communicated itself to Tipo-Tipo and Syde bin Alla for they followed me up to this place to see the Lake, and remained five days while we were at Casembe's - other Arabs ^ or rather Swahelis - must have seen it but never mentioned it as any thing worth looking at - and it was only when all hope of ivory was gone that these two headmen found time to come.

13th

Heavy rains - Karembe mentioned a natural curiosity as likely to interest me - a little rivulet Chipamba goes some distance underground

14th

but is uninteresting - next day we crossed the Vuna a strong torrent which has a hot fountain close by the ford in which maize and Cassava may be boiled - a large one in Insama's country is used in the same way Maize and Cassava being tied to a string thrown in to be cooked - some natives believe that earthquakes are connected with its violent ebullitions - We crossed the Katette another strong torrent before reaching the North end of Moero, where we slept in some travellers huts -

15th

Leaving the Lake and going North we soon got on to a plain flooded by the Luao. We had to wade through very adhesive black mud generally ankle deep, and having many holes in it much deeper - We had four hours of this and then came to the ford of the Luao

15th
 Jany
 1868

itself - we waded up a branch of it waist deep for at least a quarter of a mile - then crossed a narrow part by means of a rude bridge of branches & trees of about 40 yards The Luao in spreading over the plains confers benefits on the inhabitants though I could not help concluding it implants disease too, for the black mud in places smells horribly Great numbers of siluridae, chiefly clarias leapensis often three feet in length spread over the flooded portions of the country eating the young or other fishes and insects lizards worms killed by the waters - the people make weirs for them, and as the waters retire kill large numbers which they use as a relish to their farinaceous food

16th

After sleeping near the Luao we went on towards the village in which Mohamad's son lives - it is on the Kakoma R^t and is called Kabwabwata the vil. of Mubao - one of the women had a miscarriage in the way, but came on after the affair was over - In many of the villages the people shut their stockades as soon as we appear, and stand bows & arrows in hand till we have passed - The reason seems to be that the slaves when out of sight of their masters carry things with a high hand, demanding food & other things as if they had power and authority - one slave stole two tobacco pipes yesterday in passing through a village - the villagers complained to me when I came up, and I waited till Mohamad came and told him - We then went forward the men keeping close to me till we got the slave and the pipes - they stole Cassava as we went along but this could scarcely be prevented - they laid hold of a plant

[0361]

355

16th
[J]anuary
1868

an inch & a half thick & tore it out of the soft
soil with its five or six roots as large as
our largest carrots, stowed the roots away
in their loads, and went on eating them.
the stalk thrown among those still growing
shews the theft - the raw roots are agreeable &
nutritious - No great harm is done by this
the gardens are so large but it inspires
distrust into the inhabitants, and makes
it dangerous for Arabs to travel not
fully manned and armed -

On reaching the village Kabwabroata
a great demonstration was made by
Mohamad's Arab dependants & Wanyamwesi
The women had their faces all smeared
with pipe clay, and lullilooed with all
their might, when we came among the huts
they cast handfuls of soil on their heads,
while the men fired off their guns as
fast as they could load them - those con-
nected with Mohamad ran & kissed
his hands & fired till the sound of shouting
lullilooing - clapping of hands and
shooting was deafening - Mohamad was
quite overcome by this demonstration
and it was long before he could still them.

On the way to this village from the South
we observed an extensive breadth of land
under ground nuts - they are made into oil
and a large jar of this is sold for a hoe -
The ground nuts were now in flower
and green maize ready to be eaten - People
all busy planting transplanting or weeding,
they plant cassava or mounds prepared
for it on which they have sown beans
sorghum, maize, pumpkins - these ripen, and leave
the cassava a free soil - the sorghum

[0362]

356

16th
January
1868

or dura is sown thickly and when about
a foot high - if the owner has been able to
prepare the soil elsewhere is transplanted
a portion of the leaves being cut off to prevent
too great evaporation and the death of the
plant.

17th

The Wanyamwesi & people of Garaganza say
that we have thirteen days march from them
to the Tanganyika Lake. It is often muddy
and many rivulets are to be crossed.

18th 19

[Drawings of Uhha or Buhha people's markings.] mark of the Uhha people
on stomach
[Same markings as previous line.] or Buhha

21st

Mohamad naturally anxious to stay a
little while with his son - It is also a wet
season and mud disagreeable to travel
over - It is said to be worse near Ujiji
He cooks little delicacies for me with the lotte
hehas, and tries to make me comfortable.
He makes vinegar from bananas & oil
from ground nuts - I am anxious to
be off but chiefly to get news.

22nd

I find that many Unyamwesi people are waiting here on account of the great quantity of rain water in front. It would be difficult, they say too, to get canoes at Tanganyika as the waves are now large.

24th

Two of Mohamad Bogarib's people came from Casembe's to trade here, and on the

25th

a body of Syde oben Habibib's people came from Garaganza near Kazi, they report the flooded lands on this side the Lake T. as waist and chest deep - Ben Habib being at Katanga will not stir till the rains are over, and I fear we are storm stayed till then too. The gardens of the Marungu are not foradable just now and no canoes to be had -

[0363]

357

[2]6th 27th
[Ja]nuary
[1]868 29th
30th

Ill with fever as I always am when stationary
28th Better and thankful to Him of the greatest name - We must remain - It is a dry spot and favourable for groundnuts, Hooping cough here.
Earth cooled by rain last night sets all to transplanting Dura or Sorghum - they cut the leaves till only about 18 inches are left but it grows all the better for the change of place.

Mohamad believes that Tanganyika flows

through Rusizi to Lohinde (Chuambo)

31st

Seyd Seyd is said to have been the first Arab Sultan who traded, and Seyed Majid follows the example of his father, and has many Arab traders in his employment - He lately sent eight buffaloes to Mteza son of Sunna by way of increasing his trade - It is not likely that he will give up the lucrative trade in ivory and slaves.

3 Feby
[1]868

Susi bought a hoe with a little gunpowder then a cylinder of Dura 3 feet long by 2 feet in diameter for the hoe - It is at least 100 cwts weight

4th

stone underground houses are reported in Rua but whether natural or artificial Muhamad could not say - If a present is made to the Rua chiefs they never obstruct passengers.

Chikosi at whose village we passed a night near Kalongosi , and Chiputa are both dead -

6th

The Mofwe fills during the greater rains and spreads over a large district - Elephants then wander in its marshes and are killed easily by people in canoes - This happens every year and Muhamad Bogarib waits now for this ivory - If Mofwe were connected with Moero or Luapula it would run off -

[0364]

7th Feby
1868.

- 21st on enquiring of men who have seen the underground houses in Rua I find that they are very extensive ranging along mountain sides for twenty miles. In one part a rivulet flows inside - In some cases the door ways are level with the country adjacent - In others ladders are used to climb up to them. Inside they are said to be very large and not the work of men but of God. The people have plenty of ~~goats~~ fowls and they too obtain shelter in these Troglodite habitations.

23^d

visited by an important chief called Chape who said that he wanted to make friends with the English. He, Chisepi - Sama - Muabo, Karembe and are of one tribe or family - the oanza - He did not beg anything and promised to send me a goat

24th

Some slaves who came with Muhamad Bogarib's agent abused my men this morning as bringing unclean meat into the village to sell though it had been killed by a man of the Wanyamwesi. They called out "Kaffir Kaffir" and Susi roused by this launched forth with a stick - the others joined in the row and the offenders were beat off, but they went and collected all their number and renewed the assault - one threw a heavy block of wood and struck Simon on the head, making ^ him quite insensible and convulsed for some time - He has three wounds on the head which may prove serious - this is the first outburst of Muhamedan bigotry we have met and by those who know so little of the creed that it is questionable

if one of them can repeat the formula
Lā illā hā illā la hu Muhamad Rasuk
-la salla lahu, a leihi oa salama” - Simon
recovered but Gallahs are in general not strong.

[0365]

359

25th
February
[1]868.

Muhamad called me this morning to apologize
for the outrage of yesterday but no one was to
blame ^ except but the the slaves - and I wanted no punish-
-ment inflicted if they were cautioned for the
future - It seems plain that if they do not wish
to buy the unclean meat they can let it alone
no harm is done. The Wanyamwesi kill for all
and some Muhamedans say that they wont eat of it,
but their wives and people do eat privately -

I asked Muhamad today if it were true that
he was a prisoner at Casembe he replied, "quite
so" some Garaganza people now at Katanga
fought with Casembe and Muhamad was suspected
of being connected with them - Casembe attacked
his people and during the turmoil a hundred
frasilahs of copper were stolen from him and
many of his people killed. Casembe kept him
a prisoner till sixty of his people were either killed
or died - among these Muhamad's eldest son.
He was thus reduced to poverty - He gave something
to Casembe to allow him to depart, and I suspect
that my Sultan's letter had considerable influence
in inducing Casembe to accede to his request,
for he repeated again and again in my hearing,
that he must pay respect to my letter, and
see me safe at least as far as Ujiji. He
says that he will not return to Casembe again.
He will begin to trade with some other chief
It is rather hard for a man at his age to
begin de novo. He is respected among the
Arabs who pronounce him to be a good
man - He says that he has been twenty two
years in Africa and never saw an outburst
like that of yesterday among the Wanyamwesi
It is however common for the people
at Ujiji to drink palm toddy, and then

have a general row in the bazar - but no
bad feeling exists next day.

[0366]

360

26th
February
1868

If a child cuts the upper front teeth before
the lower it is killed. as unlucky. this
is a widely spread superstition. one of Sekeletu's
wives would not allow her servants child
to be killed for this, but few would have the
courage to act in opposition to public feeling
as she did. In Casembe's country if a
child is seen to turn from one side to the
other in sleep it is killed - They say of any
child who has what they consider these
defects "he is an Arab child" because the
Arabs have none of this class of superstitions
and should any Arab be near they give the
child to him. It would bring ill luck
misfortunes - "Milando" or guilt to the
family. These superstitions may account
for the readiness with which one tribe
parted with their children to Spekes
followers - Muhamad says that these children must
have been taken in war as none see their own seed

If Casembe dreams of any man twice
or three times he puts the man to death as
one who is practising secret art against
his life. If any one is pounding or cooking
food for Casembe he must preserve the
strictest silence, these and other things
shew extreme superstition and degradation

Muhamad's friends advised him to leave
Casembe by force offering to aid him with
their men but he always refused - His Father
was the first to open this country to trade
with the Arabs and all his expenses while
so doing were borne by himself - Muhamad
seems to be a man of peace and unwilling
to break the appearance of friendship with
the chiefs. He thinks that this Casembe
poisoned his predecessor - He killed his
wife's mother - a queen - that she might be

no obstacle to him in securing her daughter.

[0367]

361

2nd
March
1868

We are waiting in company with a number of Wanyamwesi for the cessation of the rains which have flooded the country between this and Tanganyika - If there were as much slope this water would flow off. This makes me suspect that Tanganyika is not so low as Speke's measurement ~~makes it~~. The Arabs are positive that water flows from this Lake to the Victoria Nyawza, and assert that Dagara the father of Rumanyika was anxious to or as some say to dig a canal to Ujiji send canoes from his place to Ujiji ^The

-

Wanyamwesi here support themselves by shooting buffaloes at a place two days distant and selling the meat for grain & cassava No sooner is it known that an animal is killed than the village women crowd in here carrying their produce to exchange it for meat which they prefer to beads or anything else - Their farinaceous food creates a great craving for flesh - Were my shoes not done I would go in for buffaloes too -

A man from the upper part of Tanganyika gives the same account of the river from Rusisi that Burton & Speke received when they went to its mouth - He says that the water of the Lake goes up some distance but is met by Rusisi water and driven back thereby - The Lake water he adds finds an exit Northwards & Eastwards by several small rivers which would admit small canoes only - they pour into Lake Chowambe - probably that discovered

by M^r Baker - This Chowambe is in Hundi
the country of cannibals, but the most
enlightened informants leave the impression
on the mind of groping in the dark - It
may be all different when we come to see it -

[0368]

362

3^d
March
1868

The fruit of the Palm which yields Palm oil
is first of all boiled, then pounded in a
mortar, then put into hot or boiling water
and the oil skimmed off - The Palm oil is
said to be very abundant at Ujiji - as much
as 300 gallons being often brought into the
Bazar for sale in one morning - the people
buy it eagerly for cooking purposes. Muhamad
says that the island of Pemba contains many
of this Palm but the people are ignorant
of the mode of separating the oil from the nut
They call the Palm Nkoma at Casembe's &
Chikichi at Zanzibar

6th

No better authority for what has been done
or left undone by Muhamadans in this
country can be found than Muhamad bin
Saleh for he is very intelligent, and takes an
interest in all that happens; and his Father
was equally interested in this country affairs
He declares that no attempt was ever made
by Muhamadans to proselytize the Africans
They teach their own children to read the Koran
but them only. It is never translated - and to
servants who go to the mosque it is all dumb
shew - some servants imbibe Muhamedan
bigotry about eating, but they offer no prayers
circumcision to make halel ~~of~~ fit to slaughter
the animals for their master is the utmost

advance any have made - As the Arabs in
East Africa never feel themselves called
-among the heathen Africans
on to to propagate the doctrines of Islam ^the
statement of Captain Burton that they
would make better missionaries to the Africans
than Christians because they would not
insist on the abandonment of polygamy
possesses the same force as if he had

-

said, Muhamadans would catch more

[0369]

363

6th
March
[1]868.

birds than Christians because they would put
salt on their tails - The indispensable requisite
or qualification for any kind of missionary
is that he have some wish to proselytize - This
the Arabs do not possess in the slightest degree.

As they never translate the Koran they neglect
the best means of influencing the Africans ~~mind~~
~~they~~ who invariably wish to understand what they are about -
When teaching Adults the Alphabet they felt it a
hard task "Give me medicine, I shall drink it, to
make me understand it." was their earnest entreaty -
When they have advanced so far as to form clear
conceptions of old Testament and gospel histories
They tell them to their neighbours, and on visiting
distant tribes feel proud to shew how much
they know - In this way the knowledge of
Christianity becomes widely diffused. Those
whose hatred to its self denying doctrines has
become developed by knowledge propagate
slanders but still they speak of Christianity
and awaken attention. The plan, therefore
of the Christian missionary in imparting
knowledge is immeasurably superior to that

of the Moslem in dealing with dumb show -
I have however been astonished to see that
none of the Africans imitate the Arab
prayers = considering their great reverence
of the Deity it is a wonder that they do not
burn to address prayers to Him except on very
extraordinary occasions.

Mungo Park mentions that he found the
Africans in the far Interior of the West in
possession of the stories of Joseph and his
bretheren and others - They probably got them
from the Koran as verbally explained by some
liberal Mullah, and shewed how naturally they spread
any new ideas they obtain - they were aston-
-ished to find that Park knew the stories.

[0370]

364

10th
March
1868

The people at Katanga are afraid to dig for
the gold in their country because they believe that
it has been hidden where it is by "Ngolu" who is
the owner of it. The Arabs translate Ngolu by Satan
It means Mezimo or departed spirits too. The people
are all oppressed by their superstitions - The
fear of death is remarkably strong - the Wagtails
are never molested because if they were killed
death would visit the village - and go with
the small Whydah birds - the fear of death
in the minds of the people saves them from
molestation, and so with many other things. A
remnant of our own superstitions is seen in
the prejudice against sitting down thirteen to dinner
spilling the salt & not throwing a little of it over
the left shoulder - ^ Ferdinand I. the king of Naples in passing
through the streets perpetually put one hand into
his pockets to cross the thumb over the finger
in order to avert the influence of the evil eye.

On the 6th Muabo the great chief of these parts
came to call on Muhamad - several men got up
and made some antics before him then knelt
down and did obeisance - then Muabo himself
jumped about a little and all applauded -
He is a good natured looking man - fond of a joke

and always ready with a good humoured smile. He was praised very highly. Mpweto was nothing to Muabo mokolu = the great Muabo and he returned the praise by lauding Tipotipo & Mpamari = Muhamad's native name which means "give me wealth, or goods." Muhamad made a few of the ungainly antics like the natives and all were highly pleased, and went off rejoicing.

Some Arabs believe that a serpent on one of the islands in the Nyanza Lake has the power of speaking & is the same that beguiled Eve. It is a crime at Ujiji to kill a serpent

[0371]

365

12th
March
1868

even though it enter a house and kills a kid! The native name for the people of Ujiji is Wayeiye the very same as the people on the Zonga near Lake Ngami - they are probably an offshoot from Ujiji

There are underground stone houses in Kabuire in the range called Kakoma which is near to our place of detention.

The remarks under 6th March do not refer to the Suahelis for they teach their children to read and even send them to school - they are the descendants of Arabs and African women and inhabit the coast line - Although they read they understand very little Arabic beyond the few words which have been incorporated into Suaheli - the establish[-]ment of Moslem missions among the heathen is utterly unknown - This is remarkable because the Wanyamwesi for instance are very friendly with the Arabs - are great traders too like them - and are constantly employed as porters and native traders, being considered very trustworthy - they even acknowledge Seyed Majids authority - the Arabs speak of all the Africans as "Guma" = hard or callous to the Muhamadan religion -

some believe that Kilimanjaro mountain has mummies as in Egypt and that

Moses visited it of old. !

15th

the roots of the Nyumbo ^ or Noombo ripen in four or five months from the time of planting those planted by one on the 6th February have now stalks fifteen inches long - the root is reported to be a very wholesome food never disagreeing with the stomach - and the raw root is an excellent remedy in obstinate vomiting and nausea. Four or five tubers are often given by one root - In Marungu they attain a size of six inches in length by two in diameter.

a chief named Moeneungu who admires the Arabs sent his children to Zanzibar to be instructed to read and write

[0372]

366

16th
March
1868

started for Mpweto's village which is situated on the Lualaba and in our course crossed the Lokinda which had a hundred yards of flood water on each side of it. The river itself is forty yards wide with a rude bridge over it as it flows fast away into

17th

Moero. next day we ascended the Rua M^{ts} and reached the village of Mpweto situated in a valley between two ridges about one mile from the right bank of the Lualaba where it comes through the mountains - It then flows about two miles along the base of a mountain lying East and West before it begins to make

Northing - Its course is reported to be very winding - This seems additional evidence that Tanganyika is not in a depression of only 1844 feet above the sea otherwise the water of Lualaba would flow faster and make a straighter channel. It is said to flow into Lufira and that into Tanganyika

18th

On reaching Mpweto's yesterday we were taken up to the house of Syde bin Habib which is built on a ridge overhanging the chief's village - a square building of wattle and plaister and a mud roof to prevent it being fired by an enemy - It is a very pretty spot among the mountains Sarianna is bin Habib's agent and he gave us a basket of flour and leg of kid - Sent a message to Mpweto which he politely answered by saying that he had no food ready in his village but if we waited two days he would have some prepared and would then see us - We knew what we should give him and he need not tell us - Met a man from Seskeke left sick at Kirwa by Bin Habib and now with him here.

[0373]

367

18th
March
[1]868

A very beautiful young woman came to look at us - perfect in every way & nearly naked but unconscious of indecency. A very Venus in black. The light grey red tailed parrot seen on the West coast is common in Rua and tamed by the natives -

19th

(^ Grant Lord grace to love thee more & serve thee better.) The favorite son of Mpweto called on us. His father is said to do nothing without consulting him - but he did not seem to be endowed with much wisdom.

20th

our interview was put off and then a sight

21st

of the cloth we were to give required - sent a good large cloth and explained that we were nearly out of goods now having been traveling two years and were going to Ujiji to get more - Mpweto had prepared a quantity of pombe - a basket of meal & a goat - and when he looked at them & the cloth he seemed to feel that it would be a poor bargain so he sent to say that we had gone to Casembe and given him many cloths and then to Muabo and if I did not give another cloth he would not see me. "He had never slept with only one cloth" "I had put medicine on this one to kill him and must go away"

23^d

He was offended because we went to his great rival Muabo before visiting him. He would not see Syde bin Habib for eight days, and during that time was using charms to see if it would be safe to see him at all - on the ninth day he peeped past a door for some time to try if bin Habib were a proper person, and then came out - He is always very suspicious. At last he sent an order to us to go away and if we did not move he would come with all his people and

23^d
 March
 1868

drive us away - Sariano said if he were not afraid for Syde bin Habibs goods he would make a stand against Mpweto, but I had no wish to stay or to quarrel with a worthless chief, and resolved to go next

24th

day - He abused a native trader with his tongue for coming to trade, and sent him away too - We slept again at our halfway village Kapemba - A party of salt traders from Rua came into it - They were tall well made men and rather dark.

25th

Reach Kabwabwata at noon & were welcomed by Muhamad and all the people. His son, Sheikh But, accompanied us but Muhamad told ^ us previously that it was likely Mpweto would refuse to see us -

27th

The water is reported to be so deep in front that it is impossible to go North. The Wanyamwesi who are detained here as well as we, say it is often more than a man's depth, and there are no causes. They would not stop here if a passage home could be made - I am thinking of going to Lake Bemba because at least two months must be passed here still, before a passage can be made,

but my goods are getting done and I cannot
 give presents to the chiefs in our way.
 the Lake has a sandy not muddy bottom
 as we were at first informed - there are
 four islands in it - One the Bangweolo is
 very large and many people live on it. They
 have goats and sheep in abundance - the
 owners of canoes demand three hoes for the
 hire of one capable of carrying eight or ten
 persons - Beyond this island it is sea
 horizon only - the Tsebula & Nzoe abound
 people desire salt and not beads for sale.

[0375]

369

2^d
 April
 [1]868

If I am not deceived by the information
 I have received from various reliable sources,
 the springs of the Nile rise between 9° & 10° South
 Latitude or at least 400 ^ - 500 miles South of the
 South end of Speke's Lake which he considered
 to be the sources of the Nile - Tanganyika is
 declared to send its water through North into
 Lake Chowambe, or Baker's Lake - if this does
 not prove false then Tanganyika is an expansion
 of the Nile. and so is Lake Chowambe ^ the two Lakes being
 connected by the river Loanda. Unfortunately
 the people on the East side of the Loanda are
 constantly at war with the people on the West
 of it, or those of Rusisi - the Arabs have
 been talking of opening up a path through
 to Chowambe where much ivory is reported
 I hope that the most High may give me a
 way there.

The Lualaba goes North or North West
 till it meets the Lufira which comes from
 Katanga in the South West. After joining, the
 united stream goes still further North, possibly
 into Chowambe - but no one has gone down.
 If it actually does go into Chowambe, then
 the Chambeze and the streams which fall
 into the Lake Bemba and the Luapula,
 would also be springs of the Nile rising
 between 11° and 12° South or nearly 500

miles South of the Lake of Captain Speke.

Ubenge Kinkouza can scarcely be termed a Lake - It seems to be the Lualaba divided into a number of streams - the lands between which are termed islands - They are all gathered up by the Lufira and go on as one river Syde modifies the above - see - on pages marked August 11 and August 14. bottom.

[0376]

370

April
~~12~~11th
1868

Had a long oration from Muhamad yesterday against going off for Bemba tomorrow - His great argument is the extortionate way of Casembe who would demand cloth and say that in pretending to go to Ujiji I had told him lies. He adds to this argument that this is the last month of the rains - Masika has begun and our way North will soon be open. The fact of the matter is that Muhamad by not telling me of the superabundance of water in the country of the Marungu which occurs every year caused me to lose five months. He knew that we should be detained here, but he was so eager to get out of his state of durance with Casembe that he hastened my departure by asserting that we should be at Ujiji in one month! I regret this deception but it is not to be wondered at and in a Muhamadan and in a Christian too it is thought clever - Were my goods not nearly done I would go & risk the displeasure of Casembe for the chance of discovering the Lake Bemba. I thought once of buying from Muhamad Bogarib but fear that his stock may be getting low too - I fear that I must give up this Lake for the present.

12th

I think of starting tomorrow for Bangweolo. Even if Cazembe refuses passage beyond him, we shall be better there than we are here - Everything at Kabwabush is scarce and dear - There we can get a fowl for one string of beads here it costs six - there fish may be bought here none - three of Cazembe's principal men are here Kakwata - Charley Kapitenga - they are anxious to go home and would be a gain to me but Muhamad detains them - and when I asked his reason he said Muabo refuses but they

[0377]

371

April
[1]3th
[1]868

point to Muhamad's house & say "It is he who refuses."

On preparing to start this morning people refuse to go - Susi, for no confessed reason but he has got a black woman who feeds him - Chuma for the same reason but he pretends fear of Cazembe. came with his eyes shot out by Bange and insisted on telling me what Cazembe said and did at an interview where I was present and he not - "Cazembe would kill us." This to me to others "he could not leave Susi" - and I had "cut his pay at Bombay" - The only work I know of at Bombay was going to school and it never occurred to me to pay for that Susi had made some statement equally false, and Abraham had brought up some old grievance as a justification for his absconding - James said "he would go to Ujiji but not backwards - "He was tired of working" Abraham apologized and was forgiven - Susi stood like a mule. I put my hand on his arm & said "take up your bundle & let us go." he seized my hand & refused to let it go. When he did I fired a pistol at him but missed - there being no law nor magistrate higher than myself I would not be thwarted if I could help it - The fact is they are all tired and Muhamad's opposition encourages them to give themselves over to Bange and black concubines they would like me to remain here & pay them for smoking the bange; and deck their prostitutes with the beads which I give regularly for their food - Muhamad who was evidently eager to make capital out of this

refusal asked me to remain over today - and then asked me what I was going to do with those who had absconded - I said "nothing" - "if a magistrate were on the spot I would give them over to him" - Oh he was magistrate - ["]shall I apprehend them" to this I assented - He repeated this question till it was tiresome - I saw his reason long afterwards when he asserted that I "came to him & asked him to bind them but he had refused." He wanted to appear to the people as much better than I am

[0378]

372

April
14th
1868

Start off with five attendants leaving most of the luggage with Muhamad - and reach the Luao to spend the night - Headman Ndowa -

15th

Amoda ran away early this morning - "wishes to stop with his brothers" - They think that by refusing to go to Bemba they will force me to remain with them & then go to Ujiji - James, a Nindi has infused the idea into their minds that I will not pay them - "Look at the Sepoys"! He [does] not know that they are paid by the Indian Government as for the Johanna men they were prepaid £29. 4- in cash besides clothing - Abraham must have promised to run away too for Susi began and built a "big house" for him - I sent Amoda bundle back to Muhamad - my messenger got to Kabwabwata before Amoda did & he presented himself to my Arab friend who of course scolded him - He replied that he was tired carrying and no other fault had he - As this is copied from my notebook after returning from Bangweolo in October I may add that Amoda wished to come South to me with one of Muhamad Boga[-]rib's men but "Mpamari." told him not to retain Now that I was fairly started I told my messenger

to say to "Mpamari" that I would on no account
go to Ujiji till I had done all in my power to
reach the Lake I sought - I would even prefer
waiting at Luao or Moero till people came
to me from Ujiji to supplant the runaways
I did not blame them very severely in my own
mind for absconding - they were tired of
tramping and so verily am I - but Mpamari
in encouraging them to escape to him and talking
with a double tongue cannot be exonerated
from blame - Little else can be expected from him
He has lived some 35 years in the country - 25 being
at Cazembe and there he had often to live by his wits
consciousness of my own defects makes me lament.

[0379]

373

April
16th
[1]868

Ndowa gives Mita or Mpamañkanana as the names
of the excavations in Muabo's hills - He says that they are
sufficient to conceal all the people of this district in
case of war - I conjecture that this implies room for
ten thousand people - Provisions are stored in them
and a perennial rivulet runs along a whole street
of them - On one occasion when the main entrance
was besieged by an enemy someone who knew all
the intricacies of the excavations led a party out by
a secret passage and they coming over the invaders
drove them off with heavy loss = their formation
is universally ascribed to the Deity - this may mean
that the present inhabitants have succeeded the
original burrowing race which dug out many caves
adjacent to Mount Kor - the "Jebel Nebi Harin" Mount
of the prophet Aaron - of the Arabs, and many others
and even the Bushman caves - a thousand
miles South of this region

A very minute sharp biting mosquito found here
the women try to drive them out of their huts by
whisking bundles of green leaves all round the
walls before turning into their huts -

[1]7th

Crossed the Luao by a bridge 30 yards long, and more than half a mile of flood on each side - passed many villages standing on little heights which overlook plains filled with water - some three miles of grassy plains abreast of Moero were the deepest parts except the banks of Luao We had four hours of wading - The bottom being generally black tenacious mud = Ruts had been formed in the paths by the feet of passengers - these were filled with soft mud and as they could not be seen the foot was often placed on the edge and when the weight came on it down it slumped into this mud half way up the calves and it was difficult to draw it out and very fatiguing - To avoid these ruts we encroached on the grass at (contd. 16 pages on)

[0380]
374

Rainfall at the following stations 1866 -

26 Oct^r
1866

Mapuio's Mapusa's vil - First appearance of thunder showers passed all around but only a few drops fell -

29th

A thunder shower about 3 PM - Amount of Rain + .13

3^d Nov^r

Irongwe M^t Thunder shower - 4 PM - + .10

4th Nov -

Irongwe M^t Thunder shower 3 - PM - + .18

9th Nov^r

Kalumbi vil & Hill Thunder shower - 3 PM + .79

10th Nov

Thunder showers in distance - wetted some of
the men three miles off - Here a few drops only

17th Nov

Kanyenje valley - vil of Kanyindula near source
of the Bua among mountains - with thunder 4 PM - + .58

18th Nov

D° D° accompanied with thunder 3 - PM - + .44

20 Nov

Kanyinjere mponda = the source of the
Bua - Noon - with thunder - 1 h - 45 m - + .29
again at 4 h - 30 + .71

24 Nov^r

Zeere's village [^]at near source of Lokuzhwa
1 PM - Thunder shower ¼ hour - 427 + .5 + .2 = + .34
3.55

30th Nov^r

The smaller rains have been Thunder showers
The people have put in their seed & in some

spots it has vegetated but the land has not been thoroughly wetted - the cracks in the rich dark loam have not been filled up by the swelling of the soil - Some are still two feet deep and two inches wide at the lips - Before the rains they are to be seen of three feet in depth and three inches wide at the lips

Dec^r

1866
3^d Dec

Kande's vil on R^t Lokuzhwa 4 PM with thunder - 10 - then after 6 PM .75 == + .22

4th

Katette - a spring among low hills W of Kande's vil - 3 PM very violent - thunder shower + 1.48

5th Do

Bamboo vil - Noon .38 with thunder then gently .10 == + .48

7th

Mparawe mt & vil 3 PM with very loud thunder - then gently till 6 PM + 1.10

8th

Two smart showers at midnight (not
measured) 3.28

[0381]
375

inches

1866
9th Dec^r

Brought forward for Dec^r 3.28
Mparawe mt & vil - thunder near - + .5

11th

Forest North of Mparawe - no thunder -
a set in rain 7 AM - the first we have
had + 40

12th

Forest (Mopane) [...]thunder - 2 PM + .37

13th

Forest D° 6 PM till 8 PM with thunder + .76
Note we had rolling thunder every afternoon
and sometimes it was seen to rain in distance
On 20th this was well marked & on ascending
from valley of Loangwa in which the Mopane
forest lies it had rained heavily on the North
side of the low hills Ngale or Ngalao Else[-]
where the cracks in the soil were unfilled -

26th

rain with much thunder but at the camp
on Chonanga there fell only + .3

28th

Malambwe During night - + .14
and at midday + .30

29th

Malambwe - Moerwa[']s vil - a set in Rain
began at 9 AM & at 11 AM had fallen +1.25

30th

Two good smart showers fell while we
were in the forest between Malambwe &
Chitemboie's place (Mokumbi) not measured)

31st

In Forest near Chitembo's 4 AM till day break
but gently without thunder + .+9
Rain fall in December = Inches = 1[...]1.67

1st

January
1867

Mbulukuta - at Chitembo's vil -
Set in rain - continuous but not heavy
the clouds from the West .45

2^d

Rain began yesterday in morning
before daybreak - clouds from West .4

3^d Do

showers an - began an hour before daybreak
with Thunder - drizzling all day - West .81

4th

Do at Midday & 10 PM - with Thunder West 1.15

5th & 6th

Day & night with but little Thunder - West 1.8
3.53

[0382]

376
Rainfall

1867
January

Brought Forward 3.53
Rain began at midnight - with thunder .70

7th

Drizzling by day but we marched
from Mbulukuta - (by day not measured)

8th

Began at midnight with loud thunder
Motuna's vil near Movoche R^t .77
Evening of same day .15

9th

Thunder showers all round but
only a few drops fell on us marching

10th

Began about 4 AM. .8
again at noon with loud thunder
& very heavy till 2 PM - 1.30

11th

11th .3

12th

12 Thunder showers but none on us

13th

A heavy shower which made the
paths run but we were marching
(not measured) In the night .8

14th

Drenching rain set in at sunset
& continued long & heavy 1.50

17th

Began about 5 AM - with thunder - .24

18th

Set in Early in the morning with thunder .37

19

Began at 7 PM with thunder .48

20th

With thunder at different times through the day .27

21st

Continuous & gently - no thunder - morning & night .99

22^d

Heavy shower - (not measured)

23^d

In forest N of Lisunga with thunder
clouds now from North & North E-.57

24th

Began at 5 AM with thunder .6

D^o

after Sunset with thunder -
R^t Movushi near Chambeze .23
Up to 25th Inches 11.35

Note the rain clouds on the South side
of the highest part of the range which
separates the Loangwa from the Chambeze
valleys came generally from the West

on the North side from North-NorEast
& East

[0383]

1867
Feb

377
Rainfall in February 1867

1st

At Molembe vil of chitapangwa = Lobemba T. morning .10

2^d

D° D° with T. (thunder) all night 1.4

3^d

D° D° - T In night .14

4

D° D° - T from East 9 AM till noon .43
T - - 3 PM .54

5th

D° D° Steady pour down - 6 AM clouds from W - .63

6

D° D° night w T .10

—

- - 3 PM w T .29

7th

D° D° 1 PM w T. .7

8th

D° D° Early morning .20

9th

D° D° 1 to 2 PM - violent T storms from W - .63

10

D° D° 4 & 5 PM - violent T. storms from W .62

11.

- - gently first part of night & early morning .23

12

- - gently in night .3

13

- - gently by night no rain by day .10

14

- - No rain for 24 hours - 12 hours
never passes without Thunder near or distant

15th

- - by night .7

16th

- - Most of the night w T. 2.42

17th

- - Early morning - till noon with T .33

18th

- - 3 - P-M- & frequently during night with T - 1.65

19

Total at Molemba up to morning of 19th 9.62

20th

Early morning (Molemba) .66

21st

4' NW. of Molembe - 9 - PM - with loud T. & E morning .65

22

D° 2 AM with T .16

23

Merungu R^t - Noon w T .8

24

D° - no rain here but thunder all around

25th

Merenge Rt. no rain in camp but heavy
shower in village 200 yds distant

26th

Merenge R^t - In night - gently .13

27

D° D° in night - D° .8

28th

Noon T - .13

[...]

during night of same T - .14
Rainfall in February in Lobemba = 11.65

[0384]
378

1st
March
1867

Rainfall in March
River Loombe evening & night w T .92

3^d

1 PM T & early part of night T .75

4th

4th no rain

5

D° D°

6th

morning gentle shower during
night considerable rain but it must
have been spilt as rain gauge shewed only .8

7th

no rain

8th

2 & 3 PM - T. .85

9th

10 & at Noon w loud T 1.37

11th

Noon T very loud & heavy rain 1.11

12th

7 AM gently .40

18th

shower w T only wet the ground

21st

Kasouso's village 4 PM T & at night .43

^24th

T .26

27

1 PM - T & at night .45

4 April

Lake Liemba T. .27

7th

Early morning gentle rain 1.54

9th

with T. .32

12th

Early morning T [.]22
a shower fell later but did not —
wet the soil – 8.97
Total rainfall in March and part
of April - all agreed beforehand that
the rains would cease in April

Part

of October & November 3.55
December 6.67
January 11.55
February 11.65
March & part of April 8.97
Total Rain fall in 1866-7 - === 42.39

Oct - Nov - Dec^r 10.22 or $\frac{1}{4}$ while - was going South.
Jan - Feb - March & April 32.17 $\frac{3}{4}$ - coming North

[0385]
379

Rainfall in 1867-8

1867
1st Oct^r

Kamosenga R^t = Lopere - clouded all over - thunder
in distance - a few drops of rain fell - this was the
first since 12th May

2^d

vil of Karungu - in Lopere - Thunder in distance
and probably showers.

3^d

D^o. 4 AM - T - slight shower not enough to lay dust
3 PM a few heavy drops

4th

D^o T. in NNW. clouded over - clouds - lower stratum
from N - Upper stratum from S - when they meet turn
round & round
[five arrows delineating a spiral motion] 4.30 PM a shower T. .27

5th

T. early morning & 11 AM to 4 PM - .47

6th

gentle rain during night - .4

~~22^d~~

Thundering often all around but only a few
drops of rain fell - not enough to wet the soil -
this from 6th but on the

22^d

2 PM T. laid the dust

24

3 PM .3

27

Moving in Lopere gentle drizzling shower .7

29th

T 3 PM - Choma R. .22

Rain fall in October 1867 in Lopere === 1.10

1867
1st

November 1867. gentle shower = .7

3^d

R^t Luao 2 - AM - T - .30

7th

Kabuire 6 AM T - .18

8th

Lake Moero - chiputa's vil. T - .8

9th

D° D° 4 AM .10

11th

D° D° .12

13th

R - Kalongosi 7 AM - & 1 PM - T the first
really heavy shower - Rain will turn now
from partial to general .78

15th

Casembe's country 2 AM T - much .58
D° drizzling forenoon .8

16th

D° night .22

17th

D° 6 PM & night 1.44

3[.]95
Turn over

[0386]
380

1867

Brought forward - Rain fall in November up to 17th
November 3.95

19th

R^t Chungu - Noon till 4 PM T. .90

21st

R^t Lunde 7 AM T. [.]15

26th

Town of Casembe's on Lakelet Mofwe 3 PM T - .7

27th

D^o 7 AM T. .36

29th

D^o 2-6 AM T. 2.53

30th

D^o 5 PM T. .23
Total rain fall in November 8.19

December 1867.

1st

Casembe's town on Mofwe 11 AM T from E .93

6th

D° 4 to 5 PM - T. .40

8th

D° evening & night (gently) .25

10th

D° morning T. .4

12th

D° night before T .9

D°

D° noon T. .8 D° D° 4 to 5 PM .53 = .61

13th

D° 6 - 9 AM .29

14th

D° during night T - .29

15th

D° D° night T - from W - .16

16th

D° D° night T. 6 AM to 12 - 1.63

D°

D° 5 - 6 PM from W - T. .81

18th

D° 8 to 10 AM T. from N - .39

20th

D° 3 & 4 PM T - N - .66

D°

D° 5 - 7 PM T W - .89

24th

Chungu R^t - night T. .34

D°

D° drizzling showers T - .9

25th

D° morning T. .5

27th

Mandapala R^t 3 - 5 PM T. .33

31st

R^t Kabukwa 3 - 5 PM T. .93
Many showers fall which keep the 9.18
soil wet but shew nothing in the measure
total rain fall in Dec^r in Casembe's's country 9 in.18

[0387]
381

Rainfall in January 1868

3 Jany

at Kifurwa R^t - Casembe's's country 2 PM T. .8

4th

night T - 1.58

5th

night T. 1.25

10th

Karembwe's Moero - night T. 1.14

12th

D° early night & morning W - T and noon 4.12

13

D° night .69

14th

Raining all day on Rua M^{ts} but drizzling showers
only on the East of Moero -

[2]1st

at Kabwakwa village on Kakoma Rt -
4 - 5 PM - E - T - and night .84

22nd

D° night E - T. .5

29th

D° 3-30 PM to 5 PM E - T. .39

[3]0th

D° 4-5 PM - SW - T. .70

[3]1st

D° - 4-5 PM S-W- T. .35
Total Rainfall of January 1868 ==== 11.19

Rainfall of February 1868 —

5th

Kabwabuata vil - night N - .7

6th

D° early night N - T - .10

8

D° night N - T - 1.85

10th

D° - 3-4 PM E - T - .5

11th

D° - 1-2 PM - E - T - .55

13th

D° 5 PM E - T .2

[1]5

D° 4 PM W - T .30

17th

D° Early morning .14

[1]8th

D° night E - T .94

-

D° D° Noon .9

[1]9th

D° - 3-5 PM T .36

[2]3^d

D° - night E - T - .10

[2]4th

D° 7-9 AM E - T - 1.39

-

D° 3-5 PM - E - T - 1.36

-

D° 5-7 PM - E - T .22

[2]7th

D° night T .23

[2]9th

D° 5-6 AM - gently - .49
7.26

-

D° 3-5 PM - T - 1.45
Total rainfall in February 1868 8.71

[0388]
382

Rainfall in March 1868

1st March

at vil. Kabwabuata on Kakoma Rt - Early morning T - .9

3^d

D° night W - T - .82

4th

D° 9 AM to 12 - S.W.T. 1.50

Note

It seldom rains 3 hours without ceasing

6th

D° 3 P.M. E. T .42

-

D° 5 D° D° .21

7th

D° During the night 1.64

10th

D° - night .58

11th 12 - 13th

gentle showers but sufficient only to wet the ground

14th

D° 4 PM - T. .3

15th

D° 3 PM - E - T - .35

16th

vil Kapemba in Kabuire 3 PM - T- W- .6

19th

D° T - .7

25th

(Much and heavy rains reported at

-

Kabwabwata during our absence, probably 3 inches)

-

D° morning - W - T - .43

26th

D° during the night 3.82

27th

D° gently now & then all day .14

29th

D° early night T. .69

Kabuire

Rainfall in March 1868 - (probably three inches more) 10.85

Rainfall in April 1868 -

April 1st

Kabwabwata - 4-5 PM - E - T - .68

3^d

D° 4-5 P.M. N - T .40

6th

D° 4-5 PM N - T. .20

9th

D° 5 PM T .16

10th

D° 1 - 2 PM T .83

This is said to be the first rains of Masika because
the Thunder rolls or rumbles - E.

10th

D° night E - T .10

14th

Luao R. night & morning .45

15th

D° night W .5

16

D° night E - T .37

19th

Early morning = Moero E - T - .5

D°

D° Moero = evening E - T .27

21st

night Moero East side E T .38

Rain ceased on 21st April = Total in April - 1868 3.94

20th May

a thunder shower noon laid dust - say 4 East night = 9 = 9
4.03

[0389]

383

Rainfall in October 1867 Lopere district 1.10

- - in November = Lunda = Cazembe's 8.19

- - December Lunda - Cazembe's 9.18

- - January 1868 - Lunda & Kabuire 11.19

- - February - Kabuire 8.71

- - March - Kabuire 10.85

- - April - Kabuire 4.03

Total Rain fall in 1867-8 Inches 53.25

In Oct^r Nov^r Dec^r 18.47 = going South

Jan - Feb - Mar - April - 34.78 in return

Rainfall in 1868-69

August 29th

Kaskas or hot season began today and
what is quite exceptional Rainfall began on the
31st Kizinga - centre of watershed 5 PM SE - T - 1.80

Sept 2^d

D° 5 PM SE - T .73

4th

Winds on surface constantly SE - Upper Strata
N - W - T every evening in N - W -

26th

5 PM SE - T - slight shower

27

Chulo R^t. W T 3 PM - .28

30th

Lofubu or Kafu N - W - T .4

Oct^r 1st

Lofubu S E - & W - T .16

2

Moisi 6 PM - SE - T .5

15

Kasangole 5 PM SE T .12

18

Katette 1 PM SE - T with a little hail - .5

19th

Moero - 6 PM T laid dust only -

21st

at Muabo's midnight T .4

22 -

Kabwabwata - noon NW - T .10

D°

D° 2 PM - SE - T .6

23^d

D° 4 PM - SE - T laid dust

26th

D° - 3 PM E - T scarcely laid dust

27

D° 3 PM S E T D° D°

30th

D° 1-2 PM SE - T D° D°

31st

D° 1 - PM SE - T D° D°

Total Rainfall in October 1868 3.33
the rainfall in Kabuire was less than
the above - the two showers at the top of
the list caused the grass to spring - at
Kabuire it has not started yet - thunder every afternoon

[0390]
384

Rainfall in November 1868

Nov^r 1st

Kabwabwata 2 PM SE - T laid dust only .3

6th

D° 2 & 3 PM SE - then round to NW & back to SE - T .2[5]

7th

D° 6 - 7 PM SE - T .2[2]

8th

D° 7 - 8 PM SE. and E - T - loud & near = & morning .63

10th

D° 7 - 8 AM SE. clouded over T .39

16th

D° 12 - 1 - SE - then S - T - a little hail .64

18th

D° - 3 AM - S - E - T - then clouds went S - W - N & E. giving few drops

19th

D° 3 PM - S - E - T short plump - .4

21st

D° 1 - 2 PM - E - T .58

22^d

D° D° 2 - PM - E round to N - W - T .21

23^d

D° - 2 - PM E - laid dust only - T

24th

D° - 2 - 3 PM S E. and E - T - then W - T - little hail - .66

26th

D° 6 PM S E - & NW - clouds mixing T .47

27th

D° 7 AM - S E & NW - 2 strata of clouds .18

29th

D° Noon - E - round N - W - T .22

30th

cloudy & damp from distant rains - slight drizzle here – 4.59
Total rainfall at Kabwabwata in Nov^r = 4.59
Rainfall in December 1868

2^d

Kabwabwata 9 AM - SW & E - T .13

3

D° 1-2 AM SW - T .81

D°

D° 4 PM - N - W - T .15

4th

D° 5 AM gently & still .8

Note

Clouds generally from S - E - less often from E.
when they go round to N -W - rain falls - thunder
every day -

6th

D° - 1 - 2 PM. E & SE - T .14

7th

D° 7 - 8 AM SE - T a stratum of lower clouds from N - W - .21

-

D° 2 - 3 PM NW T .17

8th

D° 4 PM - N - W - T - laid dust only

9th

Sky overcast - lower stratum from N - W -
Upper D° from S - E -

12th

Camp at Kalela 2 PM NWT - .61

13th

D° began at midnight NWT - drizzly all morning .98

14th

lower stratum of clouds NW - Upper D° SE -

15th

D° D° D° but hot & sultry

15th

Marungu 6 - 7 PM NWT - .2[4]
3.56

[0391]
385

up to 16th
Rainfall in December continued 3.56

[D]ec^r 16th

Marungu 6 PM NWT .10

18th

clouds NW but a little rain from E - T .0

[1]9th

R- Lofunso NW & SE - clouds - too little to be measured .0

20th

D° 3-6 ^ AM NW - T .45 - night silently .12 .57

21st

D° 5 - 6 AM NW silently set in .11

24

D° 7 PM silently .4

26th

D° 3 PM - 7 PM & night NW silently - generally
we are enveloped in a cloud which damps everything .64

27

Marungu proper - East of Lofunso R- 2 - 3 PM NT .25

28

Midnight - silent -N - W - .4

30th

R Lofuko NW - T- .33

31st

D° NW .34
Total Rainfall in December 1868 5.98
Rainfall in January 1869

1st

R - Lofuko - midnight - silent .8

5th

D° Noon - & night .76

8th

silently night .30

-

all day at sick station 1.20
2.34

Note

In January and February very little rain fell in on the
country West of the middle of Tanganyika = Marungu -
Light showers fell frequently but while keeping the

Feby

vegetation moist they shewed nothing in the gauge -

5th

Tanganyika 7th Noon .16

7th

D° night 2.2

8th

silently [.].16

24th

2.66 - .32

March
8th

Noon NT no rain this month till now .46
night - Tanganyika - Kasanga .55

18

Ujiji Noon T 1.59

26

D° 6 AM NT 1.6

29

D° 12-3 S - E - T 1.3
4.69

[0392]
386

Rainfall in April 1869

April
1869 -

3^d

Ujiji - 9 AM .42

4

D° 8 AM 1.68

6th

D° 6 AM T .43

7th

D° 12 - 3 T - 1.8

D°

D° 4 - 5 PM T - .22

12th

D° 6 AM & 6 PM .30

13th

D° 3 PM SE - T 1.56

16th

D° 8 AMSE - T .75

17th

D° silently 7 AM SE - .11

18th

D° drizzling morning and afternoon .0

21st

D° Noon - SE - T .25

27th

D° 8 - 9 AM T .85

29th

D° 11 AM SE T - .68
8.33
Rainfall in May 1869

May 2

Ujiji 11 AM silent - SE. .15

1869 D°

- 1 -3 PM - SE .79

3^d

D° 12 - 1 PM SE - T rolling as it is the .36

5th

D° 1 - 2 PM SE Masika now .9

9th

D° Noon [.]13

10th

D° Noon NW T 1.8

11th

D° 3 - 6 AM rolling T - 1.3

D°

D° 2 - 3 PM NW .19

12th

D° drizzling - rolling T - NW .39

D°

D° 7 - PM - little RT S - E - .28

13th

D° 7 AM & noon SE - RT .31

14th

D° 2 - 3 PM SE. .18

17th

D° Noon SE. .11

18th

D° D° SE- .7

25th

D° 2 - 3 PM - - SE - .22 5.16

26

D° 2 - 4 PM W. .32

31st

D° 8 - 11 AM - S - W - *2.80* 8.50

Rainfall 1868 - 9 - Aug^t Sept^r Oct^r 1868 3.33

November 4.59

December 5.98

January 1869 2.34

February - 2.66

March 4.69

April 8.33

5.16

May - 18th 37.08

May to 31st from 18th - 3.34

Up to end of May 40.42

[0393]

387

Rainfall in 1869 Manyema

2 Sept^r

Katamba Noon first rain fell at Noon -

3

Katamba 4 PM SE - T .4

14

Moloni or Mononi M_{ts} S E - & hail .50

15

Mamba's - noon SE in march not measured

20

Monandenda's SE dust not laid

2 October

Moenekuss' used now for T = thunder

~~10~~ 1

Moenekuss 12^h NW - laid dust

4

D° - 4 - 5 PM NW .27
- 8 PM SE - .4

10

D° 2 - 3 - PM SE .38

11

D° - 2 - 3 PM E - & Hail .56

13

D° 3 - 5 PM E - 1.82

15

D° 4 PM E .18

16

D° 11 AM to 5 PM showery & cold E & NE .37

17

D° shut in by dense clouds 7 - 10 AM - N.W - .64

23

D° - Noon E & N - E - .4

27

D° Noon E & NE - .39

28

D° 12 - 1 PM N - E - Hail 1.20

29

D° night gentle showers

30

D° all day clouded over

31

D° 6 - 9 PM NE - .40
Total Rainfall in October 1869 6.82.
Rainfall in November 1869

Nov^r

Bambarre or Moenekuss

2

D° drizzling after dark N - W -
dripping cloud in Forest Manyema
Forest at 11 - 2 PM N- W- .54

4

D° 2 - 3 PM SE - .92

5

5 hours S - W - of Moenekuss vil -
11 - 3 PM S E and silent shower till 4 PM .95

6

D° - S- E- shower laid dust

8

Monandamba's vil SE - 9 AM .11
D° D° 3 - 4 PM SE - .22

12

D° 11 AM SE .6

14

D° 3 - 6 PM SE .18

15

Kolomokata's 3 - 4 PM SE .16

[0394]
388

November

1869

15 Chirumbe's about midnight much 1.38

15th

D° 8 - 12 AM SE 1.6

22

R - Luam[...] [o] 8 - 9 AM SE .29
D° 11 - to 2 PM .21

24

D° 2-3 PM SE .18

27

D° 1 - 5 PM NW & to S.E - - Hail 1.56

28

D° 5 - 7 PM NE [...] 1.67
Total Rainfall in November 1869 9.09
Manyema Rainfall December 1869

Dec^r 2

R Luamo 3 - 6 PM SW - S - & SE - 1.18

1869 3^d & 4th

Nil showers

5 to 11th

Thunder daily

11th

Luamo 3 - 4 PM - SE .34
D° 5 - 7 .1[...] ³

12th

D° 11 - 12 silent .15

14

D° during night SE 1.42

15th

D° 2 - 4 PM SE 1.10

17

R^t Mofungoye 5 PM SE .88

18th

Kolo muzungu's 2 days NW of Moenekuss
12 - 2 PM ~~12~~ - .15

19th

Moenekuss - SE .10
D° 9 - 10 AM SE .20

22^d

D° 6 - 9 PM SE - E & NW .51

27th

D° 1 PM SE .9

28

Luamo R - 2 - 4 PM SE 1.3

29

D° 6 - 8 AM SE 1.2
D° D° Noon SE .11

31st

Nil Shower Total for December 7.80
Manyema Rainfall 1870

January 1st

clouded over from SW

1st

R Luamo 7 - PM .4

2^d

D° 2 - 3 PM .17

7th

D° Forest 7 - 8 AM AM Forest .32

9th

D° D° AM .6

12th

D° 2 - 3 PM SE 1.16

20th

Chanza N 5 - 6 PM NW .37

22 & 23

after sunset .13

2[...][6]

4 - 5 PM SE .47

[0395]

389

January 1870 - Manyema Rainfall

27th

- Manyema 11 AM - several NI showers .31

29

D° 5 & 6 PM 1.57

31st

D° 3 - 4 PM S.E. .39

Total Rainfall in January 4-99

February 1870 Rainfall in Manyema

2nd

By night & 4PM .45
- 5 - 6 AM 11 - 10 AM - 3 PM NW - not all measured 1.11

3rd

night - .30 - 9 at Katomba's 1.21 = 10th.6. = 1.66

11th

night Katomba's . 12-18th night D° .20 N.W. = .32

19

night D° N.W. = .38 - 20th midnight & morning S.E. = .48

26

night & early m. of 27th . 56 = 27.5 AM Nil shower = 56

1870

Manyema = February Total 4.48
March chiefly at night after 7 PM 1st .68

5th

night N.W. =.50 11th midnight .78 = 1.28

12th

night Nil shower 16th night NW. = [.]26

16

Mamohela camp .6 = 19th clouded over & drizzling .6

26

D° 6 - 8 PM S.E. = .49 27th night D° .9 = .58

30

D° - 2 PM NW. Nil. 31st N.W. = .19

March Rainfall 3.05

April Rainfall in Manyema 1870 -

2

Mamohela 4 PM & night N.W. 1.53 = 1.53

4

night & morning = 2.4 7th drizzling day NW + 28 = 2.32

8

midnight Nil - 9th 6 PM all round = .73

10th

6 PM & on .59 - 12th 7 AM N.W. = ^ 1.84 = == 2.43

16

6 PM & night NW .25 - 17th 2 PM SE .15 = .40

19

4 PM NW = .7 - 20th 6 PM SE - 95 - 21st 2 - 3 PM SE .9546 = 1.48

22

9 PM & on NW .86 - 23d D° 4 AM silent SE - 23 = 1.09

25

night and early m .82 - 1.69 - 30th - 4- PM S.E. = 65 = 1.34
[...][Ma]y 26 May 6th early morning NW .13 - 4th night & Morn 50 = .63

7th

~~night~~ 2-5.PM - SE .77 - 8th 6 - 8 S.E. & NW. = 1.82 = 2.59

12th

Noon NW. .69 = 12th night & m silent .12 - 13th night NW. ^ .4 = 1.22

20th

4 - 5 AM SE .86 = 7 - 10 AM [26] = 22nd 4 - 5 AM NW .26
Rolling all round horizon 1.76 = 3.34
June 4th 4 PM N. .6 - 5th 4 PM NW .25 6th S.E. SE & NW. .8 = .49

16th

4 PM SE - .33 - 24th 7 - 8 PM SE 1.80 - 16 July Mbonye's Vil
2.13
April May June July 21.72

Total

October 6.82
Nov. 9.09
Dec^r 7.80
Jany 4[.]99
= 28.70
Feby 4.4
March 3.05
April 12.37
May [...] [June] 3.35 = 29.25
57.90 = 58 inches
1869-70 of Rainfall

[0396]
390

From page June 30 Journal

17th
April
1868.

at the sides of the paths but often stopping in the unseen edge of a rut, we floundered in with both feet to keep the balance, and this was usually followed by a rush of bubbles to the surface which bursting discharged foul air of frightful faecal odour - In parts the black mud & foul water were cold - in others hot according as circulation went on or not. When we came near Moero the water became half chest and whole chest deep - all perishable articles had to be put on the head - Found a party of fishermen on the sands, and I got a hut a bath in the clear but tepid waters and a delicious change of dress
Water of Lake 83° at 3 PM

19th

Marched along the North end of Moero which had

Moero

a South East direction - The soft yielding sand
which is flanked by a broad belt of tangled tropical
vegetation & trees, added to the fatigues of yesterday
so finding a deserted fisherman's village near
the Eastern hills we gladly made it our quarters for

19th

Sunday. I made no mark but the Lake is at
least twenty feet higher now than it was on our
first visits - and there are banks shewing higher
rises than even this -
Large fish baskets made of split reeds are used in
trios for catching small fish
[Drawing of two baskets described.]

[Drawing of basket described.] one man at each basket drives fish ashore

20th

Go on to Katette R^t & there to a strong torrent deep
at a village on North bank of the R^t V[...]un]a while
near hills is a hot fountain sometimes used
to cook cassava & maize -

21st

Cross Vuna and go on to Kalembe's village
met chief at gate who guided us to a hut and
manifested great curiosity to see all of our things
asked if we would not stop next day & drink hoom
which would then be ready. Leopards abound
here - Lake now seems broader than ever
In October it looked still more broad -

[0397]

391

April
22nd
[1]868

could not conceive that a hole in the cartilage of the nose could be turned to any account except to hold an ornament though that is usually only a bit of grass, but a man sewing the feathers on his arrows used his nose hold for holding a needle! In coming on to Kangalola found country swimming - got separated from the company though I saw them disappear in the long grass not a hundred yards off and shouted but the splashing of their feet prevented any one hearing - could not find a path going South so took one to East to a village - grass so long & tangled I could scarcely get along - engaged a man to shew me the main path South - He took me to a neat village of a woman Nyinakasanga & would go no further - mother Kasanga as the name means had been very handsome and had a beautiful daughter probably another edition of herself - she advised my waiting in the deep shade of the figus indicua in which her houses were placed - I fired again - & when my attendants came gave her a string of beads which made her express distress at my "leaving without drinking anything of hers" - When we returned we might spend a night at her village. We did not pass her in October - people had abandoned several villages on account of the abundance of ferocious wild beasts

23^d

Through very thick & tangled Nyassi to chikosis burned village - Nsama had killed him - we spent the night in a garden hut which the fire of the village had spared - Turnings growing in the ruins - The Nyassi or long coarse grass hangs over the paths and in pushing it aside the sharp seeds penetrate the clothes and are very annoying - The grass itself rubs on the face and eyes disagreeably. When it is burned off and green sward covers the soil it is much more pleasant walking -

[0398]

392 -

April
24th
1868

Leave Chikosi's ruins and make for the ford of the Kalongosi. Marigolds in full blow all over the Forest and so are foxgloves - The river was here full one hundred yards broad with 300 yards of flood on its Western bank so deep we had to remain in the canoes till within 50 yards of the higher ground - People shewing the pith of the Papyrus which is 3 in in diameter and is white as snow - Has very little sweetness or anything else in it - the headman of the village to which we went was out cutting wood for a garden and his wife refused us a hut - When Kansabala came in the evening he scolded roundly his own spouse and all the wives of the village and then pressed me to come indoors but I was well enough in my mosquito curtain without and declined. I was free from insects & vermin and few huts are so.

25th

off early West and then on to an elevated Forest land in which our course was SSW to the great bend of the rivulet Kifurwa - It enters Moero near to the mouth of the Kalungosi

26th

Here we spent Sunday in our former woodcutters' huts - yesterday we were met by a party of the same occupation laden with bark cloth which they had just been stripping off the trees - their leader would not come along the path because I was sitting near it - I invited him to do so but it would have been disrespectful to let his shadow fall on any part of my person - He went a little out of the way. This politeness is common.

27th

But a short march to Fungafunga's village - we
could have gone on to the Muatize but no
village exists there and here we could buy food
Fungafunga's wife gave a handsome supper
to the stranger - on afterwards acknowledging it

[0399]

393

April
28th
1868

to her husband he said that is your village, always
go that way and eat my provisions - He is a
Wanyamwezi trading in the country for copper
hoes and slaves - Parrots in numbers stealing
Holcus sorghum in spite of the shouts of the women.
cross Muatize by a bridge of one large tree - Get a
good view of Moero from a hill near Kabukwa
and sleep at ChisongoRt

29th

At Mandapala R^t some men from Chungu
one of whom claimed to be a relative of Cazembe
made a great outcry against our coming a second
time to Cazembe without waiting at Kalongosi for
permission. one of them with his ears cropped
short off asked me when I was departing North
if I should come again - I replied, "Yes - I thought
I should -["] They excited themselves by calling over
the same thing again and again. "The English come
"the second time" - "the second time - the second time
"the country spoiled - Why not wait at Kalongosi?
"Let him return thither" - come from Mpamari too
"and from the Bagaranganza or Banyamwezi"
"the second time - the second time."! Then all the
adjacent villagers were called in to settle this
serious affair - I look up to that higher power
to influence their minds as he has often done
before- Persuaded then to refer the matter to
Cazembe himself by sending a man with one
of mind up to the town - they would not con-

sent to go on to the Chungu as the old cropped
eared man would have been obliged to come back
the distance again he having been on the way to
Kalongosi as a sentinel of the ford. Cazembe is
reasonable and fair but his people are neither
and will do anything to mulct either strangers
or their own countrymen

30th

The cold of winter has begun - Dew deposited
in great quantities but all the streams are
very high in flood though the rains have here
ceased some time -

[0400]
394

May
1st
1868

At Mandapala Rt. sent a request to Muhamad
Bogharib to intercede with Cazembe for me
for a man to shew the way to Chikumbi which
is near to Bangweolo - I fear that I have become
mixed up in the Lunda mind with Mpamari
(Muhamad bin Saleh) from having gone off
with him and returning ere we reached Ujiji
whither ostensibly we were bound - I may be
suspected of being in his confidence and of
forwarding his plans by coming back = A deaf
and dumb man appears among the people here
making signs exactly as I have seen such do in
England - and occasionally emitting a low un-

2nd

^ modulated guttural drawl like them -

3^d

Abraham my messenger came back while we
we were at afternoon prayers with good news
for us but what made cropped ears quite chop
fallen - Cazembe quite gracious - He did not
wish me to go away and now I am welcome
back, and as soon as we hear of peace at
Chikumbi's we shall have a man to conduct
us thither - Masitu were reported to have made an
inroad into Chikumbi's country - That chief has
fled and Cazembe had sent messengers to hear
the truth - Thanks to the Most high for his kindness
and influence.

4th

Leave Mandapala - Cropped ears whose name
I never heard, collapsed at once on hearing the
message of Cazembe - Before that I never
heard such a babbler - To every one passing
man or woman he repeated the same insinu-
-ations about the English and Mpamari and
the Banyamwezi. conspiracy - guilt - return
a second time till like a meddling lawyer he
thought that he had really got an important
case in hand.

[0401]

395

May
5th
1868

Rt. Chungu from fifteen to eighteen yards
broad and breast deep, with at least one hundred
yards of flood before we reached the main stream
Mandapala - Chungu and Lundi join in country
called Kimbafuma about 12 miles from our crossing
place of Mandapala and about West of it. The Lundi
was now breast deep too and twelve yards broad -

On reaching Cazembe's on the Mofwe we found
Mohamad Bogharib digging and fencing up a well
to prevent his slaves being taken away crocodiles in

the Mofwe as there had been already - a dog bit the leg of one of my goats so badly that I was obliged to kill it. They are nasty curs here without courage yet sometimes bite people badly. Met some old friends and Mohamad Bogharib cooked a supper and from this time forward never omitted sharing his victuals with me -

6th

Manuel Caetano Pereira visited Cazembe in
[Calculations to arrive at number of years since Pereira visited Cazembe.] 1796 or 72 years ago - His native name was Moendomondo or the world's leg = "world side traveller"! He came to Mandapala for there the Cazembe of the time resided ~~and~~ had a priest or "Kasise" with him and many people with guns Perembe the oldest man now in Lunda had children even then - If Perembe were 30 years of age at that period he would now be 102 years old and he seems quite that - When D^r Lacerda came he had forty children! He says that Pereira fired off all his gones on his arrival and Cazembe asked him what he meant by that he replied "these guns ask for slaves and ivory" both of which were liberally given

7th

I could not induce Perembe to tell anything of times previous to his own - Moendo mondo = the worlds leg Pereira told D^r Lacerda that the natives called him "The Terror"! another bit of vanity for they have no such word or abstract term in their language - continued at page of book July 25

[0402]

396

The old man Perembe at Cazembe died about the beginning of 1870 - He must have been > 104 years of age possible 110 -
Soon 26 facs. / 25 July/

[0403]

397

Altitudes above the sea by Barometer and
Boiling Point Principal stations for
details see Note book.

27th

March

1866

Mikindary Bay = on the Northern jaw of the
entrance to Pembé harbour.
at 11 A.M.

- II

Boiling Point thermometer - N^o 4681. Sea level
brush Ebullition 212^o air 88.5

- III

D^o D^o N^o 4688 = D^o D^o

-

— — 212^o 2. air 90^o

IV

D^o D^o N^o 4689 - ~~air 8^o~~
— — 212^o 1 air 86^o Level of sea Lat 8^o South.
same station and Date - Aneroid Barometers

I.

N^o 395 = shewed inches 30.05 air 90^o

II

Nº 423 = —- —- 30.15 air 90º

III

Nº 450 = — — 30.67. air 90ºLevel at the sea. 8º South

28th

March

Nº I at 9 AM 30.05 - air 86º

Nº II — — 30.25 - - 86º

Nº III — — 30.75 - - 86º

Nº I at 3 PM 29.95 – air 85º

Nº II — 30.13 – 85º

Nº III — 30.68 – 85º

28th

March

Nº I 9 A.M. 30.0 air 83º

Nº II — — 30.17 —-

Nº III — — 30.72 —-

Nº I 3 PM 29.92 - air 80º

Nº II — 30.0 –

Nº III — 30.67 –

[0404]

398

May
12th 1866

Nyamatolole or Matawatawa - Turning
point on Rovuma in 1862
I at 4 PM 29.6. air 86°
II — 29.82 —
III — 30.45 —

13th
May

I at 6 AM 29.6 — air 77°
II - 29.65 —
III 30.43 —

21st
May

Ngomano (2' up Loendi from confluence)
I at 9AM - 29.85 .air
II —29.95 76.3
III —30.55

25th

N°
1 at 3PM 29.58 air
2 29.75 85°
3 30.37

2 June

Ngomano (-)
N° at 10AM. Boiling Point.
II 212.5 - 301.5
III . 11 AM 211° 35 ans 86°5
IV 9.30 AM 211°9N° Aneroid Bar
1 11AM 29.7 — air 86.5
2 29.9 —
3 30.54 —
— at 3PM 29.6 air
29.85 82°
30.4
1 at 9PM 29.6 72
2 29.82

3 30.42

[0405]

399

26 July

1866

Pamoembe - Town of Mataka -

Aneroid Barometers

N^o 1 at 9AM 26.52 air

– 2 26.91 62^o.2

– 3 27.48 N^o

1 Noon 26.52 air

2 25.9 66^o.5

3 27.45 N^o

1 at 3 PM 26.48 air

2 26.85 67^o

3 27.43

Pazimba's

vil 31st

July

N^o 1 at 6 AM 25.95 air

2 26.35 55^o

3 26.9

2 Aug

near

Mbanga

1 - 6 AM 26.05 air

2 - 26.46 47^o.5

3 - 27.02

9th Aug

Lake

Nyassa

confluence of the Misinje & Lake

1 at 6 - 25 - 28.2 air

2 28.5 62^o

3 29.15

10th Aug

1 at 9 AM all the instruments Protected in a box

1 28.32 air

2 28.55 75°

3 29.18

D°

at 3 PM 28.25 air

28.5 80°

29.1

[0406]

400

13

Aug.

1866

Lake Nyassa - confluence of the Misinje

II Boiling Point Thermometer 9AM 210° - air 72.5

III 8 30 - 209° 9 air 66.5

IV 8 15 - 210 air 65.5 1 same time & place 9AM, Barometers 28.28

2 28.68 72°

3 29.22

D°

1 at 3 PM 28.25

2 28.52 76°

3 29.13 Mean of Barometers on 13 Aug. at the
confluence of the Misinje with Lake Nyassa
corrected thus

I 28.28 - 05 = 28.23 mean

II 28.68 - 15 = 28.53 28.5

III 29.22 - 67 = 28.55 -

By Barometer - 1200 feet above the sea

By Boiling point 1238 feet D°

38 Diff. By another observation 20th Aug. 1866

Barometer 1212 feet

Boiling Point 1268 feet

56 diff

[0407]

401

4 Oct^r

1866

Katosa's or Kiemasusa's at base of Kirk's range

N 1 at 9 AM 28.05

2 28.35 78° Air

3 28.9 1 Noon

1 28.02

2 28.28 85° Air

3 28.8 1 at 3 PM. 28.0

28.25 87° Air

28.75

8 Oct

1 Top of range. 6AM. Mpalala 25.7 air

2 25.95 74°

3 26.4 1 at 9 AM 25.72 air

2 25.88 74° 5

3 26.35 1 at 3 PM 25.65 air

2 25.92 79°

3 26.35

9 Oct

Pamiala, village of Gombwa about 1° West
of Mpalala and higher.

at 4^h 45^m PM Boiling Point. Brisk Ebullition -
N° I 204° 2

II 204.2 air 79°

III 204.2

IV 204.1

Height above the sea as calculated by Profess-
Burgess' tables 4531 feet.

Barometers 4571

1 4^h 45 PM 40 diff. 25.2 air

2 25.4 79°

3 25.85

Gives 4571 feet -

[0408]

402

17 Nov

1866

Kanyenje valley near ^ about 2' south of it source of the Bua

1 at 9 AM 25.65

2 25.8 air 77°

3 26.38

D° D° Boiling Point - 13.2.^m 10^h 30^m AM

Mean of I, II, III, IV, Thermometers 204.4 air 77°

Height above the sea B. Pt. feet 4044.

17 Nov

By Barometer 25.63 - 77° - feet 4562 above sea

1 at 10.30 - ~~25.63~~ = 25.64

25.82 air 77°

26.27

Bar.

corrected as before gives Feet 4562 above sea

Boiling point gives 4044

518 Diff ?!

20 Nov^r

1 source of the Bua at 3 PM 25.4 74° air

25.6

26.02

Gives Feet 4751 above sea

15 Dec^r

Boiling Point 208.8: air 77° feet 1830 above
This is the middle of the great Loangwa valley
& on the banks of the river at Maraunda's vil

By Barometer 28.00. 75° - Feet 1808 above the sea
1830
22
Diff

24 Dec

Near foot of North Western brim of great
Loangwa valley - Kavimba's vil.
Boiling Point 208.3 = 87.7 air - Feet 2151 feet
Barometer 27.76 = 87° 7 air Feet 2115
36 Diff

[0409]

403

4 Jany
1867 -

Mbulukuta - on brim of great Loangwa valley called
generally from below Mountains of Bisa or Ba[-]
-bisa (Machinga a Bisa)
Boiling Point at 10 50 AM 205.8 = air 75° Feet 3565

Barometer same time & place 26.1 - air 75 - Feet 3983
Diff. 418

The above is the beginning of the mass of upland
which constitutes the Watershed between the river
Loangwa of Zumbo, and the Chambeze which
forms Lakes Bemba or Banweolo, Moero, and ^ Kirkousa Urenge.

Note

The large difference between Boiling Point, and the Barometer observations, makes me suspect that this is not the briskest ebullition that gives the true height, but ordinary brisk ebullition for this

12th
January
1867

morning by blowing up the fire the thermometer shewed 203°.₆ - while by Ebullition, not quite so brisk, but more regular, they showed 203° - In country called Lokumbi. vil of Chafunga 203° = by Prof- Burgess' tables - 4767 Feet Multiplier for air at 67°
[Series of calculations to produce results shown.]
5124,525 Feet
5138,500 Feet
The difference is only 14 Feet
Mem. keep this point for enquiry at home

[0410]
404

15th
January
1867

Boiling Point at our station on the mountains, Chitane, some call them if we understand them rightly "Mpini"? 3 P.M
Steady Brisk ebullition of a gallon and a half of water in an earthen pot 202°.₆ air 70°
== Prof Burgess' Tables -
[Calculations to produce the results shown.]
Feet 5385,542
Barometer same time & place
corrected air 701° - 24.52 =
[Calculations to produce the results shown.]
Feet 5353,0647
Thus by Boiling Point 5385 Feet
By Barometer 5353 Feet

Difference only 32 Feet

Note

Cassella's apparatus with only an ounce of water in a thin brass cup is, as Professor Burgess remarks, incapable of giving accurate results -

Our encampment was 1150 feet from the highest point of the range There the Barometer shewed 23.9 == Feet 59 59 air 86° or -66-38 feet above the level of the sea.

Note

This is the highest point of the range which comes between the Loangwa valley & that of the Chambeze as I erroneously imagined The Zambesi is here called; Zambesi or Liamba rises far to the West of this in Lunda.

[0411]
405

April
1867

Level of the Lake Liemba by boiling point & Barometer over 2800 feet & under 2900 feet but the amount varies - the Barometers make it over 3000 feet

2^d May

Level of Lake Barometer shews 6 AM 26.96 = 74 °
= 2859 feet
At 9 AM 27.05 = 78 °
= 2700 feet
3 PM 27.0 - [...]
Top of overhanging ridge at 9 AM 25.22 =

Temp. of Lake at 7 AM 77 °
at 3 PM 85

Chitimba's village or Rivulet Chiloa
22 May 1867 Lat 8 ° 58'
By Boiling Point Long 31 ° 30' E
204 ° - air 70 ° Feet 4610 -
Aneroids 25,08. Feet 4712 102 x 9 AM -

Ford of Lofu - Chungu's village 8 ° 55 Lat
Aneroids 26.00 air 81 ° 3 PM - 2 Sept^r
Feet 4137.

Hara, 8 Sept. 1867 Lat 8 ° 55 S. Long 29 ° 27' E.
9 AM air 70 ° = 26.30 = Feet 3730.

R. Chisera 28th Sept. 9 A.M.
Aneroids 26.44 = air 77 °
Feet 3398

Lopere - Kamosenga Rt. Kamungu's vil
5th Oct. Boiling Pt 206 ° air 75 ft 3449
Bar same time 26.26 = 3828
379 x

[0412]

406
same obs^{ns} Repeated

22 May
1867

village of Chitimba Rivulet Chiloa
Ulungu Boiling point 204° Temp. - 70 - 9 AM
Feet - 4558 of Altitude
Aneroids 1 25.08 air 70°
2 25.29
3 25.76 = 4790 feet

[Calculation to arrive at the mean height shown.]
Mean Height 4669
Observation repeated

5th Oct

Kurungu's vil. on Kamosenga Rt- Lopere
9 AM 206° = 3449 feet
Aneroids 26.60 = 35091

[Calculation to arrive at the mean height shown.]
Mean Height = 3479

8th Nov

Lake Moero 3 PM 30 feet above water
Boiling point 207° 81 = 2900 feet
Aneroids - 26.6 == 78° = 3120

[Calculation to arrive at the mean shown.]
Mean = 3010 feet

6th Dec

9 AM Mofwe - Casembe's town by lakelet
Boiling point 206° 8 - 76° = 2990 feet
Aneroids
[Calculation to arrive at the mean height shown.]
Mean Height 3071 feet

21st
January
1868

Buire ^ or Kabuire vil Kab ^ wabwata 10 AM
 Boiling Point $206^{\circ} 6.78^{\circ} = 3118$ feet
 Aneroids - 25.36 - 78
 [Calculation to arrive at the mean height shown.]
 Mean = 3180

31st D°

D° Boiling Point $206^{\circ} .4 - 3 = 74^{\circ} = 9.30$ AM feet 3266
 Barometers corrected $2654 = 74^{\circ} 9.30$ feet 3246

[Calculation to arrive at the mean shown.]
 3456

[0413]
 407

1867.
 April 4th

Average of Altitudes observed at Lake Liemba
 Barometers (Aneroid) 6 AM air 75° Feet 3013 - 27.50

4th

D° corr. 26.97 9 AM - $75^{\circ} - 3063$

4th

Boiling Point - $207^{\circ} 9^{\circ} 30$ AM - D° $82^{\circ} - 2906$

4th

Barometers corr^d 26.96 3 PM - $82^{\circ} - 3105$

13th

Barometers corr^d 27.11 9 AM - 77 ° – 2917

D°

Boiling Point mean 206.8 9 AM - 78 ° – 3001

13th

Boiling Point 207 °.3 3 PM - 83 ° – 2737

20th

Barometers (27.15) corr. 3 PM 83 ° – 2898

D°

Boiling point 207 °.6 9 AM 83 ° – 2561

3 May

Boiling point 207.5 9 AM 80 ° – 2603
Barometer (Pambete) 27.06 9 AM 76 ° – 2965

[Calculation to produce the result shown.]
2882 Mean 2882

[0414]
408

1868
April
18th

Lake Moero 18th April 1868 about 30 feet above water
Bar. N ° 1. 3. PM. 26.52 = 82° 26.52 = 82°
Boiling Point 3 - PM. 206.8 = 83° 26-65 = 76°

[Calculation to arrive at the mean shown.]
26.58 = 79° mean

19th

Bar. at 9. AM 26.65 = 76°
Boiling Pt. 9. AM. 206.8 = 77°

[Calculation to arrive at the height shown.]
3465,147 Height

Boiling Point 206.8 = 2736 feet

19th

Bar. Noon - 26.60 = 81 °
[Calculation to produce the height shown.]
Bar. 3 PM 26.55 = 83 ° 3012336 height

20th

Bar. 6 AM. 26.52 = 70
[Calculation based on the height shown.]

[Calculation to produce the mean shown.]
26.55.6 = 78 mean

[Calculation to produce the amount of feet shown.]
feet 3568,241

October
19th
1868

Moero - 4 h PM. Boiling Point $206^{\circ} 1 = 85^{\circ} =$ Lake Water
— 5 h = 40 m PMD° D° $206^{\circ} 2 = 79^{\circ} 82^{\circ}$

[Calculation to produce the mean shown.]

82 mean

Bar. 4 PM $26.50 = 85^{\circ}$ Wet Bulbs

5 - 40 PM $26.47 = 79^{\circ} 75^{\circ} .5$

20th

6 AM - $26.50 75^{\circ}$

$26.49 - 82^{\circ} =$

[Calculation to produce the height by barometer shown.]

[Calculation to produce the mean shown.]

26.49 79.6 mean

$206^{\circ} 2 = 206^{\circ} 2 = 82^{\circ}$ Boiling Point

Height

by Barometer 3683,848

[Calculation that includes a measurement in feet and figures related to boiling point, barometer, and height to produce the difference shown.]

305 Difference

19th April

Bar. 3465

D°

Boiling pt 3012

19th & 20

Bar. 3568

October 19th

Barometer 3683

-

- Boiling pt 3378

[Calculation to produce the height of Lake Moero shown.]
By Bar & Boil pt - 3421 Height of Moero

[0415]
409

Town of Cazembe on the Nor East bank of Mofwe
and 50 or 80 feet above the Lakelet - 6th May 1868

6th

Bar. 3 PM. 26.52 = 81°

7th

Bar. 3 PM. 26.50 = 82°

8th

Bar. 9 AM. 26.58 = 85°

—

Bar - 3 - PM. 26.54 = 90°

[Calculation to produce the mean shown.]
26.53.5 84.5 mean -

[Two sets of calculations in columns including Barometer, Boiling Point, Height, and Difference.]
Differing from Moero on 3 feet.

Kabwabwata in Kabuire

1st Nov

Barometer corrected 26.38 = 86 ° 3 PM Feet 3733

5th

— 26.55 = 83 ° 9 AM Feet 3547

6th

— 26.48 = 87 ° Noon - Feet 3629

8th

— 26.46 = 85 ° 6 PM - Feet 3612
Mean - - feet 3630

5th

Boiling Point 206 ° -4 = 83 ° 9 AM Feet 3267

D°

— 206 ° 2 = 85 ° Noon Feet 3102

8th

— 206 ° 2 = 85 ° 6 PM Feet 3397
Diff. Bar. - .9 Boiling pt 375 feet Mean - 3255
Mean of Bar & Boiling pt. Feet 3442.

[0416]
410

19th
July
1868

Lake Bangweolo - water level -
Bar at Noon. 25.95 - = 70 °
Bar 3 PM - 25.90 = 71 °
Bar 6 PM - 25.85 = 63 °

20th

Bar 9 AM 25.90 - = 66 °
Bar 3 PM 25.85 72

23^d

Bar 9 AM 26.00 high wind 66 °
Bar 3 PM 25.95 == 70 °

[Calculations to produce the mean shown.]
25.91 = 68.6 mean

[Calculations to produce the height shown.]
4148,604 Barometer

July
20th

Boiling Point at 9 AM - 205 ° .4 = 66 °
– 3 PM - 205 ° .6 = 72 °

[Calculations necessary to produce the height of the Lake Bangweolo, as shown below.]

[Calculations to produce the amount shown (height of Lake Bangweolo).]
Difference 450 ===== 3923 mean height of lake

[0417]

411

[0418]

412

[0419]

413

[0420]

414

[0421]

415

[0422]

416

Manyema Rainfall 1870-71 - 0 for thunder

25thAug

First thunder at Bambarre - there are
usually only about three months in
Manyema without thunder or rain

22nd

Bambarre Noon E. . .12

23^d

– 6 AM. E. .6

24th

– 3 - 4 PM E. . .72

2^dOct^r

– .8 == 5th Eve. E. . 27 + 6th afternoon - 18 = .53

10th - 14th

NI showers daily = 19th 3-4PM E. . 1.27

21st

– 3-4 PM . 15 + 26th 4PM S.E. . .5 = .20

27th

00 .14 SE) - 28th 3 - 4 PM E. . 2.58 - 2.72

29

– 5PM E & SE - Hail == .57

Rain fall in Sept & October 1870 6.07

1870

November Rainfall Manyema

6th

- 5 PM E .39 = 8th 9 - 11 AM E & SE 1.59=

9th

- Noon NW .69 = + 11th 5 PM W .13 = .82

12

- Noon SE. vE .14 = + 18th 7 AM E =18 = [.]32

19th

- 10AM E .71 = + 20th Afternoon .15 = .86

21st

- 4 -5 PM E .21 = + 23^d Noon E .72 = .93

26th

- 2 PM E .30 = + 27th Eve E .10 + = .40

28th

- 9 - 12 AM NW .24 = + 30th Noon .28 = .52
Total Rain fall November Manyema = 4.37

1870

December Rainfall

3^d

Bambarre - Noon .10 + 4PM E 49 = .59

6th

- 10 - 11 AM E 0.157 = + 8th Noon E .78 = 2.35

9th

- 8 PM E .48 = + 11th 3 - 4 PM SE & E Hail
+ 1.72 + 17th 7 PM. E -.45 == 2.65

18th

- 8 AM E .60 = + 20th - 9 AM E & SE 0.54 = 1.14

D^o

- 3 PM .7 + 21st Noon SE). 21 = .28

23^d

- 2 PM SE .44 = + 24th - 2 PM SE 0.56 = 1.00

27th

- 7 PM E .89 = + 28th - 5 PM E & N.E. 0 = ^ .25 1.14

29th

- 2 - 4 PM SE & NE. .60 = .87

Total Rainfall for December - 10.02

Bambarre Manyema country

[0423]
417

1st January 1871. Rainfall Manyema
Bambarre - Noon N.W. .43

2nd

- 5 PM SE & E .95 = + 4th Noon NW & SE
with Hail 3.40 = 4.35

5th

- 9 PM E & NE .29 = + 7th 8 - 9 AM E .94 = 1.23

14

- 3 PM .18 = + 15th 7 PM NE & N.W 1.38 = 1.56

19

- 3 PM NW .27 = + 20th afternoon NW .90 = 1.17

23

- Noon NW. & cold.8 + 26th 9 - 12 cold NW .51 = .59

27

Drozzly morning E. . = + 28th 5 - 6 AM E .68 = .68

D^o

- 4 PM. E & SE. 1.18
11.19

31

– 6 PM .84 + .84

Total Rainfall of January 1871 == 12.03

1st February = Rain very cold from N.W.

2

– Noon N.W. .10 + 6th night & morning NW = 1.10

2th

– 4 - 8 AM SE .86 + 8th 6 - 8 AM E .83 = 1.69

D^o

– 3 -4 PM .29 + 17th Kinyima M^t E .30 = .59

18

R Luamo 5 PM . N.W. .54 + Nil showers 20th .54

28

Mamohela 7 AM NE .48 + D^o 7 PM .10 = .58

Total Rainfall of February 1871 = 4.50

1871 March Rainfall Manyema

3^d

Mambuida .25 + 5th Muanahausi's 1.67 = 1.92

8th

Kasongo's SE 2.9 D° midnight . 1.7 = 3.16

13th

D° 5 AM 1.20 + 18th night & morn .93 = 2.13

21st

– very cold Nil showers N.W.

23^d

– 6 PM - 5 AM 2.54 + Kabanga .18 = 2.72

29

Lualaba SE and 6 PM .88 .88

30

D° early morn. 40+ [.]40
Total Rain fall of March === 11.21
1871 April in Manyema

3

Lualaba early morning .40

6

– night & Early morn. SE .93 + 7th night SE .96 = 1.89

8

$$- 4 \text{ AM SE } .65 + 9^{\text{th}} 6 \text{ AM SE } .33 = .98$$

12

$$- 7 \text{ PM SE } .78 + 16^{\text{th}} 5 \text{ PM E } .42 = 1.20$$

23^d

$$- 7 \text{ PM SE } .30 + 25^{\text{th}} 7 \text{ PM SE \& S } -.33 = .63$$

30th

$$- 4 \text{ AM } .15 .15$$

Total Rainfall of April 1871 5.25

[0424]

418

Rainfall in Manyema in 1871 —
R Lualaba May 1871 -

1st

$$— \text{ Afternoon. } 42 + 5^{\text{th}} 7 \text{ AM. SE \& N } .94=1.36$$

D^o

$$D^o \text{ Noon N. } .76=.76$$

7th

$$— \text{ morning N. } 1.83=1.83$$

12th

— 7 - 1 AM NW 1.02=1.02

16th

— 4 - 7 PM & 17th 6 AM NW .93=.93
Rainfall in May 1871 - Lualaba .5 .90

1871

June Rainfall

2^d

Nil showers - 3^d 0 7 PM SE .57= .57

1[...]^d

— 4 AM SE .94= .94
1.51

Total Rain fall in 1870 & 1871
chiefly at Bambarre Manyema

1870

Rainfall in Sept^r and October 1870 =
=== —6.09
R. Fall in Nov rember 4.37
December 10.02

1871

January 12.03
February 4.50
March 11.21
April 5.25
May- 5.90

June 1.51

5960 98

[0425]

419

Note = A
Christian
Mission
copied Nov^r
1868

No great difficulty would be encountered in establish[-]
-ing a Christian Mission a hundred miles or so from
the East coast - the permission of the Sultan of Zanzibar
would be necessary because of all the tribes of any intelligence
claim relationship or to have relations with him. The
Banyamwezi even call themselves his subjects, and so do
others - His permission would readily be granted, if
respectfully applied for through the English Consul.
The Suaheli with their present apathy on religious
matters would be no obstacle - bare to speak politely &
to shew kindness to them would not be lost labour in the
general effect of the Mission on the country, but all
discussion on the belief of the Moslems should be avoided
they know little about it - Emigrants from Muscat,
Persia and India who at present possess neither in-
-fluence nor wealth would eagerly seize any formal or
offensive denial of the authority of their prophet to fan
their own bigotry and arouse that of the Suaheli. A few
now assume an air of superiority in matters of worship
and would fain take the place of Mullams or doctors
of the law by giving authoritiative dicta as to the times of
prayer, positions to be observed - lucky and unlucky
days - using cabbalistic signs - telling fortunes - finding
from the Koran when an attack may be made on any
enemy &c. but this is done only in the field with trading
parties - At Zanzibar the regular Mullams supercede
them.

No objection would be made to teach the natives of the
country to read their own languages in the Roman char-
acter - No Arab has ever attempted to teach them the
Arabic Koran - they are called "guma" hard or difficult
as to religion - this is not wonderful since the Koran's
never translated, and no ordinary desire for knowledge
would be [...]requirede to sustain a man in committing
to memory pages and chapters of to him unmeaning
gibberish - One only of all the native chiefs - Monyun[-]
-go has sent his children to Zanzibar to be taught to
to read and write the Koran - and he is said to

[0426]

420

possess an unusual admiration of such civilization as he has seen among the Arabs - To the natives the chief attention of the Mission should be directed - It would not be desirable or advisable to refuse explanation to them but I have avoided giving offence to intelligent Arabs who have pressed me to say if I believed in Muhamad by saying "No I do not." I am a child of Jesus bin Miriam avoiding anything offensive in my tone, and often adding that Muhamad found their forefathers bowing down to trees & stones, and did good to them by forbidding idolatry and teaching the worship of only one God - This they all know, and it pleases to have it recognized -

It might be good policy to hire ^ to engage free porters [...] respectable Arab and conduct the mission to the country chosen to obtain permission from the chief to build temporary houses - If this Arab were well paid it might pave the way for employing others to bring supplies of goods & stores not produced in the country as Tea coffee sugar - the first porters had better all go back save a couple or so who have behaved especially well - Trust to the people among whom you live for general services as bringing wood, water - cultivation, reaping - smith's work - carpenter's work, pottery, baskets &c Educated free blacks from a distance are to be avoided - they are expensive and are too much of gentlemen for your work you may in a few months raise natives who will teach reading to others better than they can, and teach you also much that the liberated never know - a cloth and some beads occasionally will satisfy them, while neither the food the wages nor the work will please them who being brought from a distance naturally consider themselves missionaries - slaves also have undergone a process which has spoiled them for life - Though liberated young everything of childhood and opening life possesses an indescribable charm. It is so with our own offspring, and nothing effaces the fairy scenes then printed on the memory - Some of my liberados

[0427]

421

eagerly bought green calabashes - tasteless squash - with fine fat beef because this trash was their early food, and an ounce

of meat never entered their mouths. It seems indispensable that each mission should raise its own native agency - A couple of Europeans beginning & carrying on a mission without a staff of foreign attendants implies coarse country fare, but this would be nothing to [---]those ^ who as at home amuse themselves with fastings vigils &c a great deal of power is thus lost in the church - Fastings & vigils without a special object in view are time run to waste - they are made to minister to a sort of self gratification instead of being turned to account for the good of others - they are like groaning in sickness - some people amuse them[-]selves when ill with continuous moaning - An English out on boat duty on the Zambesi sailor ^forgot in the act of awaking, that he was now quite well and commenced a vigorous volley of groans till brought to full consciousness by a peal of laughter from all in the boat - The forty days of Lent might be annually spent in visting adjacent tribes, and bearing unavoidable hunger and thirst with a good grace - considering the greatness of the object to be attained men might go without sugar coffee tea I went from Sept^r 1866 to Dec^r 1868 without sugar tea or coffee - A trader at Cazembe's gave me a dish cooked with honey & it nauseated from its horrible sweetness, but at a 100 miles in land supplies could be easily obtained -

the expenses need not be large - Intelligent Arabs inform me that in going from Zanzibar to Cazembe's only 3000 dollars worth are required - say between £600 [&] £700 - and he may be away three or more years - paying his way giving presents to the chiefs and filling 200 or 300 mouths He has paid for say 50 muskets - ammunition - flints and may return with 4000 lbs of ivory & a number of slaves for sale - all at an outlay of £600 or £700 - With the experience I have gained now I could do all I shall do in this Expedition for a like sum - or at least for a £1000 less that it will actually cost me.

Burton's silly dictum that Moslems would be better missi[-]onaries than Christians because they would allow polygamy is equivalent to saying that they would catch more birds in-asmuch as they would put salt on their tails - Moslem zeal is nil.

[0428]
422

May
7th
1868

^ Journal Continued here from page on 12th July.

D^e Lacerda the next Portuguese visitor after Pereira came to a Cazembe living on the R^t Chungu - a party of Ujiji traders were with Cazembe at the time and one of Lacerda's people killed an Ujijian when drawing water - the Ujijians were going to revenge this murder but Cazembe addressed them as his guests and said "you my friends must not fight while you are with me" and gave D^e Lacerda the slaves and people to build huts & bring water for his party - He also gave presents to the Ujijians and prevented the effusion of blood - D^e Lacerda or Charley (Charale) of the natives was the only visitor of any scientific attainments and he was fifty miles wrong in Latitude alone - this fact possesses a somewhat melancholy interest for he was only ten days at the Chungu when he died, and the error probably reveals that his mind was clouded by fever when he last observed - anyone who knows what that implies will readily excuse any mistake he may have made -

When Mayor Monteiro was here the town of Cazembe was on the same spot as now but the Mosumbe or enclosure of the chief was about 550 yards S.E of the present one - Monteiro went nowhere and did nothing but some of his attendants went over to the Luapula some six miles distant - He complains in his book of having been robbed by the Cazembe of the time - in asking the present occupant of the office why Monteiro's goods were taken from him he replied that he was then living at another village, and did not know of the affair Muhamad bin Saleh was present and he says that Monteiro's statement is false - no goods were forced from him, but it was a year of scarcity and Monteiro had to spend his goods in buying food instead of slaves and ivory and made

[0429]

423

May
8th
1868

up the tale of plunder by Cazembe to appease his creditors a number of men were sent with Monteiro as an honourary escort - Kapika an old man now living

was the chief or one of the chiefs of this party and he says that he went to Tette, Senma and Quillimane with Monteiro - This honorary escort seems confirmatory of Muhamad's explanation for had Cazembe robbed the Mayor none would have been granted or recieved

It is warmer here than we found it in the way hither - clouds cover the sky and prevent radiation Many very old men appear among Cazembe's people The Sorghum is now in full ear - people make very neat mats of the leaves of the Shuare palm - Lunars

9th

Eight or ten men went past us this morning sent by the chief to catch people whom he intends to send to his paramount chief Matiamvo as a tribute of slaves - Perembe gives the following list of the Cazembes 1st Kanyimbe = came from Lunda attracted by the fish of Mofwe & Moero & conquered Perembe's forefather Katere who planted the first Palm oil palms here from seeds got in Lunda - It is probable that the intercourse then set afoot led to Kanyimbe's coming & conquest - 2^d Kinyanta = 3^d Nguandamilonda = 4 Kangembo - 5 Lekwisa = 6th Kireka = 7th Kamumba = Kunyanta - 9th Lekwisa still alive but a fugitive at Insama's 10 Meronga the present Cazembe who expelled N^o 9 The Portuguese came to Kireka who is said to have been very liberal with presents of ivory, slaves, and cattle - the present man has good sense, and is very fair in his judgments - but stingy towards his own people as well as strangers - I have had good reason to be satisfied with his conduct to me - Maize not in the list and 7 - 8 - 9 - 10 are the children of Kireka - Muonga is said by the others to be a slave "born out of the house" that is, his mother was not of the royal line - she is an ugly old woman & greedy - I got rid of her begging by

[0430]

424

May =
10th
1868.

giving her the beads she sought and requesting her to cook some food for me - she begged no more afraid that I would press my claim for food.

Sent to Cazembe for a guide to Luapula - He replied that he had not seen me nor given me any food - I must come tomorrow - but next

11th

he was occupied in killing a man for witchcraft could not receive us, but said that he would on

12th

He sent 15 fish (persh) from Mofwe and a large basket of dried Cassava = I have taken Lunars several times = measuring both side of the moon about one hundred and ninety times but a silly map maker may alter the whole for the most idiotic reasons.

13th

Muhamad Bogarib has been here some seven months and bought three tusks only the hunting by Cazembe's people of elephants in the Mofwe has been unsuccessful -

14th

We dont get an audience from Cazembe but the fault hes with Kapika = Monteiro's escort, being afraid to annoy Cazembe by putting in mind of it - but on the [...]

15th

Cazembe sent for me and told me that the people had all fled from Chikumba's

he would therefore send guides to take us
to Kabaia where there was still a population.
Wished me to wait a few days till he had
looked out good men as guides & ground
some flour for us to use in the journey -
He understood that I wished to go to Bangwe[-]
-olo - and it was all right to do what my
own chief had sent me for and then come
back to him - It was only water the same as
Luapula - Mofwe and Moero - nothing to
be seen - His people must not molest us
again but let me go when I liked - this
made me thank him who has the hearts of all
in his hand

[0431]

425

May
15th
1868

Cazembe also admitted that he had injured
Mpamari - but he would send him some slaves &
ivory in reparation - He is better than his people who
are excessively litigious and fond of milandoes or
causes - sints - He asked if I had not the Leopards skin
he gave me to sit on as it was bad to sit on the ground
I told him it had so many holes in it people laughed
at it and made me ashamed - He did not take the
hint to give me another - He always talks good sense
when he has not swilled beer or pombe = all the Arabs
are loud in his praises

The Arabs have a bad opinion of the Queen
Moari or Ñgombe or Kifuta - The Garaganza people
at Katanga killed a near relative of Cazembe & herself
and when the event happened, Fungafunga one of
the Garaganza or Banyamwezi being near the
spot fled and came to the Mofwe = He continued his
flight as soon as it was dark without saying any-
thing to anyone until he got North to Kabuire - the
Queen & Cazembe suspected Mpamari of complicity
with the Banyamwezi and believed that Fungafunga
had communicated the news to him before fleeing
further - A tumult was made - Mpamari's eldest
son was killed and he was plundered of all his copper
ivory and slaves - the Queen loudly demanded his
execution but Cazembe restrained his people as

well as he was able - It is for this injury that he now professes to be sorry - The queen only acted according to the principle of her people = "Mpamari killed my son - kill his son - himself -" It is difficult to get at the truth for Muhamad or Mpamari never tells the whole truth - His heart is wedded to native ways - has been about 30 years in the country - Ujiji & Lunda - Went to fight Insama with Muonga, and was wounded on the foot and routed, and is now glad to get out of Lunda back to Ujiji - 16th complete 20 sets of Lunars

[0432]

426

May -
17th
1868

Muhamad Bogharib told Cazembe that he could buy nothing and therefore was going away - Cazembe replied that he had no ivory and he might go - This was sensible - He sent far & near to find some but failed and now confesses a truth which most chiefs hide from unwillingness to appear to foreigners poor

18th

It is hot here though winter but cold by night

19th

Cazembe has sent for fish for us - News came that one of Syde bin Habib's men had come to Chikumbi on his way to Zanzibar

20th

Thunder showers from the East laid the dust and cooled the ground - the last shower of

this season as a similar slight shower was
the last of the last and on the 12th of May -
It cannot be called a rainy month - April is

21st

the last month of the wet season and Nov
the first

22^d

Cazembe is so slow with his fish, meal &
guides and his people [are] so afraid to hurry
him that I think of going off as soon as
Muhamad Bogharib moves = He is going to
Chikumbi's to buy copper and thence he
will proceed to Uvira to buy ivory with it
but this is at present kept as a secret
from his slaves - The way seems thus to be
opening for me to go to the large Lake West
of Uvira - Told Cazembe that we were going
He said to me that if in coming back I had
found no travelling party I must not
risk going by Insama's road with so
few people, but go to his brother Moene-
mpanda and he would send men to guide
me to him and thence he would send me
safely by his path along Lake Moero. This
was all very good.

23^d

The Arabs made a sort of sacrifice of a

[0433]

427

May
23^d
1868

goat which was cooked all at once = they read the Koran very industriously, and prayed for success or luck in leaving - They sent a good dish of it to me - They seem sincerely religious according to the light that is in them - the use of incense & sacrifices brings back the old Jewish times to mind - A number of people went off to Kanengwa a rivulet an hour South of this to build huts - There leave is to be taken of Cazembe - the main body goes of tomorrow after we have seen the New moon - They are very particular in selecting lucky days, and anything unpleasant that may have happened in one month is supposed to be avoided by choosing a different day for beginning an enterprise in the next - Muhamad left Uvira on the 3^d day of a new moon and several fires happened in his camps he now considers a Third day inauspicious -

Cazembe's dura or sorghum is ripe today He ate mapemba or dura & all may thereafter do the same. This is just about the time when it ripens and is reaped at Kolobeng - the difference in the seasons is not great -

24th

Detained four days yet - Cazembe's chief men refuse to take Muhamad to take leave - they know him to be in debt and fear that he may be angry - but no donning was intended - Cazembe was making every effort to get ivory to liquidate it and at last got a couple of tusks which he joyfully gave to Muhamad - He has risen much in the estimation of us all -

26th

Cazembe's people killed five buffaloes by chasing them into the mud & water of Mofwe He is seeing to the division of the meat and will take leave tomorrow

28th

Went to Cazembe - he was as gracious as usual
a case of crim. con. was brought forward against
an Arab's slave - an attempt was made to

[0434]

428

May
28th
1868

arrange the matter privately by offering three cloths
beads and another slave but the complainant
refused everything - Cazembe dismissed the
case by saying to the complainant "you send
your women to entrap the strangers in order
to get a fine, but you will get nothing" - this was
highly applauded by the Arabs and my words
to his principal men repeated - Cazembe is
good but his people are bad - the owner of the
slave heaped dust on his head as many had
done before for favours recieved - Cazembe
still anxious to get ivory for Muhamad
proposed another delay of four days to send
for it - but all are tired and it is evident that
it is not want of will that prevents ivory being

29th

produced - His men returned without any
and he frankly confessed inability. He is
evidently very poor.

30th

Went to Kanengwa rivulet at South end of
Mofwe - It forms a little lagoon there 50 yards
broad and thigh deep - but this not the important
feeder of the Lagoon which is from 2 to 3 miles
broad and nearly 4' - It has many large
flat sedgy islands in it - and its water is supplied

by the Ubereze from South East -

31st

Old Kapika sold his young and good looking wife for he said unfaithfulness - the sight of a lady in the chain gang shocked the ladies of Lunda who ran to her and having ascertained from her own mouth what was sufficiently apparent that she was a slave now, clapped their hands on their mouths in the way that they express wonder surprise horror - the hand is placed so that fingers are on one cheek and the thumb on the other - Her case excited great sympathy among the people some brought her food - Kajuka's daughter

[0435]

429

May
31st
1868

brought her pombe and bananas - one man offered to redeem her with two another with three slaves but Cazembe who is very strict in punishing infidelity said "No though ten slaves be offered she must go" - He is probably afraid of his own beautiful queen should the law be relaxed - Old Kapika came and said to her "you refused me and I now refuse you" - A young wife of old Perembe was also sold as a punishment but redeemed - There is a very large proportion of very old and very tall men in this district - The slave trader is a means of punishing the wives which these old fogies ought never to have had.

Cazembe sent me about a hundred weight of the small fish Nsipo which seems to be the white bait of our country - It is a little bitter when cooked alone but with groundnuts is a tolerable relish - We can buy flour with these at Chikumbi's

1st

June

Muhamad proposes to go to Katanga to buy copper and invites me to go to - I wish to see the Lufira River but I must see Bemba or Bangweolo - Grant guidance from above -

2^d

In passing a field of Cassava I picked the pods of a plant called Malumbi or Malu[-]mbi which climbs up the Cassava bushes at the root of a number of tubers with eyes exactly like the potato - one plant had sixteen of these tubers each about 2 inches long & 1 ½ in. in diameter - another tuber was 5 inches long and 2 in diameter - It would be difficult for anyone to distinguish them from English potatoes - When boiled it is a little waxy and compared with our potato hard two colours inside - the outer part reddish the inner whiter

[0436]

430

June

2nd

1868

At first none of the party knew them but afterwards they were recognized as cultivated at Zanzibar by the name "Men" and very good when mashed with fish - If in Zanzibar they are probably known in other Tropical islands

4th

from what I see of slaving even in its best phases I would not be a slave dealer for

the world

5th

The Queen Maari a ñombe or Kafuta passed us this morning going to build a hut at her plantation - she has a pleasant European countenance - clean light brown skin and a merry laugh - she would be admired anywhere I stood among Cassava to see her pass - she twirled her umbrellah as she came near borne by twelve men - and seemed to take up the laugh which made her & her maids bolt at my reception shewing that she laughs not with her mouth only but with her eyes and cheeks - she said yambo = how are you to which I replied yambo sana - very well - one of her attendants said give her something of what you have at hand or in the pockets I said I have nothing here and asked her if she would come back near by hut - she replied that she would and duly sent for two strings of red beads which I presented - Being lower than she I could see that she had a hole through the cartilage near the point of her slightly aquiline nose - and a space was filed between the two front teeth so as to leave a triangular hole
[Drawing of Queen's filed teeth.] - after delay had grown vexatious

7-8-9-

we march 3 hours on the 9th The Katofia R^t covered with aquatic trees & running into the Ubereze = 5 yards wide & knee deep

[0437]

431

10th
June
1868

Detained again - business not finished with the people of Cazembe - the people cannot esteem the slave trader who is used as a means of punishing those who have family differences as those of a wife with her husband - or a servant with his master - the slaves are said to be generally criminals, and are sold in revenge or as punishment - Kapika's wife had an ornament of the end of a shell called the cone - It was borrowed and she came away with it in her hair - The owner without making any effort seized one of Kapika's daughters as a pledge that Kapika would exert himself to get it back -

11th

cross the Ubereze ten yards broad and thigh deep then ascend a range of low hills of hardened sandstone covered as the country generally is with forest - our course is S.E. & S.S.E. - Then descend into a densely wooded valley having a rivulet 10 yards wide & knee deep - buffaloes & elephants very numerous.

12th

we crossed the Ubereze again twice - then a very deep narrow rivulet & stopped at another in a mass of trees where we spend the night & killing an ox remain next day to eat it - When at Kanengwa a small party of men came past shouting as if they had done something of importance on going to them - I found that two of them carried a lion slung to a pole - It was a small maneless variety called "the Lion of Nyassi" or long grass - It had killed a man and they killed it - they had its mouth carefully strapped, and the paws tied across its chest and were taking it to Cazembe nyassi means long grass such as towers over head and is as thick in stalk as a goose quill - others lions Thambune - Karamo - Simba are said to stand five feet high & some higher - This seemed about 3 feet high, but it was too dark to measure it - Nyassi is erroneously applied to Nyassa

June
13th
1868

The Arabs distinguish the Suaheli or Arabs of mixed African blood by the absence of beard and whiskers - These are usually small and stunted in the Suaheli -

Birds as the Drongo shrike = and a bird very like the grey linnet with a thick reddish bill assemble in very large flocks now that it is winter - They continue thus till November or period of the rains

A very minute bee goes into the common snake holes in worm eaten wood to make a comb and lay its eggs with a supply of honey There are seven or eight honey bees in small size in this country

A sphex may be seen to make a hole in the ground and placing stupefied insects in them with her eggs - Another species watches when she goes off to get more insects and every now & then goes in too to lay her eggs I suppose without any labour - There does not appear to be any enmity between them - We remained a day to buy food for the party and eat an ox -

14th

March over well wooded highlands with dolomite rocks cropping out - Trees all covered with lichens - the watershed then changed to the South

15th

very cold in mornings now (43 °) found Moene[-]
-mpanda Cazembe's brother on the Lulaputa
20 yds wide & flowing West - the Moenepanda
visited by the Portuguese was grandfather to
this and not at same spot - It is useless to
put down the names of chiefs as indicating

geographical positions - The name is often continued but at a spot far distant from the dwelling of the original possessor - A slave tried to break out of his slave stick & actually broke ½ inch tough iron with his fingers - the end stuck in the wood or he would

[0439]

433

June
16th
1868

[have] freed himself -

The chief gave me a public reception - It was like that of Cazembe but better managed - The chief young and very handsome but for a defect in his eyes which makes him keep them half shut or squinting He walked off in the jaunty way all chiefs do in this country - It is to shew the weight of rings & beads on the legs, and many imitate this walk who have none exactly as our fathers imitated the big cravat of George IV who thereby hid defects in his neck - Thousands carried their cravats over the chin who had no defects to hide - Speke thought that it was imitation of the Majestic step of lions but that animal has a cat like movement and the back hangs loosely - Moenempand carried his back stiffly and no wonder he had about ten yards of a train carried behind it - About 600 people were present - They kept rank but not step - were well armed - Marimbas & square drums formed the bands - and one musician added his voice - "I have been to Syde" - (the sultan -) "I have been to Meereput"- (King of Portugal)- "I have been to the sea"-) At a private reception where he was divested of his train & had only one ^ umbrellah ^ instead of three & gave him a cloth - the Arabs thought highly of him, but his graciousness had been expended on them in getting into debt - He now shewed no inclina-[tion] to get out of it, but offered about a twentieth part of the value of the goods in liquidation - sent me two pots of beer which I care not to drink except when very thirsty or on a march - promised a man to guide me to Chikumbi, and then refused - Cazembe rose in the esteem of all as Moenempanda sank and

his people were made to understand how
shabbily he had behaved -

The Lulaputa is said to into Luena & that into
Luongo - there must be two Luenas -

[0440]
434

June
22nd
1868

March across a grassy plain southerly to Luongo
a deep river embowered in dense forest of trees
all covered with Lichens - some flat others long &
thready like old men's beards and waving in the
wind - Just like mangrove swamp trees on the
coast - Luongo here is 50 yards broad and 3 fathoms
deep - near its junction with Luapula it is 100
yards - rises here to 8 fathoms - A bridge of 40
yards led us over to an island & a branch of the
river was ten yards beyond - the bridge had been
broken, some thought on purpose but it was soon
mended with trees 18 to 20 yards long - We went a
little way beyond and then halted for a day at
a rivulet flowing into Luongo 200 yards off -

23^d

We waited for copper here which was at first
refused as payment of debt = Saw now that
Luongo had steep clay banks 15 feet down &
many meadows which must be swimming
during the rains - Luena said to rise East
of this

24th

six men slaves singing as if they did not feel
the weight and degradation of the slave sticks -
Asked them what their song was about - they
replied "that when they were dead their souls would
come back and haunt and kill the different men

who had sold them to Manga” or the sea -
The names of these men were the chorus - as if
it were ”Oh Johnny Smith, Johnny Smith Oh”
Perembe was one of the culprits thus menaced -
The slave owner asked Kapika’s wife if she
would return to kill Kapika - The others answered
to the names of the different men with laughter
Her heart was evidently sore - for a lady to come
so low down is to her grievous - she has lost
her jaunty air and is with her head shaved
ugly - but she never forgets to address her
captors with dignity and they seem to fear her

[0441]
435

June
25th
1868

Went over flat forest with patches of brown Haematite
cropping out - This is the usual iron ore but I saw
in a village pieces of specular iron ore which had
been brought for smelting - Luongo went away somewhat
to our right or West and the villagers had selected their
[...]sites where only well water could be found - We went
ten minutes towards Luong & got abundance

26th

Gardens had high hedges round to keep off wild beasts
We came to a grave in the forest - It was a little
rounded mound as if the occupant sat in it in
the usually native way - It was strewed over with flour

[Drawing of mounded grave, with beads and flour spread across, surrounded by trees.]
and a number of the large blue beads put on
it - a little path shewed that it had visitors
this is the sort of grave I should prefer to lie in the
still still forest and no hand ever disturb my bones
The graves at home always seemed to me to be miserable
especially those in the cold damp clay ^ and without elbow room but I have
nothing to do but wait till he who is over all decides
where I have to lay me down and die - Poor Mary
lies aton Shupanga ^ brae ”and becks ferment the sun”

came to Chando At which is the boundary between
Cazembe & Chikumbi but Cazembe is over all -

27

We crossed a flooded marsh with water very cold
and then Chando itself 12 feet broad & knee deep
then on to another strong brook Nsenga -

28th

After service went on up hills to a stockade of
Banyamwezi on the Kalomina Rt - Here we built
our sheds - The spot is called Kizinga and is on the
top of a sandstone range covered as usual with
forest - The Banyamwezi beat off the Mazitu with
their guns while all the country people fled - The
Banyamwezi are decidedly uglier than the Balonda
and Baitawa - They eat no fish though they
come from the East side of Tanganyika where
fish are abundant & cheap - But though uglier
the Banyamwezi have more of the sense
of honour with traders than that Aborigines

[0442]

436

June
29th
1868

observed the "smokes" today the first of the season
they continued and obscured the whole country
till late in October- the showers cleared them away

1st July
1868

Went over to Chikumbi the paramount chief of
this district and gave him a cloth begging a man
to guide me to Bangweolo - He said that I was

welcome to his country - all were so - I had better wait two days till he had selected a good man as a guide and he would send some food for me to eat in the journey = He would not say ten days but only two - and his man would take me to the smaller part of the Lake and leave others to forward me to the greater or Bangweolo - The smaller part is named Bemba but that name is confusing because Bemba is the name of the country in which a portion of the Lake lies - When asking for Lake Bemba Kasouso's son said to me "Bemba is not a Lake but a country" It is therefore better to use the name Bangweolo which is applied to the great mass of the water - though I fear that our English folks will bogle at it or call it Bungyhollow! Some Arabs say Bambeolo as easier of pronuntiation - But Bangwe-olo is the correct word - Chikumbis stockade is 1 ½ hours S E of our camp at Kizinga

2^d
sent of
date
26th
April
1869

Writing to consul at Zanzibar to send supply of cloth to Ujiji = 120 pieces ¼40 Kiniki & ¼80 merikano 34 inches broad or samsam
Fine red beads = Talaka -
[Probably a drawing of a bead.] 12 frasilas - ~~Fine blue~~

~~[Probably a drawing of a bead.] and small fine pink.~~
~~[Probably a drawing of a bead.]~~ £400 are to be sent by M^r Young to Fleming & Co for Captain Fraziser to pay for goods and usages - and Rs 2000 are to be sent from Ujiji - I ask for soap coffee, sugar, candles, Sardines, French preserved meats - cheese in tin - Nautical Alm^c for |69 & 70| shoes 2 or 4 pairs - Ruled paper pencils, sealing wax Ink powder Flannel - serge - 12 frasila beads 6 of Talaka added 3 F pale red 3 W white

[0443]

July
3th
[1]868

The summary of sources which I have resolved to report as flowing into the central line of drainage formed by the Chambeze - Luapula and Lualaba are thirteen in all and are each larger than the Isis at Oxford or Avon at Hamilton - Five flow into the Eastern line of drainage going through Tanganyika and five more into the Western line of drainage or Lufira - Twenty three or more in all - Lualaba & Lufira unite in Lake of the chief Kinkonza -

5th

Borrowed paper from Muhamad Bogharib to write home by some Arabs going to the coast - Will announce my discovery to Lord Clarendon - but I reserve the parts of Lualaba and Tanganyika for future confirmation - I have no doubts on the subject for I receive the reports of natives of intelligence at first hand and they have no motive for deceiving me the best maps are formed from the same sort of reports at 3^d or 4th hand - M^r Arrowsmith at the instigation of Cooley ran in 200 miles of Lake to the N.W. end of Nyassa which no one could ever have reported - this feat beats hollow the most daring feat of explorers - Cold N.E. winds prevail at present -

Divided our salt that each may buy provisions for himself - salt is here of more value than beads Chikumbi sent fine flour - a load for two stout men as carried in a large basket slung to a pole - & a fine fat sheep carried too because it was too fat to walk the distance from his stockade - 7th 8th 9th after delaying several days to send our guide Chikumbi said that he feared the country people would say that the Ingleza brought the Mazitu to them and so blame will be given to him I set this down as "words of pombe" beery babble but after returning from Bangweolo I saw that he must have been preparing to attack a stockade of Banyamwezi in our path and had he given us a guide that man would have been in danger

July
9th
1868

in coming back - He therefore preferred the safety
of his man to keeping his promise to me - I got
a Banyamwezi guide and left on the

10th

going over gently rising sandstone hills covered
with forest and having many deserted villages
The effects of the Mazitu foray - we saw also
the Mazitu sleeping places and paths - they
neglect the common paths of the country as going
from one village to another and take straight
courses in the direction they wish to go treading
down the grass so as to make a well marked route
The Banyamwezi expelled them - cutting off so
many of them with their guns & arrows that the
marauders retired - the effect of this success
on the minds of the Imbosha or Imbozhwas
as Chikumbi's people are called was not gratitude
but envy at the new power sprung up among
them of those who came originally as traders in
copper. Kombokombo's stockade - the village
to which we went this day was the first object
of assault and when we returned Kombokombo
told us that Chikumbi had assaulted him on
three sides but was repulsed - The Banyamwezi
were moreover much too sharp as traders for the
Imboshwa cheating them unmercifully and
lying like Greeks - Kombokombo's stockade was
on the Chiberase R^r which flows briskly 8 yds
broad & deep through a mile of sponge - We came
in the midst of a general jollification and
were most bountifully supplied with pombe &
food - The Banyamwezi acknowledge alliances
to the Sultan and all connected with him are
respected - Kombokombo pressed food &
drink on me and when I told him that I had
nothing to return for it he said that he expected
nothing - He was a child of the Sultan and ought

to furnish all I needed.

[0445]

439

July -
11th
1868

On leaving the Chiberase we passed up over a long line of hills with many villages & gardens but mostly deserted during the Mazitu raid - The people fled into the forests on the hills and were an easy prey to the marauders who seem to have been unmerciful - When we descended into the valley beyond we came to a strong stockade which had successfully resisted the onset of the Mazitu - We then entered on flat forest with here and there sponges containing plenty of water plains succeeded the hills and continued all the way to Bangweolo - We made a fence in the forest &

12th

next day reached the Rofubu 50 yards broad and 4½ feet deep - full of aquatic plants & flowing South West into the Luongo - It had about a mile & a half of sponge on each side of it - we encamped a little south of the river

18th

On resting at a deserted village, the men of one in the vicinity came to us excited and apparently drunk and began to excite themselves still more by running about - poisoning their spears at us - taking aim with their bows and arrows and making as if about to strike with their axes - They thought that we were marauders and some plants of groundnuts strewn about gave colour to the idea - There is usually one good soul in such rabbles - He came to me and addressing his fellows said this is only your pombe White man do not stand among them but go away and placed himself between me and a portion of the assailants - about 30 of whom were making their

warlike antics - While walking quietly away with
my good friend they ran in front & behind bushes
and trees and took aim with bow & arrow but no one
shot the younger men ran away with our 3
goats - when we had gone a quarter of a mile my
told me to wait & he would bring the goats which he
did - I could not feel the inebriates to be enemies
but in that state they are the worst one can encounter
for they have no fear as they have when sober - One

[0446]

440

July
13
1868

One snatched away a fowl from our guide - That
too was restored by our friend - I did not load my
gun - any accidental discharge would have inflamed
them to rashness - we got away without shedding
blood and were thankful - the Mazitu raid produced
lawlessness in the country - everyone was taken
as an enemy

14th

We remained a day at the Stockade of Moiegge a
Banyamwezi or Garaganza man settled here
in Kabaia's district and on the strong rivulet called
Mato - We felt secure only among the strangers &
they were friendly with us.

15th

At the village on the ~~North~~South bank of the Mpanda
we were taken by the head man as Mazitu - He was
evidently intoxicated and began to shut his gates
with frantic gesticulations - I offered to go away
but others of his people equally intoxicated insisted
on my remaining - I sat down a little but
seeing that the chief was still alarmed I said to his

people the chief objects and I cant stay - they saw
the reasonableness of this but I could get my
cowardly attendants to come on through one said
to me "come I shall shew you the way" - "they must"
"speak nice to them" - This the wise boys of Nassick
think the perfection of viture and "speaking nice"
means adopting a childish treble tone of voice
and words exactly similar to those of the little Scotch
girl who passing through a meadow was approached
by a cow probably from curiosity to appease this
enemy she said "Oh coo, coo, if you no hurt me"
"I no hurt you" - I told them to come on and leave
them quietly but they remained babbling with them
the guide said that there was no water in front
This I have been told too often ever to believe so
went on through the forest and in an hour and
a half came to a sponge where being joined by
my attendants we passed the night

[0447]

441

July
16th
1868

Crossing this sponge and passing through flat
forest we came to another named Meshwe where this
as a contrast the young men volunteered to carry me
across but I had got of my shoes and was in the water
and they came along with me shewing the shallower
parts - We finished the days march by crosssing the
Molongosi spongy ooze with 150 paces of deep water -
flowing N.E. The water in these oozes on sponges felt very
cold though only 60° in the mornings and 65° at midday
The Molongosi people invited us into the village but the
forest unless when infested with Leopards & Lions is
always preferable - one is free from vermin and free
from curiosity gazers who in the village think they
have a right to stare but in the forest feel that they are
not on equality with the strangers

17th

Reached the chief village of Mapuni near the North bank
of Bangweolo - on the 18th I walked a little way out &

saw the shores of the Lake for the first itme - Thankful that I had come safely hither - I told the chief that my goods were all expended and gave him a fathom of calico as all I could spare - As soon as I had seen & measured the Lake I would return North - He replied that seeing our goods were done he could say nothing he would give me guides and what else he should do was known to himself - He gave a public reception at once - I asked if he had ever seen any one like me "never" - A Babisa traveller asked me why I had come so far - I wished to make country and people better known to the rest of the world - We were all children of one father and I was anxious that we should know each other better and that friendly visits should be made in safety - Told him what the queen had done to encourage the growth of cotton on the Zambezi and how we had been thwarted by slave traders and their abettors - they were pleased with this - When asked I shewed them my note book - watch compass - burning glass and promised to shew them the bible too

[0448]

442

July
18th
1868

and was loudly drummed home -
Shewed them the bible and told them a little of its contents - I shall require a few days more at Bangweolo that I at first intended - The moon being in its last stage of waning - I cannot observe till it is of some size

Went down to Masantu's village which is on the shore of the Lake and by a spring called Chipoka which comes out of a mass of disintegrated granite - It is seldom that we see a spring welling out beneath a rock - They are covered by oozing sponges if indeed they exist - Here we had as a spectator a man walking on stilts tied to his ankles and knees - a great many Babisa among the people - the women have their hair ornamented with strings of cowries and well oiled with the oil & fat from the seeds of the Mosikisi trees sent the chief a fathom of calico & got an audience

at once - Masantu is an oldish man - had never
prayed to the Great Father of all though he said
the footsteps of "Mungu" or Mulungu could be
seen on a part of Lifunge island - a large
footstep may also be see on the rock at the
Chambeze about 15 inches long - He informed
us that the Lake was much the largest at the
part called Bangweolo

20th

The country around the Lake is all flat and very
much denuded of trees except the Motsikiri or
Mosikisi which has fine dark dense foliage &
is spared for its shade and and the fatty oil yielded by
its seeds - We saw the people boiling large pots
full of the dark brown fat which they use to lubricate
their hair - The islands four in number are
all flat but well peopled - the men have many
canoes and are all expert fishermen - they
are called Hirbochwa but are marked on the
forehead and chin as Babisa & file their teeth to points

[0449]

443

July
20th
1868

They have many children as fishermen usually have -
21st Canoemen are usually extortionate because one
cannot do without them = Mapuni claims authority over
them and sent to demand another fathom for him that
he may give orders to them to go with us - I gave a hoe &
a string of beads instead but he insisted on the cloth &
kept the hoe too as I could not afford the time to haggle
Chipoka spring water at 9 AM 75°} air 72°
Lake water at same time 71°}
Chipoka spring at 4PM 74.5°} air 71°-5- Wet bulb 70°
Lake water at same time 75°}
No hot fountains or earthquakes known in this region
the bottom of the Lake consists of fine white sand - A
broad belt of strong rushes say 100 yards shews shallow

water in the afternoons quite a crowd of canoes anchor at its outer edge to angle - the hooks like ours but without barbs - the fish are perch chiefly but others similar to what appear in the other Lakes are found and two which attain the large size four feet by 1/2 in thickness one called Sampa

22nd

a very high wind came with the new moon & prevented our going and also the fishermen from following their calling - Mapuni thought that we meant to make our escape from him to the Babisa on the south because we were taking our goats - I therefore left them & two attendants at Masantu's village to assure him -

23^d

Wind still too strong to go - Took Lunars - 24th wind still strong

25th

Strong S.E. wind still blowing but having paid the canoemen amply for four days with beads and given Masantu a hoe & beads too, we embarked at 11- ^ 40 AM in a fine canoe 405 feet long and 4 feet ^ deep & 4 broad - The waves were high but canoe very dry & 5 stout men propelled her quickly towards an opening in Lifunge island on our S.E. Here we stopped to wood and I went away to look at the island which had the marks of Hippopotami and a species of jackall on it - It had hard wiry grass

[0450]

444

July
25th
1868

some flowers and a species of Capparidaceous
 tree - The trees shewed well the direction of the
 prevailing wind to be South East for the branches
 on that side were stunted or killed while those
 on the North West ran out straight and made the
 trees appear as sailors say lopsided - the trunks
 too were bent that way - The canoemen now said
 that they would start - Then that they would sleep
 here because we could not reach the island
 Mpabala before dark and would not get a hut
 I said that it would be sleeping out of doors only
 in either case so they went - We could see the
 island called Kisi on our East apparently a
 double island about 15 miles off - and the tops of
 the trees barely visible on Mpabala on our S.E.
 It was all sea horizon on our South and North
 between Lifunge & Mpabala and between Lifunge
 and Kisi - We could not go to Kisi because
 as the canoe men told us they had stolen their
 canoe thence - Though we decided to go we remained
 a while to let the sea go down - a Hammerhead's
 nest on one of the trees was fully four feet high
 Coarse rushes shew the shoals near the islands
 only one shell seen on the shores - The canoe ship
 much less water in this surf than our boat
 did in that of Nyassa - the water is of a deep
 sea green colour probably from the reflection
 of the fine white sand of the bottom - We saw no
 part having the deep dark blue of Nyassa &
 conjecture that the depth is not great but we
 had to leave our line when Amoda absconded
 on Kisi we observed a dark square mass which
 at first we took to be a low hill - It turned out to
 be a mass of trees - probably the place of sepulture
 for the graveyards are always untouched and
 shew what a dense forest this land would
 become were it not for the influence of men-

[0451]

445

July
 25th
 1868

We reached Mpabala after dark - It was bitterly cold
 from the amount of moisture in the air - asked a
 man who came to see what the arrival was for a hut

he said "do strangers require huts or ask for them at night?"
He led us to the public place of meeting called Nsaka which
is a large shed with planks around to open spaces between
instead of walls - Here we cooked a little porridge & eat it -
then I lay down on one side with the canoe men & my
attendants at the fire in the middle and was soon asleep
and dreamed that I had apartments in Mivarts Hotel
this made me feel much amused next day for I never
dream unless I am ill or going to be ill and of all places
in the world I never thought of Mivarts Hotel in my
waking moments - a freak of the fancy surely for I was not
at all discontented with my fare or apartment - I was
only afraid of getting a stock of vermin from my
associates -

26th

I have to stand the stare of a crowd of people at every new
place for a few hours - All usually talk as quickly as their
glib tongues can - These certainly do not belong to the tribes
who are supposed to eke out their language by signs -
a few indulge their curiosity in sight seeing but go on
steadily weaving nets - or by beating bark cloth or in
spinning cotton - others smoke their by tobacco pipes
or nurse a baby - or enjoy the heat of the ^ bright morning
[...sun - I walked across the North End of the island
and found it to be about 1' broad - took bearings of
Chirubi island from the Eastern point of Mpabala
and found from the South East point of Chairubi
that there are 183° degrees of sea horizon from it
to the point of departure of Luapula - Chirubi
is the largest of the islands and contains a large
population possessing many sheep and goats -
at the highest part of Mpabala we could see the tops
of the trees on Kasango a small uninhabited islet
about 30 miles distant - the tops of the trees were
evidently lifted up by the mirage for near the

[0452]

446

July
26th
1868

the shore and at other parts they were invisible even with a good glass - This uninhabited islet would have been our ~~third~~ second stage had we been allowed to cross the Lake as it is of the people themselves - It is as far beyond it to the mainland called Manda as from Masantu's to Mpabala -

27th

Took Lunars and stars for Latitude
The canoe men now got into a flurry because they were told here that the Kisi men had got an inkling that their canoe was here and were coming to take it - they said to me that they would come back for me but I could not trust thieves to be so honest - I thought of seizing their paddles & appealing to the headmen of the island but aware from past experience how easy it is for an acknowledged thief like them to get up a tale to secure the cheap sympathy of the soft headed or tender hearted I resolved to bear with weakness though groaning inwardly the loss of two of the four days for which I had paid them - I had only my coverlet to hire another canoe and it was now very cold - The few beads left would all be required to buy food in the way back, I might have got food by shooting buffaloes but that on foot and through grass with stalks as thick as a goose quill is dreadfully hard work - I had thus to return to Masantu's - and trust to the distances as deduced from the times taken by the natives in their canoes for the size of the Lake -

We had come to Mpabala at the rate of six knots an hour and returned in the same time with six stout paddlers - the [...]Latitude was 142' on a South East course which may give 2824' as the actual distance - To the sleeping place the islet Kasango there was at least 28' more and from thence to the main land 'Manda's other 28' This $284 + 28 + 28 = 80$ as the breadth from Masantu's

[0453]

447

village looking South East - It lies in $11^{\circ} 0'$ South if we add the half distance to this or we have $11^{\circ} \underline{40} 0$ as the Latitude of Manda - The main land to the South of Mpabala is called Kabende - the lands end running south of

Masantu[']s village is the entrance to Luapula - The clearest eye cannot see across it there - I saw clouds as if of grass burning but they were probably "Kungu" an edible insect which has in masses exactly the same appearance as they float above and on the water - from the time the canoes take to go to Kabende I take the Southern share to be a little into 12° of South Latitude - the length as inferred from canoes taking ten days to go from Mpabala to the Chambeze I take to be 150 miles probably more - no one gave a shorter time than that - Luapula is an arm of the Lake for some twenty miles, and beyond that is never narrower than from 180 to 200 yards generally much broader and may be compared with the Thames at London bridge - I think that I am considerably within the mark in setting down Bangweolo as 150 miles long by 80 broad - When told that it contained four large islands I imagined that these would considerably diminish the watery acreage of the whole, as is said to be the case with five islands in Ukerewe - but the largest island even - Chirnbe does not in the least dwarf the enormous mass of water of Bangweolo = A range of mountains named Lokinga extends from the South East to the South West some small burns come down from them but no river this range joins the Kone or Mokone range - West of Katanga from which on one side rises Lufira and on the other the Liambai or Zambesi - The river of Manda ^ called Matanga is only a departing & re[-]entering branch of the Lake - also the Luma and Loela R's some 30 yards broad each have to be examined as springs on the South of the Lake

[0454]
448

July
29th
1868

Not a single case of Derbyshire neck or of Elephantiasis was observed anywhere near this The Lake consequently the report we had of its extreme unhealthiness was erroneous - no muddy banks did we see but in the way to it we had to cross so many sponges or oozes that the word matope ^ mud was quite applicable and I suspect if we had come earlier that we should have

experienced great difficulty in getting to the Lake at all

30th

We commenced our march back being eager to get to Chikumbi, in case Muhamad should go thence to Katanga - We touched at Mapuni's & then went on to the Molongosi - Clouds now begin to cover the sky

31st

To Mpanda which has 15 yards of flood though the stream itself is only 5 yds then on the Mato and Moiegge's stockade where we heard of Chikumbi's attack on Kombokombo's - Moiegge had taken the hint and was finishing a second line of defence around his village - We reached him on the

1st Aug.
1868

and stopped for Sunday the 2^d On 3^d back to the Rofubu where I was fortunate enough to hire a

3^d

canoe to take me over -

4th

The tsetse has a receptacle at the root of the piercer which is of a black or dark red colour - and when it is squeeze a clear fluid is pressed out at its point

[Small, in-line drawing of the tsetse.] The other two parts of the proboscis are its shield and have no bulb at the base = the bulb was pronounced at the Royal Society to be only muscle but it is curious that muscle should be furnished where none is needed and withheld where in the moveable parts of the shield it is

decidedly needed -

5th

Reach Chil Kombokombo's who is very liberal
and pressed us to stay a day with him as well

6th

as with others we complied and found that
Muhamad had gone nowhere.

[0455]

449

Aug-

7th

1868

We found a party starting from Kizinga for the coast
having our letters with them, it will take five months to
reach the sea - the disturbed state of the country pre-
-vented parties of traders proceeding in various directions
one that set off on the same day with us was obliged to
return - Muhamad has resolved to go to Manyema as
soon as parties of his men now out return - This is all
in my favour - It is in the way I want to go to see the
Lualaba and Lufira to Chowambe- The way seems
opening out before me and I am thankful = I resolved
to go North by way of Cazembe = and guides were
ready to start as so was I but rumours of war where
we were going induced me to halt to find out the truth
The guides Banyamwezi were going to divine by
means of a cock to see if it would be lucky to go with
me at present - The rumours became so circum-
stantial that our fence was mended - a well dug inside
and the Banyamwezi employed to smelt copper
as for the market of Manyema & balls for war - Syde
bin Omar soon came over the Luapula from
Iramba and the state of confusion induced the
traders to agree to unite their forces and make a
safe retreat out of the country - They objected very
strongly to my going away down the right bank of

the Luapula though it was in sight with my small party - so I resolved to remain till all went.

13th

The Banyamwezi use a hammer shaped like a cone without a handle

[Small cone drawn in-line.] - They have both kinds of bellows one of goat skin the the other of wood with a skin over the mouth of a drum and a handle tied to the middle of it

[Small drawing of a bellows in-line.] The smelt ^ pieces of very large bars of copper into a pot filled nearly full of wood ashes - the fire is surrounded by masses of anthills and in these there are hollows made to recieve the melted metal

[Illustration of anthills with holes in them, drawn in-line.] - They are hot from having placed to protect the fire and the metal is poured while the pot is held with the hands protected by wet rags

[0456]

450

Aug^t
13th
1868

Bin Omar a Suaheli came from Muabo's on Chambeze in six days crossing in that space twenty two burns or oozes from knee to waist deep

18th

Very high & cold winds prevail at present, It was proposed to punish Chukumbe when Syde bin Omar came as he is in debt & refuse payment but I go off to Cazembe -

22^d

another hot fountain in the Baloba country
called Fungwe this with Kapira & Vana makes
three hot fountains in this region

23^d

some people were killed in my path to Cazembe
so this was an additional argument against
my going that way -

25th

Some Banyamwezi report a tribe the Bonyolo
that extract the upper front teeth like Batoka they
are near Loanda and Lake Chipokola is there
probably the same as Kinzkonkza - feeling my way -
All the trees are now pushing out fresh young
leaves of different colours - Winds SE. clouds
of upper stratum N.W

29th

Kaskas began today hot and sultry -
This will continue till rains fall - Rumours
of wars perpetual ^ & near and one circumstantial
account of an attack by the Bause - That
again contradicted - 31st Rain began here
this evening - quite remarkable and
exceptional as it precedes the rains generally
off the watershed by two months at least
It was a thunder shower and it and another
on the evening of the second were quite

go on 8/[...]

partial

A mission is said by Muhamad Bagharib to have been
sent from Zanzibar under Ghamiss ~~Salem~~ bin Abdullah
to Mteza son of Sunna - Koran only to be taught and

usual in Arabic - This is the very first attempt ever made - Muhamad knows of no other attempt to teach the natives - If successful with Mtesa it will be a mercy - He is evidently a fool never whipped -

[0457]

451

copied

Note on the Climate of the Watershed=

27th
August
1868

The notion of a rainy zone in which the clouds deposit their treasures in perpetual showers, has received no confirmation from observations in 1866-7. The rainfall was forty two inches - In 1867-8, it amounted to fifty three inches - this is nearly the same as falls in the same latitudes on the West Coast - In both years the rains ceased entirely in May - and with the exception of two partial thunder showers on the middle of the watershed, no rain fell till the middle, and end of October - Then and even in November it was partial & circumscribed ^ limited to small patches of country - but scarcely a day passed between October and May without a good deal of thunder - When the Thunder began to roll or rumble that was taken by the natives as an indication of the near cessation of rains - The middle of the Watershed is the most humid part - One sees The great humidity of its climate at once in the trees, old and young, being thickly covered with Lichens - Some flat, on the trunks and branches - others long and thready like the beards of old men waving in the wind - Large orchids on the trees in company with the profusion of Lichens are seen nowhere else except in the Mangrove swamps of the sea coast

I cannot account for the great humidity of the watershed as compared with the rest of the country, but by the prevailing winds and the rains being from the South East, and thus from the Indian Ocean - With this wind generally on

the surface one can observe an upper strong wind from the North West - That is, from the low humid West coast and Atlantic Ocean - The double strata of winds can easily be observed when there are two sheets of clouds, or when burning grass over scores of square miles sends up smoke sufficiently high to be caught

[0458]

452

copied

Note on the Climate

27th
August
1868

by the upper or Northwest wind - These winds probably meet during the heavy rains - Now in August they overlap each other - The probability arises from all continued rains within the tropics coming in the opposite direction from the prevailing wind of the year - partial rains are usually from the South East - the direction of the prevailing wind of this region is well marked on the islands in Lake Bangweolo - the trunks are bent away from the South East - the branches on that side are stunted or killed while those on the Norwest run out straight and make the trees appear lopsided - The same bend away from the South East is seen on all exposed situations as in the trees covering the brow of a hill - At Kizinga which is higher than the Lake the trees are covered with Lichens chiefly on the South East sides, and on the upper surfaces of branches running away horizontally to or from the Norwest. Plants and trees which elsewhere in Africa grow only on the banks of streams and other damp localities are seen flourishing all over the country - the very rocks are covered with Lichens and thin crevices with ferns.

But that which demonstrates the humidity of the climate most strikingly in the number of

Earthen sponges or oozes met with - In going to Bangweolo from Kizinga , I crossed twenty nine of these reservoirs in thirty miles of Latitude on a South East course - This may give about one sponge for every two miles - the word "Bog" conveys much of the idea of these Earthen sponges but it is inseparably connected in our minds with peat and these contain not a particle of peat - they consist of black porous earth covered with a hard wiry grass and a few other damp loving plants - In many places the

[0459]

453

*Note on the
Climate*

written
27th
August
1868

sponges contain large quantities of the oxide of iron from the big patches of Brown Hematite that crop out everywhere - streams of this red oxide as thick as treacle are seen moving ^ slowly along in the sponge like small red glaciers - When one treads on the black earth of the sponge, though little or no water appears on the surface it is frequently squirted up the limbs, and gives the idea of a sponge - In the paths that cross these sponges the earth readily becomes soft mud, but sinks rapidly to the bottom again, as ^ if of great specific gravity - the water in these sponges is alway circulating & oozing - The places where the sponges are met with are slightly depressed valleys without trees or bushes in a forest country - The grass being only a foot or 15 inches high and thickly planted often looks like beautiful glades in a gentlemen's park in England. They are from a quarter of a mile to a mile broad, and from two to ten or more miles long. The water of the heavy rains soaks into the ^ level Forest lands - one never sees runnels leading ^ it off unless occasionally a foot path is turned to that use - the water descending about eight feet comes to a stratum of yellow sand, beneath which there another stratum of fine white sand which at its bottom cakes so as to hold the water from sinking further It is exactly the same as we found in the Kalahari Desert in digging in the Bushman sucking places

for water for our oxen - the water both here & there is guided by the fine sand stratum into the nearest valley, and here it oozes forth on all sides through the thick mantle of black porous earth which forms the sponge - There in the Desert it appears to damp the surface sands in certain valleys and the Bushman by a peculiar process suck out a supply - When we had dug down to the caked sand the people begged us not to dig further as the water would all run away - We desisted because we saw that the fluid poured in from the fine sand all round the

[0460]

454

*Note on
Climate*

copied 27th
August
1868

well but more came from the bottom or cake two stupid Englishmen afterwards broke through the cake in spite of the entreaties of the natives and the well and whole valley dried up hopelessly. Here the water oozing forth from the surface of the sponge mantle collection the centre of the slightly depressed valley which it occupies, and near the head of the depression forms a sluggish stream. But further down as it meets with more slope it works out for itself a deeper channel with perpendicular banks, with say a hundred or more yards of sponge on each side constantly oozing forth fresh supplies to augment its size - When it reaches rocky ground it is a perennial burn with Podostemous - and many other aquatic plants growing in its bottom - one peculiarity would strike anyone - The water never becomes discoloured or muddy - I have seen only one stream muddied in flood - the Choma flowing through an alluvial plain in Lopere - Another peculiarity is very remarkable - It is that after the rains have entirely ceased these burns have their largest flow, and cause inundations - It looks as if towards the end of the rainy season the sponges were lifted up by the water off their beds - and the pores and holes being enlarged are all employed to give off fluid - the waters of inundation ran away ^ = Time also

being required to wet all the sand through which
the rains soak, the great supply may only find
its way to the sponge a month or so after the great
rains have fallen - I travelled in Lunda when
the sponges were all supersaturated - the grassy
sward was so lifted up that it was separated into
patches or tufts, and if the foot missed the row
of tufts of this wiry grass which formed the native
path, down one plumped up to the thigh in slush
At that time we could cross the sponge only by the
When the sponges are lifted up by superabundance of water all the pores therein are opened -
as the earthen mantle subsides again the pores act like natural valves and are partially closed
by the weight of earth above them - The water is thus prevented from running away altogether.

[0461]

455

copied

Note on the Climate written 27th August 1868

August
27th
1868

native paths, and the central burn only where they
had placed bridges - Elsewhere They were impassable
as they poured off the waters of inundation - our oxen
were generally bogged - all four legs down up to the body
at once - Then they saw the clear sandy bottom of the
central burn they readily went in but usually plunged
right overhead leaving the tail up in the air to shew the
nervous shock they had sustained -

These sponges are a serious matter in travelling - I crossed
the twenty nine already mentioned at the end of the fourth
month of the dry season and the central burns seemed
then to have suffered no diminution - they were then
from calf to waist deep and required from 15 to 40
minutes in crossing - They had many deep holes in
the paths and when ^ one plumps there in every muscle in
the frame recieves a painful jerk - When past the
stream and apparently on partially dry ground one
may jog in a foot or more and recieve a squirt of black
mud up the thighs - It is only when you reach the trees
~~that~~ and are off the sour land, that you feel secure

from mud and leeches - as one has to strip the lower
part of the person to many of them I found that often
four were as many as we could ford in a day -
Looking up these sponges a bird's eye view would
closely resemble the Lichen like vegetation of frost
in window panes - or that vegetation in Canada
Balsam which mad Philosophical Instrument
makers will put between the causes of the object
glasses of our Telescopes - The flat or nearly flat
tops of the subtending and transverse ridges of this
central country give rise to a great many - I crossed
a few of the foddors of Bangweolo
twenty nine in thirty miles of Latitude in one direction
Bin Oman a Swaheli went from Kizinga to the
village of Muabo on the Chambeze in six days
and crossed twenty two from knee to waist deep
they were feeders of the Chambeze - Their brows
are literally innumerable = Rising on the ridges

[0462]

456

copied
August
27th
1868

or as I formerly termed them Mounds they are un-
-doubtedly the primary ^ or ultimate sources of the Zambezi
Congo - and Nile - By their union are formed
streams of from 30 to 80 or 100 yards broad and always
deep enough to require either canoes or bridges - There
I propose to call the secondary sources and as in
the case of the Nile they are drawn off by three lines
of drainage they become the head waters, the (caput
Nile) of the river of Egypt

Thanks to that all embracing Providence which
has watched over and enabled me to discover what
I have done - There is still much to do and if health
and protection be granted I shall make a complete
thing of it -

additional
Note
copied

But few of the sponges on the watershed ever dry but elsewhere many do - the cracks in their surface are from 15 to 18 inches deep - with lips from two to three inches apart - Crabs and other animals in clearing out their runs reveal what I verified by actually digging wells at Kizinga & in Kabuire and also observed in the ditches 15 feet deep dug by the natives round many of their stockades, that the sponge rests on a stratum of fine white washed sand - These cracks afford a good idea of the effect of the rains - the partial thunder showers of October - November, December & even January, produce no effect on them - It is only when the Sun begins to return from His greatest southern Declination that the cracks close their large lips - The whole sponge is borne up and covers & an enormous mass of water oozing forth in March and April forms the inundations - these floods in the Congo, Zambezi and Nile require different times to reach the sea - the bulk of the Zambesi is further augmented by the greater rains finding many pools in the beds of its faders filled in February. As soon as the sun comes North

[0463]

457

Kabuire September and October

*Journal from
Kizinga to
Kabwabwata*

October
29th
1868

In coming North in ^{the}~~this~~ the last months of the dry season I crossed many burns flowing quite in the manner of our brooks at home after a great deal of rain - Here however the water was dear and the banks not abraded in the least - some rivulets had a tinge of white in them as oif of felspar in disintegrating granite - some nearly stagnant burns had as if milk & water in them, & some red oxide of iron -

Leeches

Where Leeches occur they need no coaxing to bite,
but fly at the white skin like furies & refuse to let go
With the fingers benumbed though the water is only 60°
one may twist them round the finger and tug but
they slip through - I saw the natives detaching them
with a smart slap of the palm & found it quite effectual
In apparent contradiction of the forgoing, Note on climate so far

Sources

as touches the sources of the Zambezi, Syde bin
Habib informed me a few days ago that he visited
the sources of the Liambai and of the Lufira one is
called Changozi, and is small, & in a wood of
large trees S.W. of Katanga - the fountain of the
Liambai is so large that one cannot call to
a person on the other side - He appears also very
small there - the two fountains are just five
hours distant from each other - He is well acquainted
with the Liambai - (Leeambye) where I first met
him ^ Lunga - another river comes out of nearly the same
spot which goes into the Lueñge - - Kafue -
Lufira is less than Kalongosi up there - that is
less than 80 or 200 yards and it has deep water
falls in it - the Kone range comes down North
nearly to Mpweto's - Mkana is the chief of the
stone houses in the Baloba, and he may be
reached by three days of hard travelling from
Mpweto's - Lufira is then one long day
West - As Muabo refuses to shew me
his mita - Miengelo or Mpamankanana

[0464]

458

Note
on the
29 Oct
1868

as they are called I must try and get to Mose
of the Baloba of Mkama -
Senegal swallows pair in beginning of Dec^r

Swifts - Senegal swallows and common dark
bellied swallows appeared at Kizinga in the
beginning of October = Other birds as Drongo
Shrikes - a bird with a reddish bill but otherwise
like a grey linnet keeps in flocks yet 5th Dec^r pairs not - The
Kite came sooner than the swallows I saw the first
at Bangeweolo on the 20th of July 1868

Note
inunda[-]
tion

The inundation which I have explained in
the note on the climate as owing to the sponges being
supersaturated in the Greater Rains when the Sun
returns from his greatest Southern Declination,
the pores are then all enlarged - the sponges borne
up and off the water of inundation flows in great
volume even after the rains have entirely ceased -
something has probably to be learned from the Rain
fall at or beyond the Equator as the Sun pursues
his way North beyond my beat, but the process
I have named accounts undoubtedly for the
inundations of the Congo and Zambesi
the most acute of the ancients ascribed the
inundation with Strabo to summer rains in
the South - others to snows melting on the
mountains of the moon - others to the Northern
winds - The Etesian breezes blowing directly
against the mouth of the river and its current
others with less reason ascribed the inundation
to its having its source in the ocean - Herodotus
and Pliny to evaporation following the course

Journal
1st Sept^r
1868

of the Sun -

Two men from Cazembe - I am reported killed -
5th the Moninga tree distills water which falls in large drops -
6th Luapula seen when smokes clear off 7th 50 of Syde bin Omar's
people died of small pox in Usafa - Men - vaccine virus
8th Syde from Framba, forces joined we leave on the

25th East bank of Moisi R. 28th Luongo. 1st Oct Lofuba -

[0465]

459

Note written on 5th October 1868

I was detained in the Imboshwa country much longer than I relished - The inroad of the Mazitu of which Cazembe had just heard when we reached the Mofwe was the first cause of delay - He had at once sent off men to verify the report and requested me to remain till his messengers should return - this foray produced a state of lawlessness in the country which was the main reason of our further detention - the Imboshwa fled before the marauders and the Banyamwezi or Garaganza who had come in numbers to trade in copper took on themselves the duty of expelling the invaders and this by means of their muskets they did effectually, then building stockades they excited the jealousy of the Imbozhwa lords of the soil, who instead of feeling grateful hated the new power thus sprung up among them - they had suffered severely from the sharp dealing of the strangers already and Chikumbi made a determined assault on the stockade of Kombokombo in vain - confusion prevailed all over the country - Some Banyamwezi were assumed the offensive against the Bausi who resemble the Imbozhwa but are further south, and captured and sold some prisoners - It was in this state of things that as already mentioned I was surrounded by a party of furious Imbozhwa - a crowd stood with fifteen or twenty yards with spears poised and arrows set in the bowstrings and some took aim at me - They took us for plunderers and some plants of groundnuts thrown about gave colour to their idea. One good soul helped us away a blessing be on him and his - Another chief man took us for Mazitu! In this state of confusion Cazembe heard that I & my party had been cut off - He called in Moeneompanda and took the field in person in order to punish the Banyamwezi against whom he has an old grudge for killing a near relative of his family - Selling Bausi and setting themselves up as a power in his country

[0466]

Written
5th Oct
1868

The two Arab traders now in the country felt that they must unite their forces and thereby effect a safe retreat - Ulukumbe had kept 28 tusks for Syde bin Omar safely but the coming of Cazembe might have put it out of his power to deliver up his trust in safety - an army here is often quite lawless - Each man takes to himself what he can - When united we marched on 23 Sept^r from Kizinga together - built fences every night to protect ourselves and about four hundred Banyamwezi who took the opportunity to get safely away - Kombo-kombo came away from his stockade and also part of the way but cut away by night across country to join parties of his countrymen who still love to trade in Katanga copper - we were not molested but came nearly North of the Kalongosi - Syde parted from us and went away East to Moamba & thence to the coast -

11th

From Kizinga North the country is all covered with forest and thrown up into ridges of hardened sandstone capped occasionally with fine grained clay schist - Trees often of large size and of a species closely resembling the Gum copal tree - on heights Masukos and Rhododendrons - When exposed bent away from the South East, Animals as buffaloes and Elephants numerous but wild - Rivulets numerous and running now as briskly as brooks do after much rain in England all on the South Western side of Kalongosi are subjects of Cazembe - Balunda or Imbozhwa

Note

Irritable ulcers are common on the limbs of
natives - their edges are elevated and bottoms
glazed - treated or maltreated at bishop
Mackenzie's mission by irritating salves
they became frightful sloughs and often

[0467]

461

caused death - I had nothing to do with the treatment
but saw D^r Meller applying red precipitate to one
on a Makololo - ! Support is the proper treatment
at Charing Cross Hospital this was given by bandages,
the Arabs do this by a bees wax plaster in which a
little copperas is mixed - the plaster is held on by a
bandage and they soon heal - Burgundy pitch on a
bit of paper or leather has the same effect - the
natives tie on hard leaves or a piece of calabash -
I recommended the missionaries to give support
by quinine but never saw it given - M^r Waller sent me
some of the salve - His own people laughed & said Waller told us
lies about that - it never cured us though he said it would

It was gratifying to see the Banyamwezi carrying
their sick in cots slung between two men - In the course
of time they tired of this and one man who was carried
several days remained with Chama - We crossed
the Luongo far above where we first became
acquainted with it & near its source in Urungu or
Urungu hills - Then the Lobulen a goodly stream
30 yards broad & rapid with fine falls above our ford
goes into Kalongosi

6th Oct^r

cross the Papusi and a mile beyond the Luena
by 40 yards and knee deep - Here we were met by
about 400 of Kabanda's men as if they were come to
dispute our passage at the ford - I went over - all were
civil but had we shewn any weakness they would
no doubt have taken advantage of it

7th

We came to the Kalongosi flowing over five cataracts
made by five islets the place called Kabwerume -
near it the Mebamboa a goodly rivulet joins it -

12th

We came to the Kalongosi at the ford name Mosolo
by pacing I found it to be 240 yards broad and
thigh deep at the end of the dry season - It ran so
strongly that it was with difficulty I could keep
my feet - Here 500 at least of Insama's people
stood on the opposite shore to know what we
wanted - two fathoms of calico were sent over

[0468]

462

October
12th
1868

and then I and thirty guns went over to protect
the people in the ford - as we approached they
retired - I went to them and told them that I had
been to Insama's and he gave me a goat & food
and ^ we were good friends - some had seen me
there - they crowded to look till the Arabs thought
it unsafe for me to be among them - if I had
come with bared skin they would have fled
all became friendly - an elephant was killed
and we remained two days buying food -
we passed down between the ranges of
hills on the East of Moero - the path we followed
when we first visited Cazembe - from the

20th
21st

Luao I went over to the chief village of Muabo
and begged him to shew me the excavations

in his country - He declined by saying that
I came from a crowd of people and must
go to Kabwabwata and wait a while there
Meanwhile he would think what he should
do whether to refuse or invite me to come,
He evidently does not wish me to see his
strongholds - all his people could go into
them though over ten thousand - they are
all abundantly supplied with water and
they form the storehouses for grain - We

22^d

came to Kabwabwata and I hope I may find
a way to other underground houses -
it is probable that they are not the workman-
ship of the ancestors of the present occupants
for they ascribe their formation invariably
to the deity - Mulungu or Reza - If their fore-
-fathers had made them some tradition would
have existed of them -

23^d

Syde bin Habib came over from Mpwetoo
He reports Lualaba and Lufira flowing
into Lake of Kinkonza - Lungabale is
paramount chief of Rua -

[0469]
463

25th
Oct^r
1868

Mparahala horns measured 3 feet long $2\frac{1}{2}$ - inches
in diameter at the base - This is the yellow Kualata of
Makololo - bastard Gemsouck of the Dutch -

28th
27-29
30th

Salem bin Habib was killed by the people in Rua -
He had put up a tent and they attacked it in the night &
stabbed him through it - Syde bin Habib waged a war of

Writing
up journal

vengeance all through Rua after this for the murder of his
brother - Seph's raid may have led the people to the murder

Nov^r

1st 1868, at Kabwabwata - we are waiting till Syde
comes up that we may help him - He has an enormous
number of tusks and bars of copper - sufficient it
seems for all his people to take it forward going &
returning three times over - He has large canoes on the
Lake and will help us in return -

My run away attendants wished to return to meat
Chikumbe's but "Mpamari"! prevented them - they
now wished me to take them - I would not listen to
"Mpamari" as a mediation for he is untruthful, but
when they sent a deputation of their own people I
resolved to reinstate two - I reject the thief Suzi for
he is quite inveterate, and Chuma who ran away "to
be with Suzi" and I who rescued him from slavery,
and had been at the expense ^ of feeding and clothing him
for years was nobody in his eyes - "Bange" and black
women overcame him, and I feel no inclination to
be at further exposure & trouble for him -

2 Nov^r

News came yesterday from Mpweto's that twenty ^ one slaves
had run away from Syde bin Habib at one time - they
were Rua people and out of the chains - they were con-
sidered safe when fairly over the Lualaba, but shewed
their love of liberty on the first opportunity - Mpweto
is suspected to have harboured them or helped them
over the river - this will probably lead to Syde attacking
him as he has done to so many chiefs in Rua - In
this case Mpweto will have no sympathy he is so
wanting in the spirit of friendliness to others

[0470]

464

November
3^d
1868

Sent off men to hasten Syde onwards - the first stage from Mpweto's and from this is four days from Mpweto and two from this - We start in two or three days -

Note

The oldest map known to be in existence is the map of the Ethiopian goldmines, dating from the time of Sathos I., the father of Rameses II., long enough before the time of the bronze tablet of Aristagoras, on which was inscribed the circuit of the whole earth, and all the sea and all the rivers - Tylor p. 90 - quoted from Birch 'Archaeologia' vol. XXXIV p. 382 - Sesosbus was the first as quoted opposite to distribute his maps -

8th

Syde bin Habib is said to have amassed 150 frasilas

5,250 lbs
10,500 lbs

of ivory = 5,250 lbs and 300 frasilas of copper = to 10,500 lbs - with one hundred carriers he requires to make from relays otherwise make the journey four times over at every stage - Twenty one of his

slaves ran away in one night and only four
were caught again - They were not all bought nor
was the copper and ivory come at by fair means
the murder of his brother was a good excuse for
plunder murder and capture - Mpweto is suspected
of harbouring them as living on the banks of the
Lualaba - they could not get over without assistance
from his canoes and people - Mpweto said "remove
from me and we shall see if they come this way",
they are not willing to deliver fugitives up - Syde sent
for Elmas the only thing of the Mullam or clerical
order here, probably to ask if the Koran authorizes
him to attack Mpweto - Mullam will reply, "yes
certainly - if Mpweto wont restore your slaves take
what you can by force" - Syde's bloodshed is now
pretty large, and he is becoming afraid for his
own life, if he ceases not he will himself be

soon 10/[...]

caught some day -

Note

Ill by fever two days = better and thankfull

[0471]
465

Note copied from one written on 16th Aug. 1868

2 Nov.
1868

The discovery of the sources of the Nile is of somewhat ^{akin} ~~similar~~ ^{in importance} to the discovery of the North West passage
It called forth, though in a minor degree, the energy - the
perserverance and the pluck of Englishmen, and anything
that does that is beneficial to the nation - and to ^{its} posterity -
the discovery of the sources of the Nile possesses moreover,
an element of interest which the North West passage never
had - the great men of antiquity have recorded their ardent
desires to know the fountains of what Homer called "Egypt's
in camp with his army

"Heaven descended spring" - Sesostris, the first who made and not to Egyptians only but to the Scythians distributed maps naturally wished to know the springs of says Enstathius the river on whose banks he flourished - Alexander the Great, who founded a celebrated city at this river's - mouth looked up the stream with the same desire - and so did the Caesars - the Great Julius Caesar is made by Lucan to say that he would give up the civil war if he might but see the fountains of this far famed river - Nero Caesar sent two centurions to examine the "Caput Nili, - they reported that they saw the river rushing with great force from two rocks, and beyond that it was lost in immense marshes - This was probably " native information" concerning the cataracts of the Nile and long space above them - which had already been enlarged by others into two hills with sharp conical tops called Crophi and Mophi - midway between which lay the fountains of the Nile - fountains which it was impossible to fathom - and which gave forth half their water to Ethiopia in the South, and the other half to Egypt in the North - that which these men failed to find, and that which many great minds in ancient times longed to know has in this late age been brought to light by the patient toil, and laborious perseverance of an Englishman -

In laying a contribution to this discovery at the feet of his countrymen the waiter desires to give all the honour

which

they deserve to his predecessors - the work of Speke and Grant is deserving of the highest commendation inasmuch as they opened up an

[0472]
466

1868 - date when this note was written at Kizunga

copied
2 Nov^r
1868

immense tract of previously unexplained country, in the firm belief they were bringing to light the head of the Nile No one can appreciate the difficulties of their feat

unless he has gone into new country - In
 association with Chieftan Burton, Speke came
 much nearer to the "coy fountains" than at the
 Victoria Nyawza, but they ^ all turned their backs
 on them - Mr Baker shewed courage & perserverance
 worthy of an Englishman in following out the
 hints given by Speke and Grant = But none
 rises higher in my estimation than the Dutch
 lady Miss Tine, who, after the severest domestic
 afflictions nobly persevered in the teeth of
 every difficulty, and only turned away from
 the object of her Expedition, after being assured
 by Speke and Grant that they had already
 discovered in Victoria Nyanza the sources
 she sought - Had they not given their own mistaken
 views, the ^ wise foresight by which he provided a
 steamer would inevitably have led her to ^ pull steam
 there are cataracts in Nile
 up the ~~Lualaba~~ ~~up Lake Moero~~ ~~Up Luapula~~ to the part of cataracts
 and ^ by canoes through Lake Bangweolo to sources full
 five hundred miles South of the most southernly
 part of Victoria Nyanza - she evidently possesses
 some of the indomitable pluck of Von Tromp,
 whose tomb every Englishman who goes to Holland
 must see - Her doctor, ~~a von Huequik~~, was
 made a Baron - were she not a Dutch lady already
 we think she ought to be made a Duchess -

By way of contrast with what, if I live through
 it, I shall have to give, I may note some of the
 most prominent ideas entertained of this
 world renowned river - Ptolemy ^ with the
 most ancient maps makes the Nile rise
 from the "Montes Lunae" between ten and twelve
 South Latitude, by ^ six several streams which
 flowed North into two Lakes situated East
 and West of each other - These streams flowed
 a geographer who lived in the second century
 and was not a king of Egypt -

In 1827 Linant reached 13° 30' N on the white Nile - in 1841 the second Egyptian under Dr
 Arnanld and
 Sabatier explored the river to 4° 41' N and Jomard published his work on Limmor & the River
 Habaiah
 Dr Beke and M.D. Abadie contributed their share to making the Nile better known - Brun
 Rollet
 established a trading station in 1856 at Belenia on the Nile at 5° N Lat.

[0473]

Copied
2 Nov^r
1868

about West of his river Rhapta ^ or Raptus which probably our Roruma or Lokuma - This was very near the truth - but the mountains of the Moon cannot be identified with the Lokinga, or mountains of Bisa, from which ~~most~~ ^ many of the springs do actually arise - Unless indeed we are nearer to the great alterations in climate which have taken the mammoth - Rhinoceros tichorhinus place, as we are ^ to be nearer the epoch of the megatherial ^ ~~than~~ ~~was formerly~~ ^ Aurochs & others supposed, snow never lay in these latitudes on altitudes of 6000 feet above the sea -

Some of the ancients supposed the river to have its source in the ocean - this was like the answer we recieved long ago from the natives on the Liambai or upper Zambesi when enquiring for its source - "It rises in Loatle ^ the white mans sea or Metsehula" - the second name means the "grazing water" from the idea of the tides coming in to graze; as to the freshness of the Liambai waters they could offer no explanation - some again thought that the Nile rose in Western Africa and after flowing Eastwards across the continent turned Northwards to Egypt - others still thought that it rose in India! and others again from vague reports collected from their slaves, made it and several other rivers rise out of a great inland sea - Achelunda was said to be the name of this Lake, and in the language of Angola it meant the "sea" - it means only "of" or "belonging" "to Lunda" = a country - It might have been a sea that was spoken of or a whale or anything - "Nyassi, or the sea" - was another name and another blunder - "Nyassi" means long grass and nothing else - Nyanza contracted into Nyassa, means lake, marsh, any piece of water or the dry bed of a lake even - the N and y are joined in the mouth and never pronounced separately - the "Naianza"! It would be nearer the mark to say the b. Nancy-!

[0474]

copied
2 Nov^r
1868

The Portuguese were supposed to possess more knowledge of central Africa than any other nation because having factories on each side of the continent they perseveringly propagated the idea that they had also power and overland communication - but except in the case of two black slaves with Portuguese names who went from Cassange to Tette, and ^ brought a letter thence from the less by a thousand miles than from sea to sea Governor of Mosambique back to Cassange ^ (Angola) the idea was a delusion - The same fraud is to this day practised by Portuguese statesmen - the good Viscount de Sá's maps which were lately sent to the different Governments in Europe, are simply pretensions to power & influence in Africa which have no existence - Pity that His Excellency does not see that truthfulness is a higher virtue than patriotism - The Portuguese were also supposed to have concealed their discoveries in the Archives at Lisbon, but after all they had to produce ~~had s been~~ was given to the world, it is now pretty evident that concealment was an easy task, they had so precious little to hide - Except three slaving visits to Cazembe there was absolutely nothing to reveal - Vague hearsay collected ^ from slaves by Dos Santos ^ 1597 - Pigafetta De Barros - De Conto - oDoardo Lopez edited by in 1599 at second and third hand required no concealment - the so called Expeditions went to buy slaves and ivory and heard of nothing else - They went near to Lake Moero! - and near to Bangweolo! - Some of their coloured attendants even saw Luafula but as one of them declared ^ to me, they all thought that it ran to Angola!! So little did M^r Cooley - the great apostle of hearsay geography know of the country actually, he put down a river flowing from the centre of a valley up its

[0475]

469

copied

2 Nov
1868

side ^ at least 3000 feet uphill, and calling it the "New Zambesi" boldly challenged me to argue the point with him in the Athenæum whether the old Zambezi existed above the Victoria falls or not - That river though seen crossed and ^ its latitude laid down by M^r Oswell and myself he asserted to be "an undeveloped river" whatever that may mean "which ran under the Kalahari Desert and was lost" and to make sure of its disappearance before forming the splendid Victoria Falls he put its terminus down in what he called a map as a pothook - meaning doubtless by this dignified hieroglyphic that here the "river had hooked it" - It would not be worth while to notice this ~~foolish~~ precocious ignorance were it not to shew how extremely little the most acute, learned of actual geography from Portuguese instructors - How little was known of central Africa in fact till our own countrymen took up the exploration -

The next pupil of the Portuguese M^r Macqueen with all their hearsay at his finger ends emitted his last notes on the so called "geography of Central Africa" in 1856 - a mere modification of the dream of his life - A great mountain range running up the centre of the Continent - "the African Cordillera" - ! "The backbone of the world"!! by telling the world that "Kenia, the snow covered mountain seen by D^r Krapf lies exactly under the Equator ^ (?) and in 35° (?) East Long - Thence a range of very high hills rising above the range of perpetual congelation, and some of them volcanic are to the West-ward - Immediately to the North of Mount Kenia rises (!) the most Southernly source of the Bahr al Abiad - the real Egyptian Nile" - of this says ^ he ~~the dreamer~~ who pronounced Speke and Grant heroic achieve[-]ment to be "a miserable failure" - "the information I have collected leaves no doubt" " It was well known to the early Portuguese" - This is interesting as emitted by one who has laboured to make ~~the~~ his Portuguese instructors ^ appear to be the only discoverers of

[0476]

470

copied
2 Nov^r
1868

of value ^ in Africa and that with the laudable object of dwarfing the labours of his own countrymen - We need not tell him that the most Southerly source of the real Egyptian Nile is some 12° of Latitude south of his dream - Off all those called Theoretical discoverers the man who ran in two hundred miles of Lake & placed them on a height of some 4000 feet at the Nor West end of Lake Nyassa, deserves the high ^ est place - D^r Beke in his guess, came nearer the sources than most others, but after all he pointed out where they would not be found - Old Nile played the theorists a pretty prank by having his springs five hundred miles South of them all - ^ I call mine a contribution because It is just a hundred

(1769) ^

years since Bruce, a greater traveller than any of us visited Abyssinia, and having discovered the sources of the Blue Nile, ^ he thought that he had then solved the ancient problem - Am I to be cut out by some one discovering southern fountains of the river of Egypt of which I have now no conception? - transcribed from note written 16th Aug 1868
David Livingstone

copied

2 Nov^r 1868

Note
additional

The subject of change of climate from alteration of level has not recieved the investigation it deserves M^r Darwin saw reason to believe that very great alterations of altitude and of course of climate had taken place in South America and the islands of the Pacific = the level of a country above the sea I believe he thought to be as variable as the winds - A very great alteration of altitude has also taken place in Africa - this is apparent on the sea coast of Angola, and all through the centre of the country where large rivers which once flowed South -

-wards and Westwards ~~along~~ ^ are no longer able to run
in these directions - the general desiccation of
the country as seen in the beds of large rivers &
of enormous Lakes tells the same tale - Portions

[0477]

Additional note copied 2^d Nov^r 1868 471

of the East coast have sunk others have risen even in the
historic period - the upper or Northern end of the Red
sea have risen so that the place of the passage of the children
of Israel is now between forty and fifty miles from Suez
the modern head of the Gulph - This upheaval and not
the sand from the Desert caused the disuse of the ancient
canal across the Isthmus - It took place since the
Muhamadan conquest of Egypt - The women of the
Jewish captivities were carried past the end of the
Red Sea and along the Mediterranean in ox waggons
where such cattle would now all perish for want
of water and pasture - In fact the route to Assyria
would have proved more fatal to captives than
than the middle passage has been to Africans since -
It may be true that as the Desert is now it could not
have ^ been traversed by the multitudes under Moses - but the
German strictures put forth by D^r Colenso with the
plea of the progress of science assumes that no
alteration has taken place in either desert or climate
but a scientific examination of the subject would

have

ascertained what the country was then when it afforded
pasture to "flocks ~~and~~ even herds ^ even & very much cattle" - We
know that Eziongeber was with its docks on the
sea shore, with water in abundance from the ships
carpenters - It is now far from the head of the Elaic
gulp in a parched Desert - Aden when visited
by the Portuguese Balthazar less than 300 years ^ ago
was a perfect garden - It is now a vast conglomeration
of black volcanic rocks with so little vegetation
that on seeing flocks of goats driven out I thought of
the Irish cabman at an ascent slamming the door of his cab &
whispering to his fare "Whish its to desave the baste
He thinks that you are out walking" - Gigantic tanks
in great numbers and the ruins of aqueducts
appear as relics of the past, where no rain now
falls for three or more years at a time - They
have all dried up by a change of Climate

[0478]

472

Additional note

copied
2 Nov^r
1868

possibly similar & contemporaneous with that which has dried up the Dead Sea -

The journey of Ezra was undertaken after a fast at the river Ahava - With nearly 50,000 people he had only about 8000 beasts of burden - He was ashamed to ask a band of soldiers and horseman for protection in a way - It took about four months to reach Jerusalem - this would give 5½ or 6 miles a day, as the crow flies, which is equal to 12 or 15 miles of surface travelled over - this bespeaks a country capable of yielding both provisions & water such as cannot now be found - Ezra would not have been ashamed to ask for camels to carry provisions and water had the country been as dry as it is now - the prophets in telling all the woes & miseries of the captivities never allude to suffering or perishing by thirst ^ in the way - or being left to rot in the route as African slaves are now in a well watered country Had the route to Assyria been then as it is now, they could scarcely have avoided referring to the thirst of the way - but everything else is mentioned except that -

Note

It will possibly seem to some that Lake Nyassa may give a portion of its water off from its Northern end to the Nile - this would imply a Lake giving off a river at both ends - the country too on the North NorWest & NorEast rise to it from 4000 to 6000 feet above the sea, and there is not the smallest indication that Nyassa and Tanganyika were even connected - Lake Liemba is the most southerly part of Tanganyika - this Latitude is 8 ° 46' South - the most Northerly point of Lake Nyassa is probably 10 ° 56' 8 46 2 10

[Geographical calculations.] of Latitude
Longitude of Liemba
[Geographical calculations.] ^d of which

[Geographical calculations.] 180' of Long is about 206' the distance

[Geographical calculations.] between two Lakes and no evidence
of fissure, rent or channel now appears on

[0479]

1868 473

copied
3 Nov^r

the Highland between -
Again Liemba is 3000 feet above the sea - the
altitude of Nyassa is 1200 800 feet - Tanganyika
would thus go to Nyassa down the Shire
with the Zambesi & the sea is a passage existed
even below ground - -

The Large Lake said to exist to the North West of
Tanganyika might however send a branch to
the Nile - but the land rises up into a high ridge
East of this Lake

copied
3^d
Nov^r

It is somewhat remarkable that the impression
which intelligent Suaheh who have gone into Karagwe
have received, is that the Kitangule flows from
Tanganyika into Lake Ukerewe - One of Syde
bi Omar's people put it to me very forcibly the
other day by saying "Kitangule is an arm of
of Tanganyika" ! He had not followed it out,
but that Dagara the father of Rumanyika should
have in his lifetime seriously proposed to deepen
the upper part of it, so as to all canoes to pass
from his place to Ujiji is very strong evidence
of the river being large on the Tanganyika side - We
know it to be of good size & requiring canoes
on the Lake Ukerewe side - Burton came to the

very silly conclusion that when a native said a river ran one way he meant it flowed in the opposite direction - Ujiji in Rumanyika's time was the only mart for merchandise in the country - Garaganza or Galaganza has most trade influence now -

14th Sept

1868

Note

copied

3^d Nov^r

Okara is the name by which Victoria Nyanza is known on the Eastern side - An arm of it called Kavirondo is about 40 miles broad - Lake Baringo is a distinct body of water some 50 miles broad and giving off a river called Ngarda bash

[0480]

474

with flows Eastward into the Somauli country - Lake Naibash is more to the East than Kavirondo and about 50 miles broad too - It gives off the river Kidete which is supposed to flow into Lufu It is South East of Kavirondo and Kilimanjaro can be seen from its shores in the South East Okara - Naibash and Baringo seem to have been run by Speke into one Lake - Okara in the South is full of large islands and has but little water between them - that little is encumbered with aquatic vegetation called "Tikatika on which as in Lakelet Gumadona a man can walk - Waterlillies ^ & Duckweed are ^ not the chief part of this floating mass - In the North Okara is large - Burukinegge ^ land is the boundary between the people of Kavirondo & the Gallahs with camels and horses - Aug 1868

Journal

Nov^r

9th

1868

copied several Notes written at Kizinga and
elsewhere and at Kabwabwata resume journal
some slight showers have cooled the air a little

10th

this is the hottest time of the year - 10th a heavier
shower this morning will have more of the same effect
11th Muabo visited this village but refuses to shew
his underground houses

13th

I was on the point of starting without Muhamad
Bagharib but he begged me not to go till he had
settled some weighty matter about a wife he is to get
Ujiji from Mpamari - We must have the New
moon which will appear in three days for lucky
starting and will leave Syde bin Habib at Chisabis
Mean while two women slaves ran away and
returned here - He informed me that many of
Sydes slaves, about forty fled - of those who

[0481]

475

Nov^r
13th
1868

cannot escape many die evidently broken hearted -
they are captives and not, as slaves often are criminals
sold for their guilt - hence the great mortality caused
by taking to the sea to be as they believe fatted and
eaten! Poor things! Heaven help them -

Ujiji is the pronunciation of the Banyamwezi
 and they call the people Wayeiye exactly as the same
 people styled themselves on the R - Zougha near Ngami
 I have taken all the runaways back again, After trying
 the independent life they will behave better - Much
 of their ill conduct many be ascribed to seeing
 that often the flight of the Johanna men, I was entirely
 dependent on them - More enlightened people often
 take advantage of me in similar circumstances,
 Though I have seen pure Africans come out generous[-]
 -ly to aid one abandoned to their care - Have faults myself -

Nov. S-

15th The Arabs have some traditions of the Emir Musa
 coming as far South as the Jagga country - Some say he lived
 N- E- of Sunna now Mteza but it is so mixed up with fable
 and tales of the Genii (Mageni) that it cannot refer to the
 Great Moses concerning whose residence at Meröe and
 marriage of the king of Ethiopia's daughter there is also some
 vague traditions further North - The only thing of interest
 to me is the city of Meröe which is lost and may if
 built by ancient Egyptians still be found -

The Africans all beckon with the hand to call a
 person in a different way from what Europeans
 do - the hand is held as surgeons say prone ^ or palm down while
 we beckon with the hand held supine or palm
 up - It is quite natural in them for the idea in their
 mind is to lay the hand on the person & draw him
 towards them - If the person wished for is near, say 40
 yards off the beckoner puts out is right hand on
 a level with his breast & makes the motion of catching
 the other by shutting the fingers & drawing him to
 himself
 [Drawings of beckoning hand.] If the person is further
 off, this motion is exaggerated by lifting up the

[0482]

476

Nov^r
 15th
 1868.

right hand as high as he can, he brings it down with a sweep towards the ground - the hand being still held prone as before - In nodding assent they differ from us by lifting up the chin instead bringing it down as we do - This lifting up the chin looks natural after a short usage therewith and is perhaps purely conventional not natural as the other seems to be. I am

16th

tired out by waiting after finishing Journal, and will go off tomorrow North - Simon killed a zebra after I had taken the above resolution - this supply of meat makes delay bearable for besides flesh, of which I had none, we can buy all kinds of grain & pulse for the next few days - the women of the adjacent villages crowd into this as soon as they hear of an animal killed - & sell all the

17th

produce of their plantations for meat -
It is said that on the road to the Great Salt Lake in America the bones and skulls of animals lie scattered everywhere - yet travellers are often put to great straits for fuel - This if true is remarkable among a people so apt in turning everything to account as the Americans -
When we first steamed up the river Shire our fuel went done in the Elephant marsh where no trees exist and none could be reached without pressing through many miles on either side of impassable swamp covered with reeds and intersected everywhere with deep branches of the river - coming to a spot where an elephant had been slaughtered, I at once took the bones on board, and these with the bones of a second elephant enabled us to steam briskly up to where wood abounded - the Scythians

Ezekiel
XXIV. 5th

according to Herodotus used the bones of the animal sacrificed to boil the flesh - the Guachos of

South America do the same when they have
no fuel - the ox thus boils himself.

[0483]

477

Nov^r
[1]8th
[1]868.

a pretty little woman ran away from her husband
and came to Mpamari. Her husband brought three
hoses, a checked cloth, and two strings of large neck beads
to redeem her - but this old fellow wants her for himself,
and by native law he can keep her as his slave = wife =
slave owners make a bad neighbourhood - the slaves are
always running away, and the headmen are expected to
restore the fugitives for a bit of cloth - an old woman of
Mpamari fled three times - she was caught yesterday and
tied to a post for the young slaves to plague her - Her daughter
burst into an agony of tears on seeing them tying her
mother, and Mpamari ordered her to be tied to the mother's
back for crying! I interceded for her & she was let go. He
said you don't care though Seyed Majid loses his money.
I replied "let the old woman go. she will be off again to[-]
morrow" but they cannot bear to let a slave have freedom
I don't understand what effect his long prayers, and
prostrations towards the "Kibla" have on his own
mind - they cannot affect the minds of his slaves
favourably, nor do they mine, though I am as
charitable as most people -

[1]9th

I prepared to start today but Muhamad Bagharib
who has been very kind and indeed cooked meals
for me from my arrival at Cazembe's 6th May
last, till we came here 22^d Oct^r the food was coarse
enough but still it was food, and I did not like to refuse
his genuine hospitality - he begged of me not to go for
three days and then he would come along with me -
Mpamari also entreated - I would not have minded
him, but they have influence with the canoe men on
Tanganyika, and it is well not to get a bad name
if possible - Burton got the name of the "stingy white

man”, and he speaks as if this name indicated fear
The fear so far as I can glean from his own account
was all on his side - He sheepishly complied with
every demand made by the natives, and revenged
himself by making mouths at them in pedantic
verbage in his Journal. Speke name is one of generosity

[0484]

478

Nov^r
20th
1868

Mohamad Bagharib purposed to attack two villages
near to this from an idea that the people there concealed
his runaway slaves - By remaining I think that
I have put a stop to this as he did not like to pillage
while I was in company. Mpamari also turned
round towards peace, though he called all the riffraff
to muster and caricoled among them like an old
broken winded horse - one man became so excited
with yelling that the others had to disarm him & he
then fell down as if in a fit, water poured on his head
brought him to calmness. We go on the 22^d but

22^d

But this evening the Imbozhwa ^ or Babemba came at dusk
killed a Wanyamwezi woman on one side of the
village and a woman and child on the other
side of it. I took this to be the result of the warlike
demonstration mentioned above, but one of Mu-
hamad Bagharib’s people named Bin Juma
had gone to a village on the North of this and seized
two women and two girls in lieu of [...]four slaves
who had run away. The headman resenting
this shot an arrow into the head of one of bin
Juma’s party & bin Juma shot a woman with
his gun. This it turned out had roused the

23^d

whole country, and next morning we were assailed by a crowd of Imbozhwa on three sides - We had no stockade but some built as fast as the enemy allowed - cutting down trees and carrying them to the line of defence, while others kept the assailants at bay with their guns - But for the crowd of Banyamwezi which we have who shot vigorously with their arrows, and occasionally chased the Imbozhwa we should have been routed. I did not go near the fighting, but remained in my house to defend my luggage if necessary the women went up and down the village with sieves as if winnowing - and singing

[0485]

479

23^d
Nov^r
[1]868

songs and lulliloo ^ ing to encourage their husbands & friends who were fighting - Each had a branch of the Ficus Indica in her hand which she waved I supposed as a charm - About ten of the Imbozhwa are said to have been killed but dead and wounded were at once carried off by their countrymen - they continued the assault from early dawn till one PM - and showed great bravery, but they wounded two only with their arrows. Their care to secure the wounded was admirable - Two of three at once seized the fallen man, and ran off with him though pursued by a crowd of Banyamwezi with spears, and fired at by the Swaheli - Victoria-cross fellows truly many of them were - Those who had a bunch of animals tails with medicine tied to their waists came sidling, and ambling up to near the unfinished stockade, and shot their arrows high up into the air to fall among the Wanyamwezi - then picked up any arrows on the field ran back, and returned again they thought that by the ambling gait they avoided the the balls - and when these whistled past them they put down their heads as if to allow them to pass over - they had never encountered guns before. We did not then know it but Muabo - Phuta - Ngurue - Sandaruko - and Chapi were the assailants. We

found it out by the losses each of these five chiefs sustained - Muabo was apparently averse to war visited us after Bin Juma's affair and seemed a friend, but he lost a principal man who was also a near relative, and sent three slaves as a self-imposed fine -

It is quite evident to me that the Swaheli Arabs were quite taken aback by the attitude of the natives they expected them to flee as soon as they heard a gun fired in anger - but these fine chiefs had invited Mpiveto and Karembwe to join them they refused, but had we not our Wanyamwezi

[0486]

480

23^d
Nov^r
1868

allies we should certainly have suffered severely if not cut off entirely -

24th

The Imbozwa or Babemba rather came early this morning and called on Muhamad to come out of his stockade if he were a man who could fight - the fence is not finished and none seems willing to obey the taunting call - I have nothing to do with it - but feel thankful that I was detained and did not with my few attendants fall into the hands of the justly infuriated Babemba - They kept up the attack today, and some went out to them, fighting till noon. When a man was killed & not carried off the Wanyamwezi brought his head & put it on a pole on the stockade - six heads were thus placed - a fine young man was caught and brought in by the Wanyamwezi - one stabbed him behind - another cut his forehead with an axe. I called to them not to kill him in vain - as a last appeal he said to the crowd that surrounded him "dont kill me, and I shall take you to where the women are". "you lie", said his enemies. you

intend to take us where we may be shot by your friends". and they killed him - It was horrible. I protested loudly against any repetition of this wickedness, and the more sensible agreed that prisoners ought not to be killed - but the Banyamwezi are incensed against the Babemba because of the women killed on the 22^d

25th

The Babemba kept off on the third day - and the Arabs are thinking it will be a good thing if we get out of the country unscathed - Then were sent off on the night of the 23^d to Syde bin Habib for powder and help - Muhamad Bagharib is now unwilling to take the onus of the war. He blames Mpamari and Mpamari blames him - I told Muhamad that the war was undoubtedly his work inasmuch as Bin Juma

[0487]

481

[2]6th
[N]ov^r
[18]68

is his man, and he approved of his siezing the women He does not like this, but it is true - He would not have entered ^ a village of Cazembe or Moamba or Chukumbi as he did Chapi's man's village - The people here are simply men of more metal than he imagined, and his folly in beginning a war in which if possible his slaves will slip through his hands is apparent to all - even to himself - Supi's sent four barrels of gunpowder

27th

and ten men who arrived during last night -
Two of Muabo's men came over to bring on a parley - one told us that he had been on the south side of the village before, and heard one man say to another "mo pige"

shoot him - Mpamari gave them a long oration in exculpation - It was the same everlasting story of fugitive slaves - the slave traders cannot prevent them from escaping and impudently think that the country people ought to catch them, and this be their humble servants - and also the persecutors of their own countrymen If the cannot keep them why buy them? Why put their money into a bag with holes? It is exactly what took place in America - slave owners are bad neighbours everywhere - Canada was threatened - England brow beaten and the Northerners all but kicked on the same score and ^ all as if property in slaves had privileges which no other goods have - To hear the Arabs say of the slaves after they are fled - "On they are bad - bad very bad, and they entreated me too to free them from the yoke" - is as the young ladies say "*too absurd*" the chiefs too who do not apprehend fugitives, they too are "bad"! I proposed to Muhamad Bagharib to send back the women siezed by Bin Juma to shew the Babemba that he disapproved of the act, and was willing to make peace - This was too humiliating - I added that their price as slaves was four barrels of gunpowder, or 160 dollars while slaves lawfully bought would have cost him only 8 or 10 yards of calico each At the conclusion of Mpamari's speech the four

[0488]

482

28th
Nov^r
1868

barrels of gunpowder were exhibited and so was the Koran to impress ^ Muabo's people them with an idea of their great power.

29th

It is proposed to go and force our way if we can to the North, but all feel that that would be a fine opportunity for the slaves to escape, and they would not be loath to embrace it - This makes it a serious matter, and the Koran is consulted at hours which

30th

are auspicious - Messengers sent to Muabo to ask
a path or in plain words protection from him -!
Mpamari protests his innocence of the whole

1st Dec^r

1868

affair - Muabo's people over again - would fain
send them to make peace with Chapi -!

2^d

The detention is excessively vexatious to me -
Muabo sent three slaves as offers of peace, a fine
self imposed, but he is on our South side and we
wish to go North -

3^d

A party went today to clear the way to the North
but were warmly recieved by Babemba with arrows -
they came back with one woman captured & they say
that they killed one man - one of themselves wounded,
and many others in danger, others went East and
were shot at and wounded too.

4th

A party went East today and were fain to flee from
the Babemba - the same thing occurred on our West

5th

and today all are called to strengthen the stockade
for fear that the enemy may enter uninvited - the
slaves would certainly flee, and small blame to

them though they did. Mpamari proposed go off North by night, but his people objected that a child crying would arouse the Babemba, and reveal the flight - He sent off to ask Syde what he ought to do whether to retire by day or by night - probably entreating Syde to come & protest him.

[0489]

483

A sort of idol is found in every village in this part It is of wood and represents the features, markings, fashion of the hair of the inhabitants - some have little huts built for them, some are in common houses - the Babemba call them Nkisi (samam of the Arabs) The people of Rua name one Kalubi - The plural Tulubi - they present pombe - flour - Bange - tobacco - light a fire to smoke by they represent the departed father or mother and it is supposed that they are pleased with the offerings made to their representatives, but all deny that they pray to them. Cazembe has very many of these Nkisi - one with long hair and named Motombo is carried in front when he takes the field - I have not met with anyone intelligent enough to explain if prayers are ever made to any one - The Arabs who know their language say they have no prayers, and think that at death there is an end of the whole man, but this other things lead me to believe to be erroneous - slaves laugh at their countrymen in imitation of their masters, I will not reveal their real thoughts - one said that they believed in two superior beings - Reza above who kills people, and Riza below who carries them away after death.

[0490]

484

December
6th
1868

Ten of Syde bin Habibs people came over bringing a letter the contents of which neither Mpamari nor Muhamad cares to reveal - some think with great probability that, he asks why did you begin a war if you wanted to leave so soon. Did you not know that the country people would take advantage of your march encumbered as you will be by women & slaves.

Muhamad Bogharib called me to ask what advice I could give him as all ^ his own advice ^ and devices too had been lost or were useless, and he did not know what to do - the Banyamwezi threatened to go off by night and leave him - they are incensed by the Babemba, and are offended because the Arabs do not aid them in wreaking their vengeance upon them - I took care not to give any advice, but said if I had been or was in his place I would have sent or would send back Bin Juma's captives to shew that he disapproved of his act - the first in the war = and was willing to make peace with Chapi. He said that he did not know that Bin Juma would capture these people. That Bin Juma had met some natives with fish and took ten by force. The natives in revenge caught three Banyamwezi slaves, and bin Juma then gave one slave to them as a fine - But Muhamad did not know of this affair either. I am of opinion that he knew of both matters, and Mpamari's caracoling, shewed that he knew it all, though now he denies it. Bin Juma is a long thin lanky Swaheli six feet two high - with a hooked nose and large lips - I told Muhamad that if he were to go with us to Manyema the whole party would be cut off - He came here - bought a slave boy & allowed him to escape - then brow beat Chapi's man about him & he says three others - caught ten in lieu of them and Muhamad restored six. This was the origin of the war. Now that we are in the middle of it I must do as Muhamad does in going off either by day or by night - It is unreasonable to ask my advice now, but it is felt that they have very

[0491]

485

Dec^r
7th
1868

unjustifiably placed me in a false position, and fear that Syde Majid will impute blame to them - Meanwhile Syde bin Habib sent a private message to me to come with his men to him and leave this party. I believe that the plan now is to try & clear our way of Chapi and then march - but I am so thoroughly disgusted by this slave war that I think of running the risk of attack by the country people, and go off tomorrow without Muhamad Bogharib though I like him much more than I do Mpamari

or Syde bin Habib - It is too glaring hypocrisy to go to the Koran for guidance while the stolen women & girls & fish are in Bin Juma's hands.

8th - 9th

Had to wait for Banyamwezi preparing food. Muhamad has no authority over them or indeed over any one else. Two Babemba men came in and said that they had given up fighting and begged their wives who had been captured by Sydes people on their way here. This reasonable request was refused at first but better counsels prevailed - and they were willing to give something to appease the anger of the enemy and sent back six captives - two of whom where the wives prayed for.

10th
11th

We marched four hours unmolested by the natives built a fence and next day crossed the Lokunda R. and its feeder the Mookosi - Here the people belonged to Chisabi who had not joined the other Babemba - we go between two ranges of tree covered mountains continuations those on each side of Moero.

12th

The tiresome tale of slaves running away was repeated again last night by two of Mpamari's making off though in the yoke and they had been with him from boyhood - Not one good looking slave woman is now left in Mohamad Bogharibs fresh slaves. All the pretty ones obtain favour by their address - beg to be unyoked and then escape. Four hours brought us to many villages of Chisabi and the camp of Syde bin Habib in the middle of a set in rain which marred the demonstration at meeting with his

12th
December
1868

relative Mpamari - but the women braved it through wet to the skin - and danced and lullilooed with "draigled" petticoats with a zeal worthy of a better cause as "the funny a liners" say - It is the custom for the trader who recieves visitors to slaughter ^ goats and feed all his guests for at least two days - Syde was not wanting in this hospitality though the set in rain continuing we did not enjoy it as in fine weather.

14th

Cotton grass and Brakens all over the country shew the great humidity of Marungu - rain daily but this is not the great rain which falls when the sun comes back South over our heads

15th

March two hours only to range Tamba - a pretty little light grey owl called Nkwekwe killed by a native as food a black ring round its face and black ears gave it all the appearance of a cat with whose habits it coincides -

16th - 17th - 18th

A brother of Syde bin Habib died last night - I had made up my mind to leave the whole party but Syde said that Chisabi was not to be trusted and the death of his brother having happened it would not be respectful to leave him to bury his dead alone - Six of his slaves fled during the night - One the keeper of the others - A Mobemba man who had been to the coast twice with him is said to have wished a woman who was in the chain. He loosed five out and took her off - the others made clear heels of it - And now that the grass is long and green no one can trace their course - Syde told me that the slaves would not have detained him but his brother's death did - We buried the youth who has been ill three months - Mpamari descended into the grave with four others - a broad cloth was held over

them horizontally and a little fluctuation made it as if to fan those who were depositing the body in the side excavation made at the bottom - When they had finished they pulled in earth and all shoved it towards them till the grave was level - Mullam then came - poured a little water into & over the grave mumbled a

[0493]

18th
December

a few prayers at which Mpamari said aloud to me "Mullam does not let his voice be heard" and Mullam smiled to me - as if to say "loud enough for all I shall get." Women all wailing loudly - We went to the usual sitting place and all shook hands with Syde as if receiving him back again into the company of the living.

Syde told me previously to this event that he had fought the people who killed his elder brother Salem bin Habib - and would continue to fight them till all their country was spoiled and a desolation - No forgiveness with Moslems for bloodshed. He killed many, took many slaves ivory & copper. His tusks number over 200 many of large size.

19th

To Chisabi's village stockade on the left bank of the Lofunso which flows in a marshy valley three miles

20th

broad - 21st eight of Muhamad Bogharibs slaves fled by night one with his gun and wife - a large party went in search but saw nothing of them - an elephant killed sent for the meat but Chisabi ordered the men to let his meat alone - experience at Kabwabwata said take the gentle course and two fathoms of calico & two hoes were sent to propitiate the chief - We then demanded half the meat and one tusk - the meat was given but tusk mildly refused - Chisabi is a youth - this is only the act of his counsellors - It was replied that Cazembe Chikumbi - Nsama - Merere made no demand at all

His counsellors have probably heard of the Portuguese self imposed law and wish to introduce it here but both tusks were secured.

22nd

Crossed the Lofunso - River - wading three branches first of 47 yards - then the river itself 50 yards and neck deep to men & women of ordinary size - Two were swept away and drowned - other two were rescued by men leaping in and saving them - one of whom was my man Suzi - A crocodile bit one person badly, but was struck and driven off - 2 slaves escaped by night - a woman loosed her husband's yoke from the tree and got clear off.

[0494]

488

24th
December.
1868

Five sick people detain us today - some cannot walk from feebleness and purging brought on by sleeping on the damp ground without clothes

Syde bin Habib reports a peculiar breed of goats in Rua - remarkably short in the legs - so much so that they cannot travel far - they give much milk and become very fat but the meat is indifferent Gold is found at Katanga in the pool of a waterfall only - It probably comes from the rocks above this His account of the Lofū or as he says West Lualaba is identical with that of his cousin Syde bin Omar It flows North but West of Lufira into the Lake of Kinkonza the chief- the East Lualaba becomes very large - often as much as six or eight miles broad with many inhabited islands the people of which being safe from invasion are consequently rapacious and dishonest - their chiefs Moenge and Nyamakunda are equally lawless - A hunter belonging to Syde named Kabwebwa gave much information gleaned during his hunting trips - Lufira has Nine feeders of large size - and one the Lekulwe has also Nine feeders -

another the Kisungu is covered with TikaTika by which the people cross it - Though it bends under their weight - He too ascribes the origin of the Lufira and Lualaba West or Lofū with the Liambai to one large earthen mound which he calls "Segulo" or an anthill -!

25th

Christmas day - we can buy nothing except the very coarsest food not a goat or fowl while Syde having plenty of copper can get all the luxuries - marched past M^l Kalanga leaving it on our left to Rt Kapeta and slaughtered a favourite kid to make a Christmas dinner A trading party came up from Ujiji - say that we were ten camps from Tanganyika - They gave an erroneous report that a steamer with

[0495]

489

25th
Dec^r
1868

a boat in tow was on Lake Chowambe - an English one too with plenty of cloth and beads on board - A letter had come from Abdullah bin Salem - Moslem missionary at Mtesa's to Ujiji three months ago with this news - such circumstantial statements made me recieve them but they turned out erroneous

26th

Marched up ascent 2½ hours and got onto the top of one of the mountain ridges which generally run N & S. Three hours along this level top brought us to Kibawe R^t a roaring rivulet beside villages. The people on the height over which we came though country is very fine - green and gay with varying shades of that colour - passed through patches of brakens 5 feet high

and gingers in flower - We were in a damp cloud all day - now and then a drizzle falls in these parts but it keeps all damp only & does not shew in the gauge - neither sun nor stars appear -

27 - 28

Remain on Sunday then march and cross five Rivulets about 4 yds & knee deep going to Lofunso - The grass now begins to cover and hide the paths - Its growth is very rapid - blobs of water lie on the leaves all day and keep the feet constantly wet by falling as we pass - Ranges of tree covered hills on each side and near to us - path over very undulating country

29th

Kept well on the ridge between two ranges of hills then went down and found a partially burned native stockade and lodged in it - the fires of the Ujiji party had set the huts on fire after the party left We are now in Hande district at Nswiba R^t -

30th

We now went due East - made a good deal of Easting too from M^t Kalanga on Lofunso - crossed the R Lokivwa 12 yards wide and very deep with villages all about - We now ascended much as we went East - very high mountains appeared on the N.W Scenery very fine and all green - woods dark green with large pathces of paler hue.

[0496]

490

31st Dec^r
1868

We reached the Lofuko yesterday in a pelting rain. Not knowing that the camp with huts was

near I stopped & put on a Bernoos - got wet
and had no dry clothes - Remain today to buy
food - clouds cover all the sky from N.W. The
river 30 yards goes to Tanganyika East of this
scenery very lovely.

I have been wet times without number but
the wetting of yesterday was once too often. Felt

1st
January
1869 -

very ill but fearing that the Lofuko might
flood I resolved to cross it - cold up to waist
made me worse but I went on for 2½ hours E.

then 2^d - 3^d -

March one hour but found I was too ill to
go further - Moving is always good in fever
Now I had pain in the chest and rust of iron
sputa - my lungs my strongest part were thus
affected - cross a rill and build sheds -
lost count of days of the week and month after
this - very ill all over

about 7th

Cannot walk - Pneumonia of right lung
cough all day and all night - sputa rust of
iron and bloody - Distressing weakness -
Ideas flowed through the mind with great rapidity ->
and vividness in groups of twos and threes - If I looked at
any piece of wood the bark seemed covered over
with figures and faces of men and they remained
though I looked away and turned to the same
spot again - I saw myself lying dead in the
way to Ujiji, and all the letters I expected there
useless - When I thought of my children and
friends the lines rung through my head
perpetually - "I shall look into your faces,"
"and listen what you say"
"and be often very near you"
"when you think I'm far away"
Muhamad Bogharib came up and I got

a cupper who cupped my chest -

[0497]

491

8 & 9
January
1869

Muhamad Bogharib offered to carry me - I am so weak I can scarcely speak - We are in Marungu proper now - a pretty but steeply undulating country this is the first time in my life I have been carried in illness but I could not raise myself to the sitting posture - no food except a little gruel - Great distress in coughing all night long - feet swelled and sore - carried four hours each day on a Kitanda or frame - like a cot - carried 8 hours one day - then sleep in a deep ravine - next day 6 hours - over volcanic tufa very rough - We seem near the brim of Tanganyika

23^d

sixteen days of illness - may be 23^d of January - It is 5th of lunar month - country very undulating It is perpetually up and down - soil red & rich knolls of every size & form - trees few Erythrinias abound, so do elephants - carried 8 hours yesterday to a chief's village - small sharp thorns hurt the mens feet and so does the roughness of the ground though there is so much slope water does not run quickly off Marungu - A compact mountain range flanks the undulating country through which we passed & may stop the water flowing - Muhamad Bogharib very kind to me in my extreme weakness but carriage is painful - head down feet up alternates with feet down head up - jolted up and down & sideways changing shoulders involves a toss from one side to the other of the Kitanda - sun vertical blisters any part of the skin exposed - I shelter my face & head as well as I can with a bunch of leaves but it is dreadfully fatiguing in my weakness -

A severe relaps after a very hot day sputa clear and irritating - great distress - next day sputa yellow gave respite - Muhamad gave medicine - one

a sharp purgative - others intended for cure of
cough

[0498]

492

February
1869

A[...]^t Tanganyika - ^ Parra the land at confluence of Lofuko - Syde bin Habib
had two ^ or three large canoes at this place - our beads were nearly
done so I sent to Syde to say that all the Arabs had served
me except himself - Thani bin Suellim by his letter
was anxious to send a canoe as soon as I reached
the Lake - - the only service I wanted of Syde was to
inform Thani by one of his canoes that I was
here - very ill and if I did not get to Ujiji to get
proper food and medicine I would die - Thani
would send a canoe as soon as he knew of my arrival
He replied that he too would serve me - sent flour
and two fowls - He would come in two days and
see what he could do as to canoes

15th Feby

cough & chest pain diminished & thankful
body greatly emaciated - Syde came today and is
favourable to sending ^ me up to Ujiji - thanks to the
Great Father in Heaven -

24th

We had remarkably little rain these two months

25th

Extracted twenty Funyes an insect like a maggot
whose eggs had been inserted by my having been put
into an old house infested by them - as they enlarge
they stir about and impart a stinging sensation
if disturbed the head is drawn in a little - if a poultice

is put on they seem obliged to come out possibly from
want of air - They can be pressed out but the large
pimple in which they live is painful - they were
chiefly in my limbs

26th
27th

Embark and sleep at Katonga after 7 hours paddling
Went 1 $\frac{3}{4}$ hours to Bondo or Thembe to buy food
shore very rough like shores near Caprera but
here all is covered with vegetation - We were to cross

28th

Kabogo but wind was too high - Kabogo is a large mass
of mountains on the Eastern side - Syde sent food back

2nd March

to his slaves - waves still high so we got off only on

3^d

at 1 h 30 m AM - 6 $\frac{1}{2}$ hours and came to M. Bogharib

6th

who cooked bountifully - 5 PM off to Toloka bay =
3 hours - left at 6 AM & came in 4 hours to Uguha
Turn over 7 leaves for Journal

[0499]
493

copy

Ujiji, on Lake Tanganyika
The Right Honourable Inner Africa
Lord Stanley 26 March 1869

My Lord - In July last I had the honour to send to Lord Clarendon a rapid sketch of my discoveries in this region, and I pointed out as well as the circumstances I was then in near Lake Bangweolo would allow that from the Watershed indicated ages ago by Ptolemy between 10° & 12° South Latitude, the drainage parted into three lines proceeding Northwards, and in the middlecentral line there are three Lakes connected by a large and very remarkable river which changes its name three times in the 500 or 600 miles of its course - I put forth the opinion that the sources of the Nile have hitherto in modern times been speculated upon and sought for very much too far to the North - But remembering that a hundred years ago - 1769 - Bruce a greater traveller than than any of us, visited Abyssinia, and having discovered the sources of the Blue Nile, he honestly thought that he then had solved the ancient problem, I was careful to add that my opinion implied a certain amount of reservation as to parts not yet explored - Your Lordship will please to consider this as a sort of supplement to the letter of July and containing some information which want of paper prevented my giving before -

Lake Bangweolo, called at some points Lake Bemba because they touch the country called Lobemba, is situated in Eleven south Latitude - the village on its North Western bank where I observed lay a few seconds into that Parallel - the Southern shores probably touch 12° South: In order to measure its width with as much accuracy as possible, I went 24 miles in a canoe to a small inhabited islet

[0500]

494

copy
Letter of
26th March
1869
Ujiji

named Mpabala - this was the first of three
 stages usually made in crossing it - From
 the highest part of this islet we could see the
 tops of trees evidently lifted by the mirage on
 a small uninhabited islet called Kasango -
 The second stage - The mainland is said to be
 as far distant on the other side as we were from
 Kasango - In sight of another island about
 ten miles North of Mpabala my canoe men
 told me that thence they had stolen the canoe
 A day after our arrival at Mpabala they got
 a hint that the lawful owners were coming to
 resume possession - this put them into a
 flurry to get back to their own village - I thought
 of appealing to the headmen of the islet to
 compel them to fulfill their engagement
 to go right across the Lake, but aware
 from past experience how easily acknow[ledg]ed
 thieves can get up a tale to excite the cheap
 sympathies of the softheaded or tender hearted
 I desisted, and groaning inwardly meekly
 submitted to be hurried back to the North Western
 shore - They had spent all their pay and could
 not refund two of the four days for which I
 had been obliged to make an advance -
 I had only my coverlet left to hire another
 craft and it was very cold for we were four
 thousand feet above the sea - I am therefore
 compelled to estimate the size of the Lake
 by the times the people take to go to different
 parts - the breadth is probably seventy miles
 and its length one hundred and forty or fifty
 It has four islands three of which are well[-]
 peopled - Previously to seeing them I
 imagined that these would sensibly diminish
 the size of the watery area, but they
 turned out to be mere specks on the

[0501]

495

copy

vast expanse of Lake - Measuring from the most
 Southerly point of one called Chirube - the largest -

we have one hundred and seventy five degrees of sea horizon - and at the point where the river Luapula leaves it I could not see across a mere arm of Bangweolo - the country adjacent is flat and well peopled with expert fishermen who ply their vocation in canoes with nets spears and hooks - Fish are abundant - of different kinds - and in the cool water at 4000 feet of altitude of superior quality - the bottom is of fine white sand, and the colour of the water the same as Tanganyika - sea green - Lake Nyassa alone has the deep dark blue of the Ocean but its depth is over one hundred fathoms - the river Chambeze flows into it at its North Eastern end, and the ^ river Luapula leaves it in the South West The Luapula may be compared with the Thames between the bridges - It is sometimes smaller - often much larger - It has one good sized waterfall situated nearer to Lake Moero o kata - the great Moero than to Bangweolo -

The Lakes - Bangweolo - Moero o kata - and a still unvisited body of water about 150 - one hundred and fifty miles W.S.W. of this Ujiji, into which the Lualaba as Luapula is called after passing through Moero - flows, - and is joined therein by the

rivers

Lufira and Lofū which constitute the West line of drainage, can scarcely by themselves be considered as sources - they are more of the nature of ^ the cisterns which are made to regulate the amount of water in our artificial canals - A large section of country near the centre of the watershed in which Bangweolo is situated is one immense sponge - It is a flat forest upland - where great humidity is apparent in all the trees - old and young being covered

[0502]

496

Copy of
Letter
26 March

with Lichens - some flat - others long & thready like old mens beards waving in the wind - this is seen nowhere else except in the damp Mangrove swamps on the sea coast - As we pass through the forest we every now & then light on slightly depressed valleys with neither bushes nor trees but covered with a thick sward of fine wiry grass from a foot to fifteen inches long - the wavy outline of the forest which comes to the edges of the valleys, makes them often look like beautiful glades in a gentleman's park in England - the soil is a black porous earth of great specific gravity - It might be called "Bog" but there is no peat, nor yet the moss and heather which form peat - Earthen sponge carries much of the idea which they impart. They are constantly oozing forth supplies of clear water - This at the upper end of the sponge valley collects into a sluggish stream - When this meets with more slope it becomes a perennial brook or burn with perpendicular banks, and say a hundred yards of sponge on each side continually augmenting its size - the banks and bottom are lined with aquatic vegetation which prevents abrasion even in floods - Their greatest outflow takes place about a month after the rains have entirely ceased, and by a system of natural valves they often flow faster and shew more water in the dry, than in the middle of the rainy season These sponges are a serious matter in travelling for they require from a quarter to an hour and a quarter in crossing - the paths usually take one high up the valley, yet in the fourth month of the dry season, I found them from calf to waist deep - One every now & then plunges with a jerk into deep holes and

[0503]

pains all his muscles - Even on comparatively dry ground a plump up to the knee causes a squirt of black mud up the thighs as if treading on a sponge - and it is only when you reach the trees, and are off what a farmer would call the sour land that you feel secure from mud and leeches - A birds eye view of these sponges with branches almost innumerable, would look like the vegetation of frost on the window panes, or that vegetation in Canada Balsam which mad Philosophical instrument makers insist on putting between the lenses of the object glasses of our telescopes - I venture to call these sponges the formation of which it would be too tedious to explain, and their perennial burns the primary or ultimate sources of the great rivers By their union considerable streams are formed of from 30 to 40 - to 100 or 140 yards broad and always deep enough to require bridges or canoes I counted from twenty three to twenty seven of those streams in the three lines of drainage of the great valley which trends North from the Watershed and propose to call them secondary sources the main drains which recieve the secondaries may be called the head waters or anything else that people may prefer -

The causes of the great humidity of the Watershed lie apparently in the direction of the prevailing winds, and its altitude as it stretches like a great bar or mound from 4000 to 6000 feet high from East to West across the country The South East wind from the Indian Ocean and Madagascar sea is the prevailing wind of the year, and more especially of the dry season - Its influence is well marked on the trees on the islands in Bangweolo having their branches stunted or killed on the South

[0504]

498

Copy
letter of
26 March
1869
Ujiji

East sides, while those on the Nor West sides run out straight - To this side also or away from the South East the trunks are bent - and in the forests, the Lichens cover the South East sides and branches thickly while leaving the Nor West comparatively free - the other prevailing wind is the North West from the Atlantic and low damp West coast of Africa is the active agent in the heavy rains - these winds blow constantly - In the dry season when hundreds of acres of dense long grass are burned off every the heated smoke is carried up through the South East, now the lower stratum, into the Nor West going the opposite way as the upper stratum - In the heavy rains the Nor West becomes the lower stratum in turn. These separate tiers of air continually overlap each other and strike either side of the elevated Watershed as the Sun has Northern or Southern Declination. When the Sun is South, the Nor West wind is cool and heavy, and naturally takes its place nearest the earth, and vice versa - But this subject to a reader possesses [^]no little interest - the changes here [^]however occur so regularly that to an observer they have an interest which cannot be realized in our variable climate

The notion of a rainy zone on which the clouds deposit their treasures in perennial showers has received no confirmation from my observations - In three years the rainfall was forty two - fifty three -

38

and ~~about forty~~thirty eight inches respectively

[Note: The comparatively small rain fall this year is owing to my having been off the Watershed for four months of the rainy season]

The rains cease entirely in May and begin again in November - The Natives all over the country in Southern Latitudes speak without hesitation as to the months

[0505]

499

Copy

in which no rain falls -

In addition to the Primary sources of the great rivers which I have mentioned we have two rivers rising out of fountains - they deserve notice inasmuch as if we except three hot springs these are the only fountains known in this country. They are situated about one hundred and fifty miles West of Lake Bangweolo - One gives rise to the Lufira which flows Northward - and it may turn out to be a fountain of the Nile The other is much larger than this, and the native description is - ["]one cannot make a man hear him on the [^]oppositeother side" - Here the Liambai (Leeambye) or Upper Zambesi has its origin It retains this name all the way down to the Victoria Falls - The Fountains of the Lufira and that of the Liambai come out of one mound or hill without rocks or stones and are only ten miles apart - I can entertain no doubt as to the correctness of this information because I recieved the very same account of the Upper Zambesi or Liambai rising out of a mound fifteen years ago from the natives living some 200 miles on the South West of it. and it is noticed in my journal - about one hundred and fifty miles North East of these remarkable fountains, a range of mountains thirty miles long is reported to be excavated into large dwellings three storeys high - From the description they are akin to those in the sandstone

Harûn

cliffs near to Mount Hor - The "Jebel Nebi Harima"
Mount of the prophet Aaron of the Arabs
Adjacent to the Red Sea - But here they differ
in a copious supply of water being laid on
the lowest storey has a rivulet two yards
wide and thigh deep running from end to
end. The same feature marks similar

[0506]

Copy
letter
26th March
1869
Ujiji

dwelling in Kabuire, and I was informed, when at the ^ base of the range of mountains in which they occur, that they are amply sufficient to receive all the inhabitants of a large district containing many thousand inhabitants - Provisions are stored in them every year to serve in case of invasion - Unfortunately the chief Muabo though otherwise very friendly would not allow me to ascend to examine the ancient dwellings, but advised me to wait a few months till he had made up his mind. He and four other chiefs had a dispute with some traders in the village to which I retired, and the five headmen made a combined attack on three sides of our defenceless village - As a mere spectator I thought that the natives fought very bravely, and but for a crowd of Banyamwezi with bows & arrows ^ on our side we should all have been driven into the forest. A fence was hastily constructed - the assault continued for three days, and those inside. were taunted with "come out if you are men and fight". an invitation which I for one had no inclination to accept - the guns of the traders proved more than a match for the bows and arrows = and Muabo having lost a near relative and principal man sent two slaves as a voluntary fine for having fought. There was now ^ no hope plain that Muabo. ~~did not wish~~ would shew a ~~any~~ stranger to see his places of refuge and I had to leave the excavations of Kabuire unexamined - As their formation is invariably ascribed to the Deity I suppose that they are the work of another race than that which now occupies the country. Had their forefathers made them some tradition would have existed remand of the fact - If I can visit the two fountains

[0507]

above mentioned and the thirty miles of

Copy

referred to - ~~also the other~~ excavations, and ascertain whether the outflow of the central & Western drainage from the unvisited Lake S.W. of this goes to either to the Congo, or to the Nile - I shall retire ~~think that I have done enough in the way of exploration~~

~~I have said nothing of the Eastern~~ line of drainage through Tanganyika for unless I am greatly misinformed there is no room for doubt that a deep passage exists at its Northern end called Loanda to Nzige - Chowambe - and the Nile - As soon as I have recovered sufficiently from a very severe attack of pneumonia which left me quite a skeleton I intend to go down this line in a canoe - I have some goods here which I placed in depot three years ago but before I can do more than this trip I shall require more goods and a fresh squad of attendants - When I reached the head of Tanganyika called Liemba - the difference of the altitude observed - 2880 feet - and that given by Captain Speke 1844 feet made me doubt whether Liemba were more than an arm of the Lake - I conjectured that a fall of nearly a thousand feet existed between them, But the Altitude given by Speke was in error. Respect for his memory leads me to offer the conjecture that poor Spekes observations actually shewed 2844 feet, but from the habit of writing the Annum Domini a mere slip of the pen led him to put down 1844 instead of the larger number -

I omit notices of the animal and vegetable kingdoms and ~~humbly~~ hope that my efforts in the line which I have more especially followed may obtain your Lordship's approbation -

I am &c

A true copy D.L. David Livingstone

P S

I have not been honoured by any better from the Foreign Office during the last three years

The exploration of the Watershed has been excessively tedious from being performed entirely on foot and in a country involved in war – the estimate which I formed that it could not be accomplished in less than two years has been exceeded Had I known the amount of toil, hunger and hardship – the alternate wettings and grilling heat from a vertical sun I should scarcely have undertaken the task – but having undertaken engaged to do it I could not bear to be beaten and that kept me at it – I have to go through Manyema a flat country West of this where the people are believed by the Arabs to be cannibals It is difficult to give credit to their positive statements because sheep goats and all kinds abound, but most respectable men assert that they have seen bodies of slaves who had died bought by the Manyema to be eaten – one may be good for nothing when alive but the prospect of being good for something after death is the way that these horrid fellows are said to manage is by no means reassuring

It seems desirable to examine the Eastern line of drainage through Tanganyika as far as Mr Bakers turning point I have some goods here but need more and a fresh squad of attendants from Zanzibar I have been greatly weakened by a severe attack of pneumonia It reduced me to a perfect skeleton but by ^ three months rest I am happy to find my strength returning

[0508]

502

copy

Ujiji 20 April 1869

To His Highness Sayid Majid - Sultan of Zanzibar

During the last three years I have met with many of the subjects of your Highness - and I have recieved a great deal of kindness from each of them - Indeed when I met with an Arab belonging to you and shewed him your letter I knew that I had found a friend - I shall always remember their kindness, and your own kindness with gratitude - I may well say so for had it not been for Muhamad Bogharib coming up and carrying me for eight days I should certainly have died of the severe disease I had two months ago -

On coming to this place I was sorry to find a great difference between your subjects between this and the coast, and your subjects further inland Of eighty (80), gorahs or pieces of cloth sent from Zanzibar sixty two (62) pieces had been stolen and a large quantity of my best beads - samsam

and Neckbeads were plundered - On enquiring of a man sent by Koroje Volumandas with the buffaloes named Musa Kamaals, a native of Ajem - "who had stolen the goods"? He replied that the Governor of Unyembe - Syde bin Salem Burashid had given the goods in charge to one of his own people - Musa bin Salum - a Belooch - not an Arab and this Musa bin Salum stopped the caravan for ten days in the way near to this and took cloth and beads as much as he wished - He bought ivory with some and then went to Karagwe to buy more - Karojos man Musa Kamaals says that he scolded Musa bin Salum for stopping the caravan & plundering it without giving him anything even to buy food - His mouth was stopped by a share of the spoil and he bought a wife and had enough to settle on at Ujiji - Musa Kamaals had

[0509]

503

nothing more of the goods for Thani bin Suellim took them into his house and kept them safely till I came -

I wrote to Syde bin Salem Burashid asking him to make enquiries about the theft of my goods - I dont know whether he saw when the caravan arrived at Unyembe that Musa Kamaals had been stealing - and made over the whole into his own man's hands to save them, but here all the people ^ generally know that Musa bin Salum was the chief thief - No one appears to doubt that he is the great culprit

I take the liberty of stating all this to your Highness not in the hope that my cloth and beads can be brought back from Karagwe, or the price of Musa Kamaals wife can be returned, but to beg the assistance of your authority to prevent a fresh stock of goods for which I now send to Zanzibar being plundered in the same way - Had it been the loss of ten or fifteen pieces of cloth only, I should not have presumed to trouble your Highness about the loss, but 62 pieces or gorahs out of 80 besides beads is like cutting a man's throat - If one or two gaurds of good character could be sent by you no one would plunder the Pagasi next time -

I wish also to hire twelve or fifteen good

freemen to act as canoemen or porters or in any capacity that may be required - I shall be greatly obliged if you appoint one of your gentlemen who knows this country to select that number and give them and their headman a charge as to their behaviour - If they know that you wish them to behave well, it will have great effect - I wish to go down Tanganyika through Loanda and Chowambe and past the river of Karagwe

[0510]

504

which falls into Lake Chowambe - Then come back to Ujiji - visit Manyema and Rua and then return to Zanzibar where I hope to see

a true
copy
DL.

Your Highness in the enjoyment of health and happiness David Livingstone H M Consul
copy Ujiji = Lake Tanganyika 19th April
1869

His Highness Sultan Abdullah = Johanna

In 1866 I applied to Your Highness to be allowed to hire some men to accompany me into Africa, and perform any kind of service I might desire - you very kindly gave orders to your Minister to see that my wishes should be attended to - An agreement was entered into, of which I enclose a copy, and Captain Garforth of HMS Penguin advanced wages on my behalf amounting to Twenty Nine Pounds four shillings sterling.

When at the South end of Lake Nyassa we met an Arab who had been punished with the loss of all his goods and slaves by the Wanyassa or Manganja of Kasunga for - as they said destroying the country by bringing in arms and ammunition, and exciting one village against another to pay him for debts they had incurred As the Wanyassa are not warlike, this Arab said that he had been plundered by the warlike and marauding Mazitu whose nearest villages were one hundred and fifty miles distant from the place where we met the Arab - Musa the head of the Johanna men immediately said - "I no want to be killed by Mazitu - I want to see

my father and mother and child at Johanna - No
go Mazitu - No go Mazitu" &c. I asked the chief at
whose village we were what he thought of the Arab's
statements - and Musa heard him say that they
were lies - but Musa reiterated "That Arab speak true

"

true true" - I then told the Johanna men that I did
not wish to go to the Mazitu any more than they
did - that the Mazitu were very far to the North

[0511]

505

and to avoid them I would go due West till far past
all the Mazitu, and then go North - they all said "No,

"

no go, no go". - Many of them had served with me
for years before satisfactorily - I knew of no cause of
complaint against myself except that several began
to steal from the bundles, and I insisted on Musa
who was always honest bringing up his men, and
not allowing them to stop behind and plunder the
goods - At this Musa sulked and now when
I went West all ran away.

Having thus broken their engagement I shall feel
obliged if Your Highness will give orders to the proper
minister for me the advance made by Captain
Garforth £29 - 4 say one hundred & forty six dollars
also eight new muskets at five dollars each say
forty dollars, and the price of a man of war's cutlass
The property of HM Government taken away by Musa
the whole amounting to at least 186 dollars

You will have the goodness to recover and send
the same to HBM Consul and Political Agent at
Zanzibar I am &c David Livingstone

A true

copy HM Consul, Inner Africa

iv Copy of engagement signed before W^m Sunley Esq HM Consul

"We engage to accompany D^r Livingstone into the Interior of Africa, and to serve him as Porters Boatmen or in any other capacity for a period of twenty months for the sum of seven (7) dollars each per month; and we hereby acknowledge that we have recieved two months advance - Moosa to recieve 10\$ per month

Lowalea

Mahooda

Ali Bacchari

Madi Miraje

Ali Mad

Maddi Moosa

Moosa Combo

Jooma Toora

Ali Hamija

signed before me at

Pomony, Johanna -

This ninth day of March 1866

(signed) W^m Sunley

HM Consul

a true copy

D.L.

[0512]

506

7th

March

1869

Uguha on West side of Tanganyika

Left at 6 PM and went on till two canoes ran on rocks in the way to Kasanga islet - Rounded a point of land and made for Kasanga with a storm in our teeth - 14 hours in all - Recieved by a young Arab from Muscat who dined us sumptuously at Noon - there are seventeen islets in the Kasanga group

8th

On Kasanga islet - cochin china fowls & muscovy ducks appear and plenty of a small milkless breed of goats

Tanganyika has many deep bays running in
four or five miles - they are choked up with aquatic
vegetation through which canoes can scarcely be
propelled - If the bay has a small rivulet at
its head the water in the bay is decidedly brackish
though the rivulet be fresh - It made the Zanzibar
people re[...]ma]rk on the Lake water "It is like that we
get near the Sea shore" - "a little salt" but as soon
as we get out of the shut in bay or lagoon into the
the proper the water is quite sweet and Lake
shews that a current flows through the middle of
the Lake lengthways

Patience was never more needed than now. I am
near Ujiji but the slaves who paddle are tired and no
wonder they keep up a roaring song all through their
work night and day - I expect to get medicine food
and milk at Ujiji but dawdle and do nothing
I have good appetite and sleep well - these are
the favourable symptoms - am dreadfully thin
bowels irregular & I have no medicine - sputa
increases with constipation - hope to hold out to

9th

Ujiji cough worse - hope to go tomorrow
Whydah birds have at present light breasts
and dark necks - Zāhor name of young Arab host

11th

Go over to Kibize islet 1 ½ hours from Kasanga
great care is taken not to encounter foul weather
we go a little way then wait for fair wind in crossing

[0513]

507

12th

March

1869

to East side of Lake - People of Kibize dress like
in Rua with cloth made of Muale or Wild date

leaves - the same is used in Madagascar for the
lamba - Hair collected up to the top of the head -

From Kibize islet to Kabogo R on East side
of Lake ten (10) hours - sleep there - Syde slipped
past us at night but we made up to him in 4 hours

13th

next morning - at Rombole - we sleep - then on

14th

go past Malagarazi river & reach Ujiji in
3 ½ hours - Found Haji Thani's agent in charge
of my remaining goods - Medicines - wine - cheese
had been left at Unyenembe 13 days East of this
milk not to be had as the cows had not calved
But a present of Assam Tea from M^r Black the
Inspector of the - P & O Company's affairs had come
from Calcutta - my own coffee and a little sugar
I bought a little butter - two large pots are sold for two
fathoms of blue calico and four year old flour
with which we made bread - I found great
benefit from the tea and coffee and still more
from flannel to the skin -

15th

Took account of all the goods left by the plunderer
As mentioned in the letter to Sayid Majid of which
a copy is made 2 leaves back sixty two out of eighty
pieces of cloth each 24 yards were stolen and most of
my best beads - the road to Unyembe is blocked
up by a Mazitu or Watuta war so I must wait till
the Governor there gets an opportunity to send them
The Musa sent with the buffaloes is a genuine
specimen of the ill conditioned English hating Arab -
I was accosted on arriving by you must give me
5 dollars a month for all my time - this though
he had brought nothing = the buffaloes all died -
and did nothing but recieve stolen goods - then
I tried to make use of him to go a mile every
second day for milk - shammed sickness so often
on that day I had to get another to go - then made

[0514]

508

16th
March
1869

a regular practice of coming into my house watching
what my two attendants were doing and going about
the village with distorted statements against them
I clothed him - but he tried to make bad blood
between the respectable Arab who supplied me with
milk and myself - telling him that I abused him &
coming back saying that he abused me! I can account
for his conduct only by attributing it to that which
we call ill conditioned - I had to expel him from
the house
I repaired a house to keep out the rain and on the

23^d

moved into it - gave our Kasanga host a cloth
and blanket - he is ill of pneumonia of both lungs

28th

Flannel to skin & tea very beneficial in cure of
my disease - cough ceased and I walk half a mile

April
8th

I am writing letters for home
Visited Moenemokaia who sent me two fowls
and rice - gave him two cloths - He added a sheep -

13th

Writing letters - for home - employed Suleyman to
write notes to Governor of Unyembe Syde bin Salem
Burashid to make enquiries about theft of my
goods as I meant to apply to Syed Majid and
wished to speak truly about his man Musa
bin Salum the chief depredator
Wrote also to Thani for boat and crew to go
down Tanganyika
Syde bin Habib refused to allow his men to
carry my letters to the coast - suspected that I would
write about his doings in Rua -

27th

Syde had three canoes smashed in coming
up past Thembe - wind and waves drove
them on rocks and two were totally destroyed -
they are heavy unmanageable craft and at
the mercy of any storm if they cannot get
into a shut bay behind the reeds and aquatic
vegetation - one of the wrecks is said to have
been worth 200 dollars - £40

[0515]

509

May
13th
1869.

The season called Masika commenced this
month with the usual rolling thunder and more
rain than in the month preceding

I have been busy writing letters home and
finished forty two which in some measure will
make up for my long silence - The Ujijians are
unwilling to carry my letters because they say
Sayed Majid will order the bearer to return with others
He may say "you know where he is go back to him"
I suspect they fear my exposure of their ways more
than anything else -

16th

Thani bin Suellim sent me a note yesterday to say that he would be here in two days or say three He seems the most active of the Ujijians and I trust will help me to get a canoe and men -

The Malachite at Katanga is loosened by fire - then dug out of from hills - Four manehs of the ore yield one maneh of copper - those who cultivate the soil get more wealth than those who mine the copper -

17th

Syde bin Habib arrived today with his cargo of copper and slaves - I have to change house again and wish I were away now that I am getting stronger - attendants arrive from Parra - or Mparra -

The Bakatala at Lualaba West killed Salem bin Habib - Keep clear of them
Makwamba one chief of rock dwellings
Ngulu - another - Masika-kitobwe another on to Baluba - Sēph attacked Kilolo ntambwe

18th

Muhamad bin Saleh arrived today - He left this when comparatively young and is now well advanced in years -

[0516]

510

May
19th
1869

The emancipation of our West Indian slaves was the work of but a small number of the people of England -

the Philanthropists and all the more advanced thinkers of the age - Numerically they were a very small minority of the population, and powerful only from the superior abilities of the leading men, and from having the right - the true and just on their side - Of the rest of the population an immense number were the indifferent who had no sympathies to spare for any beyond their own fireside circles - In the course of time sensation writers came up on the surface of society, and by way of originality they condemned almost every measure & person of the past - " Emancipation was a mistake", and these fast writers drew along with them a large body who would fain be slaveholders themselves - We must never lose sight of though the majority perhaps are on the side of freedom the fact that ^large numbers of Englishmen are not slaveholders only because the law forbids the practice - In this proclivity we see a great part of the reason of the frantic sympathy of thousands with the rebels in the great Black war in America It is true that we do sympathize with brave men though we may not approve of the objects for which they fight - We admired Stonewall Jackson as a modern type of Cromwell's Ironsides - and we praised Lee for his generalship which after all was chiefly conspicuous by the absence of commanding abilities in his opponents - But unquestionably there existed besides an eager desire that slaveocracy might prosper, and the negro go to the wall - the would be slaveholders shewed their leanings unmistakeably in reference to the Jamaica outbreak and many a would be Colonel Hobbs, in lack of revolvers, dipped his pen in gall and railed against all Niggers who could not be made slaves = We wonder what they thought of their hero when informed that for very shame at what he had done & written he rushed unbidden out of the world like a dog with his tail between his legs -

[0517]

511

May
26th
1869

Thani bin Suellim came from Unyinyembe on the 20th - a slave who has risen to freedom & influence

has a disagreeable outward squint of the right eye -
teeth protruding from the everted lips - light coloured
and of the nervous type of African - brought two
light boxes from Unyembe and charged six fathoms
for one & 8 fathoms for the other though the carriage
of both had been paid for at Zanzibar - When I paid
him he tried to steal, and succeeded with one cloth
by slipping it into the hands of a slave - I gave him
two cloths and a double blanket as a present - He
discovered afterwards what he knew before that all
had been injured by the wet in the way here, and
sent two back openly - which all saw to be an insult -
asked a little coffee & I gave a plateful - sent again
for more coffee after I had seen reason to resent
his sending back my present - I replied - "he wont
send coffee back" for I shall give him none - In
revenge he sends round to warn all the Ujijians
against taking my letters to the coast - This is in
accordance with their previous conduct, for like
The Kilwa people on the road to Nyassa they have
refused to carry my correspondence - This is a
den of the worst kind of slave traders - those
whom I met in Urungu & Itawa were gentlemen
slavers; the Ujiji slaver like the Kilwa and
Portuguese are the vilest of the vile - It is not a
trade but a system of consecutive murders -
they go to plunder and kidnap, and every trading
trip is nothing but a foray - MoeneMokaia
the headman of this place sent canoes through to
Nzige - and his people feeling their prowess among
men ignorant of guns made a regular assault
but were repulsed - and the whole - twenty in
number - were killed - MoeneMokaia is now
negotiating with Syde bin Habib to go & revenge
this, for so much ivory, and all he can get

[0518]

512

26th
May
1869

besides - Syde ~~has~~ by trying to revenge his brother's
death on the Bakatala has blocked up one part
of the country against me, and will probably
block Nzige for I cannot get a message sent

to Chowambe by anyone and may have to go
to Karagwe on foot & then from Rumanyika down
to this water -

29th

Many people went off to Unyembe and their houses
were untenanted - I wished one as I was in a lean to
of Zahor but the two headmen tried to secure the rent
for themselves and were defeated by Muhamad bin
Saleh - I took my packet of letters to Thani and gave
two cloths and four bunches of beads to the man who is
to take them to Unyanyembe - an hour afterwards
letters cloths & beads were returned - Thani said he was
afraid of English letters - he did not know what was
inside - I had sewed them up in a piece of canvas
that was suspicious, and he would call all the great
men of Ujiji and ask them if it would be safe to take
them. If they assented he would call for the letters if
not he would not send them” - I told Muhamad
bin Saleh and he said to Thani that he and I were men
of the Government and orders had come from Syde
Madjid to treat me with all respect - Was this respectful?
Thani then sent for the packet! but whether it will
reach Zanzibar I am doubtful - I gave the rent to

31st

the owner of the house and went into it on 31st May
They are nearly all miserable Swaheli at Ujiji and
have neither the manners nor the sense of Arabs
Tanganyika has encroached on the Ujiji
side upwards of a mile - The bank which was in
the memory of men now living garden ground is
covered with about two fathoms of water - In this
Tanganyika resembles most other rivers in this
country - as the upper Zambesi which in the
Barotse country has been wearing Eastwards
for the last thirty years - this lake or river has worn
Eastwards too.

[0519]

June
1st
1869

I am thankful to feel getting strong again - and wish to go down Tanganyika but cannot get men Two months must elapse ere we can face the long grass and superabundant water in the way to Man-yema -

The green scum which forms on still water in this country is of vegetable origin - confervae - when the rains fall they swell the lagoons and the confervae is swept into the Lake - Here it is borne along by the current from South to North and arranged in long lines which bend from side to side as the water flows but always N.N.W. or N.N.E. and not driven as here by the winds as plants floating above the level of the water would be

[Drawing of 4 parallel lines each with top portion bent back at right angles to the bottom portion as described to signify being blown in a different direction if above the water.]

7th

It is remarkable that all the Ujiji Arabs who have any opinion on the subject believe that all the water in the North and all the water in the South too flows into Tanganyika but where it then goes they have no conjecture - they assert as a matter of fact that Tanganyika - Usige water - and Loanda are one and the same piece of river - Thani on being applied to for men and a canoe to take me down this line of drainage consented but let me know that his people would go no further than Uvira & then return - He subsequently said Usige but I wished to know what I was to do when left at the very point where I should be most in need he replied in his silly way - " My people are afraid" they wont go further" - get country people" - &c Moeneghere sent men to Loanda to force a passage through but his people were repulsed and twenty killed - Three men came yesterday from Mokamba the greatest chief in Usige with four tusks as a present to his friend Moeneghere - and asking for canoes to be sent down to the end of Urundi country to bring butter and other things which the three

June
7th
1869

men could not bring - This seems an opening for Mokamba being Moeneghere's friend I shall prefer paying Moeneghere for a canoe to being depend[-]ent on Thani's skulkers - If the way beyond Mokamba is blocked up by the fatal skirmish referred to I can go from Mokamba to Rumanyika three or four or ^ more days distant and get guides from him to lead me back to the main river beyond Loanda - By this plan only three days of the stream will be passed over unvisited - Thani would evidently like to receive the payment but without securing to me the object for which I pay - He is a poor thing - a slaveling - Syde Majid - Sheikh Suleiman & Koroje have all written to him urging an assisting deportment in vain - I never see him but he begs something and gives nothing - I suppose he expects me to beg from him! I shall be guided by Moeneghere -

I cannot find anyone who knows where the outflow of the unvisited Lake SW of this goes. some think that it goes to the Western ocean or I should say the Congo - Mohamad Bogharib goes in a month to Manyema - but if matters turn out as I wish I may explore this ^ Tanganyika line first - One who has been in Manyema three times, and was of the first party that ever went, says that the Manyema are not cannibals, but a tribe west of them eats some parts of the bodies of those slain in war. Some people South of Moenekus chief of Manyema build strong clay houses -

22nd
June

After listening to a great deal of talk I have come to the conclusion that I had better not go with Moeneghere's people to Mokamba - I see that it is to be a mulcting as in Speke's case - I am to give largely though I am not thereby assured of getting down the river - "You must give much because you are a great man" - "Mokamba will say so"

though Mokamba knows nothing about me

[0521]

515

22nd
June
1869

This talk pleased Speke and he gave enormously but for meeting with Masudi an Arab trader he would have expended all his goods in midway Masudi gave him some beads for \$1000 or 1100\$ It is uncertain whether I can get down through by Loanda and great risk would be run in going to those who cut off the party of Moeneghere I have come to the conclusion that it will be better for me to go to Manyema about a fortnight hence and if possible trace down the Western arm of the Nile to the North If this arm is indeed that of the Nile & not of the Congo - Nobody here knows anything about it or indeed about the Eastern or Tanganyika line either - they all confess that they have but one question in their minds in going anywhere - they ask for ivory and for nothing else, and each trip ends as a foray - Moeneghere's last trip ended disastrously twenty six of his men being cut off - In extenuation he says that it was not his war but Mokamba's - He wished to be allowed to go down through Loanda and as the people in front of Mokamba and Usige own his supremacy he said send your force with mine and let us open the way - they went on land and were killed - An attempt was made to induce Syde bin Habib to clear the way and be paid in ivory but Syde likes to battle with those who will soon run away and leave the spoil to him - the Manyema are said to be friendly where they have not been attacked by Arabs - A great chief is reported as living on a large river flowing North-wards, I hope to make my way to him - I feel exhilarated at the thought of getting among people not spoiled by contact with Arab traders - I would not hesitate to run the risk of getting through Loanda the continuation of Usige beyond Mokamba's had blood not been shed so very recently there but it would at present be a great danger for only about sixty miles of the Tanganyika line -

[0522]

516

22nd

June

1869

- If I return hither from Manyema my goods and fresh men from Zanzibar will have arrived and I shall be better able to judge as to the course to be pursued after that - Mokamba is about twenty miles beyond Uvira - the scene of Moeneghere's defeat is ten miles beyond Mokamba - so the unexplored part cannot be over sixty miles - say thirty if we take Bakers estimate of the southing of his water as near the truth -

Salem or Palamotto told me that he was sent for by ^ a headman near to this to fight his brother for him - He went and demanded prepayment - then the brother sent him three tusks to refrain - Salem took them and came home - The Africans have had hard hard measures meted out to them in the world's history -

28th

June

The current in Tanganyika is well marked when the lighter coloured water of a river flows in and does not at once mix - the Luiche at Ujiji is a good example and it shews by large light greenish patches on the surface a current of nearly a mile an hour North - It begins to flow about February and ~~March~~ and continues running North till November or December ~~when the rains North of the Equator affect it~~ - Evaporation on 300 miles of the South is ^ then at its strongest, and water begins to flow gently South ~~from Usige~~ till arrested by the flood of the great rains ^ there which take place in February and March - there is it seems a reflux for about three months in each year - Flow and reflow being the effect of the rains and evaporation on a lacustrine river of some three hundred miles in length lying ~~chiefly~~ South of the Equator - The flow Northwards I have myself observed - that again Southwards rests on native

testimony, and it was elicited from the Arabs by pointing out the Northern current - they attributed the Southern current to the effect of the wind which

they say

^then blows South - Being cooled by the rains it ~~blows~~ comes South into the hot valley

[0523]

517

28th
June
1869

of this great Riverein Lake or lacustrine river -
In going to Moenekuss the paramount chief of the Manyema forty days are required - the headmen of trading parties remain with this chief who is said by all to be a very good man, and send their people out in all directions to trade - Moenemogaia says that in going due North from Moenekuss they come to a large river the Robumba which flows into ^ and is the Luama and that again into the Lualaba which ~~seems to~~ retains its name after flowing with the Lufirā & Lofū into the still unvisited Lake SSW. of this - It goes thence due North probably into M^r Bakers part of the Eastern branch of the Nile - When I have gone as far North along Lualaba as I can this year I shall be able to judge as to the course I ought to take after receiving my goods and men from Zanzibar - and may the Highest direct me so that I may finish creditably the work I have undertaken I propose to start for Manyema on the 3^d July -

10th
July

After a great deal of delay and trouble about a canoe we got one from Habee for ten dotis or 40 yards calico and a doti or 4 yds to each of

9 paddlers to bring the vessel back - Thani and Zahor blamed me for not taking their canoes for nothing - but they took good care not to give them - but made vague offers which meant we want much higher pay for our dows than Arabs generally get - they shewed such an intention to fleece me that I was glad to get out of their power and save the few goods I had - Went a few miles when two strangers I had allowed to embark from being under obligations to their masters - worked against each other till I had to let one land and but for his master would have dismissed the other had to send an apology to the landed man's master for politeness sake

[0524]
518

11th
July
1869

Off at 6 AM and passed mouth of the Luiche in Kibwe bay 3 ½ hours took us to Rombola or Lombola where all the building wood of Ujiji is cut -

12th

Left at 1 - 30 AM and pulled 7 ½ hours to the left bank of the Malagarasi R. We cannot go by day because about 11 AM a South West wind commences to blow which the heavy canoes cannot face - It often begins earlier or later according to the phases of the moon - An East wind blows from Sun[-] rise till 10 or 11 and the South West begins Malagarasi is of considerable size at its confluence and has a large islet covered with a eschinomena or pith hat material growing in its way

13th

Off at 3 - 15 AM - and in 5 hours reached
Kabogo Rt - From this point the crossing
is always accomplished - It is about 30
miles broad - Tried to get off at 6 PM but
after two miles the South wind blew and
as it is a dangerous wind and the usual
in storms the men insisted on coming
back - the wind having free scope above the
entire Southern length of Tanganyika raises
waves perilous to their heavy craft - the
clouds cleared all away and the wind died
off too - Full moon shone brightly and this
is usually accompanied by calm weather
here - storms occur at New moon most
frequently

14th Sounded in dark water opposite the
high mountain Kabogo 326 fathoms
but line broke in coming up and we
did not see the armed end of the sounding
lead with sand or mud on it - this is
1965 feet -

[0525]
519

15th
July
1869

After pulling all night we arrived at some
islands and cooked breakfast then went
on to Kasenge islet on their South and came
up to Muhamad Bogharib who had come
from Tongwe and intended to go to
Manyema - We cross over to the mainland
about 300 yards off to begin our journey
on the 21st Lunars on 20th Delay to
prepare food for journey - Lunars again
22nd got a curious bit of Basango history

23^d

- Gave a cloth to be kept for Kasanga
the chief of Kasenge who has gone to fight

with the people of Goma

31st

and 1st Muhamad killed a kid as a sort of sacrifice and they pray to Hadrajee before eating it - the cookery is of their very best and I always get a share - I tell them that I like the cookery but not the prayers and it is taken in good part -

Aug. 2nd

embark from the islet and go over to the mainland slept in a hooked thorn copse with a species of black ^ pepper plant which we found near the top of Mount Zomba in the Manganjā country - in our vicinity - It shews humidity of climate -

3^d

Marched 3 ¼ hours South along Tangan-yika in a very undulating country very fatiguing in my weakness - Many screw palms passed - sleep at Lobamba village 3 ¼

4th

- A relative of Kasanga engages to act as our guide - remained waiting for him & employed a Banyamwezi smith to make copper balls with some bars of that metal presented by Syde bin Habib A lamb stolen and all declared that

[0526]

7th
Aug.
1869

the deed must have been done by Banyamwezi
as Guha people never steal and I believe
this is true -

the guide having arrived we marched
2 ¼ West and crossed the river Logumba
about 40 yards broad and knew deep - rapid
current between deep cut banks - It rises
in the Western Kabogo range and flows
about SW into Tanganyika - much dura
or Holcus Sorghum is cultivated on the
rich alluvial soil on its banks by the
Guha people 2 ¼

8th

West 3 ½ hours through open
Forest very undulating and path full
of angular fragments of quartz - we
see mountains in the distance -

[List of 3 numbers (readings) bracketed together under "56° at 6 AM."] 3 ½

9th

March West and by North 1 ¾ up a rivulet
6 yards broad and across it - No water
in front for three hours so we camped
still among Makhato's villages

10th

Course West 2 hours and cross two Rivulets
a yard each and calf deep full of screw
palms - Trees generally covered with
Lichens especially on SE exposure - Met
a company of natives beating a drum
as they came near - this is the peace

signal if war is meant the attack is
quiet and stealthy - Masuko trees laden
with fruit but unripe - It is cold at
night but dry and the people sleep with
only a fence at their heads - I have a shed
built at every camp as a protection for
the loads and sleep in it 2

[List of 3 numbers (readings) bracketed together under "75° 3 PM D° D° 6 PM 73°".]

[0527]
521

Aug.
1869

Any ascent though gentle makes me blow
since the attack of Pneumonia - If it is
inclined to an angle of 45° - a hundred or
150 yards make me stop to pant in distress.

11th

Came 2 ½ West and nearly all gentle
descent to a village of Barua surrounded by
hills of some 200 feet above the plain trees
sparse

[List of 3 numbers (readings) bracketed together under "77° 9 AM".]

[List of 3 numbers (readings) bracketed together under "80° 6 PM".]

[List of 3 numbers (readings) bracketed together under "84° 3 PM".] 2 ½

At villages of Mekheto - Guha people -

12th - 13th

remain to buy & prepare food and because
many are sick = 15th North 1 - 30 then over hills ¼

16th

West and by North - country gently undulating 1¾
with ranges of hills N. & S. of our course and

much forest - reach Kalalibebe - buffalo killed

17th

to High mountain Gölu or Gulu and 2¾
sleep at its base 3.50

18th

cross two rills flowing into R^t Mgoluze
Kagoya & Moishe flow into Lobumba

19

to R Lobumba 45 yards thigh deep and
rapid current - Logumba and Lobumba 4.30
are both from Kabogo M^{ts} - one goes into
Tanganyika and the other or Lobumba into
and is the Luamo - the country East of the
Lobumba is called Lobanda - that West of
it Kitwa

20th

very windy - Lobumba has worn itself a bed
in sandstone rock 1 - 25

21st

Went on to Rt Loungwa which has worn for
itself a rut in New red sandstone 20 feet deep
and only 3 or 4 feet wide at the lips - 3 ¼

25th

We rest because all are tired - travelling
at this season is excessively fatiguing - It
is very hot even at 10 AM and 2 ½ or 3

hours tires the strongest - carriers especially
so - during the rains 5 hours would not
have fatigued so much as 3 do now
We are now on the same level as Tan-
-ganyika

[0528]

522

26th
August
1869

The dense masses of black smoke rising
from the burning grass and reeds on the
Lobumba or Robumba obscures the
sun and very sensibly lowers the temper[-]
-ature of the sultriest day - It looks like the
smoke in Martin's pictures

27th

The Manyema arrows here are very small
and made of strong grass stalks but poisoned
the large ones too are poisoned for elephants
and buffaloes -

31st

course NW. among Palmyras and Hyphene
and many villages swarming with people
crossed Kibila a hot fountain about 120°
to sleep at Kotokoto R^t 5 yds & knee deep
and midway R^t Kanzazala on asking the
name of a mountain on our right I got
three names for it Kaloba Chingedi and
Kihomba - a fair specimen of the super

Sept^r
1st

abundance of names in this country
West in flat forest then cross Kishila R
and go on to Kunde's villages - the Katamba
is a fine rivulet - Kunde is an old man
without dignity or honour - came to beg -
but offered nothing -

2nd

Remain at Katamba to hunt buffaloes
and rest - as I am still weak - A young

3^d

elephant killed and I got the heart the
the Arabs dont eat it but that part is
nice if well cooked -

4th

A Lunda slave for whom I interceded
to be freed of the yoke ran away and
as he is near the Barua his countrymen
he will be hidden - He told his plan to our
guide and asked to accompany him back
to Tanganyika but he is eager to deliver
him up for a reward - All are eager
to press each other down in the mire
into which they are already sunk -

[0529]

523

Sept^r 1869
5th

Kunde's people refused the tusks of an elephant
killed by our hunter asserting that they had
killed it with a hoe - they have no honour
here as some have elsewhere -

7th

W and N-W- through forest [...]immense fields
of Cassava - some three years old - roots as
thick as a stout mans leg - 3¼

8th

Across five R^{ts} and through many villages
country covered with Ferns and gingers
Miles and miles of Cassava on to vil. of.
Karungamagao 3½

9th

Rest again to shoot meat as Elephants
and buffaloes are very abundant the
Swaheli think that adultery is an obstacle
to success in killing this animal - no harm
can happen to him who is faithful to his wife
and has the proper charms inserted under
the skin of his ^ forearms

10

North and Nor West over 4 Rts and past the
village of Makala to near that of Pyana-
-mosinde 5

12

- We had wandered and now came back to our path
on hilly ground - days sultry and smoking -
came to villages of Pyana mosinde The
population prodigiously large - a sword 2
was left at the camp and at once picked up
though the man was traced to a village it was
refused till he accidentally cut his foot with it
and became afraid that worse would follow
Elsewhere it would have been given up at once

Pyana mosinde came and talked very sensibly

13th

along towards the Moloni or Mononi vils
cross 7 rills - people seized three slaves who
lagged behind but hearing a gun fired at
guinea fowls let them go - Route N - 4

14

Up and down hills perpetually - went down
into some deep dells filled with gigantic trees
measured one 20 feet in circumference & 60 or 70 ft high

[0530]

524

1869

to the first branches - others seemed fit to
be ships spars - Large Lichens covered many
and numerous new plants appeared on the

Sept^r
15th

ground 3 $\frac{3}{4}$

Got clear of the mountains after 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ hours
and then the vast valley of Mamba opened
out before us - very beautiful and much
of it cleared of trees - Met Dugumbe carrying
18.000 lbs of ivory purchased in this new
field very cheaply because no traders had
ever gone into the country beyond Bambarre
or Moenekuss' district before - We were
now in the large bend of the Lualaba which
is now much larger than at Mpwetos
near Moero Lake = R^t Kesingwe 5 $\frac{1}{4}$

16th

To Kasangangazi's We now came to the first Palm oil trees ("Elais Guineensis") in our way since we left Tanganyika - they had evidently been planted at villages and light grey parrots with red tails now became common - Its name Kuss or Koos gives the chief his name Monekuss "lord of the parrot" but the Manyema pronuntiation is Monang-goose - Much reedy grass fully ½ an inch in diameter in the stalk on our route and over the top of the range ^ Moloni we ascended - the valleys are impassable - 4

17th

Remain to buy food at Kasanga's and rest the carriers - country full of palm oil palms and very beautiful - our people are all afraid to go out of sight of the camp for necessary purposes lest the Manyema should kill them - Here was the barrier to traders going North for the very people among whom we now are murder anyone carrying a tursk till last year

[0531]

525

Sept^r
17^{[t]h}
1869

when Moenemokaia or Katomba got into friendship with Moenekuss who protected his people and always behaved in a generous sensible manner - Dilongo now a chief here came to visit - his elder brother died and he was elected - does not wash in consequence and is

18th

very dirty -

Two buffaloes killed yesterday - The people have their bodies tattooed with new & full moons - stars crocodiles and Egyptian gardens

19th

crossed several Rivulets 3 yds to 12 yds & calf deep Mountain where we camped Sangomelambe 3 ½

20th

Up to a broad range of high mountains of light grey granite = deep dells on top filled with gigantic trees and having running rills in them some trees appear with enormous root buttresses like Mangroves in coast swamps - six feet high at the trunk and flattened from side to side to about 3 inches in diameter Many villages dotted over the slopes we climbed one had been destroyed and revealed the hard clay walls and square forms of Manyema houses - Ferns and Lichens on trees - Path partly along a ridge with a deep valley on each side - one on the left had a valley filled with primeval forests into which elephants when wounded escape completely - the forest was a dense mass without a bit of ground to be seen except a patch on the S.W. - the bottom of this great valley was 2000 feet below us - Then ranges of mountains with villages on their bases rose as far as the eye could reach - On our right another deep but narrow gorge and mountains much higher than our ridge close adjacent our ridge looked like a glacier and it wound from side to side and took us to the edge of deep precipices first on the right then on the left till down below we came to the villages of chief

Sept^r
 20th
 1869

Monandenda - Houses all well filled with
 firewood on shelves - Bed on a raised plat-
 form in an inner room - NW. 4 ¼

21st

cross 5 or 6 Rivulets and as many villages
 some burned and deserted or inhabited - Very
 many people came running to see these
 strangers - gigantic trees all about the villages
 arrive at Bambarre or Moenekuss' 3

Camps

29 - about 80 hours of actual travelling
 say at 2' per hour == say 160' or 140' - Westing
 From 3^d August to 21st September - My strength
 increased as I persevered - From Tanganyika
 West bank say =
 [Calculation based on geographical co-ordinates resulting in 27° 10' Long..]
 chief village of Moenekuss' =

Nº 1
 - 2
 - 3

[List of 3 numbers (readings) bracketed together under "6 AM 76°".]
 [List of 3 numbers (readings) bracketed together under "9 AM 77°".]
 [List of 3 numbers (readings) bracketed together under "Noon 80°".]
 [List of 3 numbers (readings) bracketed together under "3 PM 82°".]
 [List of 3 numbers (readings) bracketed together under "20th 3 PM 78°".]
 clouded over from N.W.
 shews a little lower altitude than Tanganyika

22nd

Moenekuss died lately and left his two sons to fill his place - Moenembagg is the elder of the two sons and the most sensible and the spokesman on all important occasions but his younger brother Moenemgoi is the chief the centre of authority - they shewed symptoms of suspicion and Muhamad performed the ceremony of mixing blood which is simply making a small incision on the forearm of each person and there mixing the bloods - and making declarations of friendship - Moenembagg said " your people must not steal - We never do" which is true - blood in a small quantity was conveyed from one to the other by a fig leaf - "no stealing of foods or of men" said the chief - "Catch the thief & bring him to me - said Muhamad" "one who steals a person is a pig" - stealing began on

[0533]

527

Sept^r
22nd
1869

our side a slave stealing a fowl so they had good reason to enjoin on us honesty - they think that we have come to kill them - We light on them as if from another world - no letters come to tell who we are or what we want - We cannot conceive their state of isolation and helplessness with nothing to trust to but their charms and idols - both being bits of wood = I got a large beetle hung up before an idol in the idol house of a deserted and burned village the guardian was there but the village destroyed -

23^d

I presented the two brothers with 2 tablecloths
4 bunches of beads and one string of neckbeads

They were well satisfied

24th

A wood here when burned emits a horrid
faecal smell, and one would think the camp pollut[-]
-ed if one fire was made of it - built a house &
closet - the village houses are inconvenient low
in roof and low doorways - the men build them
and help to cultivate the soil but the women
have to keep them well filled with firewood
and supplied with water - they carry the wood &
almost everything else in large baskets hung to
the shoulders like the Edinburgh fish wives
A man made a long loud prayer to Mulungu
last night for rain - It was after dark

25th

The sons of Moenekuss have but little of their
fathers power but they try to behave to strangers
as he did - All our people are in terror of the
Manyema or Manyuema man eating fame
A woman's child had crept into a quiet corner
of the hut to eat a banana - she did not catch
a glimpse of him and at once concluded
that the Manyuema had kidnapped to eat him
and with a yell ran through the camp and
screamed "Oh the Manyuema have stolen
my child to make meat of him" at the top of
her shrill voice - Oh my child eaten "Oh" Oh"

[0534]

528

Sept^r
26th
28th
1869

A Lund slave girl sent off to buy a tusk but
the Manyuema dont want slaves as we were
told in Lunda - they are generally thieves and

bad characters otherwise - It is now clouded
over and preparing for rain when sun
comes overhead - A soko alive was believed
to be a good charm for rain - one was caught
and the captor had the ends of two fingers
and toes bit off - soko or gorillah always
tries to bite off these parts - and has been
known to overpower a young man and
leave him without the ends of fingers and
toes - He is said to have come behind a
man hoeing with his privates exposed
behind and seized the part in fun! I saw
the nest of one a poor contrivance - not more
architectural skill shewn than in the
nest of our Cushat dove

29th

visited a hot fountain an hour West of our
camp - It has five eyes - Temp - 150° - slightly saline
taste and steam issues constantly - It is called
Kasugwe Colambu - Earthquakes are well[-]
known and to the Manyema they seem to
come from the East to West - pots rattle and
fowls cackle on these occasions

1st Oct 2nd

A Rhinoceros shot and party sent off to
the R Luamo to buy ivory 5th an elephant
killed and the entire population goes off to
get meat - At first it was given freely but
after it was known how eagerly the
Manyuema sought it six or eight goats were
demanded for a carcase and given -

9th

The rite of circumcision is general among
all the Manyema - It is performed on the
young - If a headmans son is to be operated
on it is tried on a slave first - certain times
of the year are unpropitious as during

[0535]

529

Sept^r
1869

a drought, and having by this experiment ascertained the proper time they go into the forest beat drums and feast as elsewhere but contrary to all African custom they are not ashamed to speak about the rite even

14th

before women -

An elephant killed was of the small variety and only 5 feet 8 inches high at the withers - the forefoot was in circumference 3 ft nine in - which doubled gives 7 feet 6 in - this shews a deviation from the usual rule - "Twice round the forefoot = the height of the animal" - Heart 1 ½ feet long - Tusks 6 ft 8 in. in length -

15th

Fever - better and thanful - very cold and rainy

18th

Our Hassani returned from Moene Kirumbo's There one of Dugumbe's party also called Hassani seized ten goats and ten slaves before leaving though great kindness had been shewn this is genuine Swaheli or Nigger Moslem tactics - 4 of his people were killed in revenge -

24th 25th

Making copper rings as these are highly[-]
prized by Manyema - Muhamads Tembe
fell - It had been begun on an unlucky
day the 26th of moon - and on another occasion
on same day he had 50 slaves swept away
by a sudden flood of a dry river in the
Obena country - they are great observers of
lucky and unlucky days

Oct^r
1869

Nov^r

Being now well rested I resolved to go West
to Lualaba and buy a canoe for its
exploration - our course was West and
South West through a country surpass-
ingly beautiful - Mountainous - and
villages perched on the talus of each
great mass for the sake of quick drain-
age - the streets often run East & West

[0536]

530

Nov
1869

in order that the bright blazing sun may
lick up the moisture quickly off the streets
the dwelling houses are generally in line
and public meeting houses at each end
opposite the middle of the street - the roofs
are low but well thatched with a leaf
resembling the banana leaf but more
tough it seems from its fruit to be a
species of Euphorbia - the leaf stack
has a notch made in it of two or three
inches lengthways and this hooks on
to the rafters which are often of the leaf

stalks of Palms split up so as to be thin -
the water runs quickly off this roof
and the walls which are of well beaten
clay are screened from the weather -
Inside the dwellings are clean and
comfortable and before the Arabs
came bugs were unknown - one may
know where these people have come
by the presence or absence of these nasty
vermin - The human tick which infests
all Arab and Swaheli houses is to the
Manyema unknown - In some cases
where the South East rains are abundant
the Manyema place the back side of the
houses. to this quarter and prolong the
roof low down so that the rain does not
reach the walls - these clay walls stand
for ages and men often return to the villages
they left in infancy, and build again
the portions that many rains have
washed away - the country is generally
of clayey soil and suitable for building
Each housewife has from 25 to 30
earthen pots slung to the ceiling by
very neat cord swinging tressles

[0537]

531

Nov
1869

and often as many neatly made baskets
hung up in the same fashion & much firewood

5th

In going we crossed the River Luella ^ of 20 yards five times
in a dense dripping forest - the men of one
village always refused to accompany us
to the next set of hamlets - "they were at war"
"and afraid of being killed and eaten" they
often came five or six miles through the
forests that separate the districts but when

we drew near to the cleared spaces cultivated by their enemies - they parted civilly & invited us to come the same way back and they would sell us all the food we required

Country all surpassingly beautiful Palms crown the highest heights of the mountains and their gracefully bended fronds wave beautifully in the wind - the forests usually about five miles broad between groups of villages are indescribable - Climbers of cable size in great numbers among the gigantic trees - Many unknown wild fruits some the size of a child's head - strange birds and monkeys - soil excessively rich - People isolated by old feuds that are never settled but they cultivate largely they have selected a kind of maize that bends its fruit stalk round into a hook and hedges some 18 feet high are made by inserting poles which sprout out like Robinson Crusoe's hedge and never decay Lines of climbing plants are tied so as to go along from pole to pole and the maize cobs are suspended to these by their own hooked fruit stalk - As the cob in forming the hook turned round the fruit leaves of it hang down and form a

[0538]

532

Nov
1869

thatch for the grain. beneath or inside it this upright granary forms a solid[-] looking wall round the villages and the people are not stingy but take down maize and hand it to the men freely - the women are very naked - they bring loads of provisions to sell through the rain and are eager traders for beads - Plantains Cassava maize are the chief food - the first rains had now begun and the white ants took

the hint to swarm and colonize -

6th 7th 8th

We came to many large villages and were variously treated - one headman presented me with a parrot and on my declining it gave it to one of my people - some ordered us off but were coaxed to allow us to remain overnight - they have no restraint - some came and pushed off the door of my hut with a stick while I was resting as we should do with a wild beast cage -

Though reasonably willing to gratify curiosity it becomes tiresome to be the victim of unlimited staring by the ugly as well as by the good looking I can bear the women but ugly males are uninteresting and it is as much as I can bear when a crowd will follow me even when going to closet - they have heard of Dugumbe. Hassani deeds and are evidently suspicious of our intentions - they said if you have food at home why come so far and spend your beads to buy it here If it is replied on the strength of some of Muhamad's people being present

[0539]

533

Nov
8th

We want to buy ivory too - not knowing its value they think that this is a mere subter[-]
-fuge to plunder them - Much Palm toddy at different parts made them incapable of reasoning further - they seemed inclined to fight but after a great deal of talk we departed without collision

9th

We came to villages where all were civil - at others Palm trees and Palm toddy abundant and people low and disagreeable in consequence the mountains all around are grand & tree[-] covered - valleys extremely fertile - saw a man with two great great toes - the double toe is usually a little one -

11th

We had heard that the Manyema were eager to buy slaves but that meant females only to make wives of them - they prefer goats to men - Muhamad had bought slaves in Lunda in order to get ivory from Manyema but enquiry here and elsewhere brought it out plainly that they would rather let the ivory lie unused or rot than invest in male slaves who are generally criminals at least in Lunda - I advised my friend to desist from buying slaves who would all "eat off their own heads" but he knew better than buy copper and on our return he acknowledged that I was right -

15th

came into country where Dugumbe's slaves had maltreated the people greatly and they looked on us as of the same tribe - We had much trouble in consequence - country swarming with villages - Hassani of Du[-]gumbe got the chief into debt and then robbed him of ten men and ten goats to clear off the debt - the Dutch did the same in the

17

South - copious rains brought us to a

19

halt at Muana balange's on banks of
the Luamo R - Moenekuambo had
died lately and his substitute took

[0540]

534

Nov^r
20th
- 25th

seven goats to the chiefs on the other side in order
to induce them to come in a strong party
and attack us for Hassani's affair - We were
now only about ten miles from confluence
of the Luamo and Lualaba but all the
people had been plundered and some
killed by the slaves of Dugumbe - Luamo
is here some 200 yards broad and deep
the chiefs were begged to refuse us a
passage any where - the women were
particularly outspoken in asserting our
identity with the cruel strangers and
when one lady was asked in the midst
of her vociferation just to look if I were
of the same colour with Dugumbe she
replied with a bitter little laugh "then
you must be his father" - ! It was of no
use to try to buy a canoe now for all
were our enemies - It was now the
rainy season and I had to move with
great caution - the worst our enemies
did after trying to get up a war in vain
was to collect in force as we went by
fully armed with their large spears and
huge wooden shields and shew us out
of their districts - All are kind except
those who have been abused by the Arab
slaves - While waiting at Luamo a man
sent over to buy food got into a panic and
fled he knew not whither - all concluded
that he had been murdered but Manyema
we had never seen found and fed and
brought him home unscathed - Glad

that no collision had taken place we

19th
Dec^r
1869

returned to Bambarre 19th Dec^r 1869
Journal continued after
the following four Despatches on
leaf of 21 October = Turn over
to it -

[0541]
A true copy D.L. 535

To

D^r John Kirk HM Consul &c - Manyema 5th February 1871
Zanzibar Advances of pay and goods to be refunded by
the Johanna men whose names and agreement
are enclosed
Pay in cash to be refunded £29 - 4
the money was advanced on my behalf
by Captain Garforth HMS Penguin
Eight new muskets at 6 dollars each £8 - 12
One man of war's cutlass taken away
by Musa price not known ^ to be added - - -
Serge for clothing £2 - -
£39 16
They ran away solely on account of
a false report from an Arab like
themselves saying that he had been
plundered by Mazitu - they had
no other reason that I know of
and mentioned this alone - we were
then 150 miles distant from the
Mazitu and the spot of the alleged
plunder - I offered to go due West
and not turn to the North till far
beyond the beat of the Mazitu but
Musa said "No No I no go. I want
to see my father - my mother, my
child at Johanna I no want
be killed by Mazitu - no, no, no,
I no go" &c &c I took him to the

head-man of the Babisa village
and asked if the report were true
he replied "I believe it to be false"
but Musa reiterated - "No, no, the
Arab man speak true true &c -
When I turned my face West
all ran away - the cruel lie
they told which put my friends
in mourning ought to be punished
at least so far as refunding the
above sums but I leave it in
yours hands - David Livingstone (turn over

[0542]

536

Note
Nov^r
14th
1871

The men in charge of my goods purchased
with half of a £1000 thousand pounds sent
me by Government by M^{[ess]rs} Churchill &
and Kirk left Zanzibar about the end of
October 1870 - and remained at Bagamoio
till the latter part of February 1871 that is
about four months - the date on the mail
bag shews that it was made up in Nov^r
1870 - these men reached Unyanyembe
at the ~~beginning~~ middle of May - 1871 or nearly three
months in the way and have not left it
in December 1871 -

Copy of original agreement of Johanna men
"We engage to accompany D^r Livingstone
into the Interior of Africa and to serve
him as Porters, Boatmen, or in any other
capacity for a period of twenty months
for the sum of seven (7) dollars each
per month, and we hereby acknow[-]
-ledge that we have recieved two months
advance - Moosa to recieve 10\$ per month
Towalia
Mahooda

Ali Bacchari
Madi Minaje
Ali Mad
Maddi Moosa
Moosa Combo
Jooma Toora
Ali Hamji
Engaged before me at Pomony -
Johanna this ninth day of March
1866
W^m Sunley
HM Consul
a true copy
David Livingstone
original sent to D^r Kirk Dec^r 1871

[0543]
537

Bambarre = Manyuema country
say, about 150 W. of Ujiji 15 November 1870
The Right Honourable
Lord Stanley
My Lord -
As soon as
I recovered sufficiently to be able to march from
Ujiji - I went up Tanganyika about sixty
miles, and thence struck away Nor West into
the country of the Manyuema or Manyema =
the reputed cannibals - My object was to follow
down the central line of drainage of the Great
Nile valley which I had seen passing through
the great lake Bañgweolo, and changing its
name from Chambeze to Luapula = then
again on passing through Lake Moero, assum-
ing Lualaba and after forming a third
Lake = Kamolondo becoming itself a great
Lacustrine river or Riverein lake with
many islands in it - I soon found myself
in the large bend which this great Lacustrine
river makes by flowing West about 180
miles then sweeping round to the North -
Two hours were the utmost I could accomplish
in a day but by persevering I gained
strength, and came up to the trading party
of Muhamad Bogharib who by native
medicines and carriage saved my life in
my late severe illness in Marungu = Two
days before we reached Bambarre - the residence
of the most sensible chief in Manyema

called Moenekuss, we met a band of Ujijian traders carrying 18,000 lbs weight of ivory bought in this new field for a mere trifle in thick copper bracelets and beads - the traders had been obliged to employ their slaves to collect the ivory, and slaves with

[0544]

538

with guns in their hands are often no better than Demons - We heard but one side of the story = the slaves version - and such as would have appeared in the Newspaper if they had one - "the Manyema were very bad = were always in the wrong = wanted in fact to eat the slaves = and always gave them just reason to capture women and children, goats, sheep, fowls and grain - " The masters did not quite approve of this, but the deeds had been done - and then masters and men joined in one chorus "the Manyema are bad, bad, bad, awfully bad, and cannibals" - In going West of Bambarre in order to embark on the Lualaba, I went down the Luamo - a river of from 100 yards to 200 yards broad which rises in the mountains opposite Ujiji and flows across the great bend of the Lualaba - When near its confluence, I found myself among people who had been maltreated by the slaves, and they naturally look on me as of the same tribe with their cruel persecutors - Africans are not generally unreasonable though smarting under wrongs if you can fairly make them understand your claim to innocence and do not appear as having your "back" "up" - the women were particularly outspoken in asserting our identity with the cruel strangers - on calling to one vociferous lady who gave me the head traders name to look at my colour, and see if it were the same as his - she replied with a bitter little laugh - "then you must be his father"! the worst the men did was

[0545]

539

to turn out in force armed with their large spears and wooden shields, and shew us out of their districts - Glad that no collision took place, we returned to Bambarre = and then with our friend Muhamad struck away due North = He to buy ivory, and I to reach another part of the Lualaba and buy a canoe -

The country is extremely beautiful, but difficult to travel over - the mountains of light grey granite stand like islands in New Red sandstone, and mountain and valley are all clad in a mantle of different shades of green - The vegetation is indescribably rank - through the grass, if grass it can be called which is over half an inch in diameter in the stalk, and from ten to twelve feet high, nothing but elephants can walk = the leaves of this Megatherium grass are armed with - minute spikes which as we worm our way along elephant walks rub disagreeably on the side of the face where the gun is held and the hand is made sore by fending it off the other side for hours - the rains were fairly set in by November; and in the mornings or after a shower the leaves were loaded with moisture which wet us to the bone - the valleys are deeply undulating, and in each innumerable dells have to be crossed - there may be only a thread of water at the bottom, but the mud, mire, or scotticé "glaur" is grievous - thirty or forty yards of the path on each side of the stream are worked by the feet of passengers into an adhesive compound - By placing a foot on each

[0546]

540

side of the narrow way, one may waddle a

little ^
distance

along, but the rank crop of grasses, gingers and bushes cannot spare the few inches of soil required for the side of the foot, and down he comes into the slough - the path often runs along the bed of the rivulet for sixty or more yards, as if he who first cut it out went that distance ~~along~~ seeking for a part of the forest less dense for his axe - In other cases the "Muale" palm from which here as in Madagascar grass cloth is woven and called by the same name "Lamba", has taken possession of a valley - the leaf stalks as thick as a strong man's arm fall off and block up all passage save by a path made and mixed up by the feet of elephants and buffaloes - the slough therein is groan compelling and deep - Every now and then the traders with rueful faces stand panting = the sweat trickles down my face and I suppose that I look as grim as they though I try to cheer them with the hope that good prices will reward them as the coast for ivory obtained with so much toil - In some cases the subsoil has given way beneath the elephants enormous weight - the deep hole is filled with mud, and one taking it all to be about calf deep, steps in to the top of the thigh, and flaps on to a seat soft enough but not luxurious a merry laugh relaxes the facial muscles though I have no better reason for it than that it is better to laugh than to cry

/^

Some of the numerous rivers which in this region flow into Lualaba -

[0547]

541

are covered with living vegetable bridges -

a species of dark glossy leaved grass with
its roots and leaves felts itself into a mat
that covers the whole stream = When stepped
upon it yields twelve or fifteen inches and
that amount of water rises up on the leg -
At every step the foot has to be raised high
enough to place it on the unbent mass in
front - This high stepping fatigues like
walking on deep snow - Here and there
holes appear which we could not sound
with a stick six feet long - they gave the
impression that anywhere one might
plump though and finish the chapter -
There the water is shallow the Lotus or
sacred lilly sends its roots to the bottom,
and spreads its broad leaves over the
floating bridge so as to make believe that
the mat is its own, but the grass referred to
is the real felting and supporting agent,
for it often performs duty as bridge where no
lillies grow - The bridge is called by the
Manyema - "Kintefwetefwe" as if he
who first coined it was grasping for
breath after plunging over a mile of it

Between each district of Manyema
large belts of the primeval forest still stand
into these the sun though vertical cannot
penetrate except by sending down at
midday thin pencils of rays into the
gloom - The rain water stands for months
in stagnant pools made by the feet of
elephants - and the dead leaves decay
on the damp soil and make the water
of the numerous rivulets of the colour
of strong tea - The climbing plants
from the size of whip cord to that of a
man of war's hawsers are so numerous

[0548]

542

The ancient path is the only passage - When
one of the giant trees falls across the
road, it forms a wall breast high to be
climbed over - and the mass of tangled
ropes brought down makes cutting a
path round it a work of time which
travellers never undertake - the shelter of
the forest from the sun makes it

but the roots of trees high out of the soil
across the path keep the eyes oxlike on
the ground - The trees are so high that
a good shotgun does no harm to
parrots or guinea fowls on their tops
and they are often so closely planted
that I have heard gorillahs here called
Sokos - growling about 50 yards off
without getting a glimpse of them -
His nest is a poor contrivance
It exhibits no more architectural skill
than the nest of our Cushat dove -
Here he sits in pelting rain with his
hands over his head - The natives give

Soko a good character and from
what I have seen he deserves it but
they call his nest his house, and
laugh at him for being such a fool as
to build a house and not go beneath it
for shelter -

Bad water and frequent wettings
told on us all by choleraic symptoms
and loss of flesh - Meanwhile the news
of cheap ivory caused a sort of Californi[-]
-an gold fever at Ujiji and we were
soon overtaken by a herd numbering
600 muskets all eager for the precious
tusks - these had been left by the Man[-]
[-]yema in the interminable forests

[0549]

543

where the animals had been slain - the
natives knew where they lay and if
treated civilly readily brought them many
half rotten or gnawed by a certain
Rodent to sharpen his teeth as London
rats do on leaden pipes - I had already in
this journey two severe lessons that
travelling in an unhealthy climate in the
rainy season is killing work - By
getting drenched to the skin once too often
in Marungu I had pneumonia = the illness
to which I have referred, and that was worse
than ten fevers - That is, fevers treated by

our medicine, and not by the dirt supplied to Bishop Mackenzie at the Cape as the same - Besides being unwilling to bear the newcomers company, I feared that by further exposure in the rains the weakness might result in something

or a
little
back[-]
[-]wards

worse - I went seven days South West to a camp formed by the headmen of the ivory horde, and on the 7th February went into winter quarters - I found these men as civil and kind as I could wish - A letter from the Sultan of Zanzibar which I owe to the kind offices of Sir Bartle Frere has been of immense service to me with most of his subjects - I had no medicine but rest - shelter, boiling all the water I used, and a new potato farmed among the natives as restorative soon put me all right - the rains continued into July and fifty eight inches fell - The mud from the clayey soil of Manyema was awful, and laid up some of the strongest men in spite of their intense eagerness for ivory - I lost no time after it was feasible to travel

[0550]

544

in preparing to follow the river but my attendants were fed and lodged by the

from
the
camp

slave women whose husbands were away ^on trade and pretended to fear going into a canoe - I consented to refrain from buying one - They then pretended to fear the

people though the inhabitants all along the Lualaba were reported by the slaves to be remarkably friendly - I have heard both slaves and freemen say "No one will ever attack people so good" as they found them - Elsewhere I could employ the country people as carriers but was comparatively independent though deserted by some four times over - but in Manyema no one can be induced to go into the next district for fear they say of being killed and eaten - I was at the mercy of those who had been Moslem slaves and knew that in thwarting me they had the sympathy of all that class in the country, and as many others would have done took advantage of the situation - I went on with only three attendants - and this time North West in ignorance that the great river flowed West and by South - but no one could tell me anything about it - a broad belt of Buga or Prairie lies along the right bank - Inland from this it is all primeval forest with villages from eight to ten miles apart one sees the sun only in the cleared spaces around human dwellings From the facilities for escaping the forest people are wilder and more dangerous than those on Buga lands

[0551]

545

Muhamad's people went further on in the rest than I could, and came to the mount[-] [-]ainous country of the Balegga who collected in large numbers and demanded of the strangers why they came - "We came to buy ivory" was the reply, "and if you have none no harm is done we shall return" "Nay" they shouted - "you came to die and this day is your last, you came to die, you came to die" - When forced to fire on the Balegga - the Terror was like their insolence - extreme - and next day when sent for to take away the women and children who were captured, no one appeared - Having

travelled with my informants I know
their accounts to be trustworthy - The rivers
crossed by them are numerous and
large - One was so tortuous they were five
hours in water waist and often neck
deep with a man in a small canoe
sounding for places which they could
pass, and could see nothing in the forest
and nothing in the Balegga country but
one mountain packed closely to the back
of another without end, and a very hot
fountain in one of the valleys - I found
continued wading in mud grievous -
For the first time in my life my feet
failed - When torn by hard travel
instead of healing kindly as here to fore
irritable eating ulcers fastened on each
foot - The people were invariably civil
and even kind for curiously enough
to Zanzibar slaves propagated every
where glowing of my goodness and
of the English generally because
they never made slaves - A trading

[0552]

546

party passed us, and one of their number
was pinned to the ground at dead of night
while I was sleeping with my three -
attendants at a village close by - Nine
villages had been burned and as the author
of the outrage told me at least forty men
killed because a Manyema man tried
to steal a string of beads - The midnight
assassination was revenge for the loss
of friends there - It was evident that
reaction against the bloody Ujijian
slaving had set in - The accounts
evidently truthful given by Muhamad's
people shewed that nothing would be
gained by going further in our present
course, and now being very lame I
limped back to Bambarre and here
I was laid up by the eating ulcers for
many months - they are common in
the Manyema country and kill many
slaves - If the foot is placed on the
ground blood flows, and every night

a discharge of bloody ichor takes place
with pain that prevents sleep - The
wailings of poor slaves with ulcers that
eat through everything even bone
is one of the night sounds of a slave
camp - They are probably allied to Fever

I have been minute even to
triviality that your Lordship may
have a clear idea of the difficulties of
exploration in this region - satisfactory
progress could only be made in canoes
with men accustomed to work - I tried
hard to get others at Ujiji, but all the
traders were eager to secure all the
carriers for themselves, and circulated

[0553]

547

the report that I would go away from Man-
-yema to my own country and leave my people
to shift for themselves "like Speke"- they
knew perfectly that Speke's men left him
first - It was like the case of certain Makololo
who left me on the Shire, and refused to
carry back the medicine to their chief for which
they had come = I was afterwards accused by
men of similar to the Ujijians of having
abandoned them though I gave them cattle
even after they deserted me - these being the
wealth that they value most highly - Failing
to obtain other men ^ at Ujiji, ~~for whom I had written~~ I might have waited in comfort
there till those for whom I had written should
come from the coast, and my great weak[-]
ness almost demanded that I should do
so, but I had then as now an intense
desire to finish the work and retire - But
on learning some parts of the history of
of the Lewale or Arab governor of
Unyinyembe I had grave suspicions
that my letters would be destroyed = He
conducted the first English Expedition
from Zanzibar to Ujiji and Uvira, and
back again to the coast - and was left un[-]
-paid till the Indian Government took
the matter up and sent him a thousand
dollars - He seems ^ to be naturally an ill conditioned
mortal = a hater of the English - When I
sent a stock of goods to be placed indepot

at Ujiji to await my arrival - The
Banyamwezi porters as usual brought
them honestly to Unyinyembe - The
governor then gave them in charge
to his slave Saloom who stopped the
caravan ten days in the way hither
while he plundered it, and then went
off to buy ivory for his master in
Karagwe = It was evident that he would
do what he could to prevent evidence

[0554]

548

of the plundering going to the coast - and his
agent at Ujiji who knew all this though
I did not - after I had paid him in full
all he asked to send the packet with
about forty letters, returned it back to me
with the message that "he did not know
what words these letters contained = Two
of my friends protested strongly and he
took the packet - When I learned the
character of the governor I lost hope
of any letters going to the coast and took
back my deserters, making allowance
for their early education and for the
fact that they did well after Musa fled
up to the time that a black Arab who had
long been a prisoner with Cazembe found
us - He encouraged them to desert
and harboured them, and when they
relented on seeing me go off to Bañgweolo
with only four followers and proposed
to follow me he dissuaded them by the
gratuitous assertion that there was war
in the country to which I was going
and he did many other things which we
think discreditable though he got his
liberty solely by the influence I brought
to Cazembe, yet judged by the East
African Moslem standard as he ought
to be and not by ours, he is a very
good man and as I have learned to
keep my own counsel among them,
I never deemed it prudent to come to
a rupture with the old "Neer do weel"-

Compelled to inactivity ^ here for many
months I offered a thousand dollars

to several of the traders for the loan of
ten of their people - This is more than
that number of men ever obtained but
the imaginations were inflamed, and

[0555]

549

each expected to make a fortune by in ivory
now lying rotting in the forests, and
no one would consent to my propositions
till his goods should be all expended and
no hope of more ivory remained. I
lived in what may be called the Tipperary of
of Manyema and they are certainly a bloody
people among themselves But they are very
far from being in appearance like the ugly
negroes of the West Coast - Finely formed
heads are common, and generally men &
women are vastly superior to the Zanzibar
slaves and elsewhere = We must go deeper than phrenology
to account for their low moral tone -
If they are cannibals they are not ostentatious[-]
-ly - The neighboring tribes all assert
that they are men eaters and they themselves
laughingly admit the charge but they like to
impose on the credulous, and they shewed
the skull of a recent victim to horrify one
of my people - I found it to be the skull of
a gorillah or Soko the first I knew of its
existence here and this they do eat - If
I had believed a tenth of what I heard from
traders I might never have entered the
country - Their people told tales with
shocking circumstantiality as if of eye
witnesses that could not be committed
to paper or even spoken about beneath the
breath - Indeed one wishes them to vanish
from memory - But fortunately I was
never frightened in infancy with "Bogie"
and am not liable to attacks of what may
almost be called "Bogiephobia" for
the patient in a paroxysm believes everything
horrible if it be ascribed to the possessor
of a -black skin- I have not yet been
able to make up my mind as to whether

[0556]

the Manyema are cannibals or not - I
 have offered goods of sufficient value
 to tempt any of them to call me to see
 a cannibal feast in the dark forests
 where these orgies are said to be held
 but hitherto in vain ^ all the real evidence

yet ^
 obtained

would elicit from a Scotch Jury the
 verdict ^ only of "not proven" -

Although I have not done half I
 hoped to accomplish I trust to your
 Lordship kind consideration to
 award me your approbation
 and am your most obedient servant
 David Livingstone
 H M Consul
 Inner Africa

[0557]
 551

Ujiji 1st November 1871

The right Honourable
 The Earl of Clarendon
 My Lord -

I became aware
 of M^r Youngs Search Expedition only in February
 last & that by a private letter from Sir Roderick
 Murchison - Though late in expressing my thankful-
 -ness I am not the less sincere in ~~expressing~~ saying ~~my~~ that
 I feel extremely obliged to HM Government - to the
 Admiralty, to Captain Richards - to Sir Roderick
 Murchison - to M^r Young - and all concerned in
 promoting the kind & vigorous enquiry after my
 fate - Had the low tone of morality among East
 African Mohammedans been known - Musa's tale
 would have received but little attention - Musa
 is perhaps a shade better than the average low
 class Moslem, but all are notorious for falsehood
 & heartlessness - When on the Shire we were in
 the habit of swinging the vessel out into midstream
 every evening in order that the air set in motion
 by the current of the river might pass through her

entire length the whole night long - One morning Musa's brother inlaw stepped into the water in order to swim off for a boat to bring his companions on board, and was seized by a crocodile - the poor fellow held up his hand as if imploring assistance in vain - On discovering Musa's heartlessness - he replied "Well" - no one tell him go in there" - At another time when we were at Senna - a slave woman was seized by a crocodile - four Makololo rushed in unbidden, and rescued her though they knew nothing about her - Long experience leads me to look on these incidents as typical of the two races - The race for mixed blood possesses the vices of both parents and the virtues of neither - I have had more service out of low class Moslems than any one else -

[0558]

552

the Baron Von der Deeken was plundered of all his goods by this class in an attempt to go to Nyassa - As it was evidently done with the connivance of his Arab guide - Syed Majid ordered him to refund the whole It was the same class that by means of a few Somali ultimately compassed the Baron's destruction - In Burton's Expedition to Ujiji and Uvira he was obliged to dismiss all his followers of this class at Ujiji for dishonesty - Most of Speke's followers deserted on the first appearance of danger, and Musa & companions fled on hearing a false report from a half caste Moslem like themselves that he had been plundered by Mazitu at a spot which from having accompanied me thither & beyond it they knew to be 150 miles or say 20 days distant - and I promised to go due West, and not turn Northward till far past the beat of the Mazitu - But in former journeys we came through Portuguese who would promptly have seized deserters while here at the lower end of the Nyassa we were one the Kilwa slave route - When all their countrymen would fawn on & flatter them for baffling the Nazarenes, as they call us Christians As soon as I turned my face West they all ran away & they had no other complaint but "the Mazitu" - All my difficulties in this journey have arisen from having low class Moslems, or those who had been so before they were captured - Even of the better class few can be trusted - The Sultan places all his income & pecuniary affairs in the hands of Banians from India - When the gentlemen of Zanzibar are

asked why their Sultan entrusts his money to Aliens alone, they readily answer it is owing to their own prevailing faithlessness - Some indeed assent with a laugh that if their Sovereign allowed any of them to farm his revenue he would receive nothing but a crop of lies - In their case religion & morality are completely disjoined - It is therefore not surprising that

[0559]

553

in all their long intercourse with the tribes on the mainland not one attempt has been made to propagate the Mohammedan faith - I am very far from being unwilling to acknowledge & even admire the zeal of other religionists than the Christian, but repeated enquires among all classes have only left the conclusion that they have propagated syphilis & the domestic Bug alone - Any one familiar with the secondary symptoms will see at a glance on the mainland the skin diseases & bleared eyes which say that unlimited polygamy has been no barrier to the spread of this foul disease - compared with them the English lower classes are gentlemen I am unfeignedly thankful for the kindness that prompted & carried out the Search Expedition, and your Most Obedient Servant
David Livingstone
H M Consul.
Inner Africa
15th November

P.S. I have just learned that Musa & companions after breaking their engagement to serve for twenty months which was formally entered into before Sunley went to that gentleman and after solemnly assuring him that I had been murdered demanded pay for all the time they had been absent & received it! They received from me advance of pay & clothing amounting to (£40) Forty pounds Sterling = I now transmit the particulars to D^r Kirk the Political Agent & demand that the advance & also the pay should be refunded for if they are allowed to keep both as the reward of falsehood the punishment enjoined to be inflicted by Lord Stanley will only be laughed at

David Livingstone

[0560]

Ujiji - 1st November 1871
The Right Honourable
The Earl of Clarendon

No
Geograph-
-ical

My Lord,
I wrote a very hurried letter
on the 28th Ult and sent it by a few men who had
resolved to run the risk of passing through contending
parties of Banyamwezi and Mainland Arabs at Un-
yanyembe - Which is some seventy days East of this
I had just come off a tramp of more than 400 miles
beneath a vertical torrid sun & was so jaded in
body & mind by being forced back by faithless
cowardly attendants that I should have written
littel more dump the messengers had not been in
such a hurry to depart as they were - I have
now the prospect of sending them safely to the Coast
by a friend but so many of my letters have disap-
peared at Unyanyembe when entrusted to the care
of the Lewale or Governor who is merely the trade
agent of certain Banians that I shall consider that
of the 28th as one of the unfortunates, and give in
this as much as I can recall -
I have ascertained that the water-
shed of the Nile is a broad upland between 10 ° & 12 °
South Latitude & from 4000 to 5000 feet above the
level of the Sea - Mountains stand on it at various
points which though not apparently very high are
between 6000 & 7000 feet of actual altitude - The water-
shed is over 700 miles in length from West to East -
The springs that arise on it are almost innumerable,
that is, it would take a large part of a man's life to
count them - A bird's eye view of some ~~of them~~ parts of
the Watershed would resemble the frost vegetation on
window panes - They all begin in an ooze at the
head of a slightly depressed valley - a few hundred
yards down the quantity of water from oozing earthen
sponge one each side of the valley forms a brisk ~~move-~~

[0561]

555

~~-ment~~ perennial burn or brook a few feet broad & deep
enough to require a bridge - These are the ultimate or prim-

-ary sources of the great rivers that flow to the North in the Great Nile Valley - The Primaries unite & forms streams in general larger than the Isis at Oxford or Avon at Hamilton, and may be called secondary sources - They never dry - but unite again into four large lines of drainage - the head waters or mains of the river of Egypt - These four are each called by the natives "Lualaba" - which if not too pedantic may be spoken of as Lacustrine rivers - extant specimens of those which in prehistoric times abounded in Africa & which in the South are still called by Bechuana "Melapo" in the North by Arabs "Wady" both words meaning the same thing - river beds in which no water ever now flows - Two of the four great rivers mentioned fall into the central Lualaba = or Webb's Lake River & then we have but two ^ main lines of drainage as depicted by Ptolemy - the prevailing winds on the Watershed are from the South - East - this is easily observed by the direction of the branches and the humidity of the climate is apparent in the numbers of Lichens which make the upland forest look like the Mangrove swamps on the coast - In passing over 60 miles of Latitude I waded thirty two primary sources from calf to waist deep, & requiring from twenty minutes to an hour and a quarter to cross stream & sponge - This would give about one source to every two miles - A Swahili friend in passing along part of Lake Bangweolo during 6 days counted 22 from thigh to waist deep - This Lake is on the watershed for the village at which I observed on its Nor West Shore was a few seconds into 11 ° South & its Southern shores & springs & rivulets are certainly in 12 ° South - I tried to cross it in order to measure the breadth accurately = the

[0562]

556

first stage to an inhabited island was almost 24 miles - From the highest point here the tops of the trees evidently lifted by the mirage could be seen on the second stage & the third stage - The mainland was said to be as far as this beyond it But my canoe-men had stolen the canoe & got a hint that the real owners were in pursuit & got into a flurry to return home "They would come for me in a few days truly", but I had only my coverlet left to hire another craft if they should leave me in this

wide expanse of water & being 4000 feet above the sea it was very cold so I returned - the length of this lake is at a very moderate estimate 150 miles - It gives forth a large body of water in the Luapula, but Lakes are in no sense sources for no large river begins in a Lake, but this and others serve an important purpose in the phenomena of the Nile - It is one large lake and unlike the Okara which according to Swahili who travelled long in our Company is three or four Lakes run into one huge Victoria Nyassa, gives out a large river which on departing out of Meoro is still larger. These men had spent many years East of Okara & could scarcely be mistaken in saying that of the three or four Lakes there only one - the Okara - gives off its water to the North - The "White Nile" of Speke less by a full half than the Shire out of Nyassa for it is only 80 or 90 yards broad can scarcely be named in comparison with the Central or Webb's Lualaba of from 2000 to 6000 yards in relation to the phenomena of the Nile. The structure and economy of the watershed answers very much the same end as the great Lacustrine rivers but I cannot at present copy a lost Despatch which explained that - The mountains on the watershed are probably what Ptolemy for reasons now unknown called the Mountains of the Moon -

[0563]

557

From their bases I found that the springs of the Nile do unquestionably arise - this is just what Ptolemy put down & is true geography - We must accept that fountains and nobody but Philistines will reject the mountains though we cannot conjecture the reason for the name - Mts Kenia & Kilimanjaro are said to be snow-capped but they are so far from the sources & send no water to any part of the Nile - They could never have been meant by the correct ancient explorers from whom Ptolemy & his predecessors gleaned their true geography so different from the trash that passes current in modern times - Before the leaving the subject of the watershed I may add that I know about 600 miles of it, but am not yet satisfied for unfortunately the 7th hundred is the most interesting of the whole - I have a very strong impression that in the last hundred miles the fountains of the Nile

mentioned to Herodotus by the secretary of Minerva
in the city of Sais do arise, not like all the rest
from oozing earthen sponges, but from an earthen
mound, and half the crater flows Northward
to Egypt - the half South to Inner Ethiopia -
These fountains at no great distance off become
large rivers, though at the mound they are not
ten miles apart - That is, one fountain rising on
the Nor East of the mound becomes Bartle
Frere's Lualaba, and it flows into one of the
Lakes proper - Kamolondo - of the central line
of drainage - Webb's Lualaba - the second
fountain rising on the Nor West becomes
(Sir Paraffin) Young's Lualaba, which passing through
Lake Lincoln & becoming Loeki or Lomami
and joining the Central line too goes North to
Egypt - the third fountain on the South West
- Palmerston's - becomes the Liambai or Upper
Zambezi, while the fourth Oswell's fountain becomes

[0564]

558

the Kafue & falls into Zambezi in Inner Ethiopia -
More time has been spent in the Exploration
that I ever anticipated - My bare expenses were
paid for two years but had I left when the
money was expended I could have given little
more information about the country than
the Portuguese who in their [^] time slave trading ex-
peditions to Cazembe asked for slaves & ivory
alone & heard of nothing else - From one of the
subordinates of their last so called expedition
I learned that it was believed that the Luapula
went over to Angola - !! I asked about the craters
till I was ashamed, and almost afraid of
being set down as afflicted with Hydrocephalus
I had to feel my way - and every step of the
way & was generally groping in the dark,
for who cared where the rivers ran - Many a
weary foot I trod ere I got a clear idea
of the drainage of the Great Nile Valley - the
most intelligent natives & traders thought that
all the rivers of the Upper part of that valley
flowed into Tanganyika - But the Barometer
told me that to do so the water must flow
uphill - the great rivers & the great lakes
all make their water converge into the deep
trough of the valley which is a full inch of

the Barometer lower than the Upper Tanganyika -
It is only a sense of duty which I trust your
Lordship will approve that makes me
remain and if possible finish the Geograph-
ical portion of my mission - After being thwarted
baffled, robbed, worried almost to death in
following the central line of drainage down,
I have a sore longing for home, have had a
perfect surfeit of seeing strange new lands &
people - grand mountains, lovely valleys
the glorious vegetation of primeval forest,

[0565]

559

wild beast & an endless succession of beautiful man
besides great rivers & vast lakes - the last and most interesting
from their huge outflowings which explain some of the
phenomena of the grand old Nile - Let me explain but
in no boastful style the mistakes of others who have
bravely striven to solve the ancient problem, and it will
be seen that I have cogent reasons for following the
painful plodding investigation to its conclusion - Poor
Speke's mistake was following a foregone conclusion -
When he discovered the Victoria Nyanza he at once leaped
to the conclusion that therein lay the sources of the
river of Egypt "20,000 square miles of water" - confused by
sheer immensity Ptolemy's small lake - "Coloc", is a
more correct representation of the actual size of that
one of three or four lakes which alone sends its
outflow to the North - its name is Okara - Lake Kavirondo
is three days distant from it but connected by a narrow
arm - Lake Naibash or Neibash is four days from
Kavirondo, Baringo is ten days distant and discharges
by a river the Ngardabash to the North East - These three
or four lakes which have been described by several
intelligent Swahili who lived for many years on their
shores were run into one huge Victoria Nyanza -
But no sooner did Speke and Grant turn their faces
to this lake to prove that it contained the Nile fountains
than they turned their backs to the springs of the river
of Egypt which are between 400 & 500 miles South of
the most southerly portion of the Victoria Lake, every
step of their heroic & really splendid achievement
of following the river down took them further & further
from the sources they sought - But for devotion to the
foregone conclusions the sight of the little "White Nile" as
unable to account for the great river they must have
turned off to the West down into the deep trough of the

Great Valley, and there found Lacustrine rivers amply
sufficient to account for the Nile and all its phenomena
The next explorer Baker believed as

[0566]

560

honestly as Speke & Grant that in the Lake lived Albert
he had a second source of the Nile to that of Speke - He
came further up the Nile than any other in modern
times but turned when between six and seven hundred
miles short of the *caput Nili*, he is now employed
in a more noble work than the discovery of Nile
sources, and if as all must earnestly wish he suc-
ceeds in suppressing the Nile slave trade, the boon
he will bestow on humanity will be of far higher
value than all my sources together - When intelligent
men like these and Bruce have been mistaken, I
have naturally felt anxious that no one should come
after me, and find sources south of mine which I
now think can only be possible by water running
up the Southern slope of the watershed -
But all that can in modern times
and in common modesty be fairly claimed is, the
re-discovery of what had sunk into oblivion, like
the circumnavigation of Africa by the Phoenician
Admiral of one of the Pharaohs about B. C. 600
He was not believed because he reported that in passing
round Libya he had the Sun on his right hand - this to
us who have gone round the Cape from East to West
stamps his tale as genuine - The predecessors of Ptolemy
probably gained their information from men who
visited this very region for in the second century of
our Era he gave what we now find to be genuine
geography - The Springs of the Nile rising in 10° - 12°
South Lat, and their water collecting into two large
Lacustrine rivers, and other facts could have been
learned only from primitive travellers, or traders - the
true discovers of what Emperors Kings, philosophers
all the great minds of antiquity longed to know &
longed in vain

Now en-
closed

In a letter of November 1870, I have tried
to give an idea of the difficulties surmounted in
following the central line of drainage down through

[0567]

561

the country of the cannibals called Manyema or Manyema - I found it a year afterwards where it was left other letters had made no further progress to the coast - In fact Manyema is an entirely new field, and nothing like postage exists, nor can letters be sent to Ujiji except by large trading parties who have spent two or three years in Manyema -

The geographical results of four arduous trips in different directions in the Manyema country are briefly as follows - The great river Webb's Lualaba in the centre of the Nile valley makes a great bend to the West soon after leaving Lake Moero - of at least 180 - then turning to the North for some distance it makes another large sweep West - of about 120 miles - in the course of which about 30 miles of Southing are made - It then draws around to North East - receives the Lomami or Loeki a large river which flows through Lake Lincoln - After the union a large lake is formed with many inhabited islands in it but this has still to be explored - It is the fourth large Lake in the central line of drainage and cannot be Lake Albert for assuming Speke's longitude of Ujiji to be pretty correct, and my reckoning not enormously wrong, the great central Lacustrine river is almost five degrees west of Upper & Lower Tanganyika - The mean of many Barometric and boiling point observations made Upper Tanganyika 2880 feet high - Respect for Speke's memory made me hazard the conjecture that he found it to be nearly the same, but from the habit of writing the *Annum Domini*, a mere slip of the pen made him say 1844 feet, but I have more confidence in the barometers than in the boiling point, and they make Tanganyika over 3000 feet - and the lower part of central Lualaba one inch lower or about the altitude ascribed to Gondokoro - Beyond the fourth lake the water passes it is said into large reedy lakes

[0568]

562

and is in all probability Petherick's branch - the main stream of the Nile - in distinction from the

smaller Eastern arm which Speke, Grant, & Baker took to be [the] river of Egypt - The Manyema could give no information about their country because they never travel - Blood feuds often prevent them from visiting villages three or four miles off, and many at a distance of about thirty miles did not know the great river though named to them - No trader had gone so far as I had, and their people cared only for ivory - In my attempts to penetrate further & further I had but little hope of ultimate success for a great amount of Westing lead to a continual effort to suspend the judgement lest after all I might be exploring the Congo instead of the Nile - and it was only after the two great western drains fell into the Central main, and left but the two great Lacustrine rivers of Ptolemy that I felt pretty sure of being on the right track - The great bends west probably form one side of the great rivers above that geography loop - the other side being Upper Tanganyika, and the Lake River Albert - a waterfall is reported to exist between Tanganyika & Albert Nyassa but I could not go to it - nor have I seen the connecting link between the two - the Upper side of the loop though I believe it exists -

The Manyema are certainly cannibals but it was long ere I could get evidence more positive than would have led a Scotch jury to give a verdict of not proven - they eat only enemies killed in war - they seem as if instigated by revenge in their man eating orgies, and on those occasions they do not like a stranger to see them - I offered a large reward in vain to anyone who would call me to witness a cannibals feast - Some intelligent men have told me that the meat is not nice & made them dream of the dead - the women never partake, and

[0569]

563

I am glad of it for many of them far down Lualaba are very pretty - they bathe three or four times a day & are expert divers for oysters - Markets are held at stated times & the women attend them in large numbers dressed in their best - They are light coloured, have straight noses, fully formed heads, small hands & feet & perfect forms - They are keen traders and look on the market as a great institution - to haggle & joke & laugh, and cheat seems the enjoyment of life - The population especially

west of the river is prodigiously large - Near
 Lomami the Bakuss or Bakoons cultivate
 coffee and drink it highly scented with vanilla -
 Food of all kinds extremely abundant & cheap -
 The men smelt iron from the black oxide ore
 and are very good Smiths - they also smelt copper
 from the ore, and make large ornaments very
 cheaply - they are generally fine ^ tall strapping fellows
 far superior to the Zanzibar slaves and nothing
 of the West Coast negro from whom our ideas
 of Africans are chiefly derived appears among
 them - No prognathous jaws - barn door mouths
 nor lark heels are seen - their defects arise from
 absolute ignorance of all the world beside - Strangers
 never appeared among them before - the terror that
 guns inspire generally among the Manyema
 seems to arise among the Bakuss from an
 idea that they are supernatural - the effect
 of gunshot on a goat was shown in order to
 convince them that the traders had power -
 & that the instruments they carried were not
 as they imagined the mere insignia of chief-
 tainship - they looked up to the skies and offered
 to bring ivory to purchase the charm by which
 lightning was drawn down - & afterwards when
 the traders tried to force a passage which was
 refused they darted aside on seeing Banyamwezi's

[0570]

564

followers place the arrows in the bowstraps, but
 stood in mute amazement while the guns mowed
 them down in great numbers - They use long spears
 in the thick vegetation of their country with great
 dexterity & they have told me frankly what was
 self-evident that but for the firearms not one
 of the Zanzibar slaves or half-castes would
 ever leave their country - There is not a single
 great chief in all Manyema - No matter what
 name the different divisions of people bear -
 Manyema, Balegga, Babire - Bazire, Bakoos
 there is no political cohesion - not one King
 or Kingdom - Each headman is independent
 of every other - the people are industrious and
 most of them cultivate the soil largely - We found
 them everywhere very honest - When detained
 at Bambarre we had to send our goats & fowls
 to the Manyema villages to prevent them being

all stolen by the Zanzibar slaves - The Slave owners
had to do the same - Manyema land is the only
country in central Africa I have seen where
cotton is not cultivated - spun and woven -
the clothing is that known in Madagascar
as "*Lambas*" or grass cloth made from the
leaves of the "*Muale* palm - They call the
good spirit above "Ngulu" or the great
one - and the spirit of evil who resides in
the deep Mulambu - A hot fountain
near Bambarre is supposed to belong
to this being - the author of death by drowning
and other misfortunes

Your Lordship's Obedient
and humble servant
David Livingstone
H - M - Consul. Inner Africa
A true copy
by H M Stanley &
David Livingstone (a true copy
Henry M Stanley

[0571]
565

Ujiji 14 Nov^r 1871
The Right Honourable

No 3.

Earl Granville
My Lord
In my letter
dated Bambarre - November 1870 now
enclosed I stated my suspicions that a
packet of about forty letters - Despatches -
copies of all Astronomical Observations
from the Coast onwards, and sketch maps
on tracing paper intended to convey a
clear idea of the all the discoveries up to the
time of arrival at Ujiji would be destroyed -
It was delivered to the agent of the governor
of Unyanyembe and I paid him in full
all he demanded to transit it to Syde bin
Salem Buraschid, the so called governor
who is merely a trade agent of certain Banians
of Zanzibar and a person who is reputed
dishonest by all - As an agent he pilfers

from his employers, be they Banians or Arabs - As a governor expected to exercise the office of a magistrate he dispenses justice to him who pays most - and as the subject of a Sultan who entrusted him because he had no power on the mainland to supersede him he robs his superior shamelessly - No Arab or native ever utters a good word for him but all detest him for his injustice - the following narrative requires it to be known that his brother Ali bin Salem Buraschid is equally notorious for unblushing dishonesty - All Arabs and Europeans who have had dealings with either speak in unmeasured terms of their fraud & duplicity

[0572]

566

The brothers are employed in the trade chiefly by Ludha Damji the richest Banian in Zanzibar - It is well known that the slave trade in this country is carried on almost entirely with his money - and that of other Banian British subjects - The Banian advance the goods required and the Arabs proceed inland as their agents = per[-]form the trading - or rather murdering - and when slaves and ivory are brought to the coast, the Arabs sell the slaves - The Banian pocket the price and adroitly let the odium rest on their agents - As a rule no travelling Arab has money sufficient to undertake an island journey those who have become rich imitate the Banian and send their indigent country-men and slaves to trade for them - The Banian could scarcely carry on their system of trade were they not in possession of the custom House - and had power to seize all the goods that pass through it to pay themselves for debts - The so called governors are appointed on their recommendation and become mere trade agents When the Arabs in the Interior are assaulted by the natives they never unite under a governor as a leader for they know that defending them or concerting means for their safety is no part of his duty - The Arabs

are nearly all in debt to the Banian and the Banian slaves are employed in ferreting out every trade transaction of debtors, and when watched by governess slaves - and custom house officers, it is scarcely possible for even this cunning deceitful race to escape being fleeced - To avoid

[0573]

567

this, many surrender all the ivory to their Banian creditors and are allowed to keep or sell the slaves as their share of the profits - It will readily be perceived that the prospect of in any way coming under the power of Banian British subjects at Zanzibar is very far from reassuring -

The packet above referred to was never more heard of but a man called Musa Kamaals had been employed to drive some buffaloes for me from the Coast, and on leaving Ujiji the same day the packet was delivered for transmission I gave him a short letter dated May 1869 which he concealed on his person - knowing that on its production his wages depended - He had been a spectator of the plundering of my goods by the governor's slave saloon - and received a share to hold his pace - He was detained for months at Unyanyembe by the governor and even sent back to Ujiji on his private business ^ he being ignorant all the while that Kamaals possessed the secreted letter - It was the only document of more than forty that reached Zanzibar - It made known in some measure my wants but my cheques on Bombay for money were in the lost packet and Ludha the rich Banian was employed to furnish on credit all the goods and advances of pay for the men required in the expedition - Ludha is perhaps the best of all the Banians of Zanzibar but he applied to Ali bin Salem the brother of his agent the governor to furnish two headmen to conduct the goods and men to Ujiji and beyond it wherever I might there be reported to be - He recommended Shereef Boshier and Awathe as

[0574]

568

first and second conductors of the caravan
Shereef - The governor and the governor's brother
being "birds of one feather" - the consequences
might have been foretold - No sooner did
Shereef obtain command than he went to
one Muhamad Nassur a Zanzibar born
Banian or Hindoo - and he advanced twenty
five boxes of soaps and eight cases of
brandy for trade - he then went to Baga[-]
-moio on the mainland and recieved
from two Banians there whose names
are to me unknown quantities of opium
and gunpowder which with the soap and
brandy were to [be] retailed by Shereef in the
journey - In the Bagamoio Banians
house Shereef broke the soap boxes and
stored the contents and the opium in my
bales of calico in order that the pagazi
paid by me should carry them - Other
pagazi were employed to carry the cases
of brandy and kegs of gunpowder and
paid with my cloth - hence forth all the
expenses of the journey were defrayed
out of my property, and while retailing
the barter the barter goods of his accom-
-plishes he was in no hurry to relieve my
wants but spent fourteen months between
the coast and Ujiji a distance which
could easily have been accomplished
in three - Making every allowance for
detention by sickness in the party and
by sending back for men to replace the
first pagazi who perished by Cholera
the delays were quite shameless - Two
months at one spot - Two months at
another place - and two at at a third
without reason except desire to profitably

[0575]

569

retail his brandy &c - which some simple
people think Moslems never drink, but he

was able to send back from Unyamyebe
 over (£60), Sixty Pounds worth of ivory - The
 pagazi again paid from my stores - He ran
 riot with the supplies all the way purchasing
 the most expensive food for himself - his slaves
 - his woman the country afforded - When he
 reached Ujiji the retail trade for the Banians
 and himself was finished and in defiance of
 his engagement to follow wherever I led =
 and men from a camp eight days beyond
 Bambarre went to Ujiji and reported to him
 that I was near and waiting for him - he refused
 their invitation to return with them - the Banians
 who advanced their goods for retail by Shereef
 had in fact taken advantage of the notorious
 East Africa Moslem duplicity to interpose
 their own trade speculation between two Govern^t
 officers and almost within the shadow of the
 consulate supplant D^r Kirk's attempt to aid
 me by a fraudulent conversion of the help
 expedition to the gratification of their own
 greed - Shereef was their ready tool and
 he acted as if he had forgotten having ever
 been employed by anyone else - Here the
 drunken half caste Moslem tailor lay intoxi-
 at times for a whole month - the drink -
 Palmtoddy and pombe - all bought with
 my beads of course - Awathe the other
 headman had been a spectator of all
 the robbery from the Coast onwards - and
 never opened his mouth in remonstrance
 or in sending notice to the Consul - he
 had carefully concealed an infirmity
 when engaged which rendered him

[0576]

570

quite incapable of performing a single duty
 for me and he now asserts like the Johanna
 deserters that he ought to be paid all his wages
 in full! I shall narrate below how seven of
 the Banian slaves brought by SHereef and Awathe
 imitated their leaders and refused
 to go forward and ultimately by falsehood
 and cowardice forced me to return between
 400 and 500 miles - but here I may mention
 how Shereef finished up his services -
 He wrote to his friend the governor of Unyan[-]

yembe for permission to sell the debris of my goods because "said he"! I sent slaves to to Manyema to search for the Doctor and they returned and reported that he was dead" He also divined on the Koran and it told the same tale - It is scarcely necessary to add that he never sent slaves to Manyema in search of me and from the people above mentioned that returned from a camp in front of Bambarre he learned that I was alive and well - so on his own authority and that of the Koran he sold off all the remaining goods at merely nominal prices to his friends for slaves and ivory for himself - and I lately returned to find myself destitute of everything except a very few articles of barter which I took the precaution to leave here in case of extreme need.

I have stated the case to D^r Kirk acting Political agent and consul at Zanzibar and claim as simple justice that the Banians who are rich English subjects should for stepping in between me and the supplies sent be compelled to refund

enclosure
marked
complaint

the entire expenses of the frustrated Expedition and all the high interest there on - 20 or 25 per cent - set down against me in Ludhas books

[0577]

571

if not also the wages of any people and personal expenses for two years the time during which by then surreptitious agent Shereef my servants and self were prevented from executing our regular duty - the late Sultan Seyed Majid compelled the Arab who connived at the plunder of all the Baron Van der Decken's goods in a vain attempt to reach Lake Nyassa to refund the whole - It is inconcievable that the Dragoman and other paid servants of the consulate were ignorant of

the fraud practised by the Banians on Dr Kirk and me. All the Banians and Banian slaves were perfectly well aware of Muhammad Nassur's complicity - the villainy of saddling on me all the expenses of their retail venture of soap brandy opium and gunpowder was perpetrated in open day and could not escape the notice of the paid agents of the consulate but how this matter was concealed from him - and also the dishonest characters of Syde bin Ali Burasdid and Shereef it is difficult to conceive - the oft repeated assertion of Shereef that he acted throughout on the advice of Ludha may have a ray of truth in it - But a little gentle pressure on Seyed Burghash will probably ensure the punishment of Shereef though it is also highly probable that he will take refuge near the governor of Unyanyembe till the affair blows over If the right Banian English subjects he compelled to refund this alone will deter them from again plundering the servants of a Government which goes to great expense for their protection.

[0578]

572

I will now proceed to narrate in as few words as possible how I have been baffled by the Banian slaves sent by Liedha instead of men - They agreed to go to Ujiji and having there ascertained where I was to be found were to follow me as boatmen carriers woodmen or in every capacity required without reference to the customs of other expeditions - Each on being engaged received an advance of thirty dollars and a promise of five dollars a month afterwards - this was double Zanzibar freeman's pay. They had much sickness near the Coast and five died of Cholera While under Shereef and Awathe they cannot be blamed for following their worthless leaders - these leaders remained at Ujiji and Shereef's three slaves and his woman did the same - After two months['] delay there seven Banian

slaves came along with the man returning past Bambarre as mentioned above they came on the 4th February 1871 having left Zanzibar in October 18769 - I had been laid up at Bambarre by irritable eating ulcers on both feet which prevented me from setting a foot on the ground from August 1870 to the end of the year a piece of Malachite rubbed down with water on a stone was the only remedy that had any effect - I had no medicine - some in a box has been unaccountably detained by the governor of Unyanyembe since 1868 though I sent for it twice and delivered calico to prepay the carriers. I have been uncharitable enough to suspect that the worthy man wishes to fall heir to

[0579]

573

my two guns in the same box - Shereef sent by the slaves a few coarse beads - evidently exchanged for my beautiful and dear beads - a little calico and in great mercy a little coffee and sugar - the slaves came without loads except my tent which Shereef and they had used till it was quite rotten and so full of holes I could not use it once - They had been sixteen months in the way instead of three - and now like their headmen refused to go any further - they swore so positively that the consul had told them to force me back and on no account to go forward that I actually looked again at their engagement to be sure that my eyes had not deceived me. Fear alone made them consent to go but had I not been aided by Muhamad Bogharib they would have gained their point by sheer brazen faced falsehood - I might then have gone back and deposed Shereef & Awathe but this would have required five or six months - and in that time at least or in perhaps less time I had good reason to hope that the exploration would be finished - and my return would be up Albert Lake and Tanganyika instead of the dreary part of Manyema and Guha I

already knew perfectly - the desire to finish
the geographical part of my work was
and is most intense every time my family
comes into mind - I also hoped that ^ as usual ere
long I should gain influence over my
attendants - but I never had experience
with Banian Moslem ^slaves before who had
imbibed little of the Muhamadan religion
but its fulsome guide - and whose

[0580]

574

previous employment had been browbeating
Arab debtors somewhat like the lowest class
of our Sheriff Officers - As we went across
the second great bend of the Lualaba they
shewed themselves to be accomplished cowards
in constant dread of being killed and eaten
by Manyema - Failing to induce me to spend
all the goods and return they refused to go
beyond a point far down the Lualaba where
I was almost in sight of the end towards which
I strained - They now tried to stop further
progress by falsehood, and they found at a
camp of Ujijian and mainland Arabs
a number of willing helpers to propogage the
slander that "I wanted neither ivory nor slaves
but a canoe to kill Manyema" can it be
wondered at that people who had never seen
strangers before, or even heard of white men
believed them? By this slander and by the
ceremony of mixing blood with the headmen
the mainland and Ujijian Arabs secured
nine canoes while I could not purchase one
But four days below this part narrows
occur in which the mighty river is
compressed by rocks which jut in not
opposite to each other but alternately and the
water rushing round the promontories forms
terrible whirlpools which overturned one of
canoes, and so terrified the whole party
that by deceit had preceded me that they
returned without every thinking of dragging
the canoes past the difficulty - This I would
have done to gain the confluence of the
Lomame some fifty miles below, and
thence ascend through Lake Lincoln to the
ancient fountains beyond the copper

mines of Katanga, and this would nearly finish my geographical work. But it was so probable that the dyke which forms the narrows would be prolonged across country into Lomame that I resolved to turn to turn towards this great River considerably above the narrows and where

[0581]

575

the distance between Lualaba and Lomame is about eighty miles - A friend named Dugum[-]be was reported to be coming from Ujiji with a caravan of 200 guns and nine undertraders with their people - the Banian slaves refused duty three times and the sole reason they alledged was fear of going "where there were no Moslems" The loss of all their wages was a matter of no importance to any one except their masters at Zanzibar - As an Englishman they knew I would not beat or chain them - and two of them frankly around that all they needed for obedience was a free man to thrash them - the slave traders all sympathized with them for they hated my being present to witness their atrocities - the sources of the Nile they knew to be a sham - to reveal their slaving was my true object - and all dread to be "written against." I therefore waited three months for Dugumbe who appeared to be a gentleman, and offered him four thousand Rupees = £400 for ten men and a canoe on Lomame, and afterwards all the goods I believed I had at Ujiji to enable me to finish what I had to do without the Banian slaves his first words were "Why your own slaves are your greatest enemies. I hear everywhere how they have baffled you." He agreed to my proposition but required a few days to consult his associates two days afterwards on on the 15th of June a massacre was perpetrated which filled me with such intolerable loathing that I resolved to yield to the Banian slaves = return to Ujiji get men from the coast = and try to finish the rest of my work by going outside the area of Ujijian bloodshed instead of vainly trying from its interior outwards -

[0582]

576

Dugumbe and his people built their huts on the right bank of the Lualaba at a marketplace called Nyangwe - on hearing that a head slave of a trader at Ujiji had in order to get canoes cheap, mixed blood with the headmen of the Bagenya on the left bank ~~of the~~ were disgusted with his assurance and resolved to punish him and make an impression in the country in favour of their own greatness by an assault on the market people, and on all the Bagenya who had dared to make friendship with any but themselves Tagamoro the principal under trader of Dugumbe's party was the perpetrator - the market was attended every fourth day by between 2000 and 3000 people - It was held on a long slope of land which down at the river ended in a creek capable of containing between fifty and sixty large canoes - the majority of the market people were women, many of them very pretty - the people west of the river brought fish salt pepper oil grass cloth iron fowls goats sheep pigs in great numbers to exchange with those East of the river for cassava, grain, potatoes and other farinaceous products - they have a strong sense of natural Justice and all unite to force each other to fair dealing At first all were afraid of my presence but wishing to gain the confidence which my enemies tried to undermine or prevent, I went among them frequently and when they saw no harm in me became very gracious - The bargaining was the finest acting I ever saw

[0583]

577

I understood but few of the words that flew off their glib tongues of the women but their gestures spoke plainly - I took sketches of the fifteen varieties of fishes brought in

to compare them with those of the Nile lower
down - and all were eager to tell their names
but on the date referred to I had left the
market only a minute or two when three men
whom I had seen with guns and felt inclined
to reprove them for bringing them into the
market but refrained by attributing it to
ignorance in new corners - They began to
fire into the dense crowd around them
Another party down at the canoes rained their
balls on the panic struck multitude that rushed
into these vessels - all threw away their goods
the men forgot their paddles - the canoes were
jammed in the creek and could not be got out
quick enough - so many men & women
sprang into the water = the women of the left
bank are expert divers for oysters - and a
long line of heads shewed a crowd striking
out for an island a mile off = to gain it
they had to turn the left shoulder [...] ^ against a current
of between a mile and a half to two miles an
hour = Had they gone diagonally with the
current, though that would have been three
miles many would have gained the shore
It was horrible to see one head after another
disappear - some calmly - others throwing
their arms high up towards the Great Father
and going down - some of the men who
got canoes out of the crowd paddled quickly
with hands and arms to help their friends
three took people in till they all sank
together - one man had clearly lost his
head for he paddled a canoe which

[0584]

578

would have held fifty people straight up
stream = nowhere = the Arabs estimated the
loss at between 400 & 500 souls - Dugumbe
sent out some of his people in one of
about thirty canoes which the ^ in their fright owners could
not extricate to save the sinking - one lady
refused to be taken on board because she
thought that she was to be made a slave
but he rescued twenty one and of his
own accord sent them next day home
Many escaped and came to me and
were restored to their friends - When the

firing began on the terror stricken crowd
all the canoes - Tagamoio's band began
their assault on the people West of the
river and continued the fire all day
I counted seventeen villages in flames
and next day six - Dugumbe's power
over the underlings is limited but he
ordered them to cease shooting - those of
Tagamoio's party in the market were
so reckless that they shot two of their own
next day in canoes shouting and firing off
their guns as if believing that they were
worthy of renown - Next day about twenty
headmen fled from the West bank and came
to my house - there was no occasion now
to tell them that the English had no desire
for human blood - they begged hard that
I should go over with them and settle with
them and arrange where their new dwellings
should lie - I was so ashamed of the bloody
Moslem company in which I found
myself that I was unable to look at the
Manyema - I confessed my grief and
shame and was entreated if I must go
not to leave them now - Dugumbe spoke
kindly to them and would protect them
as well as he could against his own people

[0585]

579

but when I went to Tagamoio to ask back
the wives and daughters of the headmen
he always ran off and hid himself - this
massacre was the worst terrible scene I ever
saw - I cannot describe my feelings but am
thankful I did not give way to them but by
Dugumbe's advice avoided a blood feud
with men who for the time seemed turned
into Demons - the whole transaction was the
more deplorable inasmuch as we have
always heard from the Manyema that
though the men of two districts may be engaged
in actual hostilities the women pass from
one market place to another with their
wares and were never known to be molested
the change has come only with these alien
bloodhounds - and all the bloodshed has
taken place in order that captives might be

siezed where it could be done without danger
and in order that the slaving privileges of a
petty Sultan should produce abundant fruit.

Heart sore and greatly depressed in
spirits by the many instances of man's inhumanity
to man I had unwillingly seen I commenced
the long weary tramp to Ujiji with the blazing
sun right overhead - - the mind acted on the
body, and it is no overstatement to say that
almost every step of between 400 & 500 miles
was in pain - I feel as if dying on my feet -
and I came very near to death in a more
summary way - It is within the area of
bloodshed that danger alone occurs - I could
not induce my Moslem slaves to venture
outside that area in sphere - they knew
better than I did - "Was not Muhamad the
greatest of all - and their prophet = "About
midway between Nyangwe & Bambarre

[0586]

580

we came to villages where formally I had seen
the young men compelled to carry a
traders ivory - When I came on the scene
the young men had laid down the tusks
and said, now we have helped you so
far without pay let the men of other
villages do as much - "No, take up the ivory"
and take it up they did only to go a little
and cast it into the dense vegetation on
each side of the path we afterwards knew
so well - When the trader reached his next
stage he sent back his men to demand
the "stolen" ivory, and when the elders
denied the theft they were fired upon
five were killed - eleven women and
children captured and also twenty five
goats - the remaining elders then talked
the matter over and the young men pointed
out the ivory and carried it twenty two
miles after the trader - He chose to say
that three tusks were a missing - and
carried away all the souls and goats
he had captured - they now turned to
the only resource they knew and when
Dugumbe passed waylaid and killed
one of his people - In our return we

we passed another camp of Ujijian
traders and they begged me to allow
their men to join my party - these
included seventeen men of Manyema
who had volunteered to carry ivory to
Ujiji and goods back again - these were
the very first Manyema who had in
modern times gone fifty miles from
their birth places - as all the Arabs
have been enjoined by Sayed Majid the
late Sultan to shew me all the kindness

[0587]

581

in their power I could not decline their
request - my party was increased to eighty
and a long line of men bearing elephants
tusks gave us all the appearance of traders
the only cloth I had left some months before
consisted of two red blankets which were con[-]
-verted into a glaring dress unbecoming
enough but there were no Europeans to see it -
the maltreated men now burning for revenge
remembered the dress and very naturally
tried to kill the man who had murdered their
relatives - they would hold no parley - we had
to pass through five hours of forest with
vegetation so dense that by stooping down
and peering towards the sun we could at times
see a shadow moving, and a slight rustle in
the rank vegetation was a spear thrown from
the shadow of an infuriated man = our
people in front peered into every little opening
in the dense thicket before they would venture
past it - This detained the rear and two persons
near me were slain - A large spear lunged
past close behind - another missed me by
about a foot in front - coming to a part of
the forest at about a hundred yards cleared
for cultivation I observed that fire had been
applied to one of the gigantic trees made still
higher by growing on an anthill twenty
or more feet high - hearing the crack that told
the fire had eaten through I felt that there
was no danger it looked so far away till it
appeared coming right down towards me
I saw a few paces back and it came to the
ground only one yard off broke into several

lengths and covered me with a cloud of
dust - my attendants ran back exclaiming
Peace - Peace - you will finish your
work in spite of all these people and
in spite of everything - I too took it as
an omen of good that I had three

[0588]

582

narrow escapes from death in one day
the Manyema are experts in throwing the
the spear and as I had a glance of him
whose spear missed missed by less than
an inch behind and he was not ten
yards off I was saved clearly by the
good hand of the Almighty Preserver
of men - I can say this devoutly now
but in running the terrible gauntlet
for five weary hours among furies
all eager to signalize themselves by slaying
one they sincerely believed to have been
guilty of a horrid outrage, no elevated
sentiments entered the mind - the
excitement gave way to overpowering
readiness, and I felt as I suppose soldiers
do on the field of battle, not courageous
but perfectly indifferent whether I were
killed or not -

on coming to the cleared plantations
belonging to the next group of villages
all lay down to rest, and soon saw
their headman walked unarmed in
a stately manner towards us - He had
heard the vain firing of my men
into the dense vegetation and came to
enquire the cause - When he had con-
-sulted his elders he sent an offer to me
in the evening to collect all his
people and if I lent him my people
who had guns he would bring me ten
goats instead of three milch one I had
lost - I again explained the mistake
under which his next neighbours
laboured and as he understood
the whole case he was ready to admit
that my joining in his ancient

[0589]

583

feud would only make matters worse
Indeed my old Highland blood had been
roused by the wrongs which his foes
had suffered and all through I could not
help sympathizing with them though I
was the especial object of their revenge -
a true copy

D.L. David Livingstone

H M Consul

A complaint enclosed in
the foregoing N^o 3 .. Ujiji 30 October
1871

To D^r John Kirk -

Acting Political Agent & Consul

Zanzibar

Sir I wrote on the 25th and 28th currt
two very hurried letters one for you and
the other for Lord Clarendon which were
forwarded to Unyanyembe - I had just
reached this place thoroughly jaded in
body and mind and found that your
agent Shereef Boshier had sold off all the
goods you sent for slaves and ivory for
himself - He had divined on the Koran and
found that I was dead - He also wrote to the
governor of Unyanyembe that he had sent
slaves to Manyema who returned and expected
my decease and he wished the permission
of the governor to sell all the goods - He
however knew from men who came from
me in Manyema that I was near Ujiji at
Bambarre and wanting for him & supplies
but when my friends here protested against
the sale of my goods he invariably provid[-]
-ed "you know nothing about the matter"

[0590]

584

"I alone know that the consul ordered me

to remain one month at Ujiji and then
sell off and return” - When I came he
said Ludha had so ordered him -

From the Banian slaves you sent
I learn that Ludha went to Ali bin
salem Buraschid a person notoriously
dishonest and he recommended Shereef
Bosher as leader of the caravan - No
sooner did he obtain command then
he went to Muhamad Nassar who
furnished twenty five boxes of soap &
eight cases of brandy to be retailed in
the course of the journey inland -
At Bagamoio Shereef got a quantity of
opium and gunpowder from from
two Banians there whose names are
unknown to me - In their house Shereef
broke the soap boxes and stowed the
contents in my bales - the brandy cases
were kept entire and pagazi employed
to carry them and the opium & gun
powder and paid out of my bales
the Banians and Shereef had inter-
posed their own trade speculation
between two government officers
and thence forward all the experiences of
the journey were defrayed out of my supply
and Shereef was able to send back to
his accomplices five frasilahs of
ivory from Unyanyembe value some
(£60) sixty pounds - the pagazi again
paid by me - He was in no hurry
to aid me but spent fourteen months
in traversing a distance that could
easily have been accomplished
in three - If we deduct two months

[0591]

585

for detention by sickness we have still twelve
months of which nine were devoted to
the private interests of the Banians & Shereef
He ran risk with my goods buying the best
provisions and drink the country afforded
- lived in my tent till it was so rotten &
full of holes I never could use it once -
- remained at three several places two months
retailing brandy opium gun powder & soup

and these being finished on reaching Ujiji
 he would go no further - Here it is com-
 -monly reported he lay drunk for a month at
 a time - The dura pombe and palm toddy
 all bought with my fine samsam beads
 He issued 24 yards of calico per month for
 himself - 8 yards for each of his slaves
 8 yards for his woman! and 8 yards for
 Awathe the other headman - and when he
 sent seven of the Banian slaves employed
 by Ludha to me at Bambarre he would
 not allow me more than two frasilahs
 of the very coarsest beads evidently ex-
 -changed for my fine Samsams - a few
 pieces of calico and in great mercy half
 the coffee and sugar - the slaves came
 without loads - Shereef finished up as
 above stated by selling off all except the
 other half of coffee and sugar and one
 half of bundle of unsaleable beads - He left
~~four bundles~~ pieces four of calico and
 went off from this but hearing of
 disturbance at Unyanyembe he deposited
 his ivory in a village near and coming
 back took the four pieces of calico and
 I recieved of all the fine calico and dear
 beads you sent not a single yard or
 string of beads

[0592]

586

Awathe the other headman employed
 was a spectator of all the plunder by Shereef
 from the coast onwards and never opened
 his mouth in remonstrance or in sending
 back a report to his employer - He carefully
 concealed an infirmity from you which
 prevented him from performing a single
 duty for me - He had his "sheepa" long before
 he was engaged and he stated to me
 that the large fleshy growth came up at
 once on reaching Ujiji - it is not Hydowale
 but Sarcocoele, and his own statement
 proved that the pain he feigned had entirely
 ceased when Dugumbe a friend of mine
 offered to convey him by short easy stages
 to me - He refused from believing that
 the Banians have so much power

that he will be paid in full for all the time that he has been dishonestly devouring my goods though quite unable to do any duty - Dugumbe also offered to convey a packet of letters that was delivered to Shereef here as my agent, but when he told him that he was about to start it was not forthcoming - It was probably destroyed to prevent my seeing the list of goods you sent by one Hassani to Unyanyembe -

With due deference to your judgement I claim all the expenses incurred as set down against me in Ludha's books from the Banians who by fraud converted the caravan to help me into the gratification of their own greed - Muhamad Nassur can reveal the names of the other Banian accomplices of Shereef who connived

[0593]

587

in supplanting help for me into a trade speculation - they ought also to pay the slaves sent by Ludha and let them (the Banians) recover from Shereef - I report this case to H.M. - Government as well as to you and believe that your hands will thereby be strengthened to see that justice is done and that due punishment be inflicted on the Banians - on Shereef and Awathe - and on the Banian slaves who baffled and thwarted me instead of fulfilling the engagement entered into in your presence - A note is enclosed to His Highness Seyed Benghash which you will please to present -

In entrusting the matter of supplies and men to the Baman Ludha you seem to have been unaware that our Government forbids its servants to employ slaves - the commissioners and Consul at Loanda on the West Coast sent all the way to St Helena for somewhat stupid servants rather than incur the displeasure of the Foreign Office by using very clever Portuguese slaves within call - In the very trying circumstances you mention during the visitation of Cholera

and in the absence of the instructions I had enclosed to employ free men and not slaves as also in the non appearance of the cheques for money enclosed in the same lost packet the call on Ludha was perhaps the easiest course and I trust that you will not consider me ungrateful if I point out that it involved a grave mistake - Ludha is polite enough but the slave trade and indeed most other trade is carried on chiefly by the money of Banians - British subjects who recieve most of the profits and

[0594]

588

adroitly let the odium ^ of slaving rest on the Arabs they hate us - English - and rejoice more over our failures than successes - Ludha sent his own and other Banian slaves at sixty dollars a year while the usual pay of freemen atin Zanzibar is only from twenty five to thirty dollars a year - He will charge enormous interest on the money advanced - from twenty to twenty five per cent - and even supposing Shereef's state[-] -ment that Ludha told him not to go beyond Ujiji [...]but after one month to sell off all and return to be quite un-true, it is passing strange that every one of the Banian slaves employed stoutly asserted that they were not to follow but to force me back - I had no hold on people who knew that they would not be allowed to keep their wages - It is also very remarkable that the objects of your caravan should be so completely frustrated by Banians conniving with Shereef almost within the shadow of the consulate and neither Dragoman nor other paid officials under your orders give any information - The characters of Ali bin Salem Buraschid and his "chum" Shereef could scarcely have been hid from them - Why employ them without character P.S 16th November 1871

I regret the necessity of bringing the foregoing very unpleasant subject before you, but I have just recieved letters and information which make the matter doubly

serious - M^r Churchill informed me ~~that~~
by a letter of September 1870 that H.M.
Government had not kindly sent
£1000 for supplies to be forwarded to me

[0595]

589

some difficulties had occurred to prevent £500
worth from starting but in the beginning of
November all were removed - But it appears
that you had recourse to slaves again and one
of these slaves informed me that goods and
slaves all remained at Bagamoio four months
on till near the end of February 1871 - No one
looked near them during that time but a rumour
reached them that the consul was coming and
off they started two days before your arrival.
not on their business but on some private
trip of your own - These slaves came to Un-
-yanyembe in may last and there they lay
till war broke out in July and gave them a good
excuse to be there still = A whole year has thus
been spent in feasting slaves on £500 sent
by Government to me - Like the name who
was tempted to despair when he broke the
photograph of his wife I feel inclined to
relinquish hope of ever getting help from
Zanzibar to finish the little work I have still
to do - I wanted men not slaves and free-
men are abundant at Zanzibar but if the
matter is committed to Ludha instead of to
an energetic Arab with some little super-
intendence from your Dragoman or others
I may want twenty years and your slaves feast
and fail Yours very truly

David Livingstone
a true copy H.M. consul Inner Africa
David Livingstone

I will just add ^ for exactness that the second batch of
slaves had like the first two freemen as the
leaders and one died of small pox - Two freemen
in the first party of slaves were Shereef & Awathe
I enclose also a shameless overcharge in Ludha's
bill of 364 Dollars 62½ cents DL.

[0596]

590

D^r Kirk &c &c 17 Nov^r 1871

Sir I take the liberty of calling your attention to the following overcharges in Ludha's bill sent to me by M^r Churchill

Eighty pieces or gorahs of Merikani sativé at the common retail price at Zanzibar of \$2.75 per gorah amounts to \$220 which being charged by Ludha \$477.50 makes an overcharge \$275.50

On Kanike forty packages of first rate Kanike at \$13 per score of pieces would be \$26 whereas Ludha has charged me \$37.

Between the market price of the beads also at Zanzibar and Ludhas price is an overcharge of \$5.

Another item to which I strongly object is that in which Ludha charges me \$91. 12 ½ for transport to Ujiji the goods having never left Un-yanyembe - All the foregoing make a total overcharge of \$364. 62 ½ which is a nice little sum for a confidential British subject to extract

the proof of this overcharge is found by dividing the 3370 ¾ yards of the bill by 80 pieces which gives 42 yards to each piece or gorah Now all African Merikane which passes current are of two kinds one at 30 yards per gorah or piece ^ sells at \$3.75 the other at 40 yards a piece sells at \$2.75 per piece - You may refer for the truth of this to Taria Topin - and you may take my statement as correct

[0597]

591

that the calico sent is in my experience nearly unsaleable - Ludha palms off on me inferior Merikane calico (Latine) at a fraudulent price which only with great difficulty I can use and he knows that the cloth which he charges me \$5.75

a piece, sells at Unyanyembe at \$5.
Korje perpetuated the same fraud and
gave me stuff for packing instead of
calico used in trade as soon as my
back was turned to Zanzibar - the barefaced
spoliation of Government money by
Banian British subjects makes it
entirely reasonable for me to complain
I am &c
David Livingstone
H.M. consul Inner Africa

[0598]
592

Ujiji: 18 December 1871

The

Right Honourable
Earl Granville

Nº 4.

My Lord
The Despatch of
Lord Clarendon dated 31st May 1870
came to this place on the 15th ult. and
its very kindly tone and sympathy
afforded me a world of encouragement
Your Lordship will excuse me in saying
that with my gratitude there mingled
sincere sorrow that the personal
friend who signed it was no more.

In the kind wish expressed for my
return home I can join most cordial
Indeed I am seized with a sore longing
every time my family, now growing
up, comes into mind - but if I
explain you will not deem me un-
-reasonable in making one more
effort to make a feasible finish up of
my work - I know about (600) six
hundred miles of the long watershed
of South central Africa pretty fairly -
from this the majority of the vast
number of the springs of the Nile do

unquestionably arise and form great
mains of drainage in the Great Nile
valley which begins in Lat. 10°-12° South
But in the seventh hundred miles
four fountains are reported which are
different from all I have seen, in
rising from the base of an earthen
mound as full grown gushing springs
each of which at no great distance
off becomes a large river - I have
heard of this remarkable mound
200 miles distant on the South West.

[0599]

593

Again 300 miles distant on the South M^r Oswell &
I heard that the upper Zambesi or Liambai
rose at (this) one point - Then intelligent
natives mentioned it 180 miles off on the
East - and again 150 from it on the North East -
and also in the Manyema country 100 miles
Nor Nor East intelligent Arabs who had visited
the mound and fountains spoke of them
as a subject of wonder, and confirmed all
my previous information - I cannot
doubt of their existence, and I have even
given names by anticipation to the fountains
whose rivers I know

But on the next point, which if correct,
gives these fountains a historic interest I
speak with great diffidence and would
fain apologize for venturing, on the dim
recollections of boyhood, and without a
single book of reference to hazard the con-
-jecture that these fountains rising together
and flowing two North into the Nile, and two
South into Inner Ethiopia are probably the
sources of the Nile mentioned to Herodotus
by the Secretary of Minerva in the city of
Sais in Egypt - The idea imparted by
the words of the ancient historian was
that the waters of the sources welled up in
unfathomable fountains and there parted
half to Egypt and the other half to Inner
Ethiopia - the ancient traveller or trader
who first brought the report down to
Egypt would scarcely be so precise as
explain of waters that seemed to issue

from nearly one spot flowed on to
opposite slopes of the watershed = the Nor
East fountain - Baitte Frerés - flows as
the large river Lufira into Kamolondo

[0600]

594

one of four large Lakes in Webb's Lualaba =
the central line of drainage - then that on the
Nor West of the mound Youngs (Sir Paraffin[])
fountain flows through Lake Lincoln
and as the river Lomame joins Webb's
Lualaba before the fourth large Lake is
formed of which the outflow is said to
be into Petherick's branch - Two certainly
flow North and two as certainly flow
South - for Palmerston's fountain on
the South West is the source of the Liambai
or upper Zambesi - and Oswell's
fountain on the South East is the Kugu
which far down joins the same river
in "Inner Ethiopia" - I advance the
conjecture merely for what it is worth
and not dogmatically - the gentlemen who
stay at home at ease may smile at me,
assurance in recalling the memories of
of boyhood in Central Africa, but let
these be the sources of the Nile of the
ancients or not, it seems desirable to
rediscover them - so that no one may
come afterwards and cut me out by a
fresh batch of sources.

I am very unwilling to attach blame
to anyone and I can only ascribe it
to ignorance at Zanzibar of our Gov^t
being stringently opposed to its officers
employing slave labour, that some
£500 or £600 worth of my goods were
entrusted to ^ Ludha a concealed slave trader
who again placed the supplies in the
hands of slaves under two dishonest
freemen who as I have described in
N^o 3. of this series of letters caused
me a great loss of time, and ultimately

[0601]

ultimately of all the goods

Again £500 worth of goods this being half of £1000 kindly sent by H.M. Government to my aid, was by some strange halucination handed off to Ludha again and he again committed them to slaves and two freemen - All lay feasting on my stores at Bagamoio on the mainland opposite Zanzibar from the latter part of October 1870 to the latter part of February 1871 and no one looked near them - They came on to Unyanyembe a point from twenty days to a month East of this - and lay there till a war broke out and gave them a good excuse to continue there still - Ludha is a very polite and rich Banian but in this second bill he makes a shameless overcharge of 364 dollars - All the Banians and Arabs hate to see me in this slave mart, and dread exposure - Here and in Manyema I have got into the good graces of all the Arabs of position - But the Banian hatred of our interference in the slave trade manifests itself in the low cunning of imbuing the minds of the slaves sent with the idea that they are not to follow me, but in accordance with some fabulous letter force me back - This they have propagated all through the country and really seem to believe it - My letters to the Coast having been so often destroyed I had relinquished the hope of ever obtaining help from Zanzibar, and proposed when I become stronger to work my way down to Mteza or Baker for men and help.

[0602]

A vague rumour reached Ujiji in the beginning of last month that an Englishman had come to Unyanyembe with boats horses men and goods in abundance It was in vain to conjecture who this could be and my eager enquiries were met by answers so contradictory that I began to doubt if a stranger had come at all But one day, I cannot say which for I was three weeks too fast in my reckoning

my man Susi came dashing up in great excitement and gasped out, "An Englishman coming - I see him" - and off he ran to meet him - The American flag at the head of a caravan told me the nationality of the stranger. It was Henry M. Stanley - the travelling correspondent of the "New York Herald" sent by the son of the Editor - James Gordon Bennett Junior at an expense of over (£4000) Four thousand Pounds to obtain correct information about me if living and if dead bring home my bones - the kindness was extreme and made my whole frame thrill with excitement and gratitude - I had been left nearly destitute by the moral idiot Shereef selling off all my goods for slaves and ivory for himself - My condition was sufficiently forlorn for I had but a very few articles of barter left of what I had taken the precaution to leave here in case of extreme need - the strange news M^r Stanley had to tell to one who had been for years out of communication with the world were quite reviving - Appetite returned and in a

[0603]

597

a week I began to feel strong - Having men and goods and information that search for an outlet for Tanganyika was desired by Sir Roderick Murchison we went for a months cruise down to its Southern end This was a pleasure trip compared to the weary tramping of all the rest of my work but an outflow we did not find - on returning on the 13th current M^r Stanley - recieved a letter from the American Consul at Zanzibar of 11th June last, and Aden telegraphs of European news up to 29th April My mail was dated November 1870 and would not have left the slaves had not M^r Stanley accidentally seen it and seized it for me. What was done by the American Consul could have been done by the English Consul but for the unaccountable pro-

-pensity to employ a slave trader & slaves
seeing no hope of even the third £500 or last
half of the government £1000 being placed
in any other hands but those of the polite
Ludha, I have taken the liberty of resolving
to return a full month Eastward to secure
the dregs of my goods from the slaves there -
and accept those that M^r Stanley offers =
hire freemen at Unyanyembe with them -
and then return back to the watershed to
finish the little I have to do - In going and
returning from Unyanyembe I shall lose
three or four months - the ancient fount-
-ains will require eight months more,
but in one year from this time, with
ordinary health, the geographical work
will be done. I am presuming that your
Lordship will say - "If worth doing at all
it is worth doing well". All my friends

[0604]

597

will wish me to make a complete work
of the sources of the ancient river. In that
wish, in spite of the strong desire to go home
I join, believing that it is better to do so
now than do it afterwards in vain

Trusting that your Lordship will kindly
make allowances for what to some,
who do not know how hard I have
toiled to accomplish six sevenths of
the work, may appear obstinacy
I have the honour to be your
Lordships most obedient servant
David Livingstone
H.M. Consul
Inner Africa

P.S. the mortality by small pox in
this region is so enormous that I
venture to apply to Government for
a supply of vaccine virus to meet
me on my return by one portion
being sent in the Governors mail
bag to the Cape and another portion
by way of Bombay all convenient
haste being enjoined. Many intelligent
Arabs have expressed to me their willing[-]
-ness to use it. If I remember rightly

Lady Mary W. Montagu brought the
knowledge of inoculation from Turkey
This race though bigoted perhaps
more than the Turks may recieve
the superior remedy, and if they do,
a great boon will be conferred,
for very many thousands perish
annually and know no preventative
The reason for my troubling you
is, I do not know any of the

[0605]

599

conductors of vaccination in London
and Professor Christison ^ of Edinburgh who formerly
put the virus up in capillary tubes
may not now be alive - the capillary
tubes are the only means of preserving the
substance fresh in this climate I have seen
and if your Lordship will kindly sub[-]
-mit my [request] to vaccinators to send these tubes
charged with matter I shall be able at
least to make an effort to benefit this
great population -
David Livingstone.

Journal continued from 19 Sept^r page - C.

Dec^r 20th

While we were away a large horde of
Ujijians came to Bambarre all eager to reach
the cheap ivory of which a rumour had spread
far and wide - They numbered 500 guns
and invited Muhamad to go with them but
he preferred waiting for my return from the
West. We now resolved to go due North &
to buy ivory and I to reach another part of the
Lualaba and buy a canoe.

Wherever the dense primeval forest has
been cleared off by man gigantic grasses
usurp the clearances. Some of the sylvan
vegetation can stand the annual grass burn-
-ings except a species of Bauhinia and
occasionally a large tree which sends out

new wood below the burned places - the
parrots build thereon and the men make
a stair up 150 feet by tying climbing
plants around at about four feet distance

called
Bina-
-yoba

as steps - near confluence of the
Luamo men build huts on this same
species of tree for safety against the

[0606]

600

Dec^r
21st
1869

arrows of their enemies - the strong thick
grass of the clearances dries down to the
roots at the surface of the soil and fire
does it no harm - though a few of the great
old burly giants brave the fires none of
the climbers do. They disappear but the
plants themselves are brought out of the
forests and ranged along plantations
like wire fences to keep wild beasts off
The poles of these vegetable wire hedges often
take root as also those in stages for maize

22nd

Muhamad presented a goat to be eaten

23 24

on our Christmas - got large copper
bracelets made of my copper by Manyema

smiths. They are considered very valuable and have driven iron bracelets quite out of fashion - We start immediately after

25th

Christmas. Must try with all my might to finish exploration before next Christmas - I get fever severely and was down

26th

all day - but we march as I have always found that moving is the best remedy for fever - I have however no medicine whatever - We passed over the Neck of M^t Kinyima NW of Moenekus through very slippery forest and encamped on the banks of the Lulwa R^t

28th

Away to Monangoi's vil near the Luamo R. here 150 or more yards wide and deep - A man passed us bearing a human finger wrapped in a leaf - It was to be used as a charm - and was of a man killed in revenge - The Arabs all took this as clear evidence of cannibalism - I hesitated -

29th

30th

31 Dec

1869

Heavy rains - Luamo is called the Luasse above this - we crossed in canoes

[0607]

1870

1st January 1870 May the Almighty help me to finish the work in hand and retire through the Basango before the year is out - Thanks for all last years loving kindnesses - Our course was due North - with the Luasse flowing in a gently undulating green country

2^d

on our right and rounded mountains in Mbongo's country on our left - Rest a day at Mbongo's as the people were

3^d

honest - Reached a village at edge of a great forest - people excited and uproarious but not ill bred - ran along side of path with us shouting and making energetic remarks to each other about us - A newly married couple stood in a village where we stopped to enquire the way with arms around each other very lovingly and no one joked or poked fun at them - Marched

Rts or
Rivu-
-lets

five hours through forest - crossed 3 R^{ts} and much stagnant water which the sun by the few rays he darts in cannot evaporate - Passed several huge traps for elephants - A log of heavy wood about 20 feet long has a hole at one end for a climbing plant to pass through and suspend it - At the lower end a mortice is cut out of the side and a wooden

lance about two inches broad by 1 ½
thick and about four feet long is
inserted firmly in the mortice - a

mortice
and

lance [Drawing of mortice and lance.] latch down ^ on the ground when touched
by the animals foot lets the beam run
down on to his body, and the great
weight of the wood drives in the lance
and kills the animal - I saw one
lance which had accidentally
fallen, and it had gone into the
the stiff clay soil two feet -

[0608]

602

January
4th
1870

- The villagers we passed were all civil
but like noisy children all talking and
gazing - When surrounded by 300 or 400
some who have not been accustomed
to the ways of wild men think that a
fight is imminent - but poor things
no attack is thought of if it does not
begin on our side - Many of Muhamads
people were dreadfully afraid of being
killed and eaten - One man out in
search of ivory seemed to have lost sight
of his companions for they saw him
running with all his might to a forest
with no path in it - He was searched for
for several days and was given up as
a murdered man, and victim of the
cannibal Manyuema - on the seventh
day after he lost his head he was
led into camp by a headman who
had found him wandering, fed and
lodged and restored him to his people.

The women here plait the hair into
the form of a basket behind - It is
first rolled into a very long coil then
wound round something till it is about

8 or ten inches long projecting from

[Pencil drawing of hairstyle described.]

the back of the head -

5th - 6 - 7^h

Wettings by rain and grass over[-]
-hanging our paths with bad water
brought on Choleraic symptoms
and opium from Muhamad had
no effect in stopping it - He too had
Rheumatism - on suspecting the
water as the cause I had all I used
boiled and this was effectual but
I was greatly reduced in flesh and
so were many of our party

[0609]

603

January
5th

We proceeded nearly due North through choked[-]
up wilderness and many villages and run[-]
-ning rills - the paths often left to be choked
up by the overbearing vegetation, and then
the rill adopted as the only clear passage
The rill seems to be made a path too to prevent
footmarks being followed by enemies
In fact to make approaches to human
dwellings as difficult as possible - the
hedges around villages over sprout out
and grow a living fence and this is covered
by a great mass of a species of calabash
with its broad leaves so that nothing
appears of the fence outside - the people

11th

civil but uproarious from the excitement
of having never seen strangers before - All
visitors from a distance came with their
large wooden shields - many of the men
handsome and tall - the women plainer than
at Bambarre

12th

cross the Lolinde 35 yards & knee deep flowing
to join Luamo far down - dark water 13th
through the hills Chimunemune - see many
Albinos and partial lepers - syphilis -
slough excessive - too trying to travel in rains

14th

The Muabe palm had taken possession of a
broad valley and the leaf stalks as thick
as a strong man's arm and 20 feet long
had fallen off and blocked up all passage
except by one path made & mixed up by the
feet of buffaloes & elephants - the leg goes
into elephants holes up to the thigh - It
is grievous - three hours of this slough
tired the strongest - a brown stream ran
through the centre waist deep - & washed
off a little of the adhesive mud then
a river covered with Tikatika a

[0610]

604

Jany
14th
1870

living vegetable bridge made by a species
of glossy leafed grass - these felt themselves
into a mat capable of bearing a mans weight

but it bends in a foot or fifteen inches
every step - a stick six feet long could
not reach the bottom in certain holes
we passed - the Lotus or sacred lilley
which grows in nearly all the shallow
waters of this country sometimes
spreads its broad leaves over the
bridge so as to lead careless observers
to think that it is the bridge builder but
the grass mentioned is the real agent
Here it is called Kintefwetefwe on
Victoria Nyanza Tikatika

15th

Choleraic purging again till all water
used was boiled but I was laid up

20th

by sheer weakness near hill Chanza

21st

Weakness and illness went on because
we got wet so often - the whole party suffers
and they say that they will never come
here again - Manyango rivulet has
fine sweet water but the whole country
is smothered with luxuriant vegetation

27th

Rest from sickness in camp - the country

29th - 30

is indescribable from rank jungle of
grass but the rounded hills are still
pretty - an elephant alone can pass

through it - these are his headquarters -
the stalks are from $\frac{1}{2}$ half an inch to an inch
and a half in diameter - reeds clog the feet
and the leaves rub sorely on the face &
eyes - the view is generally shut in by
this megatherium grass except when
we come to a slope down to a valley
or bed of a rill -

[0611]

605

Janu-
-ary
30th
1870

Came to a village among fine gardens of
maize Banana's, groundnuts and Cassava
Men said go on to next village & this meant
we dont want you here - the main body
of Muhamad's people was about 3 miles
before us but I was so weak I sat down
in the next hamlet and asked for a hut
to rest in and go on - A woman with
leprous hands gave me hers - a nice
clean one and very heavy rain came on
Of her own accord she prepared dumplings
of green maize pounded & boiled which
are sweet - she said that she saw I was
hungry - It was excessive weakness from
purging and seeing that I did not eat for
fear of the leprosy she kindly pressed me
"Eat you are weak only from hunger - this
will strengthen you" - I put it out of her
sight and blessed her motherly heart - I
had ere this come to the conclusion that I
ought not to risk myself further in the rains
in my present weakness for it as in
Marung[u] and Liemba result in something
worse - the horde mentioned as having
past Bambarre was now somewhere in
our vicinity and it was impossible to

1st
Feby
1870

ascertain from the Manyema where
the Lualaba lay - In going North on 1st
February we came to some of this horde
belonging to Katomba or Moenemokaia
who reported that the leader was anxious
for advice as to crossing Lualaba and future
- movements - He supposed that this river
was seven days in front of him and
twelve days in front of him - It is
a puzzle from its Nor Westing and
low level - It possibly is Pethericks
Bahr Ghazal - Could get no Latitude -

[0612]

606

2nd
Feby
1870

I propose to cross it and buy an exploring
canoe because I am recovering my
strength but we now climb over the bold
hills Bininango and turn SW towards
Katomba to take counsel = He knows more
than anyone else about the country and
his people being now scattered everywhere
seeking ivory I do not relish their company

3^d

caught in drenching rain which made
me fain to sit exhausted as I was under
an umbrella for ^ an hours trying to keep the
trunk dry - drank some rain water as
I felt faint - Water in paths now calf deep
crossed a hundred yards of slush waist
deep in mud channel and full of holes
made by elephants feet - path hedged
in by reedy grass often intertwined &
very tripping - stripped on reaching

my hut in a village and a fire during
night nearly dried them - anointed the
legs with palm oil and in morning had
a delicious breakfast of sour goats
milk and porridge - As I sat in the
rain a little tree frog about half an inch
long leaped on to a grassy leaf and
began a tune as loud as that of many
birds and very sweet - It was surprising
to hear so much music out of so small

5th

a musician - the drenching told on
me sorely and it was repeated after
we had crossed the good sized rivulets
Mulunkula and many villages and
I lay under a Muale palm & slept
during the worst of the pelting - I was
seven days Southing to Mamohela
Katomba's camp and quite knocked
up & exhausted I went into winter
quarters on 7th February 1870

[0613]

607

Feby
7th
1870

This was the camp of the headmen of the
ivory horde now away for ivory - Kato-
mba as Moenemokaia is called was
now all kindness - We were away from
his Ujijian associates and he seemed to
follow his natural bent without fear of
the other slave traders who all hate to see
me as a spy on their proceedings - Rest
shelter - boiling all the water I used and
above all a new species of potato
called Nyumbo - much famed among the
natives as restorative soon put me all to
rights - Katomba supplied me liberally with
Nyumbo and but for a slightly medicinal

taste which is got rid of by boiling in
two waters would be equal to English po-

11th

tatoes - But first of all it was proposed to go
off to Lualaba in North West in order to
procure Holcus sorghum or dura flour
that being in Arab opinion nearly equal
to wheat or as they say "heating" while the
maize flour we were obliged to use was
cold or cooling - I was too ill to go through
mud waist deep - so I allowed Muhamad

13th

who too was suffering much go away
alone in search of ivory - As stated above
shelter and Nyumbo proved beneficial

March
1st

Visited my Arab friends in their camp for
the first time today - this is Kasessa's country
and the camp is situated between two strong
rivulets while Mamohela is the native name
M^t Brombola stands two miles from its N -
& M^t Bolunkela is N.E. same distance -
wood water and grass the requisites of a
camp abound - and the Manyema
bring large supplies of food every day
- forty large baskets of maize for a goat
fowls & bananas & Nyumbo very cheap

[0614]

608

1st 25th
March
1870

Iron bracelets common medium of exchange
and coarse beads & cowries - for a copper
bracelet three large fowls are given
and 3 ½ baskets of maize - one basket ^ 3 feet high is a
womans load and they are very strong

The Wachigone are a scattered tribe among
the Maarabo or Swaheli but they retain
their distinct identity as a people - the
Mamba fish has breasts with milk and
utters a cry - flesh very white - is not the
crocodile which goes by the same name
is probably the Dugong or Peixe Mulher o[f]

?/

Portuguese ? Full grown leeches come
on the surface in this wet country
Some of Katomba's men returned with 43
tusks - An animal with short horns &

?/

of a reddish colour in North - it is not

April
25th 26

known to the Arabs
Joseph an Arab from Oman says
that the Simoom is worse in Sham
(Yemen?) than in Oman - blows for 3 or 4
hours - In Sham butter eaten largely
the remedy against its ill effects - It is
also smeared on the body - In Oman
a wetted cloth is put over the head body
and legs while the Simoom blows -

May
1st

An elephant was killed which had
three tusks - all of good size

Rains continued and mud & mire
from the clayey soil of Manyema
was too awful to be attempted -

24th

sent to Bambarre for cloth and beads
I left there - a party of Thani's people
came South - said that they had killed
forty Manyema and lost four of
their own number - nine villages
were burned and all for a single
string of beads a man tried to steal

[0615]

609

June
1870

Muhamad bin Nassur and Akila's men
brought 116 tusks - from N - people said
to be all good and obliging - Akila's chief
man had a large deep ulcer on the foot from
the mud - When we had the people here
Kassessa gave ten goats ^ and one tusk to hire them to
avenge a feud in which his elder was
killed and they went - spoils secured were
31 captives 60 goats about 40 Manyema
killed - one slave of attacking party killed & two
badly wounded - Thani's man Yahoood
who was leader in the other case of 40 killed
boasted before me of the deed - I said you
were sent here not to murder but to trade
he replied we are sent to murder - Bin
Nassur said The English are always kill[-]
-ing people - I replied "Yes slavers who do
the deeds that were done yesterday" Various
other tribes sent large presents to the Arabs
to avert assaults and tusks too delivered -

16th

The Nassick pupils now lived with the
slave women whose husbands were away
one of trade and got plenty to eat - they refused
rations from me saying they were too
small though they were sufficient to
buy gaudy "lambas" to flaunt about before
the slave women - they did nothing
for me but seeing that I was at their
mercy in Manyema where no one can
be induced to carry a load or even go
into the next district they acted like the
Irish helps in America - the want of
a chain to confine them emboldens them
to impertinence but when Katomba speaks
they literally tremble - Ever since one
called Simon Price killed two Babemba
at Kabwabwata he has been a nuisance

[0616]

610

June
13th
1870

for stealing lying uncleanness and
every wickedness - I never would have
come with them but I could get no others
and feared that my packet of letters
containing orders for more men was
destroyed - He pretended to fear a canoe
then the people but offered to go as a slave
to Muhamad Bogharib - the rains had
continued into June and 50 inches
fell - Now my people failed me - so

26th

with only three attendants I started off to the
North West for the Lualaba the numbers
of running rivulets to be crossed were
surprising - and at each some forty
yards of the path has been worked by the
feet of passengers into adhesive mud

We crossed fourteen in one day - some
thigh deep - most of them run with the
Liya which we crossed and it flows
to the Lualaba - We pass through many
villages for the paths all lead through
human dwellings - many people
presented bananas and seemed sur-
-prised when I made a small return gift
One man ran after me with sugar
cane - I paid for lodgings too - Here the

28th

Arabs never do - Biting ants called
in the West - the Driver ant - in millions
in some parts of the way but on this
side the Continent they seem less fierce
than I have found them in the West -

29th

At one village musicians with calabashes
having holes in them flute fashion tried
to please me by their vigorous acting
also by beating drums in time - Passed

30th

through the nine villages burned for
a single string of beads, and slept in

[0617]

611

July
1870

the village of Malala - while I was sleeping
quietly here, some trading Arabs camped at
Nasangwas, and at dead of night one was

pinned to the earth by a spear - no doubt
this was in revenge for relations slain
in the 40 mentioned - the survivors now
wished run a muck in all directions
against Manyema - When I came up I
proposed to ask the chief if he knew the
assassin and he replied that he was not
sure of him - He could only conjecture who
it was - but death to all glared from the
eyes of half castes and slaves - Fortunately
before this affair was settled in their
way, I met Muhamad Bogharib coming
back from Kasongo's and he joined in
enforcing peace - the traders went off but
let my three people know what I knew
long before that they hated having a spy
in me on their deeds - I told some of them
who were civil tongued that ivory obtained
by bloodshed was unclean evil - unlucky
as they speak - "Dont shed human blood
my friends - it has guilt not to be wiped
off by water" - off they went and after[-]
wards the bloodthirsty party got only one tusk
and a half - while another party which
avoided shooting men got 54 tusks -
From Muhamads people I learned that
the Lualaba was not in the N.W. course I
had pursued - It in fact flows W.S.W.
in - other great bend - and they had gone
far to the North without seeing it - But
the country was exceedingly difficult
from forest - and water - As I had
already seen, trees fallen across the
path formed a breast-high wall to be
climbed over - flooded rivers

[0618]

612

July
1st
1870

breast and neck deep had to be crossed and
the mud was awful - and nothing
but villages eight or ten miles apart -

Return

In the clearances around these alone
could the sun be seen - For the first time
in my life the feet failed me and now
having but three attendants it would have
been unwise to go further - in that direction
Instead of healing kindly as heretofore
when torn by hard travel irritable eating
ulcers fastened on both feet and I
limped back to Bambarre on 22nd

5th

The account of Ramadan who was
desired by me to take notes as he went
in the forest were discouraging and made
me glad I did not go - at one part
where the tortuous river was flooded
they were five hours in the water and
a man in a small canoe went
before them sounding for places not
too deep for them - breast & chin
deep and Hassani fell and hurt
himself sorely in a hole - People have
goats and sheep and love them as they
do children

6th

Back to Mamohela & welcomed by the
Arabs who all approved of my
turning back - Katomba presented
abundant provisions for all the
way to Bambarre - Before we reached
Muhamad made a forced march
and Moenemohia's people came
out drunk - the Arabs assaulted
them and they ran off - Gardner un-
invited went too and brought a woman
he captured into the Arab camp - and
Chuma came back caricolling in
front of the party like a spaniel

[0619]

613

running 20 yards or so on one side then
making as if discharging his gun - then off
to the other side and there mimicking shoot-
-ing which he is too cowardly to do actually
anywhere - Neram went against orders
and captured two fowls & some tobacco!
I did not order them not to go at first be[-]
cause I thought that Christian boys from
Nassick who had been trained for years
there and were confirmed by bishop Hardy
did not need to be told not to murder
I said to Chuma "What a fool you make
yourself - "What would Waller & D^r Wilson think
if they saw you capering there as I have"?
He said "Well the English went to fight at
from bishop Mackenzies station -
"Yes to make slaves free but you went to
make free people slaves" - All the the
Nassick pupils are eager slave hunters if
no danger is incurred and in Manyema
there is none for all flee from the noise
of guns - they were pig stealers at Nassick
and now would fain be slave stealers
they do slave duties unbidden and all
they can to ingratiate themselves with
the Arabs - Simon and Abram went to
Muhamad Bogharib and begged women
this is a way of becoming his slaves
but he was afraid & refused them
It was an imposition to send them out
from school as taught artizans - the
carpenter Price could not cut a piece of wood
straight even when chalked out for him -
the Blacksmith Ibram never had welded
iron - the mason wanted the stones squared
for him ere he could build - and the
connection of wages & work had yet to be
learned - they expected pay for nothing

[0620]

614

[...]

July

23^d
1870

The sores on my feet laid me up
as irritable eating ulcers - if the foot were
put to the ground a discharge of bloody ichor
flowed and the same discharge happened
every night with considerable pain that
prevented sleep - the wailing of the slaves
is one of the night sounds of a slave camp
they eat through everything muscle tendon
bone and often lame permanently if they
do not kill the poor things - medicines
have very little effect - their periodicity
seems to say that they are allied to Fever
The Arabs make a salve of Bees wax and
sulphate of copper and this applied hot
and held on by a bandage affords support
but the necessity of letting the ichor
escapes renders it a painful remedy.
I had three ulcers and no medicine the
native plan of support by means of a
stiff leaf or bit of calabash was too irritating
they continued to eat in and enlarge
in spite of everything - the vicinity was

Sept^r
6th

hot and the pain increased with the size
I was at last advised to try Malachite
rubbed down with water on a stone and
applied with a feather - this was the
only thing that had any beneficial effect
Copper rubbed down in the same way is
a remedy of good repute but malachite
alone proved beneficial in my case

26th

I have been able now to report the
ulcers healing - For eighty days I was
completely laid up by them and it was
long ere the lost substance was replaced
they kill many slaves - and an
epidemic came to us which carried

October

off thirty in our small camp - it was
Choleraic and how many Manyema

[0621]

615

Nov.
1870

died of it we could not ascertain - While this
epidemic raged here we heard of cholera terribly
severe on the way to the coast

Another disease called Safura or earth eating
attacks great numbers of both slaves & freemen
on seeing it on the West coast I imagined that
it was a mode of suicide adopted by the slaves
and their Portuguese masters shared the opinion
and punished any one guilty of clay eating
but here I found it to be a disease per se
and it attacks even rich men at Zanzibar
who have none of the reasons that might
make slaves desire to quit life - the earth
of old walls is preferred and to the sufferer
it smells and tastes pleasantly - Muhamad's
brother was attacked and his wife told him
of it on enquiry his brother was ashamed &
denied it but his wife repeated - It is false
he is constantly picking out earth out of the
garden wall or little clods on the surface
and eating them - the symptoms are swelling
of the face hands and feet - If the fingernail
is squeezed it is bloodless - the patient is
oppressed with breathlessness and easily
fatigued - though he is supplied with plenty
of food he constantly picks up dirt and
it appears in his dejections unchanged -
the swelled face feet & hands & bloodlessness
continue to the end and many slaves die of
Safura - A remedy got from Muhamads
father - iron scales from smithy - sulphate
of copper and the strongest vinegar was
allowed to stand a few days and a wine

glassful given morning and evening
It produced profuse vomiting & purging
and eggs milk fish had to be abstained
from for years afterward

[0622]

616

Dec^r
1870.

But the strangest disease I have seen in
this country seems really to be broken hearted[-]
-ness, and it attacks freemen who have
been captured and made slaves - My
attention was drawn to it when the elder
brother of Syde bin Habib was killed in Rua
by a night attack when a spear was pitched
through his tent into his side - Syde then
vowed vengeance for the blood of his
brother and assaulted all he could find
killing the elders and making the young
men captives - He had secured a very large
number and they endured the chains
untill they saw the broad river Lualaba
roll between them and their free homes
~~they~~ then lost heart - twenty one were
unchained as being now safe but all ran
away at once while eight with many others still in chains
died in three days after crossing - they
ascribed their only pain to the heart, and
placed the hand correctly on the spot though
many think that the organ stands high
up under the breast bone - some expressed
surprise to me that they should die seeing
they had plenty to eat and no work - one
fine boy of about 12 years was carried
and when about to expire was kindly
laid down on the side of the path and
a hole dug to deposit the body - he too
said he had nothing the matter with
him except pain in his heart - as it
attacks only the free who are captured
and never slaves it seems to be really a
broken hearts

[0623]

Dec ^r
1870.

Rice sown on 19th October was in ear in 70 days
a leopard killed my goat and a gun set for
him went off at 10 PM - the ball broke both
hind legs and one foreleg yet he had power to
spring up and bite a man badly afterwards
He was a male 2 ft. 4 in. - at withers and 6 ft.
8 in. from tip of nose to end of tail -

1st January 1871 - Oh Father help
me to finish this work to thy honour - still
detained at Bambarre - but a caravan of
500 muskets is reported from the coast -

Jany
27th
1871

It may bring me other men and goods
Safari or caravan reported to be near and
my men and goods at Ujiji

February 4th 7 slaves come to me from
the coast and three Pagazi - I was overjoyed
but did not then know that I had recieved
slaves instead of men - they called them[-]
selves Laskars and came without loads -
of eight pieces of calico & 7 of Kanike I
clothed them all gratuitously - on the day of
their arrival one of my worthless lot from
Nassik who refused to go North for fear
of death was killed by the Manuyyuema as he
went to buy food - the murderer was caught

the slaves mutiny and refuse to go North
swore that the consul had told them not to go
forward but to force me back and they
had spread this tale all over the country and
that a certain letter had been sent to me
with orders to return forthwith - they

swore so positively that I actually looked
again at to Kirk's letter to see his orders
had been rightly understood by me -
But for Muhamad Bogharib and fear
of pistol shot they would have gained
their own and their Banian masters
end to baffle me - completely - they

[0624]

618

Feby
11th
1871.

demanded an advance of one dollar
or six dollars a month though this was double
freeman's pay at Zanzibar - their two
headmen Shereef and Awathe had refused
to come past Ujiji - and were revelling on
my goods there - I might have returned
at once and deposed these worthless leaders
but I had a sore longing to finish my work
and retire and going back to Ujiji would
probably have occupied five or six months
in which time, I hope my work would be
finished if I went North and got a canoe -
I hoped to gain influence over these slaves
in the way, and do all I required but I
never had experience with Banian slaves
before, nor did I concieve it possible for
British subjects to do all they could to
baffle me by lies and low cunning
so that their slave trading should not be
injured by my disclosures -

Went North to Luamo and across
it - I was very anxious to embark on it
but was also disinclined to force - the
slaves who are excessively afraid of
Manyuema and everything in their
country - so we went on to Mamohela

25th

and found that it was now known
that Lualaba flowed West South West
and that our course was to be West
across this other great bend of the
mighty river - I had to suspend my
judgment so as to be prepared to
find it after all perhaps the Congo -
No one knew anything about it
except that when at Kasongo's nine
days West and by South it came
sweeping round and flowed North
and North and by East -

[0625]

619

Feby
1871

Katomba presented a young Soko or gorillah
that had been caught while its mother was
killed - she sat 18 inches high had fine
long black hair all over which was pretty
so long as it was kept in order by her dam -
she was the least mischievous of all the
monkey tribe I have seen - seemed to know
that in me she had a friend and came &
sat quietly on the mat beside me - In
walking the first thing observed is that
she does not tread on the palms of her hands
but on the backs of the second line of
bones of the hands - In doing this the
nails do not touch the ground nor do the
knuckles - she uses the arms thus supported
crutch fashion and hitches herself along
between them - occasionally one hand
is put down before the other and alter-
nates with the feet - or she walks upright
and holds up a hand to any one to carry
her - if refused she turns her face down
and makes grimaces of the most bitter
human weeping - wringing her hands &
sometimes adding a fourth hand or foot
to make the appeal more touching - with
grass or leaves she draws them around
her to make a nest - and resents anyone
meddling with her property - she began in
a very business like way to unloose her

string using the thumbs not fingers in
the usual monkey fashion and when
one interfered with the operation she
struck out with her hand in a way
that shewed that an adult could give a
very severe slap - they apportion parts
of the forests to certain companies
as street dogs do in Cairo & Istanbul

[0626]

620

Feby
1871

and intruders from other societies are very
promptly expelled with well slapped checks -
and sometimes bitten - When seen in the
forests they sometimes walk erect with the
hands on the head as if to steady the loins
but when they see man they take to all fours
and rarely attack except when molested they
resent spears but do not touch women
who have none - When stabbed he pulls the
spear out yet never uses it against his
enemy - stuffs leaves into a wound to
staunch the flow of blood - to me he seems
very ugly - a bawdy legged - pot bellied - low
browed villain without a particle of the
gentlemen in him - one newly killed is
perfectly appalling - He would do to sit at
the Royal Academy in a portrait of Satan
a statue intended for the Lord of all evil in
the Nineveh marbles is not half so ugly
as Soko yet he has a good character
from the natives "Soko is a man" they
say "We trouble Soko but he never resents
it" - We hear him drumming on hollow
trees and at once go to try & kill him -
he hears our drumming and never comes
to injure man - "he does not steal from
our gardens but is content with his own
wild fruits" - when drum is beaten by
Soko his yelping as music is like that
of spaniels when whipped or giving tongue
His nest is a poor contrivance with no
more skill shewn in contrivance than

the nest of our Cushat dove - here he sits
in pelting rain with his arms over his
head - the natives call it his house and
laugh at him for being such a fool and
after building it not to go beneath
for shelter - !

[Six missing pages]

[There is a gap of six pages here in the journal. The pages appear to have been torn out by someone other than Livingstone. The table of contents at the back of the journal (see [759]) indicates that the missing pages covered the following topics: "Private Memoranda - Prince Albert November / the Portuguese rights tenderly cared for / the native rights ignored - contrast / presented by good Lord Palmerston - / Private Mem. : John Moffat / a mistake - missionaries but - / men and not always very honest ones - / Private Mem. of two Makololo 4 / missionaries Helmore & Price - / one a good man the other a born fool."]

[0627]

627

Private
Mem.

but the raving of a weak mind, and quite in
accordance with his bragging before he ever
saw the people when calling at the Royal
Observatory at the Cape - "that if the Makololo
bothered him he would soon shew them his
revolver" - As also in a speech delivered at
the Cape "that he had tied up some of the
natives to his waggon wheel, and given them
a good thrashing" - Speaking to Independents
he averred that the Makololo were displeased
with the missionaries because I had
become a Government servant - this,
said of people who cannot form an idea
of men sent to other countries except by
their sov reign, was sufficiently indicative
of the calibre of the poor thing that uttered it -
these ebullitions were reported to me by
men who heard them of the most unimpeachable
veracity
David Livingstone

[0628]

628

February 1868
Mr - Thomas Baines

Private
Mem.

The Zambesi Expedition was furnished by the Government with eighteen months cabin fare for eight persons - We were but six so our stores might be called for two years I employed several months in conveying the stores in the steamer up to Tette and then giving them in charge to the storekeeper - Thomas Baines - went up the River Shire which occupied a little more than three months - On returning to Tette the first thing that struck me was the enormous diminution of our stores - the greater part of ~~our~~ at least eighteen months provisions gone in three - wholesale plunder did not occur to my mind - I thought that they had been removed to some underground storerooms of the same house, and said "Baines where are the stores?" He replied "these are all we have now, I only gave away what I thought you would have done had you been here", "and I am willing to pay for all that is amissing". Before leaving for the Shire my attention had been drawn to four large casks of loaf sugar which stood in front of a window, because I saw Baines opening and handling the sugar without cause, and asked him why he was doing so - He replied "To dry it" - there was no moisture about it - the climate was particularly dry - I now asked him where the sugar was - three of the casks were gone, and he pointed to one that remained, and said that was all we had - offering again to pay for all he had given away - This state of matters was so astounding, that I thought that he must have been out of his senses

Private
Mem.

when he made away with such a quantity for no sane person in the receipt of a salary of £350 a year would risk that for the favour and flattery of a number of low Portuguese convicts - On asking what he had done as artist in accordance with my written orders - He shewed me two gold chains and a gold ring which he had recieved for painting these same convicts' ~~faces and~~ full lengths portraits. It was not with the food alone he had made free but with the Government time and ^ Govt artists materials - But I thought it well to take the most charitable view, and finding that he had suffered somewhat from fever forced myself to believe that he had made away with the stores when suffering from that disease. The stores were placed by me ^ at first in three large rooms on stages to save them from the white ants - I now took those that remained and placed them with ease on stages in the smallest of the three rooms formerly occupied, and put a padlock on the door - In giving the key of this lock to M^r Baines I considered it right to give him a private rebuke, and this to avoid letting others hear it, I did on paper and gave the letter with the key or renewed charge of the stores - He broke out into an abject entreaty "to be allowed to remain with the Expedition without any salary" - "He would pay for all he had given away" - "He had done nothing for himself and nothing for the Expedition" "let me remain with you without any salary" these admissions were made to myself he never once attempted to deny his guilt or blame anyone else - the loss

Private
Mem.

of stores so palpable and enormous that his thrice repeated offers to pay for them left no doubt on my mind as to his guilt as there was apparently none on his own. But in addition he had in a moment of remorse in my absence called for M^r Rae and M^r Charles Livingstone and began a confession - "He had given away a great deal - "He had given Major Sicard twenty[-] four boxes of sardines" and suddenly stopped in his confession - I had thought of giving him and the stores into Major Sicard's charge but speaking to that "Commandant of Tette" one day, he having learned that I knew of the wholesale plunder of the ~~stores~~ stores, remarked "M^r Baines is very much afraid of you" "very much indeed" - "I dont think he gave away very much for I asked a few things from him and he gave me very little" - twenty four boxes of sardines and how much of the other few things we dont know, were accounted very little -

When we were gone three days from Tette this time on the way to the Shire again M^r Rae came into the cabin and in the presence of my brother and self declared "that M^r Baines had stolen his shirts and a roll of serge - He had seen them in his boxes" He afterwards denied having made this charge, but I could at this moment swear to him making ^ it though certain that this were the last hour I have to live on earth - John Walker Quarter master saw him take a bolt of canvass out of the steamer - we found only a couple of yards of it in Baines' box and

[0631]

Private
Mem.

M^r Rae in order to wipe away all traces of his charge & denial of it, went stealthily to Baine's boxes and removed his shirts -

I now saw that I had put myself in a false position by my extreme clemency - I had thought of myself as able to live on the coarse country food without considering the weaker stomachs of the other members. We had only the disastrous experience of the great Niger Expedition to look at - and it soon occurred to me that if I fed my companions on food which would almost certainly have become fatal - the blame of their loss would have been heaped on my shoulders - But I could not apply to Government for a fresh supply without some tangible reason for the loss of eighteen months stores - I therefore sent for Baines and in the presence of all the other members asked him to give me any explanation he could in order that I might apply for more stores. The store book had been left at Tette without a single issue being entered during the time the plundering took place - Baines had got a hold of it and entered expenditures of stores equal to accounting for all the loss - the sugar for instance was put as a pound and a half of loaf sugar ^ to each member every day - I asked the members who had been at Tette if they had eaten that quantity, this produced a laugh they had they assured me had white sugar to their tea only on Sundays - they used country sugar which I had bought to save the white ^ at every other time - M^r Baines tone was now completely changed He evidently thought that the falsification

[0632]

Private
Mem.

of the store book saved him - though when it was put to him that ~~thate~~ store book containing no issues during the time the loss was going on, how could he enter them six months afterwards - He averred that he had extracted the entries from a note[-] book. He would give no explanation except that the stores had all been fairly expended and used by us! as his own admissions to myself - offers to pay - ~~and~~ abject petition to remain without salary when I had given no hint of expelling him - and the stores gone with lifelong blame looming upon me in the distance if I caused my companions' death - I saw no other course than to send him away, and that as quietly as possible in order that he might if he chose turn over a new leaf in some other country - Before embarking on board the man of war that took him away he gave me a letter which began by asking me to sell his old clothes and a gun he had left at Tette - this was so insulting that I handed it back - Another letter containing no allusion to his impudent attempt to make me an "Old Choi" was subsequently published in the Cape Papers.

When he reached the Cape He made a piteous moan over the persecution he had suffered by my listening to the accusations against him by my brother I was not so bad but I had believed him! He shewed my private letter of rebuke to M^r Porter the Attorney General and this highly respectable gentleman knowing that it was ex parte evidence on which

[0633]

633

Private
Mem.

alone he judged shewed the marked difference
 between the Attorney and the Judicial mind
 by saying "that he believed M^r Baines as incapable
 of stealing the stores as D^r Livingstone himself"
 How often he has declared before Judge and Jury
 "his belief" without getting the smallest credit for
 it, we need not enquire - M^r Baines belief as
 repeatedly expressed to me was that he had made
 away with the stores - He made the same state-
 ment before all the members except Thornton -
 But encouraged by M^r Porters extremely in-
 judicious dictum he now declared that I
 had refused him a hearing - that he would
 go to the Zambesi and there before a court
 of law demand a hearing from me - To this
 M^r Porters Attorney mind responded that
 "the cause would lie" in Portuguese and also
 in English courts - I heard him conducting
 the case against poor Botha with the evidence
 of felons whose chains were knocked off
 outside the court and had no doubt but in
 his hands the case would "lie" - Baines
 knew but M^r Porter did not that there
 was no court of either law or justice
 on any part of the Zambesi - An official
 called the chief Captain (Capitão Mōr") takes
 cognizance of native disputes & offences
 but neither he nor the Governor either can
 try a cause against a white, or a Portuguese -
 The present Governor of Tette could not punish
 S^t Miranda for refusal to prevent his slaves
 from making noises in the streets, but had
 to send him to Mosambique to be judged -
 and so even in cases of murder no
 Governor can try any case - He can punish
 soldiers for minor offences, but no one else
 It suited Baines to draw on the sympathies

[0634]

634

Private
 Mem.

of the Cape public and obtain assistance
 to go as he said to the Zambesi - descend it
 from the Victoria falls & meet me face

to face, but having made some drawings
at the falls, he said that the Matibele who
never touch the English or their people,
had killed a number of his people and
obliged him to turn - Meanwhile the
Cape Newspapers tried their utmost
at vituperation - they had not learned
that vituperation is not a power - If it
were, Billingsgate would be one of the powers
that be - the power of the press consists
in imparting knowledge and that is power -
On me the utmost vituperation of the
Cape Press had no more effect than if
the worthy Editors had each marched up
and down Cape Town blowing Penny
Trumpets -
I solemnly assert the foregoing statemen[ts]
to be really & truly correct
David Livingstone

[0635]

February 1868 635

Private
Mem.

The Mission of Bishop Mackenzie was an
unfortunate one - It was taken up by a party in
the Church of England which thought that if they
planted a portion of that church - namely a
bishop - six clergymen and had cathedral services
every day, and the communion every Sunday
it must succeed better than any mission that
had been attempted - six missionaries were
engaged, but before embarking, all resigned except
the lay member M^r Waller - the bishop then in
haste selected five others, and when he had his
first Sunday service at Magomera it was the
full Cathedral routine - and every morning and
evening afterwards the full morning & evening
prayers were gone over. The bishop was a good
man and Waller, Procter, Scudamore, Dickinson
excellent worthy men - Rowley and Burrup were
good, but of a different stamp from the first
named - No one except the bishop had any idea
of missionary work - I gave him some of the
men of the Pioneer to assist in building his

station - they reported that the bishop might be seen working on the roof of a house and Rowley & Procter writing their journals! Waller was ill at the time - I have no reason to doubt the report of the men though one declared that when he spoke to the bishop to get his associates to assist him the tears ran down his cheeks, for Miss Mackenzie the bishop's sister told me after his death, that one of his letters complained bitterly of being left alone, and "

he
could not order gentlemen to work

" - He was not supported as he ought to have been - then it being desirable to find a new path to the Ruo he sent Procter & Scudamore to explore it, and they went away East instead of South as I pointed out - got into

[0636]

636

Private
Mem.

difficulties with Monasamba & ran away, The bishop went to punish Monasamba, and called the Makololo to help him - this was their first foray - He told it everywhere that he was going to fight Monasomba, and of course his coming & intentions were duly reported to the offending Monasomba and he made clear off - the Makololo securing only a few sheep & goats - the bishop now fearing that he was too late to ^ meet his sister at the mouth of the Ruo in the beginning of January set off in haste, though D^r Dickinson must have reported that we who were to bring up his sister could not get down to the sea as early as we hoped - In fact we passed the mouth of the Ruo in our downward passage on the 7th January 1862 - He followed us on the 12th & remained on the island of Malo to die - When

he set off from Magomera on this his last journey it was the rainy season, and he began by wading through the stream with his clothes on - To a remonstrance addressed to him then, he replied that he would soon be wet anyway. It took 2 ½ days to go down to the Shire though but one day distant in dry weather, He could not get Manganja to go with him but Matsego and Charlie,- Makololo went. The canoe of the bishop was upset in an eddy and medicine sugar & coffee lost as well as clothing - the bishop went on in his wet clothes till they came to a hut where the Mosquitoes were so bad that he had to leave - At Malo without proper food or medicine he succumbed, and the Makololo buried him on the mainland left bank of the Shire - They then took his companions paddled back as far as they could, and

[0637]

637

Private
Mem.

then pressed the Manganja to carry him till they reached Magomero.

The Mission was now under M^r Procter the senior priest, and being alarmed by what was reported to be the near approach of the Ajawa fled in hot haste down to the Shire ~~near~~ to near Chibisa's - This was a most unfortunate step - The Makololo some half dozen in number had gone up to the Ajawa - drove them off & took five of their women as wives - They now despised what they considered English cowardice and the freed slaves from the Cape, in hatred of men so much braver than themselves, told the missionaries that the Ajawa village was not attacked, but the Makololo had gone and told the Ajawa that the English wanted five wives, and in fear five women were given. The missionaries not knowing the language had to use their own people as interpreters, these consisted of freed slaves from the Cape, and freed Ajawa & Manganja from the

hills - there was mortal hatred between some of these and the Makololo - the Makololo had their plurality of wives openly, the others had them secretly and lied to the missionaries to screen themselves - On enquiring into the matter I found that the Ajawa wives of the Makololo had their plantations on the East bank of the Shire, and had they chosen could have fled up the hills to their former husbands any day they chose for they were paddled over by a boy who remained at the village on the Western bank till they were hailed in the evening. Another deception practised by the Ajawa lads of the Mission was to accuse the Makololo of stealing while they themselves went with gaudy handkerchiefs on their

[0638]

638

Private
Mem.

heads and speaking in the loud tone of the Makololo down the Shire to the Manganja villages and stole maize fowls & goats - the Manganja at last turned upon them & slew two who turned out to be the "good boys of the Mission"! Others listened at the huts of the missionaries and conveyed their impressions of what was said as soon as possible to the Makololo; so they were led to believe what was indeed the case that the missionaries hated them. then it was that M^r Procter's hut caught fire from his candle in the evening & being like tinder burnt so furiously that the guns were not saved - as the flames reached the powder in them the shots alarmed the Makololo who thought that the Mission was attacked and flew at once, armed to the rescue -

A season of confusion had followed the flight of the missionaries from the highlands - the Makololo were accused by the missionaries of "murdering & plundering all over the country" - The evidence for the charge which may have been partially true consisted of the statements of the

Cape Freedmen and the Manganja ^ & Ajawa boys.
 The Makololo said to me "Now you have
 come to live among the people whose
 relatives are said to have been murdered by
 us, you will hear for yourself whether
 we are guilty nor not" - they then recounted
 the circumstances of two men who had
 been killed by them, and M^r Waller inter-
 rupted the speaker as to the first by
 saying - "they were perfectly justified in
 killing that man" - I could discover
 no others - One Dauma who was
 entered by M^r Waller as "a chief killed

[0639]

639

Private
Mem.

"by the Makololo" was asserted by his wife to
 have been killed by the people at Misorongu a
 village West of the Shire by witchcraft - which
 caused dysentery! and M^r Procter formally
 reported two men murdered by the Makololo.
 on enquiry I found that both were still alive -
 one had been beaten for stealing rice out of
 Masiko's rice patch, and the other for stealing
 had been bruised on the head - M^r Procter in
 reply to my statement that the murdered man
 of Masiko was still alive and well - rejoined
"But he was wounded"!

Bishop Mackenzie had enjoined his associ[-]
 -ates "not to teach till they knew the language
 well" - this plan of non teaching was adhered
 to by all except Mr Scudamore who taught
 infant school exercises, and among the
 first things said by the new bishop M^r Tozer
 to me, was this "It is a most astounding
fact that even the boys and people who have
been living among them so long have been
taught absolutely nothing". The missionaries
 spoke of non teaching as the plan of "poor dear
 bishop Mackenzie" - Yet when found fault
 with by the new bishop turned round and
 said that all their "teaching!! had been
 nullified by the Makololo whom I had

brought into the country and abandoned -
I did bring them into the country but when
I wished them to return with their chiefs'
medicine for which indeed they had come,
and asked bishop Mackenzie not to
encourage them to remain with him - he
replied that he had consulted his com-
-panions, and they agreed with him in
saying that if they chose to remain with
the Mission they might do so. He could

[0640]

640

Private
Mem.

not accede to my request - I abandoned them
when they left me, and then only.

But the most unaccountable circumstance
of all was the continuance of the missionaries
in idleness at the end of the 200 miles of the
Shire swamps with ^ Mackenzie Burrup Scudamore & Dickinson
dead before their eyes - We urged them to
return to the highlands in vain - M^r Procter
was not sure if the new bishop would
approve of his doing so - We in the same
quarter were enjoying comparatively good
health because we were actively at work -
when we invited one after the other to come
to the ship for a week they returned as they
said "new men" - An attempt was at last
made to go up to the highlands but like
the unfortunates it commenced raining
soon after starting & rained without inter-
mission for about four miles when they
turned back to the graves of their fellows

Great disapprobation was expressed in
England by some of the High Church party
because Mackenzie - a bishop - went to punish
Monasomba, and expelled some slave marauding
Ajawa or Waiyau - Yet the new bishop
a M^r Tozer was chosen for the office because
when appointed to some wild parish near
but not in Lincolnshire he invited some
roughs to come to church, but they insulted him
and he took off his coat - thrashed one of

them soundly and offered to do the same to the whole group - One then said that they sayw the new parson could fight, and they had better all go & hear how he could preach - No sooner was he appointed to a mission of which he had heard only of the existence than he proclaimed everywhere that bishop Mackenzi

[0641]

641

Private
Mem

had been led to engage in hostilities by D^E Livingstone but he would take good care not to follow my warlike advice. M^E Oswell took him up sharply at one place, and proved to him that his statement about my leading the late bishop into war could not be true, but the reverend pugilist still went on and proclaimed his nonsense even in Cambridge -

When M^E Tozer came out he had swung [^] in opinion to the opposite extreme of his predecessor regarding slavery - He would not interfere with it - and prayed lustily for the King of Portugal to be prospered in all his undertakings - When he abandoned the mission after a foolish stay of some three months on the top of a detached mountain - the misty damp dripping Morambala, he would also have driven off some thirty boys and girls into slavery though attached to the Mission by bishop Mackenzie - " He repudiated he said the acts of his predecessor" - Nobly seconded by M^E Waller I took charge of them and sent them to the Cape to be educated there - M^E Tozer on knowing how his heartlessness was disapproved in the Cape and in England vented his chagrin on me by a letter to D^E Gray (the Cape bishop in which he asserted (I suppose on the authority of a Portuguese convict for murder who was his great confidante) that I took the children out "under closed hatches" M^E Waller having been present all the time indignantly denied this - but while D^E Gray sent Tozer's letter to the slave Commissioners to criminate me, it was ultra vires ejus or his inclination to forward M^E Waller's letter for

my exculpation - M^r Tozer then went to Zanzibar where he is chaplain to the Consulate - He has dropped the title bishop of Central Africa, and teaches some three dozen liberated Africans who are to enlighten the Interior instead of himself - D.L.

[0642]

642

M^r Richard Thornton

Private
Mem.

Many parts of Africa are very unhealthy - swampy parts are notoriously so, and any visitor of ordinary intelligence can see at a glance where it would be unwise to live, especially in idleness, a sedentary life is well known to the Portuguese to be especially dangerous even in parts not particularly noted for fever - Irregularities of conduct are still more dangerous, but it has become the custom to ascribe every fatal issue to Fever - It can scarcely be otherwise for in writing to the friends of the deceased one is bound to put the case as gently as possible to the survivors - and leave his "sins to his Saviour" I think however it is high time to let it be known that Brandy and Black women ^ and idleness kill far more men in Africa than fever: they produce fever no doubt and a very bad kind of it - but ^ it is not the "African fever" - M^r Thornton was beguiled away from the Expedition by some wily Portuguese convicts at Tette to discover for them a fabulous silver mine near Chicova which is just above Kebrabasa - the tradition in the country is that the Jesuits worked it secretly - the convicts feasted poor Thornton in their houses one after the other, and a Tette feast consisted of the best food obtainable, followed invariably by all the company getting dead drunk, We have seen the process, brandy in tumblers is swallowed in order to produce deep intoxication as speedily as possible. The slaves watch at the door till they see

general insensibility spread over the company
then come in, and drink all that remain
in the bottles, and bear the inebriates off

[0643]

643

Private
Mem.

to their beds - Thornton told some of the members of the expedition as a fine joke, that he had been at a feast in so & so's house, and he did not know how it ended for when he came to himself he was lying in his own bed next morning - this debauchery, was put a stop to by the Medical Officer of the Expedition telling him from muscae volitantes and other symptoms in his eyes that if he did not give up those feasts he would lose his eyesight - He then went off with a Goanese (Portuguese) to search for the silver mine! There women, as he said, pressed themselves on him - On returning the convicts of whom he had been the dupe taunted him by calling out to him even my presence - "Give me two Arrobas of your silver ore" (64 lbs -) On asking him if he had seen any silver ore he he replied "traces of it" but he knew so little of geology that he took bright mica schist (^ a piece of which I took to England ^ in 1857 to find out what it was) as containing "traces of silver ore) - and spent some time trying to reduce it - ! M^r George Thornton brother of the deceased, wrote to me "Oh if then Richard had had a friend" to which I respond Oh if he had had a friend to teach him to regulate his passions before he ever left England

He lost his life at last by over officious folly - I gave him a written order to examine the rocks exposed by the Shire cataracts - He went and found that the missionaries at Chibisa were in want of goats and volunteered without my leave to go to Tette 95 miles distant to purchase them - M^r Waller informed me that Thornton could get goats from his Goanese friend - Knowing the country between the Shire and Tette as having nearly killed D^r Kirk and M^r Rae, I never dreamed that one of

Private
Mem.

his small power would attempt it - I thought that he meant to get them by writing by the hand of natives, and said he might get some for us too - I knew of his going only after two days had elapsed & it was then too late to recall him. The journey was much too hard for him and he took bearings from certain hills in the way climbing of which increased the fatigue - this was to be able to say that he went to connect his work at Tette with that on the Shire - The goats for the missionaries was his object, and one of them M^r Waller said truly "we may say that he sacrificed himself for us" On coming back to the Shire he had death written on his face - I said nothing - but found that as soon as he returned he did the maddest thing one could do in that climate, He went with another to the lowest of Murchisons cataracts and in an ofshoot of it lay every morning letting the dashing water run over his body lengthwise - this after the heat and fatigue he had undergone reduced his strength still further for in that climate the water in the mornings is always warmer than the air - consequently when thoroughly cooled by the race of water he came out into a still colder bath of air. I did not treat him but his complaint was as usual pronounced fever (not folly -) Some of his Gin bills passed through my hands afterwards - one of the amounted to £12 for a single supply - This was all for private guzzling When with us he had as much wine at dinner as any of us chose to take - It is rather melancholy to hear his brother into whose hands these same bills went say Oh if he had had a friend" knowing that he had found on in the gin bottle

v

Private Mem

Retrospect written in Manyuema country to be inserted in journal left at Ujiji -

I often ponder over my missionary career
among the Bakwains or Bakwaina and
though conscious of many imperfections
not a single pang of regret arises in the review
of my conduct except that I did not feel it to be
my duty while spending all my energy in teaching
the heathen to devote a special portion of my time
to play with my children - But generally I was
so much exhausted by the mental and manual

labour

of the day that in the evening there was no fun
left in me - I did not play with my little ones
when I had them and they soon sprang up
in my absences, and left me conscious that
I had none to play with - I was too conscien[-]
-tious in punishing when they were half grown
in England - and now think that Solomon's
counsels which guided me more than my
own good sense were never intended for
the stern spirits of Western or Northern nations
He that spareth the rod hateth his child" - Let not
thy soul spare for his crying" He made me
severe when my whole nature said forbear
The women punish children in the East &
theirs are feminine strokes - Solomon's
sayings are to be taken as ~~equivalent to~~
spice to every one that asketh of thee and from
him that would borrow of thee turn not thou
away - joined with the duty of "providing for
ones own" - Full and explicit injunctions to
practise liberality but joined with the understood
duty of common sense - I never felt a single

pang at having left the Missonary Society
I acted for my Master and believe that all
ought to devote their special faculties to him
I regretted that unconscientious men took occasion
to prevent many from sympathizing with me

[0646]

646

It has been somewhat difficult to
ascertain the cannibalism of the Manyuema
by reasonable evidence - If I had believed
all tenth part of the tales of native traders
and even of the adjacent tribes I might
never have entered the country - but having
come and being anxious to give a true
report on the matter any mind has veered
from scepticism to faith and back again
to doubt of all but a modified use of human
flesh as charms - and then to the opinion
that in some districts of Bambarre human
flesh is devoured in horrible nocturnal
ogres in the dark forests - I gave a large
sum to be privately invited to witness
one of these feasts, and though sufficient
to be a strong temptation to Manyuema,
it lay in a village for many months
in rain - there being no lack of food in
the country the only reason for the horrible
custom I could discover was a
depraved taste for meat in the state which
we call high - the body is said to be kept
for three days slightly covered over with
soil in the forest - in this climate this
causes putridity and then cooked in
large pots with bananas and plantains
the men gorge themselves with the disgusting
mess - Human flesh they say requires but
little salt as it is saltish - the hands
and feet are tidbits - the first traders
three or four years ago, say that dead
slaves were openly purchased from
them - now they are ashamed of a
practice which all strangers denounce
but it is still common to devour
the dead in Bambarre - Women are
debarred from partaking of human flesh -

[0647]

Three slaves belonging to our camp were exhumed by night - the foot marks shewed that the body stealers were men and not beasts - When the matter was complained of to the chief he said that hyaenas had done it but neither hyaenas nor leopards came near us - all the goats stand unbound in the midst of our huts and no animal comes near them - some said that people in the vicinity were guilty of stealing our dead - but they were innocent - they were threatened with reprisals of their living children if they stole our dead - Posho's wife died, and in Banyamwezi fashion she was thrown away about 200 yards from the camp un-buried - the threat was effectual neither men nor hyaenas touched her body though we watched for seven or eight days - A very fine fair woman far gone in pregnancy was killed close to our camp by the sons of Moenekuss because she belonged to a chief who killed their elder brother - Her blood stained all the path - and her body was hid in the forest for a feast - Another slave was killed and dismembered for the same purpose - it is this custom that prevents the people of one district going into other districts they say that they will be killed and eaten - a man came from Kasangañgazi to trade and was killed by Kandawara the old brother of the late Moenekuss and no one will ever punish except by war - A woman was killed near to us, and the young man who did the deed went home and boasted of what he had done - her relatives came in great numbers to demand justice and a fight would have ensued in which the guilty one would probably escape - we advised them to demand the culprit alone - His father & he

[0648]

offered the grandmother, and said if we wished to kill anyone she would do as well as any other! The murderer escaped - He said that he thought the woman killed meant to bewitch - The foregoing refers to Bambarre alone, in other districts graves appear -

here none are seen. A chief about a day
 distant killed eleven persons when we
 were away - Monanyembo as he was called
 became a nuisance and Muhamad sent
 a party to punish him - He soon afterwards
 came and brought two goats - one he gave
 to Muhamad - The other to Moenekuss' sons
 acknowledging that he had killed their
 elder brother - on these occasions they reveal
 each other's deeds and it transpired from
 Monanyembo's statements that old Kanda-
 -wara in addition to the trader from Kasang-
 -aŋgazi ^ killed three women and a child for no
 other reason than to eat the bodies = They
 disclose a horrid state of bloodthirsty
 callousness - the people over the hill
 Kanyima on our N.N.E - killed a person
 when hoeing his field - If a cultivator
 is alone he is almost sure of being
 slain - the Soko is not so bad as man -
 women often lay down their babies to
 sleep under a shady tree while they con-
 -tinual hoeing - Soko stalks the child &
 runs up a tree with it evidently amused
 with its screaming - a wise woman
 runs off at once and brings a bunch
 of small bananas which he is very
 fond off - lays it on the ground
 in his sight and retires a little way
 off. Soko comes down and in lifting
 up the bait which is heavy drops the child

[0649]

649

Men are worse than brutes - This which have
 often heard on native testimony seems to be true.

1871

1st March 1871. I was to start today
 from Mamohela but the Arabs begged me
 to take seven of their men going to buy
 "Viramba" or grass cloths and they had to
 grind flour. The offer was gladly accepted
 for they know a new route West which
 has lately been opened - Gave Katomba a
 note empowering him to take a double barrelled

gun out of my long detained long box for
all his kindness which has been very
great - supplying me on every occasion
with the finest maize flour which I
could obtain nowhere else - nuts - bananas
meat and never begging any return -
He promised to carry the young Soko he
gave me to Ujiji but the poor thing had
no mothers call and soon died - I have
invariably tried to refund handsomely
all the Arab kindness but Katomba's
good will exceeds my ability - one of
his sayings is worthy of being recorded
for he has travelled further than most
Arabs - "If you have a civil friendly
tongue and smiling face you may go
anywhere in Africa in safety - Do not
be in too great a hurry but tell the
people your objects frankly and give
them time to understand them and no
harm will ever befall you"

[0650]

650

1871
2 March

Left Mamohela and travelled over fine
grassy plains crossing in six hours
fourteen running rills from three
to ten or fifteen feet broad and from
calf to thigh deep - Tree covered mountains
on both sides - the natives know the
rills by names and readily tell their
courses and which falls into which
before all go into the great Lualaba
but without one as a guide no one
can put them in a map. We came to
Monanbunda's villages & spent the

3th

night - our next stage was at Monangongo
a small present of a few strings of

beads satisfies but is not asked -
I give it invariably as acknowledge[-]
ment for lodgings - the Arabs never
do but use the clean houses - pots
baskets and leave only a litter of
broken food & filth behind them in

4th

the morning = the headman of our
next stage hid himself in fear as we
were near to the scene of bin Juma's
unprovoked slaughter of five men
for tusks that were not stolen but
thrown down - Path lay through dense

5 th

forest and again on 5th our march
was in the same dense jungle of lofty
trees and vegetation that touch our
arms on each side - We came to
some villages among beautiful
tree covered hills called Basilañge
or Mobasilange - villages very
pretty and standing on slopes - the
main street generally lies East &
West to allow the bright sun to
stream his clear hot rays from

[0651]

651

1871

5th

March

one end to the other and lick up quickly
the moisture from the frequent showers
which is not drained off by the slopes -
A little verandah is often made in front
of the door - Here at dawn the family

gathers round a fire and while enjoying
 the heat needed in the cold that always
 accompanies the first darting of the
 light of Sun's rays across the atmos-
 -phere inhale the delicious air and talk
 over their little domestic affairs - the
 carriers shaped leaves of the forest all
 around their village & near their nestlings
 are bespangled with myriads of dew-
 drops - the cocks crow vigorously &
 strut and ogle - the kids gambol and
 leap on the backs of their dams quietly
 chewing the cud - other goats make believe
 fighting - thrifty wives often make the
 heap of grass roots which bake new
 clay pots and the ashes of which give -
 solid? serve as the morning fire - Two
 birds are killed with one stone - the beauty
 of this morning scene of peaceful enjoyment
 is indescribable - Infancy guilds the
 fairy picture with its own hives and it
 is probably never forgotten for the young
 taken up from Slavers and treated
 with all the philanthropic missionary -
 care and kindness still revert to the
 period of infancy as the finest and
 fairest they have known - they would
 go back to freedom and enjoyment
 as fast as would our own sons of
 the soil and be heedless to the charms
 of hard work and no play which
 we think so much better for them
 (if not for us)

[0652]

652

1871

March

In some cases we found all the villages
 deserted - the people had fled at our
 approach in dread of repetitions of the
 outrages of Arab slaves - the doors were
 all shut and a bunch of the leaves of
 reeds or of green reeds placed across
 them, mean "no entrance here" - A few
 stray chickens wander about ^ wailing having

hid themselves while the rest were caught
and carried off into the deep forest -
the still smoking fires tell the same tale
of recent flight from the slave traders
Many have found out that I am not
one of their number so in various
cases they stand up and call out
loudly "Boloño - Bolongo"! Friend-
"ship, Friendship" They sell their fine
iron bracelets eagerly for a few
beads - They seem out of fashion since
beads came in but are of the finest
quality of iron and were they nearer
Europe would be as eagerly sought
and bought as horse shoe nails
are for the best gun barrels - I over[-]
hear the Manyema telling each
other that I am the "good one" I have
no slaves and I owe this character
to the propagation of a good name by
the slaves of Zanzibar who are
anything but good themselves -
I have seen slaves belonging to the
seven men now with us slap the
cheeks of grown men who had offered
food for sale - It was done in sheer
wantoness till I threatened to thrash
them if I saw it again - but out
of my sight they did it still and

[0653]

653

1871
March
5th

and when I complained to the masters
they confessed that all the mischief was
done by slaves - for the Manyuema on
being insulted lose temper and use their
spears on the nasty curs and their vengeance
is taken with guns - Free men behave
better than slaves - the bondmen are not
responsible - The Manyuema are far
more beautiful than either the bond or
free of Zanzibar - I over hear the

remark often - "If we had Manyuema
wives what beautiful children we
should beget." The men are usually hand-
some and many of the women are very
pretty - Hands feet limbs and forms
perfect in shape - The colour light brown
the orifices of the nose are widened by
snuff takers who ram it up as far as
they can with the finger & thumb - The teeth
are not filed except a small space
between the two upper front teeth -

5th

Our course was mainly West but we
heard today that Muhamad Bogharib's
people passed us still further to the West
with much worry and an immense
number of captive Manyuema - The
ivory did not satiate their greed but
they seized women & children and
slaughtered men because it could be
done without danger - The best men
have often the very worst attendants
but they take their share of the spoil
and remark "The Manyuema are
bad bad bad" - By the passage West
I miss some things promised as
notes of all the rivers crossed &c

[0654]

654

1871
March
6th

Passed through large villages with many
forges at active work - the forest
country beautifully undulating and
well watered everywhere. The men
followed us in large numbers and my
Banian slaves were in terror believing
that the men meant to fight - I pointed
out that they were without spears "but

their spears are hid in the grass said
they” We got them to turn peaceably
but so many have been maltreated
we never know who are friends or
who have lost friends relatives and
children by the slavers -

7th

The rain of yesterday made the clayey
paths in the forests so slippery that the
feet of all were sorely fatigued and on
coming to Mangara an influential
and friendly chief I resolved to rest
a day. We were near to a remarkable
Mountain with its top bent over and
called "Kimazi" - It has a large cave
in its side with a pillar apparently
stalagmite in its mouth but we did not
climb up to it - Gave a cloth and
beads to Mangara a good sensible
man and he presented a fine fat goat
The house wife whose hut I occupied
was overflowing in her kind wishes
to serve me when she recieved a
small present and was told that I
always paid for my lodging - Wood
water fire carefully provided and
some bananas presented in return
She was pretty but a woman whose
house was nearly opposite was a
perfect queen for stateliness and
beauty - she fondled a child

[0655]

655

1871
March
9th

belonging to a neighbour though covered
with a loathsome skin disease in entire
ignorance that she was thereby risking

the spoiling of her own beautiful skin

On leaving Mangara's we marched
about five hours across Buga or
Prairie covered with grass but without
bushes or trees - The torrid sun from
which we had often been sheltered in the
forests was now nearly vertical and sent
down his fierce rays without a cloud
and sorely fatigued us all - crossed two
streams - one called Sokoye by bridges &
slept at a village on a ridge of woodland
overlooking Kasonga's - and after two

10th

hours this morning came among the
numerous villages of this chief - We here
found a caravan of Arabs under Salem
Mokadam who lent a house - Kasongo is
a good looking young man with nearly
European features but rather small eyes
He is clever and is pronounced good because
he eagerly joins the Arabs in marauding
seeing the advantage of fire arms he has
bought four muskets - We were now only
six miles from Lualaba and yet south of
Mamohela - This great river in fact
makes a second great sweep to the
West of some 130 miles and there at
least 30' of Southing - but now it comes
rolling majestically to the North and again
makes even Easting - It is a mighty stream
with many islands in it, and is never
wadeable at any point or at any
time of the year - I now wanted to
buy a canoe and explore by means
of it but my Banian slave drag
was against every effort I made

[0656]

656

1871

March

11th

Kasongo had no canoes but said that he knew a man who had one for sale He pretended that it was one of his people and when I proposed to send men to examine it he gave a guide = When they went the slaves shewed that they were as eager for bloodshed as other slaves where no danger has to be encountered for after staying away ten days they came back and reported that they had killed three Manyuema and the guide given by Kasonga had bullet hole through his shoulder - they seem to have been firing at random among the Manyuema and hit their best friend - Kasonga said little about it save that it was an accident and I would never trust them out of my sight again - The canoe was not for sale so I resolved to go further down the river -

This caravan at Kasonga's had but little success because they sent slaves to trade and they themselves lay and feasted here - They were the agents of Banians at Zanzibar without whose money they could neither trade nor share - and towards the Banians they acted exactly as their slaves did to them - When they sent slaves with five frasilahs of beads to trade two & a half Frasilahs disappeared on the road and very little ivory returned to the lazy masters - one of the traders a Muscat Arab entertained me with a long fierce oration in which I was told again

[0657]

657

1871
March

and again that I should certainly be killed and eaten - The Manyuema

now wanted a white man to eat -
I needed 200 guns for so perilous a
journey - I must not go to die - &c - I told
him that I was always thankful for
advice if given by one who had knowledge
but his vehement threats were the mere
dreams of one who had never gone any-
where but sent his slaves instead of going
himself like a man - He was only trying
to frighten my people who were cowardly
enough already and thereby doing me an
injury - said that Baker had come near
to this with but twelve people - "Were these
cannibals?" shouted the blatant Amur - I left
him after thanking him for warnings
in which it was plain he knew not
what he was saying - He never launched
forth again but tried to be extra civil -
these traders are simply marauders and
their slaves become worse than them-
selves in thirst for blood. Each longs to
be able to sit at home and tell how
much blood he has shed the Manyuema
as an easy prey - they are so terrified
by the loud reports of guns they dash at
once into the forest & the women and
children are caught -

Muhamad's chief man Hassani
advanced 25 copper rings to the people
near Moene Lualaba to be paid for
they say in ivory which all knew
they had not to give - On returning
the ivory was demanded and not
forthcoming Hassani assaulted them
for three days and took off a very

[0658]

658

March
1871
12th

large number of captives - the same
Hassani promised to me not to begin
hostilities but he began little else - the
prospect of securing slaves overpowers

everything else and blood blood blood
flows in horrid streams. The Lord look
on it. All flee from this bank of the
Lualaba now and I am prevented from
getting a canoe.

This spot is pretty - much of the undu-
-lating land is cultivated and there are
trees enough near the hills & on the ridges
to give the scene a beautiful park like
appearance - Rice grows well and
food of all kinds is brought to the
markets at different points in abundance
Kasonga says that "he has but one
tongue and never lies" He is contrast
to these Arabs who are very untruthful
the only difference between their so
called prophet and them is that he
lied and forced his countrymen to give
up idolatry - they lie because it is
ingrained in their constitutions
and they prefer falsehood to truth - the
impudence of Muhamad's lies is their
chief feature. Proceeding to Damascus
as a trader he heard of St. Pauls
translation the like of which had never
before it happened entered into the
human mind - He at once conceived
the idea of a pretended visit to not the
third but the seventh heaven - but
many Moslems disbelieve this and say
it is not in the Koran of the prophet
having no miracle to attest his pro-
phetic mission without shame he

[0659]

659

1871
March

tried to appropriate that of Moses bringing
water out of the rock but unconsciously
gave it the stamp of all false miracles
by pretending performance where it was
not needed - no multitude was athirst - He
alone had neglected to follow the example
of his company in providing supplies in

their skin bottles - His followers are all
faithful liars - religion & morality are quite
disjoined. Kasonga declared that he did
not lie like Moslems but his goodness
consists in helping them against all
other Manyuema who have ivory - By his
guidance Hassani's party slew many of the
people of Luapanga called Bahika -
The Bahika blame Kasonga only as the cause
of their losses - I told Kasonga that he was
safe only so long as many other Manyuema
were within reach of the slavers, They would
yet turn round on him and I would see
him in the slave stick going to the coast
He laughed - in scepticism - Now they
say we are fighting Kasonga's enemies
Marvel not at the matter - There be higher
than they -

15th

In confirmation of what I write some
of the party here assaulted a village of
Kasongo killed three men & captured women
and children - pretended that they did not
know them to be his people - but did not
return the captives

21st

Kasonga's brother's child died & he asked
me to wait over the funeral & then he
would give a guide to go North to the
great market place of this region -
Nyangwe - cold rain from South
West detained us again

[0660]

660

1871
March
23^d

Left Kasonga's - He gave me a goat &
a guide - country gently undulating
showing fine green slopes fringed
with green wood trees = grass from
4 ft to 6 feet high - Luamba or cotton
meadow grass general and Nyassi
in patches - came to Katenga village
about 5 miles off - many villages &
many people passed going to market
with loads of provisions - soil a little
sandy allows good drainage

24th

Great rain by night, and sickness of men
who as slaves take great care of themselves
a little headache prevents our march -

25th

Went to Mazimwe about 7½ miles off
country undulating and grassy - trees
scarce - Patches of shrubs of Arum appear at
every village - cassava far off on account
of the pigs which are abundant - cross

26th

Rill Lohemba - then four miles and cross
Kabwemadgi Rt - then a mile beyond it
the Rt Kahembai which flows into
the Kunda and it into Lualaba - The
great river being on our left - country
open and low hills appear - in N.
We now met a party of men from
the traders at Kasenga's - Salem bin
Mukadam and Seyed bin Sultan and counted
eighty two captives they had caught
them by fighting ten days with the
people of Surampela on the left bank
of Lualaba - They were hired to go
against them by the chief Chipange
for two tusks and seven slaves - They
had about 20 tusks and carried one
who broke his own leg in rushing

against a stump in the fight -

[0661]

661

1871
March
27th

Went along a ridge of land overhanging
a fine valley of denudation well-cultivated
hills in distance N - where Hassani's feat
of bloodshed was performed - Many villages
on the ridge some rather tumble down ones,
which always indicate some misrule -
our march about seven miles and a
headman who went with us plagued ours
to give a goat - I refused to take what was
not given willingly but the slaves secured it
and threatened our companion Kama with
dismissal from our party if he became
a tool in slave hands - Arum common -

28

- I had hoped to gain influence in time
over the Banian slaves and went forward
though short of everything in the prospect
of finishing my work and retiring but they
were not affected by kindness and now
tried to finish the few beads that got out
of some 700 lbs at Ujiji by demanding
extra rations - They tried compulsion
to force me back to the coast - and it is
remarkable that all the slaves sent by
the great slave trader Ludha were fully of
the opinion that they were not to follow
but force me back - crossed the Liya

29

and next day the Moangoi, by two well
made wattle bridges at an island in its bed

It is 20 yds and has a very strong current
which makes all the market people fear it
We then crossed the Molembe in a canoe
It is 15 yds but swelled by rains & many
rills - came 7 ½ miles to sleep at one
of the outlying villages of Nyangwe -
about sixty market people came past
us from the chitoka or marketplace
on the banks of Lualaba - They go
thither at night and come away about
midday - having disposed of most of
their goods by barter - country

[0662]

662

1871
March
30th

- open and dotted over with trees chiefly
a species of Bauhinia that resists the
annual grass burnings - trees along the
watercourses and many villages
each with a host of pigs - country low
as compared with Tanganyika - about
2000 feet above the sea - The headman's
house in which I was lodged contained
the housewives little conveniences in
the shape of forty pots dishes baskets knives
mats all of which she removed to another
house - I gave four strings of beads &
go on tomorrow - Crossed the Kunda R.
other seven miles brought us to Nyangwe
where we found Abed and Hassani
had erected their dwellings and sent their
people over Lualaba and as far West as
the Loeki or Lomame - Abed said that
my words against bloodshedding had
stuck into him and he had given orders
to his people to give presents to the chiefs
but never fight unless actually attacked

31st

Went down to take a good look at the
Lualaba here - It is narrower than it is
higher up but still a might river at
least 3000 yards broad and always
deep - It can never be waded at any
point, or at any time of the year - The
people unhesitatingly declare that if any
one tried to ford it he would assuredly be
lost - It has many large islands and
at these it is about 2000 yards or one
mile - The banks are steep and deep -
of clay and a yellow clay schist in
thin stratae the other rivers as
the Liya and Kunda have gravelly
banks - The current is about 2 miles
an hour away to the North

[0663]

663

1871

April

1st

The banks are well peopled but one must
see the gathering at the market of about 3000
chiefly women to judge of their numbers -
They hold market one day and then omit
attendance here for three days - going to
other markets at other points in the intervals -
It is a great institution in Manyuema -
Numbers seem to inspire confidence and
they enforce justice for each other - As
a rule all prefer to buy and sell in the
market to doing business anywhere else
If one says come sell me that fowl or
cloth - the reply is come to the "chitoka" or
marketplace -

2^d

They were afraid of my presence - suspicious
and some think from the slanders of the
traders that to sell a canoe means to help

me to kill and murder Manyuema -

3^d

Tried to secure a longitude by fixing a weight on the key of the chronometer and taking successive altitudes of the sun and distances of the moon - Possibly the first and last altitudes may give the rate of going - and the frequent distances between may give approximate Long -

Here the river is as stated 3000 yards - large islands in the distance I sounded it across - It is nine feet near the bank - In the middle fifteen feet - Between the islands twelve feet and again nine feet near the shore It is said to overflow all its banks annually except at elevated spots on which are built - soil generally stiff black loam adjacent to the banks - very fertile & very feverish - A mighty river truly

[0664]

664

1871

April

4th

Moon the fourth of the Arabs will appear in three or four days - This to guide in ascertaining day of observing the lunars with the weight -

The Arabs ask many questions about the Bible - How many prophets have appeared & probably say, that they believe in them all while we believe all but reject Muhammad - It is easy to drive them into a corner by questioning as they dont know whither the enquiries lead and they are not offended when their

knowledge is as it were admitted -
When asked how many false
prophets are known they appeal to
my knowledge and evidently never
heard of Balaam the son of Beor
or of the 250 false prophets of Jezebel
and Ahab - or of the many lying
prophets referred to in the Bible

6th

Ill from drinking two cups of very
sweet malofu or beer made from
Bananas - I shall touch it no more
Made ink from the seeds of a plant
called by the Arabs Zingifure - It is
a fine thick red colour and used
by the natives to ornament their faces
heads and to dye grass cloths or
virambas - It is known in India

7th

I have to wait trying to buy a canoe
sent people over to cut wood to build a
new hut - one sleeps in his mud
walls which are damp and foul
smelling and unwholesome - -
I shall have grass walls for my
own hut for the free ventilation

[0665]

665

1871

7th

April

will keep it sweet - This is the season
called Masika - the finishing rains
It is the worst time for travelling and
reconciles me to the delay - We have

heavy rains almost every night
and I could scarcely travel even if I
had a canoe - But still it is trying to be
kept back by suspicion and by the
wickedness of the wicked -

Some of the Arabs try to be kind and
send cooked food every day - Abed is
the chief donor - I taught him to make
a mosquito curtain of thin printed
calico - He had endured the persecution
of these insects helplessly except by
sleeping on a high stage when they
were unusually bad - The Manyema
often bring evil on themselves by being
untrustworthy - Paid one to bring a
large canoe to cross Lualaba - He brought
a small one capable of carry three only
and after wasting some hours we had
to put off crossing till next day -

8th

Every Manyema headman of four
or five huts is a Mologhwe or chief
and glories in being called so - There
is no political cohesion in the country
The Ujijian slaving is an accursed
system but the Manyema too have
faults the result of ignorance of other
peoples - Their isolation has made them

as

unconscious of danger in dealing
with the cruel strangers as little dogs
in the presence of lions - Their refusal
to sell or lend canoes for fear of blame
from each other will be ended by the
party of Dugumbe which has ten head
men taking them by force - They are

[0666]

1871
April
8th

often unreasonable and bloody
minded towards each other - Every
Manyuema head man would like every
other ruler slain - This subjects them
to bitter lessons and sore experience
from the Arabs who join a feud only
for their own selfish ends of getting
goats and slaves

Abed went over to Mologhwe Kahembe
and mixed blood with him - was told
of two canoes hollowed out which are
to be brought for sale - If this can be
managed peaceably it will be a great
point gained and I may secure one
even at an Arabs price which will
be three or four times that of a native
No love lost among the Arabs here
but I keep my own counsel -

9th

Cut wood for house - Loeki is said
by slaves who have come thence to
be much larger than the Lualaba
but on the return of Abeds people
from the West we shall obtain
better information

10th

Chitoka or market today - I counted
upwards of 700 passing my door
With market women it seems to
be a pleasure of life to haggle &
joke and laugh and cheat - Many
come eagerly, and retire with care
worn faces - Many are beautiful
and many old and carry very heavy
loads of dried cassava & earthen
pots which they dispose of very
cheaply for palm oil fish salt

pepper and relishes for their food
The men appear in gaudy lambas

[0667]

667

1871
April
10th

and carry little save their iron ware
fowls grass cloth & pigs -

12th

New last night - 4th Arab month - I am at a
loss for the day of the month - New house
finished - a great comfort for the other
was foul and full of vermin - Bugs
Tapazi or ticks that follow wherever
Arabs go made me miserable but the
Arabs are insensible to them - Abed alone
had a mosquito curtain, and never
could praise it enough - One of his remarks
is if slaves think you fear them they
will climb over you - I clothed mine for
nothing, and ever after they have tried to
ride roughshod over me and mutiny
on every occasion -

14th

Kahembe came over & promises to bring
a canoe but he is not to be trusted - He
presented Abed with two slaves and is
full of fair promises about the canoe
which he sees I am anxious to get -
They all think that my buying a
canoe means carrying war to the left
bank - and now my Banian slaves
encouraged the idea - He does not wish
slaves nor ivory said they but a

canoe in order to kill Manyuema -
Need it be wondered at that people who
had never heard of strangers or white
men before I popped down among
them believed the slander - The
slaves were aided in propagating the
false accusation by the half caste
Ujijian slaves at the camp - Hassani
fed them every day and seeing that
he was a bigotted Moslem they equalled
him in prayers in his sitting place
seven or eight times a day -!

[0668]
668

1871
April
15th

They were adepts at lying and the
first Manyuema words they learned
were used to propagate falsehood.

The Manyuema tribe called Ba-
-genya occupy the left bank opposite
Nyangwe - A spring of brine rises
in the bed of a river named Lofubu
and this the Bagenya inspissate by
boiling and sell the salt at market
The Lomame is about ten days West
of Lualaba and very large - The confluence
of Lomame or Loeki is about six
days down below Nyañgwe by canoe
The river Nyanze is still less distant

16th

On the Nyanze stands the principal
town and market of the chief Zurampela
Rashid visited him and got two
slaves on promising to bring a war
party from Abed against Chipange
who by similar means obtained the
help of Salem Mokadam to secure
82 captives - Rashid will leave

this as soon as possible sell the slaves
and leave Zurampela to find out
the fraud - This deceit which is an average
specimen of the beginning of half
caste dealings vitiates his evidence
of a specimen of cannibalism
which he witnessed - but it was
after a fight that the victims were
cut up and this agrees with the
fact that the Manyema eat
only those who are killed in
war - some have averred that
captives too are eaten and a slave
is bought with a goat to be eaten
but this I very strongly doubt.

[0669]

669

1871
April
18th

I found that the Lepidosiren is brought
to market in pots with water in them
also white ants roasted and the large
snail Achetina and a common snail
Lepidosiren is called "sembe" -

Abed went a long way to examine a canoe
but it was still further and he turned -

19th

It is dreary waiting and when Abed
proposed to go North I wished to go too
but my slaves were the hindrance and
we still had hopes of a canoe which would
have been a great boon to me now that
it was raining every day

21st

A common salutation reminds me of
the Bechwana's "U le hatsi" thou art on

earth - "Ua tala" thou lookest - "Ua boka"
 or "byoka" thou awakest - "U ri ho" thou art
 here - "U li koni" thou are here about pure
 Sichuana - and Nyā-No is identical
 The men here deny that cannibalism is
 common - They eat only those killed in
 war and it seems in revenge for said
 Mokandira "the meat is not nice - It
 makes one dream of the dead man" -
 Some West of Lualaba eat even those
 bought for the purpose of a feast but
 I am not quite positive on this point.
 All agree in saying that human flesh
 is saltish and needs but little condi-
 -ment - And yet they are a fine
 looking race - I would back a company
 of Manyuema men as far superior
 in shape of head and generally
 physical form against the whole
 Anthropological Society - Many of the
 women are very light coloured and
 very pretty - They dress in a kilt
 of many folds of gaudy lambas

[0670]

670

1871

April

22nd

In Manyuema here Kusi = Kunzi is North
 Mhuru = South - Ñkanda West or other
 side Lualaba - Mazimba = East = The
 people are sometimes confused in name
 by the directions - this Bañkanda is
 only the other side folk = The Bagenya

22nd

Chimburu came to visit but I did not
 see him - nor did I know Moene Nyangwe
 till too late to do him honour - In fact
 every effort was made to keep me in
 the dark while the slavers of Ujiji

made all smooth for themselves to
get canoes - All chiefs claim the
privilege of shaking hands that is
they touch the hand held out with
their palm then clap two hands together
then touch again & clap again &
the ceremony concludes - This frequency
of shaking hands misled me when
the great man came -

24th

Old feuds lead the Manyema to
entrap the traders to fight - They invite
them to go to trade and tell them that
such a village plenty of ivory
- lies - Then when the trader goes with his
people word is sent that he is coming
to fight and he is met by enemies
who compel him to defend himself
by their onslaught - We were nearly
entrapped in this way by a chief
pretending to guide us through
the country near Basilañge - he
would have landed us into a fight
but we detected his drift - changed
our course so as to mislead any
messengers he might have sent and
dismissed him with some sharp words

[0671]

671

1871
April
25th -

News came that four men sent by Abed
to buy ivory had thus been entrapped
and two killed - The rest sent for aid
to punish the murderers and Abed wished
me to send my people to bring the remain[-]
ing two men back - I declined - because
no matter what charges I gave my
Banian slaves would be sure to shed

human blood - We can go nowhere but
the people of the country ask us to kill
their fellow men - nor can they be
induced to go to villages three miles
off because there in all probability
live the murderers of fathers uncles or
grandfathers - a dreadful state truly

The traders are as bloodthirsty every whit as
the Manyema where no danger exists -
In most cases where the people can fight
the traders are as civil as possible - At
Moenempanda's the son of Cazembe
Muhamad Bogharib left a debt of 28
slaves and 8 bars of copper each seventy lbs
and did not dare to fire a shot because
they saw they had met their match - Here
his headmen are said to have bound the
the headmen of villages till a ransom
was paid in tusks! and had they
only gone three days further to the
Babire to whom Moenemokaia's
men went they would have got
fine ivory at two rings a tusk
while they had paid from 10 to 18
Here it is as sad a tale to tell as was
that of the Mangenya scattered &
peeled by the Waiau agents of
the Portuguese of Tette - The good
Lord look on it -

[0672]

672

1871
April
26th

Called nine slaves bought by Abed's
people from the Kuss country West of
the Lualaba and asked them about
their tribes and country - One with his
upper front teeth extracted was of the
tribe Malobo on the other side of the
Loeki - Another comes from the river
Lombadzo or Lombazo which is West
of Loeki - This may be another name
for the Lomame - The country is called
Ñaña and the tribe ñoño - chief Mpunzo

The Malobo tribe is under the chief Yunga
and Lomadyo - another toothless boy said
that he came from the Lomame -
The upper teeth extracted seems to say
that the tribe have cattle - The knocking
out the teeth is imitation of the animals
they almost worship - No traders had
ever visited them - This promises ivory
to the present visitors - All that is now
done with the ivory is to make rude
blowing horns and bracelets

27th

Waiting wearily and anxiously - we
cannot move people far off and
make them come near with news
Even the owners of canoes say "Yes
Yes" [""]we shall bring them" but do
not stir They doubt us and my slaves
increase the distrust by their lies to
the Manyuema

28th

Abed sent over Manyuema to buy
slaves for him - A pretty woman
for 300 cowries and a hundred strings
of beads - She can be sold again
to an Arab for much more in
ivory - Abed himself gave 130 \$ for
a woman cook and she fled to me

[0673]

673

1871
April
28th

when put in chains for some crime - I
interceded and she was loosed - Advised

her not to offend again because I could
not beg for her twice

Hassani digged with ten slaves dug at the
malachite mines of Katanga for three
months and gained a hundred frasilahs
of copper or 3500 lbs.

May 1st

Katomba's people arrived from the
Babira where they sold all their copper
at two rings for a tusk and then found
that abundance of ivory still remained
Door posts and house pillars had been
made of ivory now rotten - People
of Babira kill elephants now and
brought tusks by the dozen - till the
traders get so many they carried them
by three relays - They dress their hair
like the Bashukulompo - plaited into
upright basket helmets - no quarrel
occurred and great kindness was
shown the strangers - A river having
very black water the Nyengere flows
into Lualaba from the West and
it becomes itself very large - Another
river or water Shamikwa falls
into it from the South West and
it becomes still larger - This is
probably the Lomame - A short
horned antelope common -

3^d

Abed informs me that a canoe
will come in 5 days - Word was
sent after me by the traders south of
us not to aid me as I was sure
to die where I was going - The wish
is father to the thought Abed was
naturally very anxious to get first

[0674]

1871

May

3-4th

into the Babira ivory market yet he tried to secure a canoe for me before he went - He was too eager and a Manyuema man took advantage of his desire and came over the river and said that he had one hollowed out and he wanted goats and beads to hire people to drag it down to the water - Abed on my account advanced 5 goats a thousand cowries and many beads and said that he would tell me what he wished in return - This was debt - but I was so anxious to get away I was content

6th

to take the canoe on any terms - But the matter on the part of the headman whom Abed trusted was all deception He had no canoe at all but knew of one belonging to another man and wished to get Abed and me to send men to see it - in fact to go with their guns and he would manage to embroil them with the real owner and some old feud be settled to his satisfaction - on finding that I declined to be led into his trap he took a slave to the owner and on refusal to sell the canoe for her it now came out that he had adopted a system of fraud to Abed He had victimized Abed but he was naturally inclined to believe his false statements and get off to the ivory market - His people came from the Kuss country in the West with 16 tusks and a great many slaves bought & not murdered for

1871

May

11th

River rising fast and bringing down
 large quantities of aquatic grass duck[-]
 -weed &c - Water is a little darker in colour
 than at Cairo - People remove &
 build their huts on the higher forest
 lands adjacent - many white birds
 the (Paddy bird) appear & one Ibis religiosa
 They pass North -

The Bakuss ~~returned to~~ near Lomame
 They were very civil and kind to the
 strangers but refused passage into
 the country - At my suggestion the
 effect of a musket shot was shewn
 on a goat - They thought it super-
 natural - looked up to the clouds and
 offered to bring ivory to buy the
 charm that could draw lightning
 down - When it was afterwards
 attempted to force a path they darted
 aside on seeing the Banyamwezi
 followers putting the arrows into the
 bowstrings but stood in mute
 amazement looking at the guns
 which mowed them down in
 large numbers - They thought that
 muskets were the insignia of
 chieftainship - Their chiefs all
 go with a long straight staff of
 rattan having a quantity of
 black medicine smeared on each
 end and no weapons in their
 hands - They imagined that the
 guns were carried as insignia
 of the same kind - some jeering
 in the south called them big tobacco
 pipes - They have no fear on
 seeing a gun levelled at them -

[0676]

1871

May

13th

The Bakuss use large & very long spears very expertly in the long grass and forest of their country - They are terrible fellows among themselves and when they become acquainted with firearms will be terrible to the strangers who now murder them The Manyuema say truly "If it were not for your guns not one of you would ever return to your country[""]

The Bakuss cultivate more than the Southern Manyuema - Pennisetum Dura or hokus Sorghum - common coffee abundant and they use it highly scented in the vanilla which must be fertilized by insects - They hand round cups of it after meals Pine Apples abundant - They bathe regularly twice a day - Houses of two storeys - used but little clothing The women have rather compressed heads but very pleasant countenances Ancient Egyptian round wide awake eyes - Their numbers are prodigious The country literally swarms with people and a chiefs town extends upwards of a mile - But little of the primeval forest remains many large pools of standing water have to be crossed - but markets are held every eight or ten miles from each other - To these the people come from far - the market is as great an institution as shopping is with the civilized - Illicit inter[-]course is punished by the whole of the offenders family being enslaved -

[0677]

677

1871

May

14th The people Bakuss smelt copper from the ore and sell it very cheap and the traders sent to buy it with beads - But the project of going in canoes now appears to all the half castes so plausible that they all tried to get the Bagenya on the West bank to lend them and all went over to mix blood & make friends with the owners - Then all slandered me as not to be trusted as they their blood relations were - and my slaves mutinied & would go no further - They mutinied three times here and Hassani harboured them till I told him that if an English officer harboured an Arab slave he would be compelled by the Consul to refund the price and I certainly would not let him escape - This frightened him - but I was at the mercy of slaves who had no honour and no interest in going into danger the wages appointed by Ludha were double freemans pay but they cared nothing for what was to be their masters - The slaves too joined in the slander and my own people saying I wanted neither ivory nor slaves but to kill the Manyuema and take the country for the other white people quite took me aback.

16th

Abed gave me a frasilah of Matunda beads and I returned 14 fathoms of fine American sheeting - but it was an obligation to get beads from one whose wealth depended on exchanging beads for ivory

[0678]

678

1871
May -

16th At least 3000 people at market today
my going among them has taken away
the fear engendered by the slanders of
slaves and traders All are pleased
to tell me the names of the fishes & other
things - Lepidosirens are caught by
the neck and lifted out of the pot to
shew his fatness - Camwood ground
and made into flat cakes for sale
and earthen balls such as are eaten
in the disease Safura or eartheating
There is quite a roar of voices in
the multitude haggling - It was pleasant
to be among them compared to being
with the slaves who were all eager to go
back to Zanzibar - Some told me that
they were slaves and required a free
man to thrash them, and proposed to
go back to Ujiji for one - I saw no
hope of getting on with them and
anxiously longed for the arrival of
Dugumbe - and at last Abed over[-]
heard them plotting my destruction
["]If forced to go on they would watch
till the first difficulty arose with
the Manyuema - Then fire off their
guns - run away - and as I could
not run as fast as they leave me
to perish" - Abed overheard them
speaking loudly and advised me
strongly not to trust myself to
them any more as they would be
sure to cause my death - He was
all along a sincere friend and I
could not but take his words
as well meant and true -

1871

May

18th Abed gave me 200 cowries & some green beads - I was at the point of disarming my slaves & driving them away when they relented and professed to be willing to go anywhere so being eager to finish my geographi[-]cal work I said I would run the risk of their desertion and gave beads to buy provisions for a start North - I cannot state how much I was worried by these wretched slaves who did much to annoy me with the sympathy of all the slaving crew - When baffled by untoward circumstances the bowels plague me too and discharges of blood relieve the headache and are safety valves to the system - I was nearly persuaded to allow Mr Syme to operate on me to close the valves but Sir Roderick told me that his own father had been operated on by the famous John Hunter and died in consequence at the early age of forty - He himself when a soldier spoiled his saddles by frequent discharges from the Piles but would never submit to an operation and he is now eighty years old - His advice saved me for they have been my safety valves

The Zingifure or red pigment is said to be a cure for itch - The disease is common among both natives and Arab slaves and Arab children

[0680]

680

1871

May

20th Abed called Kalenga the head[-]man who beguiled him as I soon found and delivered the canoe he had bought

formally to me and went off down
the Lualaba on foot to buy the Babira
ivory - I was to follow in the canoe
and wait for him in the River Luira
but soon I ascertained that the canoe
was still in the forest and did not
belong to Kalenga - On demanding
back the price he said let Abed come
and I will give it to him - Then when
I sent to force him to give up the
goods all his village fled into the
forest - I now tried to buy one
myself from the Bagenya but
there was no chance so long as the
half caste traders needed any they
got all - nine large canoes and
I could not secure one

24th

The market is a busy scene -
everyone is in dead earnest - little
time is lost in friendly greetings
Then vendors of fish run about with
potsherds full of snails or small fishes
or young clarias capensis smoke
dried & spitted on twigs - or other
relishes to exchange for cassava
roots dried after being steeped about
three days in water - potatoes vegetables
or grain - bananas, flour - palm
oil - fowls salt pepper - Each is
intensely eager to barter food for
relishes and make strong assertions
as to the goodness or badness
of everything - the sweat stands
in beads on their faces - cocks

[0681]

681

1871
May

24th crow briskly even when slung
over the shoulder with their heads
hanging down - pigs squeal -
Iron knobs drawn out out at each end
to shew the goodness of the metal
are exchanged for cloth of the Muale palm
They have a large funnel of basket work
above the vessel holding the wares and
slip the goods down if they are not to
be seen - They hid them at first in fear
from me - They deal fairly and when
differences arise they are easily settled
by the men interfering or pointing to me
They appeal to each other and have
a strong sense of natural justice - With
so much food changing hands of the
three thousand attendants much
benefit is derived - some come from
twenty to twenty five miles - The men
flaunt about in gaudy coloured lambas
of many folded kilts - The women work
hardest - The potters slap and ring
their earthenware all round to shew
that there is not a single flaw in
them - I bought two finely shaped earthen
bottles of porous earthenware to hold
a gallon each for one string of beads
The women carry huge loads of them
in their funnels above the baskets -
strapped to the shoulders & forehead
hands full besides - The roundness
of the vessels is wonderful seeing
no machine is used - No slaves
could be induced to carry half as
much as they do willingly - It is a
scene of the finest natural acting
imaginable - The eagerness with which

[0682]

682

1871
May
24th

all sorts of assertions are made - The
eager earnestness with which

apparently all creation above around
and beneath is called on to attest the
truth of what they alledge - The intense
surprise and withering scorn looked on
those who despise their goods - but
they shew no concern when the buyers
turn up their noses at them - Little
girls run about selling cups of water
for a few small fishes to the half
exhausted wordy combatants - To
me it was an amusing scene - I
could not understand the words that
flowed off their glib tongues but the
gestures were too expressive to need
interpretation -

27th

Hassani told me that since he had
come no Manyuema had ever pre-
sented him with a single mouthful
of food - even a potato or banana
and he had made many presents
Going from him into the market
I noticed that one man presented
a few small fishes - another a sweet
potato and a piece of cassava and
a third two small fishes - but the
Manyuema are not a liberal people
old men and women who remained
in the half deserted villages we
passed through in coming North
often ran forth to present me
bananas but it seemed through
fear when I sat down and ate
the bananas they brought beer
of bananas and I paid for all
A stranger in the market had

[0683]

683

1871
May

27th ten human under Jaws bones
hung by a string over his shoulder - on
enquiry he professed to have killed &
eaten the owners - shewed with his
knife how he cut up his victim - When
I expressed disgust he and others
laughed - I see new faces every market
day - Two nice girls were trying to sell
their venture which was roasted white
ants called "Gumbe"

30th

River fell 4 inches during last four days
colour very dark brown and large quan-
tities of aquatic plants & trees float down
Mologhwe or chief Ndambo came &
mixed blood with the intensely bigotted
Moslem Hassani - this is to secure the
nine canoes - He next went over to
have more palaver about them and
they do not hesitate to play me false
by detraction - The Manyuema too
are untruthful but very honest
We never lose an article by them
fowls and goats are untouched
and if a fowl is lost we know that
it has been stolen by an Arab slave
When with Muhamad Bogharib we had
all to keep our fowls at the Man-
-yuema villages to prevent them being
stolen by our own slaves - and it
is so here - Hassani denies com-
plicity with them but it is quite
apparent that he and others encourage
them in mutiny -

[0684]

684

1871
June
5th

River rose again 6 inches & fell three
Rain nearly ceased and large masses

of fleecy clouds float down here from
the North West with accompanying

7th

cold - I fear that I must march on foot
but the mud is forbidding

11th

New last night and I believe Dugumbe
will leave Kasonga's today River down 3 in

14th

Hassani got nine canoes & put 63
persons in three - I cannot get one
Dugumbe reported near but detained
by his divination at which he is an
expert - Hence his native name is
"Molembalemba" - ["]writer writing"- I
have no confidence in my slaves
so went in hopes of assistance from

16th

him - The high winds and drying
of soap and sugar tell that the rains
are now over in this part -

18th

Dugumbe arrived but passed to
Moene Nyangwe's and found that
provisions were so scarce and
dear there as compared with our
market that he was fain to come
back to us - He has a large party
and 500 guns - He is determined to
go into new fields of trade Has

all his family with him and intends
to remain 6 or 7 years sending
regularly to Ujiji for supplies of
goods

20th

Two of Dugumbe's party brought
presents of 4 large fundos of beads
each - All know that my goods
are unrighteously detained by Shereef
and shew kindness which I return
by some fine calico which I have

[0685]

685

1871
June
20

Among the first words Dugumbe said
to me were "Why your own slaves are
your greatest enemies - I will buy
you a canoe but the Banian slaves
slanders have put all the Manyema
against you" - I know that this was true
and that they were conscious of the
sympathy of the Ujijian traders who
hate to have me here -

24

Hassani's canoe party foiled after they
had gone down four days by narrows
in the river - Rocks jut out on
both sides not opposite but alternate
to each other and the vast mass of
water of the great river jammed in
rushes round one promontory on
to another and a frightful whirl[-]
-pool is formed in which the first
canoe went and was overturned

and five lives lost - Had I been there
mine would have been the first
canoe for the traders would have made
it a point of honour to give me the
precedence - actually to make a feeler
of me while they looked on in safety
The men in charge of Hassani's canoes
were so frightened by this accident
that they at once resolved to return
though they had arrived actually in
the country of the ivory - They never
looked to see whether the canoes
could be dragged past the narrows
as anyone else would have done
No better luck could be expected
after all their fraud & duplicity
in getting the canoes - No harm
lay in obtaining them but why try
to prevent me getting one -

[0686]

686

1871
June
27th

In answer to my prayers for preser[-]
vation I was prevented going down to
the narrows formed by a dyke of Mn^{ts}
cutting across country and jutting a
little ajar which makes the water
of enormous mass wheel round behind
it helplessly and if the canoe reaches
the rock against which the water dashes
they are almost certainly overturned -
As this same dyke probably cuts
across country to Lomame my
plan of going to the confluence and
then up wont do for I would have
to go up rapids there - Again I was
prevented from going down Luamo
and on the North of its confluence
another cataract mars navigation
in the Lualaba and my safety thereby
secured - We dont always know
the dangers that we are guided past

28th

River fallen two feet - dark
brown water and still much
wreck floating down -
Eight villages in flames by a slave
of Syde bin Habib called Manilla
shewing his blood feuds of the
Bagenya how well he can fight
against the Mohombo whose country
the Bagenya want - The stragglers
of this camp are over helping
Manilla & catching fugitives & goats
The Bagenya are fishermen
by taste and profession and sell
the produce of their nets & weirs
to those who cultivate the soil at
the different markets - Manilla's
foray is for an alledged debt of
3 slaves and ten villages are burned

[0687]

687

1871
June
30

Hassani pretended that he was not
aware of Manilla's foray and when
I denounced it to Manilla himself he
shewed that he was a slave by cringing
and saying nothing except something
about the debt of three slaves -

July

1st I made known my plan to Dugum[-]
-be to go west with his men to Lomame then
by his and buy a canoe and go
up Lake Lincoln to Katanga and
the fountains - examine the caves
inhabited - and return here if he

would let his people bring me goods
from Ujiji - He again referred to
all the people being poisoned in
mind against me but was ready
to do everything in his power for
my success - My own people per[-]
-suaded the Bagenya not to sell a canoe
Hassani knew it all but swears
that he did not join in the slander
and even points up to Heaven in
attestation of innocence of all even
of Manilla's foray - Muhamadans
are certainly famous as liars - and
the falsehood of Muhamad has been
transmitted to his followers in a
measure unknown in other religions

2^d
July

The upper stratum of clouds is from
the Nor-West - the lower from the South
East - when they mix or change places
the temperature is much lowered
and fever ensues - The air evidently
comes from the Atlantic over the
low swampy lands of the West Coast
Morning fogs shew that the
river is warmer than the air

[0688]
688

1871
July
4th

4th Hassani off down river in high
dudgeon at the cowards who turned
after reaching the ivory country - He
leaves them here and goes himself
entirely on land - Gave him hints
to report himself and me to Baker
should he meet any of his headmen
Dugumbe promises assistance to

buy a canoe on Lomame and powder
The slaves under Shereef have made
me a sort of beggar - He again added
["]Your Banian slaves are the chief
propagators of slander among the
Manyuema that you want neither
slaves nor ivory but to kill them"-
Susi and Chuma &c hear it all but
never tell me - This has been the
course all the liberated have adopted
ever since I had them - Though they
saw stealing & plundering of my
goods they would never reveal it
to me - and even denied knowledge
of it though partaking of the plunder
It is not now open refusal by the
Banians I have to contend against
It is secret slander and villainy
and no one on whom I can rely -

5th

River fallen 3 feet in all - that
is one foot since 27th June -
I offer Dugumbe 2000 \$ or £400
for ten men to replace the Banian
slaves and enable me to go up the
Lomame to Katanga & the underground
dwellings - Then return and go up
by Tanganyika to Ujiji - I added
that I would give all the goods I
had at Ujiji besides He took a
few days to consult with his associates

[0689]

689

1871
July
6th

Mokandira and other headmen came
with a present of a pig & a goat on
my being about to depart West -
I refused to receive them till my return

and protested against the slander of
my wishing to kill people which they
all knew but did not report to me
This refusal & protest will ring all over
the country

7th

annoyed by a woman frequently beating
a slave near my house - on my reporting
her she came and apologized - I told her
to speak softly to her slave as she was
now the only mother the slave had -
slave came from beyond Lomame
and was evidently a lady in her own
land Calls her son Mologhwe or chief
because his father was a headman.

Dugumbe advised my explaining
my plan of procedure to the slaves - He
evidently thinks that I wish to carry it
towards them with a high hand - I did
explain all the exploration I intended to
do -The fountains of Herodotus - beyond
Katanga - Katanga itself and the under[-]
ground dwellings then return - They
made no remarks - They are evidently
pleased to have me knuckling down
to them - When pressed on the point of
proceeding they say they will only go
with Dugumbe's men to the Lomame
and then return - River fallen 3 inches since
the 5th

10th

Manyuema children do not creep as
European children do on their knees
but begin by putting forward one foot
and using one knee - Generally

[0690]

1870

July

10th

10th a Manyuema child uses both feet and both hands but never both knees - one Arab child did the same never crept but got up on both feet holding on till he could walk
New last night of 7th Arab month

11th

Bought the different species of fish brought to market in order to sketch ^ eight of them and compare them with those of the Nile lower down most are the same as in Nyassa
A very active species of Glamis of dark olive brown was not sketched but a spotted one armed with offensive spikes in the dorsal and pectoral fins was taken
Sesamum seed abundant just now
Cakes are made of ground nuts as on the West coast - Dugumbe's horde tried to deal in the market in a domineering way - ["I shall buy that["] said one - ["These are mine["] said another - ["no one must touch them but me["] - but the market women taught them that they could not monopolize but deal fairly
They are certainly clever traders and and keep each other in countenance
They stand by each other and will not allow each other to be overreached and they deal very fairly and give food astonishingly cheap
once in the market they have no fear

12th

The Banian slaves declared before Dugumbe that they would go to the river Lomame but no further

[0691]

691

1871
July
13

He spoke long to them but they will not consent to go further - When told that they would thereby lose all their pay they replied "Yes but not our lives" They walked off from him muttering which is insulting to one of his rank I then added - ["I have goods at Ujiji I dont know how many but they are considerable - Take them all and give me men to finish my work - if not enough I will add to them only do not let me be forced to return now I am so near the end of my undertaking["] He said he would make a plan in conjunction with his associates and report to me.

14th

one of Dugumbe's company called Adie said to me "Your slaves are very bad["] This shews that Dugumbe had truly reported the matter - I am distressed and perplexed what to do so as not to be foiled but all seems against me -

15th
July
1871

The reports of guns on the other side of the Lualaba all the morning tell of the people of Dugumbe murdering those of Kimburu and others who mixed

blood with Manilla - Manilla is a
slave and how dared he to mix blood
with chiefs who could only have made
friends with free men like them - Kim-
buru gave Manilla three slaves and
he sacked ten villages in token of friend-
-ship - He proposed to give Dugumbe
nine slaves in the same operation
But Dugumbe's people destroy his
villages and shoot and make his
people captives to punish Manilla

[0692]

692

1871
July
15th

- make an impression in fact
in the country that they alone are
to be dealt with - Make friends
with us and not with Manilla or
any one else.

About 1500 people came to market
though many villages of those that usually
come from the other side were now
in flames and every now and then
a number of shots were fired on the
fugitives - It was a hot sultry day and
when I went into the market I saw
Adie and Manilla and three of the
men who had lately come with Dugumbe
I was surprised to see these three men
with their guns and felt inclined to
reprove them as one of my men did
for bringing weapons into the market
but I attributed it to their ignorance -
and it being very hot I was walking
away to go out of the market when
I saw one of the three haggling about
a fowl and seizing hold of it - Before
I had got 30 yards out the discharge
of two guns in the middle of the
crowd told me that slaughter had
begun - crowds dashed of[f] from the
place and threw down their wares

in confusion and ran - At the
same time the three opened fire
on the mass of people near the
upper end of the marketplace volleys
were discharged from a party down
near the creek on the panic[-]
stricken women who dashed at
the canoes - The canoes some fifty
or more were jammed in the creek

[0693]

693

1871
July
15th

The men forgot their paddles in the terror
that seized all - The canoes were not to
be got out the creek being too small for
so many - and men and women wounded
by the balls poured on them leaped and
scrambled into the water shrieking -
A long line of heads in the water shewed
that great numbers struck out for an
island a full mile off - In going towards
it they had to put the left shoulder to a
current of about two miles an hour.
If they had struck away diagonally to the
opposite bank the current would have
aided them and though nearly 3 miles off some
would have gained land - The
heads above water shewed the long line of
those that would inevitably perish
Shot after shot continued to be fired on the
helpless and perishing - Some of the long
line of heads disappeared quietly - Others
threw their arms high as if appealing
to the great Father above and sank
one canoe took in as many as it could
hold and all paddled with hands & arms
Those canoes got out in haste picked
up sinking friends till all went down
together and disappeared - One man in
a long canoe which could have held
forty or fifty had clearly lost his head
he had been out in the stream before

the massacre began & now paddled
up river nowhere and never looked
to the drowning - By & bye all the heads
disappeared - some had turned down
stream towards the bank and escaped
Dugumbe put people into one of the
deserted vessels to save those in the
water - and save twenty one - but

[0694]

694

1871
July
15th

one lady refused to be taken on board
from thinking that she was to be made
a slave of - she preferred the chance
of life by swimming to the lot of a slave
The Bagenya women are expert in
the water as they are accustomed to
dive for oysters and those who went
down stream may have escaped
The Arabs themselves estimated the loss
of life at between 300 & 400 souls - The
shooting party near the canoes were
so reckless they killed two of their
own people and a Banyamwezi
follower who got into a deserted canoe
plundering fell into the water Went
down then came up again and down
to rise no more - My first impulse was
to pistol the murderers but Dugumbe pro[-]
tested against my getting into a blood
feud and I was thankful afterwards that
I took his advice - Two wretched Moslems
asserted "that the firing was done by the
people of the English" I asked one of them
why he lied so and he could utter no
excuse - no other falsehood came to his
aid as he stood abashed before me and
telling him not to tell palpable falsehoods left
him gaping - After the terrible affair
in the water the party of Tagamoio who
was the chief perpetrator continued to fire
on the people there and fire their villages

As I write I hear the loud wails on the
left bank over those who are there slain
Ignorant of their many friends now
in the depths of Lualaba - Oh Let thy
kingdom come - No one will ever
know the exact loss on this bright

[0695]

695

1871
July
15.

sultry summer morning - It gave
me the impression of being in Hell -
All the slaves in the camp rushed at
the fugitives on land and plundered them
women were collecting & carrying loads
for hours of what had been thrown down
in terror - some escaped to me and were
protected - Dugumbe saved 21 and of
his own accord liberated them - They
were brought to me and remained over
night near my house - One woman
of the saved had a musket ball through
the thigh another in the arm - I sent
men with our flag to save some for
without a flag they might have been
victims for Tagamoio's people were
shooting right and left like fiends -
I counted twelve villages burning
this morning - Now I asked the
question at Dugumbe & others ["]for
what is all this murder["] - all blamed
Manilla as its cause and in one sense
he was the cause - but it was the
scarcely credible reason to be avenged
on Manilla for making friends
with headmen he being a slave
I cannot believe it fully - The wish to
make an impression in the country
as to the importance and greatness
of the new comers was the most
potent motive - but it was terrible
that the murdering of so many should
be contemplated at all - It made me

sick at heart - Who could accompany
the people of Dugumbe and Tagamoio
to Lomame and be free from blood
guiltiness

[0696]

696

1871
July
15th

I next proposed to Dugumbe to
catch the murderers and hang them
up in the marketplace as our protest
against the bloody deeds before the
Manyuema - If as he & others atteded
the massacre was committed by
Manilla's people he would have con-
-sented but it was done by Tagamoio's
people and others of this party headed
by Dugumbe - This slaughter was
peculiarly atrocious in as much as
we have always heard that women
coming to or from market have
never been known to be molested
Even when two districts are engaged
in actual hostilities the women
say they "pass among us to market
unmolested["] no one ever been
known to be plundered by the men -
These Nigger Moslems are inferior
to the Manyuema in justice and
right - The people under Hassani
began the super wickedness of
capture & pillage of all indiscriminately
Dugumbe promised to send over
men to order Tagamoio's men to
cease firing and burning villages
They remained over among the
ruins feasting on goats fowls
all night and next day 16th
continued their infamous work
till twenty seven villages were
destroyed

[0697]

1871

July

16th

16th restored upwards of thirty of the rescued to their friends - Dugumbe seemed to act in good faith and kept none of them - It was his own free will that guided him - Women delivered to their husbands and about 33 canoes left in the creek are to be kept for the owners too -

12 A.M.

shooting still going on on the other side and many captives caught - At 1 P.M. Tagamoio's people began to cross over in canoes beating their drums firing their guns and shouting as if to say "see the conquering heroes come" They are answered by the women of Dugumbe's camp lullilooing and friends then fire off their guns in joy - I count seventeen villages in flames and the smoke goes straight up and forms clouds at the top of the pillar shewing great heat evolved for the houses are full of carefully prepared firewood - Dugumbe denies having sent Tagamoio on this foray and Tagamoio repeats that he went to punish the friends made by Manilla who being a slave had no right to make war and burn villages That could only be done by free men Manilla confesses to me privately that he did wrong in that and loses all his beads and many friends in consequence

2 PM

An old man called Kabobo came for his old wife - I asked her If this

were her husband - She went to him
and put her arm lovingly around him
and said "Yes" I gave her five
strings of beads to buy food - All

[0698]

698

1871
July
16th

her stores being destroyed with her
house - she bowed down and put
her forehead to the ground as thanks
and old Kabobo did the same - The
tears stood in her eyes as she went
off - Tagamoio caught 17 women
and other Arabs of his party 27 - dead
by gunshot 25 - The heads of two
headmen were brought over to be

3 PM

redeemed by their friends with slaves
Many of the headmen who have
been burned out by the foray came
over to me and begged me to come
back with them and appoint
new localities for them to settle again
but I told them that I was so ashamed
of the company in which I found
myself that I could scarcely look the
Manyuema in the face They had
believed that I wished to kill them
What did they think now - I could
not remain among blood com-
-panions and would flee away
They begged me hard not to leave
they were again settled - The open
murder perpetrated on hundreds
of unsuspecting women fills me
with unspeakable horror - I cannot
think of going anywhere with the

Tagamoio crew - I must either go
down or up Lualaba whichever
the Banian slaves choose - It is a
great affliction to have slaves sent

4 PM

to me instead of men - Dugumbe
saw that by killing the market people
he had committed a great error
and speedily got the chiefs who had

[0699]

699

1871
July
16th

come over to me to meet him at his house
and forthwith mix blood - They were in
bad case - I could not remain to see
to their protection and Dugumbe being the
best of the whole horde I advised them to
make friends and appeal to him as able
to restrain to some extent his infamous
underlings - One chief asked to have his
wife and daughter restored to him first
but generally they were cowed and the
fear of death was on them - Dugumbe said
to me ["]I shall do my utmost to get all the
captives["] but he must make friends now
in order that the market may not be given
up - Blood was mixed and an essential
condition was ["]you must give us chitoka or
market["] - He and most others saw that in
theoretically punishing Manilla they had
slaughtered the very best friends strangers
had - The Banian slaves openly declare that
they would go only to Lomame and no
further - Whatever the Ujijian slavers may
pretend they all hate to have me as a witness
of their coldblooded atrocities - The Banian
slaves would like to go with Tagamoio &

share in his rapine and get slaves -
I tried to go down Lualaba then up it -
and West but with bloodhounds it is out of the
question - I see nothing for it but go back
to Ujiji for other men though it will
throw me out of the chance of discovering
the fourth great Lake in Lualaba line
of drainage and other things of great
value - Dugumbe asked why the[y]
refused to go - answer "Afraid" Then you
are cowards - "Yes we are" Are you men
Answer - "We are slaves" - I said that
I was glad they confessed before him

[0700]

700

1871
July
16th

They would lose all pay - I had entreated
them not to throw it away some 22
months wages but it is not theirs - They
do not care for what is to go to their
masters - At last I said that I would
start for Ujiji in three days on foot
I wished to speak to Tagamoio
about the captive relations of the
chiefs but he always ran away

17th

when he saw me coming - All
the rest of Dugumbe's party offered
me a share of every kind of goods
they had and pressed me not to be
ashamed to tell them what I needed -
I declined everything save a
little gun powder but all made
presents of beads and I was glad
to return equivalents in cloth It
is a sore affliction at least forty five
days in a straight line - 300 . . . or by the

turnings and windings 600 English miles
and all after feeding and clothing the
Banian slaves for 21 months - But
it is for the best though if I do not
trust to the riffraff of Ujiji I must
for other men at least ten months
there - With help from above I shall yet
go through Rua - see the underground
excavations first then onto Katanga
and the four ancient fountains eight
days beyond - and after that Lake Lincoln

18th

The murderous assault on the market
people felt to me like Gehenna without
the fire and brimstone but the heat
was oppressive and the firearms
pouring their iron bullets on the fugitives
was a not inapt representative of
burning in the bottomless Pit -

[0701]
701

The terrible scenes of man's inhumanity to man

1871
July
18

It ^brought on severe headache which
might have been serious had it not been
relieved by a copious discharge of blood
I was laid up all yesterday afternoon -
with the depression the bloodshed made
It filled me with unspeakable horror -
Dont go away say the Manyuema chiefs
to me but I cannot stay here in agony.

19th

Dugumbe sent me a fine goat - a
mauch of gunpowder - a mauch of

fine blue beads and 230 cowries to
buy provisions in the way - I proposed to
leave a doti Merikano & one of Kanike to
buy specimens of workmanship - He
sent me two very fine large Manyema
swords and two equally fine spears
and said that I must not leave anything
He would buy others with his own goods
and divide them equally with me - He is
very friendly -

River fallen 4 ½ feet since the 5th ult
i.e. one half foot

A few market people appear today
formerly they came in crowds - a very
few from the West bank bring salt to
buy back the baskets from the camp
slaves which they threw away in panic
others carried a little food for sale
About 200 in all chiefly those who have
not lost relatives - one very beautiful
woman had a gunshot wound in her
upper arm tied round with leaves -
Seven canoes came instead of fifty
but they have great tenacity & hopefulness
An old established custom has great
charms for them and it will again be
attended if no fresh outrage is committed -
No canoes now come into the

[0702]

702

1871
July
19th

the creek of of death but land above
at Ntambwe's village - This creek at
the bottom of the long gentle slope on
which the market was held probably
led to its selection

A young Manyema man worked
for one of Dugumbe's people preparing
a space to build on = When tired
he refused to commence to dig a
pit and was struck on the loins with
an axe and soon died - He was

drawn out of the way and his relations
came - wailed over and buried
him - They are too much awed to
complain to Dugumbe - !!

20th

Start back for Ujiji - All Dugumbe's
people came to say good bye and
convoy me a little way. Made
a short march for being long in-
-active it is unwise to tire oneself on
the first day as it is then difficult to
get over the effects -

21st

One of the slaves was sick and the rest
falsely reported him to be seriously
so to give them time to negotiate for
women with whom they had co-
habited - Dugumbe saw through
the fraud and said ["]leave him to
me["] - If he lives I will feed him if
he dies bury him - Do not delay
for any one but travel in a com[-]
-pact body as stragglers now are
sure to be cut off He lost a
woman of his party who lagged
behind - and seven others were
killed besides and the forest hid
the murderers - I was only ~~two~~ too

[0703]

703

1871
July
21st

anxious to get away quickly and on
the 22nd started off at daylight and

went about six miles to the village of
Mañkwara where I spent the night
in going - The chief Mokandira con-
-voyed us hither - I promised him a
cloth if I came across from Lomame
He wonders much at the underground
houses - never heard of them till I
told him about them - Many of the
gullies which were running fast
when we came were now dry. —
Thunder began & a few drops of rain fell

23^d

24th crossed R Kunda of 50 yards in
two canoes and then ascended from
the valley of denudation in which it
flows to the ridge Lobango - crowds
followed all anxious to carry loads
for a few beads - several market
people came to salute - knew that we
had no hand in the massacre as we
are a different people from the Arabs
In going and coming they must have
a march of 25 miles with loads so
heavy no slave would carry them
They speak of us as "good" - The
anthropologists think that to be spoken
of as wicked is better - Exekiel says
that the Most High put his comeliness
upon Jerusalem If he does not
impart of his goodness to me I shall
never be good - If he does not put
of his comeliness on me I shall never
be comely in soul but ^ be like these
Arabs in whom Satan has full
sway - the god of this world having
blinded their eyes -

[0704]
704

1871
July
25th

25th We came over a beautiful country yesterday - A vast hollow of denudation with much cultivation is intersected by a ridge some 300 feet high on which the villages are built - This is Lobango - The path runs along the top of the ridge and we see the fine country below all spread out with different shades of green as on a map - The colours shew the shapes of the different plantations in the great hollow drained by the Kunda - After crossing the ^ fast flowing Kahembai which flows into the Kunda and it into Lualaba - we rose on to another intersecting ridge having a great many villages burned by Matereka or Salem Mokadam's people after we passed them in our course N.W. They had slept on the ridge after we saw them and next morning in sheer wanton[-]ness fired their lodgings - The slaves had evidently carried the fire along from their lodgings and set fire to houses of villages in their route as a sort of horrid Moslem Nigger lark - It was done only because they could do it without danger of punishment - It was such fun to make the Mashense as they call all natives houseless Men are worse than beasts of prey if indeed it is lawful to call Zanzibar slaves men It is monstrous injustice to to compare free Africans living

[0705]

705

1871
July
25th

under their own chiefs and laws and cultivating their own free lands with

what slaves afterwards become at
Zanzibar and elsewhere -

26th

Came up out of the last valley of
denudation - that drained by Kahembai
and then along a level land with open
forest - four men passed us in hot
haste to announce the death of a woman
at their village to her relations living at
another - Heard of several deaths lately
of dysentery - Pleurisy common from
cold winds from North West - Twenty
two men with large square black
shields capable of completely hiding the
whole person came next in a trot
to receive the body of their relative and
all her gear to carry them to her own
home for burial - About twenty women
followed them and the men waited under
the trees till they should have wound the
body up and weep over her - They
smeared their bodies with clay and
their faces with soot - Reached our
friend Kama -

27th

Left Kama's group of villages &
went through many others before we
reached Kasongo's - and were welcomed
by all the Arabs of the camp at this
place - bought two milk goats reasonably

28-29

and rest over Sunday - They asked
permission to send a party with me for
goods to Ujiji - This will increase
our numbers and perhaps safety
among the justly irritated people
between this and Bambarre - All are
enjoined to help me and of course
I must do the same to them.

[0706]

706

1871

July

29th

It is colder here than at Nyangwe -
Kasongo is off guiding an ivory or
slaving party and doing what business
he can on his own account - has four
guns and will be the first to maraud
on his own account

30th

They send thirty tusks to Ujiji and
seventeen Manyema volunteer to carry
thither and back - These are the very first
who in modern times have ventured 50
miles from the place of their birth - came
only three miles to a ridge overlooking
the R^t Shokoye - & slept at village on a

31st

hill beyond it - Passed through the
defile between Mount Kimazi and M^t
Kijila - Below the cave with stalactite
pillar in its door a fine echo answers
those who feel inclined to shout to it -
came to Mangala's numerous villages
and two slaves being ill rest on Wednesday

1st

August

1871

A large market assembles close to us
2nd Left Mangala's and came

through a great many villages all
deserted on our approach on account
of the vengeance taken by Dugumbe's
party for the murder of some of their
people - Kasongo's men appeared
eager to plunder their own countrymen
Had to scold and threaten them and set
men to watch their deeds - Plantains
very abundant good & cheap -
came to Kittette and lodge in village
of Loembo - About thirty foundries
were passed - They are very high in the
roof and thatched with leaves from
which the sparks roll off as sand
would - Rain runs off equally well

[0707]
707

1871
August
3

- 3^d Three slaves escaped and not to
abandon ivory we wait a day and
men sent after we left Kasongo came
up and filled their places -

I have often observed effigies of men
made of wood in Manyuema - some
of clay are simply cones of clay with a
small hole in the top - on asking
about them here I for the first time
obtained reliable information - They
are called Bathata = fathers or ancients
and the name of each is carefully
preserved - Those here at Kittette were
evidently the names of chiefs - Molenda
being the most ancient - Mbayo
Yamba - Kamoanga - Kitambwe
Ñoño - Aulumba - Yenge Yenge -
Simba Mayaña - Loembwe recently
dead - They were careful to have the
exact pronunciation of the names
The old men told me that on certain
occasions they offer goats['] flesh to
them - Men eat it and allow no
young person or women to partake
They say that originally those who

preceded Monlenda came from
Kongolakokwa which conveys
no idea to my mind - It was interest[-]
ing to get even this little bit of history
here - (Nkoñgolo = deity Nkongolo at the deity[])

4th

Came through miles of villages all
burned because the men refused
a certain Abdullah lodgings - The
men had begun to rethatch the huts
and kept out of our way but a
goat was speared by some one in
hiding and we knew danger was near

[0708]

708

1871 -
4th
August

Abdullah admitted that he had no other
reason for burning them than the
unwillingness of the people to lodge him
and his slaves without payment &
with the certainty of getting their food
stolen and utensils destroyed -

5th 6th

Through many miles of palm trees
and plantains to a Boma or stockaded
village where we slept though the
people were evidently suspicious

7th

and unfriendly
To a village ill and almost every

step in pain - People all ran
away and appeared in distance
armed and refused to come near
Then came and threw stones at us
Then tried to kill those who went for
water - Sleep uncomfortably the
natives watching us all round
Sent men to see if the way was
clear

8th

They would come to no parley - They
knew their advantage and the wrongs
they had suffered from Bin Juma
and Muhamad's men when they
threw down the ivory in the forest -
In passing along the narrow path
with a wall of dense vegetation
touching each hand - We came
to a point where an ambush had
been placed and trees cut down to
obstruct us while they speared us
but for some reason it was
abandoned - Nothing could be seen
but by stooping down to the
earth and peering up towards
the sun a dark shade could

[0709]

709

1871
Aug.
8th

sometimes be seen - This was an
infuriated savage - a slight rustle in
the dense vegetation meant a spear
A large spear from my right lunged
past and almost grazed my back =
and stuck firmly into the soil - The
two men from whom it came appeared
in our opening in the forest only ten

yards off and bolted - one looking
back over his shoulder as he ran
As they are expert with the spear I
dont know how it missed except
that he was too sure of his aim
and the good hand of God upon
me - I was behind the main body
and all were allowed to pass till the
leader who was believed to be Muhamad
Bogharib or Kolokolo himself
came up to the point where they lay
A red jacket they had formerly seen
me wearing was proof that I was the
same that sent Bin Juma to kill
five of their men, capture eleven
women and children & 25 goats -
Another spear was thrown at me
by an unseen assailant at it
missed me by about a foot in
front - Two of our party were
slain - Guns were fired into the
dense mass of forest but with no
effect for nothing could be seen
but we heard the men jeering &
denouncing us close by - Coming
to a part of the forest cleared for
cultivation I noticed a gigantic
tree made still taller by growing
on an anthill 20 feet high

[0710]

710

1871
August
8th

had fire applied near its roots - I
heard a crack which told that the
fire had done its work but felt no
alarm till I saw it come straight
towards me - I ran a few paces
back and down it came to the ground
one yard behind me - broke into
several lengths and covered me
with a cloud of dust - Had the
branches not previously been rotted

off I could scarcely have escaped
 Three times in one day was I
 delivered from impending death
 My attendants scattered in all directions
 came running back to me calling
 out "Peace["! "Peace"! ["]you will
 finish all your work in spite
 of these people and in spite of every[-]
 -thing" - I took it like them as an
 omen of good success to crown
 me yet - - Thanks to the "Almighty
 Preserver of men" We had
 five hours of running the gauntlet
 waylaid by spearmen who all
 felt that if they killed me they would
 be revenging the death of relations
 ‡ From each hole in the tangled mass
 we expected a spear - and each
 moment expected to hear the
 rustle which told of deadly weapon
 hurled at us - I became weary
 with the constant strain of danger
 and as I suppose happens with
 soldiers on the field of battle - not
 courageous but perfectly indifferent
 whether I were killed or not.

[0711]

711

1871
 Aug.
 8

When at last we got out of the forest
 and crossed the Liya? on to the cleared
 lands near the villages of Monanbundua Muanampunda
 we lay down to rest and soon saw
 that chief coming walking up in a
 stately manner unarmed to meet us
 He had heard the vain firing of my
 men into the bush and came to ask
 what was the matter - I explained the
 mistake that Munangonga had made
 in supposing that I was Kolokolo
 the deeds of whose men he knew and
 went on to his village together - In the
 evening he sent to say that if I would

give him all my people who had guns
he would call his people together - burn
off all the vegetation they could fire and
punish our enemies bringing me ten
goats instead of three milk goats I
had lost - I again explained that the
attack was made by a mistake in think-
-ing I was the trader and that I had no
wish to kill men - To join in his
old feud would only make matters
worse - This he could perfectly under[-]
-stand - I lost all my remaining
calico - a telescope umbrella and
five spears by one of the slaves
throwing down the load and taking
up his own bundle of country cloth -

9th

Went on towards Mamohela now
deserted by the Arabs - Monanponda
convoyed me a long way and at one
spot with grass all trodden down
he said ["]here we killed a man of
Moezia and ate the body["] - The meat
cut up had been seen by Dugumbe -

[0712]

712

1871
August
10th -

In connection with this affair
the party that came through from
Mamohela found that a great fight
had taken place at Muanampunda's
and they saw the meat cut up to be
cooked with bananas - They did not
like the strangers to look at their meat
but said go on and let our feast
alone - did not want to be sneered
at - The same Muanampunda or
Monanbonda told me fondly that

they ate the man of Moezia - They seem
to eat their foes to inspire courage
or in revenge - One point is very
remarkable it is not want that
has led to the custom for the country
is full of food - Nobody is starved
of farinaceous food - they have
maize dura pennisetum - cassava
and sweet potatoes -

Fatty ingredients of diet the palm
oil - groundnuts - Sessamum
a tree whose fruit yields a fine
sweet oil

The saccharine materials needed
are found in the sugar cane - Bananas
Plantains -

Goats sheep fowls dogs pigs
abound in the villages - The forest
afford elephants zebras buffaloes
antelopes and the streams many
varieties of fish - The nitrogenous
ingredients all abundant - and
they have dainties in Palm
toddy and tobacco or Bange
The soil is so fruitful mere
scraping off the weeds is as good
as ploughing -

[0713]
713

1871
Aug.
10th -

The reason for cannibalism does not
lie in starvation or in want of animal
matter as was said to be the case with
the New Zealanders - The only feasible
reason I can discover is a depraved
appetite giving an extraordinary
craving for meat which we call
high - They are said to bury a dead
body for a couple of days in the
soil in a forest and in that time in
this climate it soon becomes putrid
enough for the strongest stomachs

The Lualaba has many oysters in

it with very thick shells - They are called
Makessi and at certain seasons are
dived for by the Bagenya women
Pearls are said to be found in them
but boring to string them has never been
thought of - Kanone = Ibis religiosa
Uruko - Kuss name of coffee -

The Manyuema are so afraid of guns
that a man borrows a gun to settle any
dispute or claim - He goes with it over
his shoulder and quickly arranges the
matter by the pressure it brings though they
all know that he could not use it.

Gulu = Deity Above or Heaven
Mamvu - Earth or below - Gulu is a
person and men on death go to him -
Nkoba lightning - Nkoñgolo = deity?
Kula or Nkula - salt spring W of Nyangwe
Kalunda D° Kiria rapid down river
Kirila islet in sight of Nyangwe Magoya D°
Note The chief Zurampela is about N W of
Nyangwe and 3 days off - The Luive R.
of very red water is crossed and the larger

Mabila

river recieves it into its very dark water
before Mabila enters Lualaba

[0714]
714

Aug.
?
1871
copied

Notes Suleiman bin Juma lived
on the main land Mosessane near
Zanzibar - seems to have had remark[-]
able foresight of events - ["]Preeminently
a good man, upright and sincere
none like him now for goodness
frequently foretold the deaths of great
men among the Arabs["] - said that

two middle sized white men with
straight noses and hair flowing
down their girdles behind, came at
times and told him of things to come
He died twelve years ago and fore-
told his own decease three days before
it happened of cholera
Enquire further -

A ball of hair rolled in the stomach
of a lion as calculi are is a great
charm among the Arabs it scares
away other animals -

Lions fat smeared on the tails
of oxen to be taken through a country
abounding in Tsetse or Buñgo is
a sure preventive - When I heard of
it I thought that lions fat would
be as difficult of collection as gnat's
brains or mosquito tongues but
I was assured that many lions
are killed on the Basango highland
and they in common with all beasts
there are extremely fat so it is not
all difficult to buy a calabash of
the preventive -and Banyam-
wezi desirous of taking cattle to the
coast for sale know the substance
and use it successfully ? ?

[0715]
715

1871
copied
Aug.

Note The Neggeri or Nyegeri a small
animal attacks the of
of man and beast ferociously. Buffaloes
as I long ago heard from Makololo are
often castrated by him and die - These who
know him squat down on being attacked
and defend themselves with a knife
Mbinde or Ratel flies at the tendon
Achilles - Bees detest his droppings &
urine so much as to escape at once
and leave him to eat the honey unmolested
and all animals dread his attacks on

the heel - The Soko on the contrary
bites off the ends of the fingers and toes
while the leopards and all the cat tribe
attack the throat

Fisi ea Bahari = possibly the seal
is abundant in the Arab seas and
may have covered the tabernacle if
the animal skins were not those of the
Badger -

The Babemba mix a handful of castor
oil seeds with dura or Meleza (millet)
and grind all together - The feel the
need of only ingredients in these farina[-]
-ceaus grains and custom makes
them relish the mixture

Laba in the Manyuema tounge means
medicine - This would make Lualaba
the river of medicine or charms
but the Manyuema do not acknowledge
that to be the meaning - nor is it
looked on as sacred like the Ganges
the banks are healthy and it yields
food abundantly both in the water
and on its banks - The word Lualaba
is applied to the Lufira when it becomes

[0716]

716

1871

Aug

copied

very large and it is applied to the
river that divides Rua from
Londa or Lunda - Lua means
river - Lui = water - Lualaba seems
to have the idea of flowing grandly

Note

Kondohondo or Sassassa the
Buceros cristata - The large double
billed Horn bill called Kangomira

on the Shire shot at Bambarre
is good eating if well cooked
and has orange coloured fat like
the Zebra - I keep the bill to make
a spoon of it - An English Ambassa[-]
-dor at Constantinople was shewn
a horn bill spoon and asked if
it were really the bill of the
Phoenix - He replied that he
did not know but he had a
friend in London who knew
every bird in the Universe and
he along could decide - The Turkish
Ambassador in London brought
the spoon to Professor Owen
and something in the arrangement
of the fibres of the horn bill
which he had noticed before led
him to go into the Museum and
bring out a head of Buceros
Cristata - a preserved specimen
of this very bird - "God is great"
"God is great" said the stranger
This is undoubtedly Phoenix
of which we have heard so often
I can add that Phoenix flesh is
good eating - Prof. Owen told
the tale before the Hunlerian Society
in 1857 - at which I was present

[0717]
717

1871
Aug.
copied

Notes - The soko or gorrilah has in
general a good character from the Man-
yuema but he is cunning and not
devoid of a species of humour He
is said to stalk men and women very
successfully when engaged in fieldwork
snatches up a child and runs up a tree
evidently amused by its screaming - When
tempted by a bunch of small bananas
which are his weakness he lifts them
and drops the child - The young soko in

that case would cling to the shoulder and under the armpit of the elder - one man was cutting out honey from a tree - and naked - A soko suddenly appeared behind and caught him by the privates grinned and giggled & let him go - Another man was hunting and missed when trying to spear a soko - He grappled with the man and the spear was broken in the struggle - The man shouted "Soko" "has caught me" and before the man's companions could come soko had bitten off the ends of four fingers & escaped unharmed Both men are now alive at Bambarre and all believe the above statement to be true -

Soko has very sharp eyes and no one can stalk him in front without being seen He is on this account generally speared or shot in the back - I saw four killed in one day all with back wounds Muhamad's hunter saw one near to Bambarre carefully examining & picking his finger nails, which he tried to get near he was gone - Two nests were made by sokos about a mile from my hut

[0718]

718

1871 -
August
copied

I wished to observe them from a place of concealment but the Manyuema objected so strongly I yielded to them By lying in ambush they speared one of them - When newly killed his ugliness is quite appalling - The likeness of Satan in the Ninæveh marbles is not have so ugly as he - When seen in the Forest in a path he often walks upright with his hands on his head as if to steady his loins - He is then to me a short bandy legged potbellied low browed villain without a particle of the gentleman in him - He

is not a very formidable beast at any
time - It is indisputable that he tries to bite
off the ends of the fingers and toes - His
strength is great as seen in encounters
with the leopard - It does not occur to
him to use his canine teeth which are
long and formidable - but he bites off the
leopards claws and both animals
die together - Soko has been known to
by seizing the leopards paws
prevail ^but die afterwards of his wounds
He is able to hold his antagonist down
At least so say the natives - many came
down in the forest about a hundred yards
from our Bambarre camp and
would not have been known except
by their giving tongue like fox hounds
He draws out a spear from his own
body but does not attempt to use it
against his enemy - A lion kills him
at once but does not eat him -
Soko eats no flesh - nor maize
His food consists of wild fruits which
abound in the forests - Soko sometimes
bears twins - never molests women

[0719]

719

1871
Aug.
copied

nor a man if he has no spear - one
soko was killed and found to have
holes in his ears - Some would be wise
Manyema argued that he must have
died a man and rose again as a soko
others gravely assert that soko is as
wise as a man and never injures
those who do not molest him - They
drum on hollow trees in the forest and
accompany the noise with a yelping
which is very well imitated by the
natives - embryotic music? - When the
people hear Sokos at their drumming
they go out against them and attack

in order to kill them - but say they -
["]When Sokos hear us beating our drums
and singing they never attempt to
disturb us["] - They are better than men
never steal but are content with their
own food - They keep certain districts
of the Forest to particular parties of
Sokos like the street dogs of Constanti[-]
-nople and Cairo and when an intruder
comes from another district they beat
him back by slapping his cheeks
fondly and sometimes biting him

He treads on the dorsal parts of the
second joints of the fingers - not on
the nails or knuckles and in so
doing hitches the body along as if
with crutches - sometimes both hands
down at once sometimes one after
the other - Sometimes upright but he
takes to all fours as soon as he sees
man -

[0720]

720

1871
August
11th

Came on by a long march of six hours
across plains of grass and watercourses
lined with beautiful trees to Kassessa's
the chief of Mamohela who has helped
the Arabs to scourge several of his country[-]
men for old feuds - He gave them
goats and then guided them by night
to the villages where they got more
goats and many captives each to
be redeemed with ten goats more -
Last foray the people had learned
that every shot does not kill and
they came up to the party with bows
and arrows and compelled the slaves
to throw down guns & powder horns
They would have shewn no mercy
had Manyuema been thus in slave
power but this is a beginning of
the end which will exclude Arab

traders from the country - Rested half
a day as I am still ill - I do most
devoutly thank the Lord for sparing my
life three times in one day - The Lord is
good a stronghold in the day of trouble and
he knows them that trust in him -

12th

Mamohela camp all burned off
we sleep at Mamohela village

13th

At a village on bank of R Lolindi
suffering greatly - A man brought
a young nearly full fledged Kite
from a nest on a tree - This is
the first case of breeding I am
sure of in this country - They are
migratory from the South
probably into these intertropical
lands

[0721]

721

1871

14th

Aug.

Across many brisk burns to a village
on the side of a mountain range

First rains 12th & 14th gentle but near
Luamo it ran in the paths & caused dew

15th

To Muanambonyo's - Golungo a bush
buck with stripes across body and two

rows of stripes spots along the sides?

16th

To Luamo R. very ill with bowels

17th

cross river & sent a message to my friend Katomba sent a bountiful supply of food back

18th

Reached Katomba at Moenemgoi's & welcomed by all the heavily laden Arab traders - They carry their trade spoil in three relays Kenyengere attacked before I came & 150 captives taken - about 100 slain - this is an old feud of Moenemgoi which the Arabs took up for their own gain - No news whatever from Ujiji and M. Bogharib is still at Bambarre with all my letters

19th 20th

rest from weakness - 21st up to the Palms on the West of Mt Kanyima Pass. 22^d Bambarre - 28th Better & thankful Katomba's party has nearly a thousand Frasilahs of ivory and Muhamad's has 300 frasilahs

29th

Ill all night and remain = 30th D° D° but go on to Monandenda's on R - Lombonda

[Astronomical calculation.] at bottom of range Highest pt

on South side of range

[Astronomical calculation.]

31st

Up and half over the mountain range and

1st
Sep^r

and sleep in dense forest with several fine
running streams

2^d

over the range and down on to a marble
capped hill with a village on top -

3

Equinoctial gales - onto Lohombo

[0722]
722

Sept^r
1871

5th to Kasangangazi's 6th Rest - 7th
Mamba's = rest on 8th 9th D^o D^o People falsely
accused of stealing but I disproved it
to the confusion of the Arabs who wish to
be able to say "the people of the English
steal too" A very rough road from
Kasangangazi hither & several running
rivulets crossed - Manyuema boy followed

10th

us but I insisted on his fathers consent
which was freely given - Marching proved
too hard for him however and in a
few days he left

Down into the valley of the Kapemba
beautiful undulating country - came
to village of Amru - this is a common
name and is used as "man" or "comrade"
or "mate"

11th

Up a very steep high mountain range
Moloni or Mononi and down to a
village at bottom on other side of man
called Molembu

12th

two men sick - went though I am now
comparatively o sound and well - Dura
flour which we can now procure helps
to strengthen me - It is nearest to wheaten
flour - Maize meal is called "cold"- &
not so wholesome as the Hokus sorghum
or dura - A long march along a level
country with high mountain
ranges on each hand - Along that
on the left our first path lay and it
was very fatiguing - We came to the
rivulet "Kalangai" I had hinted
to Mohamad that if he harboured
my deserters it might go hard with
him - and he came after me for
two marches and begged me not to

[0723]

Sept^r
12th

think that he did encourage them
They came impudently into the village
and I had to drive them out - & I suspected
that he had sent them - I explained and
he gave me a goat which I sent back

13th

for - This march back completely used
up the Manyuema boy - could not
speak or tell what he wanted cooked
when he arrived - I did not see him go
back and felt sorry for the poor boy
who left us by night in consequence
People here would sell nothing so I was
glad of the goat

14th

To Pyanamosinde's - 15 to Karunga[-]
-magao's very fine undulating green
country 16th 17th rest as we could get
food to buy - 18th to a stockaded village
when the people ordered us to leave - We
complied and went out ½ a mile &
built our sheds in forest - I like sheds
in the forest much better than huts in the
villages for we have no mice or vermin
and incur no obligation -

19th

Found that Barua are destroying all the
Manyuema villages not stockaded
We came Kunda's on the R^r Katenuba

20th

through great plantations of Cassava.
Came to a woman chief's & now

regularly built our own huts apart
from the villages near the hot fount[-]
ain called Kabila - It is about blood
heat and flows across the path -
crossing this we came to Mkwaniwas
on the R^r Gombeze and met a caravan
under Nassur Masudi of 200 guns
He presented a fine sheep & reported
that Seyed Majid was dead - Had

[0724]

724

1871
Sept^r
20th

been ailing and fell from some
part of his new house at Darsalam
and in 3 days afterwards expired
A true and warm friend to me -
He had done all he could do to aid me
with his subjects - gave me two
Sultan's letters for the purpose
Seyed Burghash succeeds him.
This change causes anxiety Will
Seyed Burghash's goodness endure
now that he has the Sultanat?
Small pox raged lately at Ujiji

22nd

Caravan goes Northwards and we
rest and eat the sheep kindly presented

23^d

- We now passed through the country
of mixed Barua and Baguha -

Loñgu[-]
-mba

crossed the R^r Lo[^] ngumba twice &
then came near the great mountain
mass on West of Tanganyika
From Mokwaniwa's to Tangan-
-yika is about ten good marches
country mostly Forest open -
The Guha people not very friendly
they know strangers too well to
shew kindness like Manyuema
They are also keen traders - I was
sorely knocked up by this march
from Nyangwe back to Ujiji -
In the latter part of it I felt as if
dying on my feet - Almost every
step in pain the appetite failed
and a little bit of meat caused
violent diarrhoea - the mind sorely
depressed reacted on the body -
All the traders were returning success[-]
-ful I alone had failed and experienced
worry - thwarting - baffling when
almost in sight of the end towards

[0725]

725

1871
Sept^r

which I strained - and all because
slaves had been selected for me
instead of men.

October
8th

The road covered with angular fragments
of quartz very sore on the feet crammed

in ill made French shoes - How the
 bare feet of the men and women stood
 out I dont know - It was hard enough
 on mine though protected by the shoes
 We marched in the afternoons where
 water at this season was scarce - The
 dust of the march caused ophthalmia
 like that which afflicted Speke - This
 was my first touch of it in Africa
 We now came to the Lobumba R.
 which flows into Tanganyika and then
 to the village Loanda - Sent to Kasanga
 the Guha chief for canoes - The Longum[-]
 -ba rises like the Lobumba in the Mn^{ts}
 called Kabogo West - We heard great
 noises as if thunder as far as 12 -
 days off which were ascribed to Kabogo
 as if it had subterranean caves
 into which the waves rushed with
 great noise, and it may be that the
 Loñgumba is the outlet of Tangan-
 -yika - It become the Luasse further down
 and then Luamo before it joins
 the Lualaba - The country slopes that
 way but I was too ill to examine
 its source

[0726]

726

1871
 Oct^r -

9th on to islet Kasange - After much
 delay got a good canoe for 3 dotis - and on

15th

went to the islet Kabizi ^ -w-a - 18th start for

19th

Kabogo East and 19th reach it 8 AM
[Astronomical calculation.]

20

rest men - 22 to Rombola -

23^d

At dawn off and go to Ujiji - Welcomed by
all the Arabs particularly by Moeneghere -
I was now reduced to a skeleton
but the market being held daily and
all kinds of native food brought to it
I hoped that food and rest would
soon restore me - but in the evening
my people came and told me that
Shereef had sold off all my goods
and Moenyeghere confirmed it by
saying ["]We protested but he did not
leave a single yard of calico out of
3000 nor a string of beads out of 700 lb["]
This was distressing - I had made up
my mind if I could not get people at
Ujiji to wait till men should come from
the coast but to wait in beggary was
what I never contemplated and I now
felt miserable - Shereef was evidently
a moral idiot for he came without
shame to shake hands with me and
when I refused assumed an air of
displeasure as having been badly
treated - and afterwards came with his
"Ba ^ lghere" good luck salutation twice
a day and on leaving said "I am going
to pray" till I told him that were I an
Arab his hand and both ears would
be cut off for thieving as he knew,
and I wanted no salutations from him
In my distress it was annoying to see
Shereef's slaves passing from the
market with all the good things

[0727]

1871
Oct^r
24th

that could be bought with my goods
My property had been sold to Shereef's
friends at merely nominal prices -
Syed bin Madjid a good man proposed
that they should be returned and the ivory
be taken from Shereef, but they would
not restore stolen property though they
knew it to be stolen - Christians would
have acted differently even those of
the lowest classes - I felt in my
destitution as if I were the man who
went down from Jerusalem to Jericho
and fell among thieves but I could
not hope for Priest Levite or good
Samaritan to come by on either side -
but one morning Syed bin Majid
said to me "Now this is the first time
we have been alone together - I have no
goods, but I have ivory - Let me I pray
you sell some ivory, and give the
goods to you"- This was encouraging
but I said "Not yet but by & bye"
I had still a few barter goods left
which I had taken the precaution to
deposit with Muhamad bin Saleh
before going to Manyuema in
case of returning in extreme need -
But when my spirits were at their
lowest ebb the good Samaritan
was close at hand for one morning
Susi came running at the top of
his speed & gasped out "An English[-]

”

man - I see him” and off he darted
to meet him - The American flag
at the head of a caravan told of the
nationality of the stranger - Bales
of goods - Baths of tin - huge kettles

[0728]

728

1871

October

28th not

cooking pots - tents &c made me think
this must be a luxurious traveller and
^one at his wits end like me - It was Henry
Moreland Stanley = the Travelling
correspondent of the " New York Herald"
sent by James Gordon Bennett Junior
^to obtain accurate information
about D^r Livingstone if living and
if dead to bring home my bones
The news had to tell to one who had
been two full years without any tidings
from Europe made my whole frame
thrill - the terrible fate that had befallen
France - The Telegraphic cables success-
-fully laid in the Atlantic - the election
of General Grant - The Death of good
Lord Clarendon my constant friend -
The proof that HM Government had
not forgotten me in voting £1000
for supplies, and many other
points of interest revived emotions
I that had lain dormant in Manyuema -
Appetite returned, and instead of the
spare tasteless two meals a day - I
ate four times daily, and in a week
began to feel strong - I am not of a
demonstrative turn - As cold indeed as
we islanders are usually reputed to
to be, But this disinterested kindness
of M^r Bennett, so nobly carried into
effect by M^r Stanley was simply
overwhelming - I really do feel extremely
grateful, and at the same time I am
a little ashamed at not being more
worthy of the generosity - M^r Stanley
has done his part with untiring
energy, good Judgment in the teeth
At an expense of more than £4000
four thousand pounds.

[0729]

729

1871

Oct^r

28th

of very serious obstacles - His helpmates turned out depraved blackguards who by their excesses at Zanzibar & elsewhere had ruined their constitutions and pre-pared their systems to be fit provender for the grave - They had used up their strength by wickedness, and were of next to no service but rather downdrafts and unbearable drags to progress - As Tanganyika exploration was said by M^r Stanley to be an object of interest to Sir Roderick we went at his expense and by his men to the North end - and found the river of Usige running in the outlet is probably by the Loñgumba R. into Lualaba as the Luamo but this as yet must be set down as a "theoretical discovery"-

By the arrival of the fast Ramadan on the 14th November and a Nautical Almanac I discovered that I was on that date 21 days too fast in my reckon[-]

-

ing - M^r Stanley used some very strong arguments in favour of my going home - recruiting my strength getting artificial teeth, and then returning to finish my task but my judgment said all your friends will wish you to make a complete work of the exploration of the sources of the Nile before you retire = My daughter Agnes says "Much as I wish you to come home I would rather that you finished your work to your own satisfaction than return merely to

gratify me”- Rightly ^ & nobly said my
Darling Nannie - Vanity whispers

[0730]

730

1871

Oct^r

Nov^r

pretty loudly - She is a chip of the old
block - My blessing on her and
all the rest -

It is all but certain that four
fullgrown gushing fountains rise
on the Watershed eight days South
of Katanga each of which at no
great distance off becomes a large
river - and two rivers thus
formed flow North to Egypt - The
other two South to Inner Ethiopia
That is Lufira or Bartle Frere’s
River flows into Kamolondo -
and that into Webb’s Lualaba = The
main line of drainage - Another on
the n North side of the Sources -
Sir Paraffin Young’s Lualaba
flows through Lake Lincoln
otherwise named Chibungo &
Lomame and that too into
Webb’s Lualaba - Then Liambai
fountain - Palmerston’s = forms
the Upper Zambesi and the
Lunga (Lunga) Oswell’s ftⁿ
is the Kafue both flowing into
Inner Ethiopia - It may be
that these are not the fountains
of the Nile mentioned to Herodotus
by the Secretary of Minerva
in Sais in Egypt but they
are worth discovery as in the
last hundred of the seven hundred
miles of the Watershed from
which nearly all the Nile springs
do unquestionably arise - I propose
to go from Unyanyembe to
Fipa - then round the South ^ end

[0731]

731

1871

Nov^r

=

of Tanganyika - Pambete or Mbete
then across the Chambeze and round

South of

Lake Bangweolo and due West to
the Ancient Fountains - Leaving the
underground excavations till after
visiting Katanga - This route will
serve to certify that no other sources
of the Nile can come from the South
without being seen by me - No one
will cut me out after this explora-
-tion is accomplished - And may the
good Lord of all help me to shew
myself one of his stout hearted
servants - an honour to my children
and ^ perhaps my country & race -

M^r Stanley had been mulcted of
a very large quantity of goods by his
guide taking to the Wavinza and
Uha country where the "honga" is
shameless robbery accompanied
with insult. To avoid this he proposed
to go along Tanganyika Southwards
by canoe until were clear of the country
of the robbers - and then strike East till
we came to that part of his route where
the people had all been friendly - We
went by sea to Burimba just 60'
South of Ujiji then struck nearly
East over a beautiful mountainous
country well covered with green open
forest but without a path going in
our direction for ten days - We
reached his route at Merera of

Losawa where we bought plenty of
Dura - He shot a zebra & buffalo
near Tanganyika and at Npokwa
two zebras and a cow giraffe

[0732]
732

1872
January -

The meat of all very good but
that of the Graffe super excellent
The Basa vira owners of the country
had fled from Simba son of the
Banyamwezi chief of Unyanyembe
and we had none but pleasant
intercourse with the present inhabi[-]
-tants - The rams had commenced
or were commencing as we came
Eastward for but few days elapsed
without very heavy showers -
When near Unyanyembe the grain
was just coming up - In some
cases early planting & showers
had raised the maize a foot or
one foot and a half - The game
was somewhat scattered as usually
happens when water stands in
pools all over the country - Much
of the way on the Unyanyembe
side of the country was flat -
with patches of trees alternating
with open grassy glades where
at other seasons water is scarce
many of the trees are denuded
of their bark to be made into
bark cloth - Kirindas or baskets
or thatch - They are upland forest
trees - Honey sometimes found
in abundance - A swarm of
bees attacked a donkey M^r Stanley
bought for me and instead of
galloping off as did the other
the fool of a beast rolled down
and over and over - I did the
same then ran - dashed into a
bush like an ostrich pursued

[0733]

733

1872

Jany

then ran whisking a bush round my
head they gave me a sore head & face
before I got rid of the angry insects -
I never saw men attacked before -
Donkey was completely knocked up by
the stings on head face & hips & died in
two days in consequence -

Our march extended from 26th December
1871 till 8th February 1871 - or 54 days
This was over three hundred miles &
thankful I was to reach Unyambe
and the tembe Kurkuru for having
only ill made French shoes sent from
the coast I was delighted to find that two
pairs of fine English boots had most
considerately been sent by my friend
M^r Waller

I found also that the two headmen
selected by the notorious but covert
slave trader Ludha Damji had been
plundering my stores from the ^ 20th ~~end~~ of
October 1870 to 18th ~~to near the end~~ of February
or nearly sixteen months - one
had died of small pox and the other
not only plundered my stores but broke
open the lock of M^r Stanley's store
room and plundered his goods - He
declared that all my goods were safe
but when the list was referred to &
the goods counted and he was questioned
as to the serious loss he at last reme[-]
mbered a bale of 7 pieces Merikano
and three Kanike = or 304 yards that
he evidently had hidden - on questioning
about the boxes brought he was
equally ignorant but at last said "oh
I remember a box of brandy where it
went - And every one knows as well as I

[0734]

734

1872

Feby

18th

this and M^r Stanley's goods being found
in his possession made me resolve
to have done with him - My losses
by the robberies of the Banian employed
slaves were more than made up by
M^r Stanley who gave me twelve bales
of calico nine loads = 14 ½ Bags of beads
38 coils of brass wire - a tent-boat
bath cooking pots - 12 copper sheets -
air bed - trousers - jackets &c =
Indeed I am again quite set up &
as soon as he can send men not
slaves from the coast I go to my
work with a fair prospect of finishing
it.

On coming to Unyanyembe we
found that all the Arabs were collected
between one and two days distant at
Mfutu and Kirira in order to fight
with an adventurer called Mirambo
who though originally a Pagazi or
carrier belongs to a good family NW
of this - He gradually collected a body
of desperadoes around him - Mazitu or
Mafiti - Banyamwezi all eager
to rob and plunder wherever
he led - Built a strong stockade
and then proceeded to levy mohonga
on all the Arabs who came near
him - Made extended forays
on the country people burning then
Bomas or stockades, and when
the Arabs refused to join him

[0735]

1872

Feby

18th

in a foray against the chief of Un-
 -yanyembe raised his exactions to
 a mere plundering - and one trader
 he sent back after taking most of his
 goods - Ghamees bun Abdulla a very
 brave and good Arab went against
 Mirambo with 80 slaves - They all fled
 on approach of danger and left the
 brave man - his adopted son and
 Arab attendants to perish - The son
 of Seyed bin Majid a very fine &
 brave young man ^ with his young comrades went up to
 Marambo's stockade entered it &
 took it ^ ~~before this~~ but was engrossed by the
 wealth in ivory & other things found
 and all laden with spoil retired to
 be waylaid in the long grass when
 everything was thrown down and
 slaves not killed fled - The fine
 young man perished there and none
 could be persuaded to go out & rescue
 the speared in the long grass - In ~~another~~
 this ^ case the so called governor was
 the first to begin a panic & flight
 by mounting a fast donkey and
 never halting till he got home to
 when Maramba came to town

Yuihara

~~Kurikira~~ ^ they have destroyed a
 all the villages near to Mirahibo's
 as confederate with him, and are
 expected to make an end of him
 soon and restore peace & prestige
 in the country - a large body of
 Baganda have come but they are
 to be sent against the Batuta for
 the Arabs have no food for
 them

[0736]

736

1872

March

5th

Note - sent to Syde bin Salem the
so called governor for a box detained
by him for four years though I
sent for it twice It was paid for
to Ujiji the carrier Salem Palamotla
having got \$15 but governor took
it and now returned ^ it without any
apology - two fine English guns & a
pistol packed by D^r Kirk in
1868. The wood work all eaten off
by white ants - the books gone
writing paper not present - the
iron work rusted & spoiled a cheese
in tin and a little medicine in tin
A box containing 500 ball cartridges
had been left in the wet for years
A box of Brandy all drunk and
bottles broken to conceal the theft,
but in one bottle the cork had been
driven in and a maize cob cork
inserted - A china tea service
sent by some kind but unknown
donor was not submitted to the
smashing the brandy bottles suffered
Not a word of apology offered
for all this loss, or for the plunder[-]
ing of which he was cognizant
by Saloom ^ since killed - Shereef & Athman.

Probable loss by Governors carelessness

Fine double barrelled smooth bore	200
Long single barrel Jacobs Rifle	85
Cartridges 500 fine Eufield Cartridges	25
Books writing paper - box -	30
£68 ==	\$340
For carriage from coast \$60 =	60
	\$400

[0737]

737

Unyanyembe near Kazeh of

Speke 20th Feby

1872

The Right Honourable

N^o

5-

Earl Granville

My Lord

My letters to & from

the coast have been so frequently destroyed
by those whose interests and cupidity lead
them to have correspondence as likely to expose
their slaving that, I had nearly lost all heart
to write - But being assured that this packet
will be taken safely home by Mr Stanley
I add a fifth letter to those four already
pawned the pleasure of believing that this
will really come into your Lordships hands
overcoming the consciousness of having
been much too prolix - The subject to
which I beg to draw your attention is the
part which the Banians of Zanzibar who
are protected British subjects play in carry-
ing on the slave trade in Central Africa
and especially in the Manyuema - The
country West of Ujiji - Together with
a proposition which I have very much at
heart - The possibility of encouraging the native
christians of English settlements on the West
coast of Africa to remove by voluntary emi-
gration to a healthy spot on this side [of] the continent

The Banian British subjects have long
been and are now the chief propagators of the
Zanzibar slave trade - Their money and often
their muskets, gunpowder - balls - flints -
beads, brass wire, and calico are annually
advanced to the Arabs at enormous interest
for the murderous work of slaving of the
native of which every Banian is fully aware -
Having mixed much with the Arabs in the
interior I soon learned the whole system
that is called Cutchee or Banian Trading

[0738]

1872

Feby

20th

is simply marauding and murdering by the at the instigation and by the aid of our Indian fellow subjects - the cunning Indians secure nearly all the profits of the caravans they send Inland, and very adroitly let the odium of the slaving rest on their Arab agents - As a rule very few Arabs could proceed on a trading expedition unless supplied by the Banians with army ammunition and goods - slaves are not bought in the countries to which the Banian agents proceed - Indeed it is a mistake to call the system of Ujiji slave trade at all - The captives are not traded for but murdered for - and the gangs that are dragged coast[-]wards to enrich the Banians are usually not slaves but captive free people - A sultan anxious to do justly rather than pocket head money would proclaim them all free as soon as they reached his territory -

Let me give an instance or two to illustrate the trade of our Indian fellow subjects - My friend Muhamad Bogharib sent a large party of his people far down the great river Lualaba to trade for ivory about the middle of 1871 - He is one of the best of the traders - a native of Zanzibar and met one of the Mainlanders who are lower types of man - - The best men have however often the worst attendants - This party was headed by one Hassani and he with two other headmen advanced to the people of Nyangwe 25 copper bracelets to be paid for in ivory on their return - The rings were worth about five shillings at Ujiji - and it being well known that the Nyangwe people had no ivory The advance was a mere trap for on returning and demanding payment in ivory in vain They began an assault which continued for three days and all the villages of a large district

1872

Feb'y

20th

were robbed - some burned - many men killed and about one hundred & fifty captives secured - On going subsequently into Southern Manyuema I met the poorest of the above mentioned headmen who had only been able to advance 5 of the 25 bracelets and he told me that he had bought ten tusks with forty of the captives, and having recieved information at the village where I found him about two more tusks he was waiting for eight more tusks from Muhamad's camp to purchase them - I had now got into terms of friendship with all the respectable trades of that quarter and they gave me information with unrestrained freedom, and all I state may be allied on . . . On, asking Muhamad himself afterwards near Ujiji the proper name of Muhamad Nassur who conspired with Shereef to interpose his own trade speculation between D^r Kirk and me and defray all his expenses out of my goods he promptly replied - "This Muhamad Nassur is the man from whom I borrowed all the money and goods for this journey"

I will not refer to the horrid & senseless massacre which I unwillingly witnessed at Nyangwe in which the Arabs themselves computed the loss of life at between three and four hundred souls - It pained me sorely to let the mind dwell long enough on it to pen the short account I gave, but I mention again to point out that the chief perpetrator

N^o 3

of this

series

Tagamoio recieved all his guns [---] gun-powder from Ludha Damji the richest

Banian and chief slave trader of Zanzibar
He has had the cunning to conceal his
actual participation in slaving - but
there is not an Arab in the country who

[0740]

1872
Feb^y.
20th

740

would hesitate a moment to point out that
but for the money of Ludha Danye and
other Banians who borrow from him
slaving especially in these more distant
countries would instantly cease - It
is not to be overlooked that most other
trade as well as slaving is carried on
by Banians - The custom House and
revenue are entirely in their hands -
The so called governors are their trade
agents - Syde bin Salem Buraschid
The thievish governor here is merely a
trade agent of Ludha, and honestly having
been no part of his qualification for the
office the most shameless transactions
of ^ other Banian agents are all smoothed
over by him - A common way he has
of concealing crimes is to place delin-
-quents in villages adjacent to this
and when they are enquired for by the
Sultan he reports that they are sick -
It was no secret that all the Banians
looked with disfavour on my explora[-]
-tions and disclosures as likely to injure
one great source of their wealth -
knowing this it almost took away
my breath when I heard that the great
but covert slave trader Ludha Damji
had been requested to forward supplies
and men to me - This and similar
applications must have appeared
to Ludha so ludicrous that he probably
answered with his tongue in his cheek
His help was ^ all faithfully directed toward
securing my failure - I am extremely

unwilling to appear as if making a
wail on my own account or as
if trying to excite commiseration

[0741]

741

1872

Feby

20th

I am greatly more elated by the unexpected kindness of unknown friends, and the liberality and sympathy of H M Government than cast down by losses and obstacles But I have a purpose in view in mentioning mishaps - Before leaving Zanzibar in 1866 I paid for and despatched a stock of goods to be placed in depot at Ujiji- The Banyamwezi porters or Pagazi as usual brought them honestly to this governor or Banian agent - The same who plundered Burton and Speke pretty freely, and he placed my goods in charge of his own slave Musa bin Saloom who about and very between this & Ujiji stopped the caravan ten days while he plundered as much as he chose and went off to buy ivory for his owner in Karagwe - Saloom has been kept out of the way ever since - The dregs of the stores left by this slave are the only supplies I have recieved since 1866 - Another stock of goods was despatched from Zanzibar in 1868 but the whole was devoured at this place - and the letters destroyed so that I should know nothing about them - Another large supply sent through Ludha and his slaves in 1869 - It came to Ujiji and except a few pounds of worthless beads out of 200 lbs of fine dear beads all were sold off for slaves and ivory by the person selected by Ludha Damji - I refer to these wholesale losses because though well known to Ludha and all the Banians the statement was made in the House of Lords, I suppose on the strength of Ludha's plausible fables that all my lowly had been supplied - By coming back in a round about route of 300 miles from Ujiji I did find two days ago a good quantity of supplies the remains of what had been

sent off from Zanzibar sixteen months ago

[0742]

1872
Feby
20

742

Ludha had again been employed and the slaves he selected began by loitering at Bagamoio opposite Zanzibar for nearly four months - A war here which is still going on gave them a good excuse for going no further. The headmen were thieves and had I not returned and seized what remained I should again have lost all. All the slaves who have been sent by Ludha and other Banians were full of the idea that they were not to follow but force me back - I cannot say that I am altogether free from chagrin in view of the worry, thwarting, baffling which the Banians and their slaves have inflicted - Common traders receive supplies of merchandise from the coast and send loads of ivory down by the same pagazi or carriers we employ without any loss But the Bainans ^ and my agents are not their enemies - I have lost more than two years in time - have been burdened with 1800 miles of tramping and how much waste of money I cannot say - Through my affairs having been committed to Banians and their slaves who are not men - I have adhered in spite of losses with a sort of John Bullish tenacity to my task and while bearing misfortune in as manly a way as possible, it strikes me that it is well that I have been brough face to face with the Banian system that inflicts enormous evils on central Africa - Gentlemen in India who see only the wealth brought to Bemba and Catch and know that the religion of the Banians does not allow them to harm a fly very over 12 leaves [Drawing of hand pointing past leaves.]

[0743]

743

pages

Despatch to Lord Russell of 28 Nov 1865 N°1 I II III

Passage in "Thule" to Zanzibar - 28 January 1866 IV

Deliver the "Thule" to the Sultan. Visit Sultan V. VI

Baron van der Decker killed in the R. Juba VII

Depositions of witnesses. Maya Mabrook VIII

Hamada another Mabrook (Hajee Ali chief) / IX

Mabrook speak X & XI

Baron killed by Somanlies at Barderatown XII

Suleiman's deposition XIII

Muhamad bin Shamlan Hadramande & Mobarek XIV

Austrian officer von Schiekt escapes page 2 of journal or XV

The Baron & von Schiekh's haughtiness January page Day 3

Letter of the Baron 30 July 1865 to D^r Seward —

second letter to the Baron to D^r Seward —

third letter 4 D.

Copy of a letter from Sir Bartle Frere KCB to Sultan 5 E.

visit of congratulation at conclusion of Ramadan 5 E.

Translation of Syed Majids reply to Governor —

slave Dhow burned - slave market 6 F.

ancient coins with cufic inscriptions 7 G.

arrange with Koroje to send goods to Ujiji —

Take leave of the Sultan - his kindness —

H M S. Penguin Lient Garforth - Embark men —

and animals for Rovuma - Dhow's draft too much 8 A.

Proceed to Mikindany Bay - Land at Pemba 9 B.

Real enjoyment in travelling —

Pemba Harbour - syphilitic Arabs of the Coast 10 C.

"The higher criticism" 11 D

The Sirkar - a Suaheli Arab nervous & excitable 14 G.

Nyangedi village of Makonde 15 A.

Tandahara vil. Jungle dense - employ Makonde to —

clear a path - climbing plants & trees —

Meat eaters stand most fatigue 16 B.

"Hints to travellers" nonsense 17 - C.

Monginko's goat brings out the fact that —

Sepoys & Johannese are of different sects —

of Moslems - Bon Ali our guide 18 D.

12 leaves

[Drawing of a hand pointing to the right.]

[0744]

744

January

Tsetse bite animals a second time 19. E
valley Mehambwe - carrier steals a shirt
is followed by Bon Ali & fined
Mandare or Numbo root Narri vil. 20.7
Lakelet Nangadi in Matambwe country —
Nachuchu vil on Rovuma left bank 21. G.
Gum copal tree. Makonde knowledge —
Buffaloes & camels abused by Sepoys
Ntande village stockade 22 A
People who made a murderous attack on
the boats in 1862 hold aloof now
The Makoa or Makoane half moon mark 23^d
Leave the flanking plateau of Rovuma —
Geological structure changes & so [...]does vegetation
Tsetse again - Makonde villages clean 24
Sepoys remarkably filthy in habits. —
Liponde village - make forced
marches with Johannese to buy food 25
Nassick boy rebels - has always been
trying to get others to run away - does
not want to work.
Want of food in a wide district
Pass Nyamatolole & Matawatawa 26
An old acquaintance - 27
Cross Rovuma - M^t Chihoka —
Reach Matumera on R. Loendi 28
Paid Bon Ali - Sepoys who were
left for five days at Liponde
while we went on to collect food
for them refused to come on
and offered Bon Ali eight Rupees
to take them back to the coast 29
Havildar says all I said in my
note of their refusal to do duty is true 30

English house flies in New Zealand
pigs - cow buffalo died 31.

[0745]

745

Day of the Month

Leave Ngomano = the confluence of February 1866
the Loendi and Rovuma - reach Lamba - Days
Makocera's village on Rovuma 1
Boy Richard remains behind sick with
fever - Simon did not give the fever pills
as he thought them too strong - died -

Ngozo - native tattoo 2
 March towards Metaba - chief Kunazombe 3
 Young men deserted by their wives after first –
 child birth - they assimilate in this to lower animals 4
 Trade rum unknown among Arabs not –
 from religious convictions - does not pay –
 Marauding Nindi on left bankmar Ngozo –
 sepoy's a nuisance 5
 Woman tied to a tree to perish dead - 6
 Little boy ill - Mother's love = low civilization –
 Chirikaloma's vil - cultivation manure –
 Drying meat by fire under stages = Pottery 7
 Surname's - Nannalo's an orphan 8
 A deformed child - Told by Chirikaloma –
 A captive lady freed - a virago 9
 Slaves abandoned by their owners 10
 Chenyewala's vil - party marauding –
 Machemba's brother Chimseia - the –
 brother in law of the freed lady Akosakone
 a sepoy stripped - Chimsaka's thieves 11
 Mtanka's vil - evening guns - Arabs 12
 imitated in dress & otherwise –
 Leave Rovuma & go to Mtende's vil - –
 Gindes from Mtende for eight days march 13
 country depopulated - once populous. 14
 Reach Mataka's village - Seph
 Rupia's safari and kindness 15
 Mataka generous with food
 Kulma slavers lost one hundred men 16
 Mataka sends back captives –
 & cattle taken without his knowledge –
 sepoy's intolerable - threatening to shoot
 my interpreter - kill buffalo calf - –

[0746]

746

February

Resolve to send sepoy's back - all Days
 hate them for their foul talk & curses 17
 Give calico for Suleiman a trader to feed them 18
 Abraham recognizes his uncle refuses –
 to remain with him - Try to get others –
 to remain but all refuse - Makanjela 19
 Depopulation of a well watered country 20
 Hair dressed as on stone deities Elephanta –
 Teas - Country cool and high –
 moaning as an amusement in the sick –
 Prepare to leave Moembe - Mataka's vil 21
 Geological parenthesis 22

Pezimba's vil Arab slave parties bolt 23
 Mbanga vil on slope down to Nyassa 24
 No stone weapons or tools used or known
 stone hammers (sledge) have another name
 stone is to weight digging sticks
 Misinje R confluence with Nyassa 25
 sight exhilarating - Mokalaose chief
 try to hire a dhow but owner afraid refuses 26
 Slavery & Slave trade prevent formation –
 of a state in the interior –
 Go up to R Loangwa
 Despatch N° 1 to Lord Clarendon 11th June 27. 28.
 29.
 1 - March
 Continuation of Despatch 4. - 5. 6. 7.
 D^o Journal - Fear of English = Kungu 8.
 Ink - slave boys retain much slave spirit 9.
 Wanyassa or Manganja the aborigines –
 fish Nsaka - spawn holes or houses –
 March South to go round Lake –
 Double range of mountains - desolation 10.
 depopulation by Masininga Waiyau 11.
 Lake Muddy bottom - shells
 Pantoza Pangone vil. - 24 brooks
 flow into Nyassa -

[0747]

747

March
 Mount Gome at South end of Lake 12
 Cherekalongwa's vil skin of Phenembe
 Point which D^r Roscher reached Lesefah 13.
 Arab disguise rarely successful –
 Tangare bean produces intoxication –
 Mukate's vil - slave trade discussion –
 Earthquakes - cross Pamalombe - 14
 Pima's village - salt makers 15
 Imponde's vil agricultural race not servile –
 Wikatani leaves to live with his relatives 16.
 Across base of Nyassa - Havildar leaves - 17.
 To Marenga's village - disease -
 oozing bogs of this country & inundation 18.
 Five of Marenga's wives took his disease 19.
 An Arab brought false reports of Mazitu –
 at Kasungu - Musa terrified wishes to turn –
 and runs off with all the Johanna men –
 Kumasusa's or Masusa's vil - 20
 Msusa's kindness to his old friend 21.

Arab Khamburi's defeat - Chuma's aunt 22.
 Msusa's people refusing he will go with 23.
 his wives tomorrow & carry our luggage -
 Pam Taperi in Kiras range - -
 People at Pamiala above range are 24.
 as afraid of people below as those below -
 fear those above - Gombwa a chief -
 cordom of young vegetation in trees 25.
 Huts plastered inside & out for heat 26.
 Ulazo pa Mulingu = natural rock forts 27.
 Kanthunda or mountaineers -
 Kauma's vil - chipeta - lowlanders 28.
 Chindondo M^{ts} where gold is found 29.
 Chikala a chief -
 Paritala village 30.
 Chaola poison of arrows 31.
 Lines of tattoo are like Highland Tartans
 & distinguish the tribes - a sort of Heraldry

[0748]

748

April

Chitikola of Paritala - Zalinyama range days
 Upanda - people fleeing from Mazitu 1
 Pachimuna's vil - people panic stuck 2
 fled to Pombe M^t - Mapuio's village -
 Distant relatives valuable in milandos -
 Clapping the hands - various meanings 3.
 Westwards to Makosa's vil - Employments
 of the natives - resting - Mfumo's & names 4.
 Transference of vitality - African odors -
 R. Lené - Chizumokire - Kangene's vil
 people harried by marauders as Scots of old 5.
 Kangene's taste for women's work, cooking &c 6.
 country elevated, watershed between Nyassa -
 and the Loangwa of Zumbo - Mando Rt -
 buffaloes - smiths - stone hammer - Haematite 7.
 Lions break through roofs of huts - Elephants too 8.
 R^t Bua of Nyassa - valley of Kanyenje -
 Kanyindula's vil - sources of the Bua 9.
 and Tembwe - Beautiful scenery - 10.
 Mokatoba vil - large game - goats -
 fat rubbed on skin or blistered surface -
 acts like tartar emetic in producing pimples -
 Sandilli R^t - Silube's village at base of Mount -
 Beorge's village on R^t Lokushwa - 11.
 Chilobe pea blossoms eaten - bean leaves too 12.
 Prophetess or rain maker at Mpande's -
 Chilunda's village - bark cloth making

Katette - pass Mesumbe's village miniature
 huts for the dead at Mparawe hill 13.
 Chitette or mositsane beans = food 14.
 a poor orphan - through forest -
 Marabon & sun bird's nest on Baobab -
 Tokosusi river - Maranda's vil on
 Loangwa where we cross it - flake of reed
 through a bushy country to R. Pamazi 15
 Through level Mopane country 16
 abounding in game - ornithology -

[0749]

749

Days April

A fine Kudu - reach Nyamazi R. - 16
 Travelling in bed of an ancient Lake -
 Motondo first - meat diet unsatisfying 17.
 Kavimba's - manly wives - lose goats - 18
 Climb up Mountains of Lobisa -
 Moerwa's Babisa - uncomfortable dress 19.
 Millet sown in patches in forest - Chitemba's 20
 singing birds - flowers - women rain makers
 Northern brim of great Loangwa valley 21.
 Deep valley of the Movoche R Leafiness 22.
 Gentleman's park like glades & oozes -
 cobra - puff adder - seldom do harm 23.
 Chimbwe lakelet - lose poodle "chitane" was
 changing colour - chitane m^{ts} 24.
 Varieties of mushrooms eaten & rejected 25.
 Deserted by two Waiyau - great loss 26.
 The medicine chest - Lisunga Chibanda
 Hunger - Movushe R near Chambeze 27.
 Babisa distrust - Gum copal & camwood 28.
 Tsebula or Poku measurement - -
 Cross the R Chambeze - tree struck by -
 lightning - Mabula R^t - Chitepanga or 29.
 Motoka a Bemba chief - send letters
 by Magora Mafupi to Zanzibar 30.
 Chief extortionate had one of Speke's people -
 with him - called Janje 1. May
 Hippopotamus meat - interpreter gave 2.
 false answers - a cringing slaveling -
 & all the rest are wretched cowards 3.
 Camwood or Nkola - Leave 4.
 Reach Merungu R^t near Moamba's -
 visited by Moama from Merenge R 5.
 Moamba hearty & generous - wire drawing 6.
 Numbo or Mumbo rest -
 R Lombe 7.

Liranda beans - Loendawe Rt. 8.
The Banlungu - Chibwe's vil.
universal use of axes -

[0750]

750

Days May

Kasonso's vil - attack of Driver Ants 9.
called Kalanda - Rt Loele - Lake Liemba 10.
on Tanganyika - fit of insensibility - Lake 11.
Pambete vil - Mazitu - Mombo's vil 12.
Cotton the Pernambucco kind - silly -
Deserters - having no complaint - Chitimba 13.
Meet Arabs at Chitimba's Sultan's letter 14.
their kindness - fighting with Nsama
Lake fishes - slope of watershed at Chibue's 15
Chambeze & Luapula shew to goes to Casembe
the Basango or Wasango of Merere chief 16.
Ulungu country of Baulungu - politeness of 17.
make peace with Nsama or Insama 18.
Arab wedding - Arab regard to New Moon 19.
Captives to be returned - Earthquake 20.
Huts lent to strangers - native employments -
Peace with Insama - fire in village 21.
Tembe building - Tipotipo the Arab 22.
who conquered Insama - perforated stone -
as a charm at the gateway of village -
Slavery makes bad neighbourhood 23.
Arab account of Van der Decken at Kilimanjaro 24.
Large spider inside huts - small ant -
Touraco - Callosities on shoulders of
the regular porters - March West - Lofu 25.
West to Hara - to Insama's vil - 26.
his people handsome - marriage of the
daughter of Insama to Hameas - bride
escapes - March North - fire at 27.
Hara - Prayers offered for Hamees to 28.
Harasji - Chisera or Moero atapa -
Kamosenga R - Lopere country
Sun rises & sets - Koran says so & Syde 29.
sees it and thus it must be - Goitre
mode of changing masters by slaves 30.
Lines of denudation as we march
Westwards R Choma - chifupa's
vil - Luao R - the march 31.

[0751]

751

Days June

slave esprit de Corps - 1

vil Kabwabwata in Kabuire D^t –

Chitimba dead - Arabs resolve to return –

We go to Moero - Up East side of Lake S- 2.

Reach Kalongosi R- & enter Lunda 3.

Fishes of Kalongosi

R^t Chungu where D^r Lacerda died 4.

White headed swallows (psallidoprocne)

palm oil - R^t Lunda & Casembe's 5

Lakelet Mofwé - Muhamad bin Saleh

Muhamad Bogarib - cropped ears

a dwarf - Grand reception by Casembe 6.

Casembe or Kasembe = his queen 7.

Luapula enters a marsh at S- end of Moero 7.

Perembe - mode of shaking hands 8.

Change of Casembe towns 9.

Despatch to Lord Clarendon N^o 2 - 10 Dec/67 10

Geographical Despatch - 11 - 12 - 13 - 14 - 15

Despatch 16 - 17 - 18 - 19

Return from Casembe's - Kalongosi R- 20.

Plains flooded by the Luao 21.

vil Kabwabwata - ground nuts - –

Detained by superabundance of water –

Underground houses in rocks - Rua 22.

Mofwé & elephants - bigotry 23.

superstition of ill luck –

Detained in common with Wanyamwesi 24.

- No Moslem missions known 25.

in East Africa - Koran never translated -.

into native tongues - Mungo Park - –

Katanga gold - Satan's - –

Numbo or Nyumbo roots a remedy –

for Nausea & vomiting 26.

Mpweto's Lualaba & Lufira Rs- 27.

Return to Kabwabwata - –

Inundation still great in North 28.

Chowambe & springs of Nile - Ulenge - –

[0752]

page

752

Days month

Deceived in coming North during inundation - 29th June

Resolve to try & go to Lake Bemba or Bangweolo =

My attendants refuse to go & abscond on various pretences =

abetted by "Mpamari" - Leave with four attendants =
 One deserts at Luao - Will go forward notwithstanding =
 Excavations in Kabuire = Muabo's country = 30th
 cross Luao by a bridge - wading in flooded lands =
 Rainfall 1st July & onwards 1st July
 Wading = reach Moero = Lake higher than before 9th
 Fish baskets - Katette - buna - & hot fountain =
 use for hole in cartilage of the nose - Nyina Kas- =
 -anga = villages deserted on account of wild beasts =
 through tangled Nyassi - cross Kalungosi R- =
 off through forest - Bark cloth cutters politeness =
 Fungafunga's vil - Rt Muatize - Chirongo - Mandapala 10th
 annoyance from the over officious = cold =
 R^{ts} in flood - sent to Cazembe - Mazitu raid -11th
 Rt Chungu - Cazembe's town = Pereira's visit =
 Altitudes above the sea 12th July & onwards 12th
 Resume journal at 25th July - on Missions 25th = 23^d
 D^e Lacerda = An Ujijian killed by one of his people =
 Cazembe appeases the Ujijians or Wayeiye =
 Monteiro's visit - no goods forced from =
 Portuguese Expeditions mere slaving journeys =
 Perembe the "oldest inhabitant" - List =
 of Cazembes = planting the palm oil palm =
 Perch - Cazembe always sensible =
 His people litigious = the Queen = Moari 26th
 Hot by day though winter - Cazembe's advice 27th
 Arab attention to lucky days = sacrifices =
 Holcus sorghum ripe = Cazembe esteemed =
 case of crim - con - dismissed summarily =
 Kanengwa Rt- Slave trader used =
 as a means of punishing young wives =
 by silly old men - old men numerous 28th
 Cazembe presents a biut of white bait =
 Malumbi a root somewhat like potato =

[0753]

753

page

Queen Moari a ñombe or Kifuta 29th July
 slaves often criminals and sold for crimes =
 R^t Mbereze = lion of Nyassi or long grass =
 small bears distinguish Arabs of African blood =
 Birds - minute bee - sphex - R^t Luda puta - & =
 Moenempanda - Reception - jaunty walking 30th
 or imitation of their betters as of George IVth cravat =
 R- Luongo - bridge = Moenempanda anxious =
 to get into debt but careless as to getting out of it 31st

song of six slaves in slavesticks = a lady =
 A grave in the still still forest - Kizinga =
 smokes begin - Chikumbi = Write letters - =
 Summary of sources of Nile 1st August
 Chikumbi refuses a guide for good reasons! =
 Banyamwezi expel Mazitu & are attacked 2.
 Leave for Bangweolo Lake - Kombokombo =
 surrounded by a rabble = one good soul in it =
 Moigge's stockade = "speaking mice" coo! coo!! =
 Sponge Meshwe = young men volunteer to carry me 3^d -
 Mapuni's village near Lake Bangweolo - =
 Bible - Masantu's village on its shores - 4th
 spring Chipoka = cowries in hair in fashion =
 Motsikiri or Motsikisi tree yielding fat - =
 many canoes and children = angling = leave =
 Masantu's in canoe - Lifunge islet - =
 Kisi islet - Mpabala islet - canoe men =
 had stolen their canoe from Kisi - =
 Mpabala islet after dark = dream - 5th.
 stand stare of many people - Chirube Islet =
 Kasango uninhabited islet in distance 6-
 canoe men in a flurry - Had to give in =
 to losing two of four days hire = size of Lake =
 Islets do not diminish size of watery acreage =
 Lokinga M^{ts} Kone M^{ts} no =
 Derbyshire neck seen at Bangweolo =
 sandy bottom - Return North =
 Probocis & poison bag of Tsetse =

[0754]

754

pagd

Reach Kizinga = way opening out before me August
 confusion produced by Mazitu raid - 7th August
 Banyamwezi copper smelting = conical hammer =
 cold winds = Hot fountain in Baloba country 8-
 Reports of Bonyolo people = Lake Chipokola ? =
 or Kiñkonza = feeling my way - "Kaskas" =
 Note on climate of the watershed written 27 Aug - =
 continued on pages marked 8 - 9 - 10 & 11 Aug - 8. - 11 August
 Additional note & Syde bin Habibs report - 11th
 swallows return - Kite when seen - inundation Note on
 Note written on 5th Oct^r on detention at Kizinga 12
 Irritable ulcers how to treat 13th
 cross Luongo - Lofubu - Papusi - Luena - =
 and Kalungosi at Mosolo - 500 of Insama's 14 oldest map
 people meet us - follow road between ranges =
 on the East of Moero = From Luau Rt =
 go over to Muabo = refuse to shew his =

strongholds the excavations in the hills =
Syde bin Habib = his brother killed in Rua =
success of in trading & plundering - Mullam sent for

My

Runaway attendants beg to be recieved again =
Note on the discovery of the sources of the Nile 15 - 16 - 17 - 18 -
written on 16th August last -
Additional note on change of climate
from alteration of level of the land - 18 - 19
Lake Nyassa and Tanganyika altitudes & distance 19
Suaheli idea of relation of Tanganyika &
Okara or Ukerewe - Dagara's proposal 19th
Lakes Okara or Ukerewe - Naibash & =
Baringo run into one Lake - Detention 20
slaves captured & not criminals die - of -
broken hearts - Recieve back the runaways -
Meröe lost city - African mode of beckoning -
differs from ours & nodding too - zebra killed -
wife fled from her husband
Bones of animals as fuel - fugitive slave -
caught - Muhamad Bogharib's kindness 21.
Burton's pet name indicated fear in whom? -
Depart for Ujiji, intention frustrated 22.
Warlike demonstration - excitement - -
& effects - three people murdered -

[0755]

755

August
slave was begun by Bin Juma - country roused 22.
stockade built & attacked on three sides - care -
of Imbozhwa or Babemba to secure wounded -
Five chiefs united in attack = prisoner killed -
Three days fighting - mistake of the Arabs - visit -
of Muabo's men - slave owners bad neighbours 23^d
assumptions of - dear captives - Fear that -
slaves may escape in a retreat - of course 24
they would - Babemba shew fight again - -
strengthen stockade in fear - -
Nkisi - tulubi or idols - Two deities - Reza -
Advice asked but not given so long as bin Juma -
keeps the stolen woman & fish - think that I must -
follow Muhamad out of the false position but 25
resolve to run the risk of attack - captives restored -

March unmolested - Pretty slave women all –
 escape - Traders hospitality to each other 26
 cotton grass & brakens shew damp climate –
 Sydes brother dies - slaves escape entirely –
 No forgiveness for bloodshed by Moslem Arabs –
 Chisabi the chief and dead elephant - –
 cross Lofunso River - - Syde bin Habib –
 reports of Rua and Katanga - Breed –
 of short legged goats - Gold in pool of a –
 waterfall - West Lualaba or Lofu goes –
 with Lufira into a Lake in Rua - –
 Robber islands in East Lualaba –
 Notes on Lufira from a native hunter –
 Fountain of Lufira - Lofu & Liambai - –
 in and Earthen mound = "Segulo" = anthill –
 Christmas Day - at - M^t Kalanga - –
 False reports of English steamer 27.
 River Lufuko - to Tanganyika East 28.
 Pneumonia from being wet once too often –
 carried to confluence of Lofuko Parra –
 Extract the insect called "Funye from –
 body & limbs - Embark on Lake –

[0756]

756

Copy of letter to Lord Stanley now August
 Secretary of State for Foreign Affairs 29.
 Copy continued 30
 Copy of D^o continued - 31.
 Copy of D^o continued - 1 September
 Copy of D^o finished - 2.
 Copy of letter to Seyed Majid & to Sultan Abdullah 3 - 4
 Journal continued - Kasanga Islet 5.
 Cross Lake - evidence of a fresh current –
 Kibize islet - Kabogo and Ujiji –
 Goods a missing by theft - Ill conditioned –
 Arab Zahor our host at Kasanga –
 Canoes smashed in a storm –
 The Masika season - finish letters for home 6.
 Thani's arrival reported - Malachite = Syde –
 bin Habib's brother killed by Bakatala of –
 West Lualaba - Rock dwellings Mokwamba –
 English sympathy with slave holding - 7.
 Ujijian fear of my letters - change house –
 Tanganyika encroachment Eastwards –
 Floating Confervae shew the current - curious 8.
 idea of the Ujijians as to the waterflow - –

Visitors from Mokamba of Usige or Uzige –
 Feeling for the way - Duplicity of headman 9-
 at Ujiji - Resolve to go to Manyema rather –
 than to Mokamba - Leave Ujiji –
 Kabogo M^t - calms - at full moon crossing place to Kasenge 11
 sound & lose part of line 326 fathoms –
 pull all night - man land at Kasenge –
 Baguha honest - Banyamwez not –
 R Lagumbe - Trees covered with –
 Lichens mark humidity - Peace signal –
 River Lobumba called further West –
 Lobumba Luasse Luamo - Sept 12.
 R Loungwa deep cut - Black –
 smoke lowering temperature 13.
 Kibila hot fountain - Kunde's –
 at Rt Katamba - –

[0757]

757

Suaheli superstition as to elephants September
 M^t Moloni - Large trees - Dugumbe 13-
 Meet parrots and find palm trees –
 over high mountains with fine rills 14 Sept^t
 Monandenda's - houses - Westing = 15 Sept^t
 Moenekuss or Bambarre mixing –
 blood with strangers - nasty wood –
 Fear of Manyuema cannibalism –
 Soko or gorillah rain medicine –
 Soko's house or nest - Hot spring –
 circumcision general in Manyuema –
 small variety of elephant ! 16 Sept^r
 Nigger Moslem feats - copper rings –
 Go westwards Lualaba R 17 Sept^r
 Manyuema houses - clean –
 Arab propagation not of faith but –
 of bugs and Syphilis - House –
 wife thrift - Isolation of the –
 people - country beautiful –
 Maize its own thatch - suspicion –
 Why come so far if we have food –
 Slaves not wanted by Manyuema 18 Sept
 Moenekirumbo's people afraid 19
 and shew us out of the country –
 journal to be continued after –
 Despatches N^o 1st Bambarre 20 Sept
 15th Nov^t 1870 ends 27 Sept^t
 Despatch N^o 2 - Earl of Clarendon

Dated Ujiji 1st Nov^r 1871 - being
thanks for search Expedition
of Young and N^o 2 - to Lord
Clarendon of same date 1st Nov^r -
Despatch to Earl Granville
N^o 3 - Ujiji 14 Nov^r 1871
enclosing a complaint sent
to D^r Kirk and our Government
over changes by Ludha (to D^r Kirk) 17 Oct^r

[0758]

758

Despatch N^o 4 to Earl Granville October
dated Ujiji 18 December 1871 17-18-21-
P.S D^o ask for vaccine virus 21
Journal continued - from 17th Sept. 21
Clearances of forest - Parrots nest -
and Binayoba huts on lofty trees -
Leave Bambarre and go Due North -
cross Luamo - a loving couple -
Elephant traps in Forest - 22
Man supposed to have been eaten - 23
Frequent drenchings by rains & dew -
uproarious villagers - dense forest -
the R Lolinde - Muale palm -
Tikatika or Kintefwetefwe a living -
vegetable bridge - Choleraic symptoms -
Leprous hands but a kind heart 24.
Turn S.W. caught in the rain a tree frog 25.
very musical - Went to Mamohela -
Katomba's camp - Wachogone tribe -
Simoom in Oman - three tusked -
elephant killed - 40 Manyema -
killed for one string of beads - 26
Nassick pupils refuse all work 27
Depart NW with 3 attendants only -
Driver ants - Trader assassinated -
by night - shewed reaction against -
the bloody Ujijians slaving - the -
Lualaba not in the N.W. feet -
torn and bleeding intractable sores -
Christian boys from Nassick -
school eager slave hunters if not -
in danger - Characters given to -
them by masters a public fraud 28
Back to Bambarre - Irritable -
eating ulcers - Safura or 29.
earth eating a disease per se -
Deaths from broken hearts -

a strange complaint! October

[0759]

759

1871 slaves of Banians arrive after October
sixteen months rioting on my goods
and at once mutiny - free swearing 30.
Headmen remain at Ujiji - Banian 31
hatred of my presence & disclosures –
of their slaving equal to that of Arabs –
but they use low cunning & lying –
North to Luamo again with slaves –
Recieve a young soko at Mamohela –
the least mischievous of all monkeys –
very ugly - but have good characters –
Private Memoranda - Prince Albert November
the Portuguese rights tenderly cared for 1
the native rights ignored - contrast 2
presented by good Lord Palmerston –
Private Mem. : John Moffat 3
a mistake - missionaries but –
men and not always very honest ones –
Private Mem. of two Makololo 4
missionaries Helmore & Price –
one a good man the other a born fool –
Private Mem. Thomas Baines –
a thief and moral idiot artist –
whose paintings are all caricatures 5.
Mayor Sicard - 24 boxes of sardines
he pocketed a very small matter! 6.
Forgery - a wise one sided Attorney Gen^l –
Baines bamboozles the Cape people 7
and was helped to go to Victoria falls –
Cape Paper vituperation like 8
blowing Penny trumpets –
Private Mem. Bishop Mac—
-kenzie's mission –
Makololo blackgaurded for doing –
what they first began to do under 9
episcopal and clerical leader- –
-ship - Nil teaching nullified 10
by my abandoning those who were –
harboured by the Nil teachers –

[0760]

760

Private Mem. M^r Tozer repudiates November

bp Mackenzie and the pugilistic bishop 11.
 is a man of peace - propagates a -
 Portuguese scandal & bp Gray hides it -
 Private Mem. Richard Thornton 12.
 oh if he had a friend! and £12 bill -
 for gin came into D^r L's hands -
 Retrospect of career at Kolobeng 13.
 regret not playing with my children -
 and being somewhat severe in -
 following Solomons advice -
 Manyema cannibalism - 14.
 Doubts a depraved taste the cause -
 flesh saltish - stealing dead bodies -
 to eat the meat - practice stopped -
 murders - a grandmother offered -
 as a substitute - soko not so bad -
 as men - Moenemokaia opinion 15
 on qualification for travelling -
 Leave Mamohela - Basilañge 16
 Direction of streets - morning - -
 with families - beautiful scenes -
 villages deserted in fear - iron -
 bracelets out of fashion by beads -
 slaves mischief makers - 17
 Beauty of women - Forges at -
 work slippery paths - Kimazi 18
 a queen for beauty - Mangara -
 Kasonga the chief - Southing -
 of Lualaba - mighty river -
 Arab trading agents of Banians -
 Noisy Arab demagogue 18
 Hassani's trap of 25 bracelets 19
 Kasonga never lies he says 20
 Muhamad the prophets false[-] -
 ness copied & propagated -
 Leave Kasonga's - meet -
 82 captives - cross Liya 21.

[0761]

761

1871

Examine Lualaba at Nyangwe 22 Nov^r

depth

never can be waded anywhere -
 Market very popular - Suspicion -
 _alts. -1 successively - -

Arab enquiry about Bible - dont -
 know of any false prophets -
 Try to buy a canoe - isolation of natives 23
 Market women beautiful - Loeki 24
 slander by Banian slaves & Arabs -
 Bagenya on left bank - chief -
 Zurampela decieved by half caste -
 Lepidosirens - salutations like those -
 of the Bechwana - cannibal takes 25
 Manyuema men finer specimens -
 of humanity by far than Anthropologists -
 - dress - colour - shaking hands 26.
 old feuds - Manyuema fraud in -
 entrapping strangers into - -
 Greediness rewarded properly -
 Question Lomame slaves - -
 teeth extracted in imitation of oxen -
 Ivory trumpets & bracelets sole use of 27
 copper digging at Katenga - Babire -
 ivory door posts - Black water -
 Decieved by Kalenga, a headman 28
 Bakuss or Bakuns fear of -
 arrows but not of guns - guns -
 thought supernatural or lightning -
 Bakuss cultivate coffee and vanilla -
 prodigious in numbers - -
 Pine Apples - pleasant faces -
 Bakuss smelt copper - iron 29
 Abed's kindness nullified -
 Natural acting in market 30
 Worry causing disease - safety -
 valve of system - John Hunter -
 Market a busy interesting scene -
 Market continued 30

[0762]

762

1871

November

Pottery - carrying baskets 30
 Heavy loads carried willingly
 by the free assertions 1 December
 Girls selling water - glib tongues 2
 Manyuema not liberal -
 human jaw bones as ornament -
 Roasted white ants for sale -
 Manyuema honest generally -
 Dugumbe knows of Banian -
 slaves treachery - his first words 3

canoes obtained by fraud –
 fall foul of rocks and return –
 Merciful escape from that danger 4
 We dont know many dangers –
 Manilla a slave slaving –
 ten villages burned by him –
 two strata of clouds rule –
 the weather - Worried by slaver –
 offer largely for other men –
 Mokandira & chiefs generosity 5
 Reprove a womans cruelty –
 to a Lomame slave with good –
 effect - Manyuema children do –
 not creep on hands & knees 6.
 Fishes brought to market –
 Terrible massacre on –
 15th of July 1871 on both banks –
 Massacre continued –
 Massacre continued 7-
 Massacre continued 8-
 Massacre reasons for –
 propose to punish murderers –
 murder continued on left bank –
 Restore captives 9
 Murderers return shouting –
 villages in flames - guns –
 firing women lullilooing –

[0763]

763

1871

December

Kabobos old wife - 2 heads for sale 10-
 Manyuema chiefs entreat me not to –
 leave them till they are settled –
 cannot proceed with these –
 murderers & must return all –
 my work unfinished - Banian –
 slaves refused to go on except –
 to murder in company with –
 Tagamoio - Dugumbe's kindness –
 Terrible scenes cause severe & 11—
 dangerous headache - The –
 creek of death deserted - 12—
 murder unheeded by the Arabs –
 Ill but start for Ujiji –
 R Kunda - on to Lobanga –
 character of goodness given me –
 by Zanzibar slaves better than –

that of fear esteemed by anthro- –
 -pologists - Huts fired in sheer –
 wantonness of slaves - –
 Care for the dead by natives 13-
 Kama's village and then –
 on to Kasongo - Increase –
 of party to eighty by traders –
 people carrying ivory to Ujiji 14-
 First Manyema travellers –
 Native effigies in wood –
 and cones of clay all named –
 being ancestors of chiefs –
 offerings of flesh made to them –
 Mistaken for Kolokolo whose –
 man Bin Juma killed 5 men here –
 would come to no parley –
 Run terrible gauntlet in –
 dense forest for 5 hours 15-
 saved from death three –
 times in one day - 16
 –

[0764]

1872 764
 1872 ==
 December
 saved from falling tree Peace Peace 16.
 Muanampunda his offer –
 to revenge ~~our~~ loss declined –
 Cannibalism not the effect –
 of want of food - Farinaceous –
 ingredients of diet abundant –
 Fatty ingredients D^o saccharine –
 D^o - Nitrogenous materials –
 abundant - Dainties in plenty –
 Taste for high meat possible 17-
 cause of cannibalism –
 Oysters in Lualaba - fear –
 of guns - Gulu = deity above –
 Notes on sundries - 18-
 Alledged prescience of events –
 Arab explanation of –
 Hair calculus in Lion's bowels –
 Lions fat a remedy for Tsetse –
 the animal Neggeri or Nyegeri –
 mode of attack on men & animals –
 Fisi a bahari sea wolf ? –
 Babemba eat seeds of Castor –
 oil or Palma Christi - to –

supply fatty ingredient –
Iaba - meaning of ? –
Kondohondo = Bucero cristata –
spoon of Phoenix bill - –
Soko or gorilla notes of 19-
sharp eyes of - human of - –
shot & wounded in back –
not in front - 2 Soko houses 20-
Ungainly beast & not formidable –
attacks ends of fingers –
Fights Leopards by his –
strength in holding down –
and biting off claws - Has –
a good character = drums on –
hollow trees = never molests first

[0765]

1872 1872

765

December

Mode of walking of Soko - 20 -
to Kassessa's - full fledge kite –
Mamohela - Imano - Bambarre 21 -
Monandewa's mountain range –
Kassangangarzi's M^t Moloni 22
Pyanamosindi's - Kabila hot fⁿ –
Meet caravan of Masinki at –
Mokwaniwa's - Seyed Majid –
dead - Guha = Loanda –
Ioñgumba possible outlet of –
Tanganyika through Kabogo West 23
Islet Kasenge - Kabogo –
East - Ujiji - news of 24
robbery by Shereef so as to –
leave me destitute - –
Seyed bin Majid generous –
offer of aid declined - the –
"Englishman coming" "I see him" –
the true good Samaritan –
arrives Henry M Stanley –
sent by James Gordon Bennett - juries –
News from home after 2 –
years silence - Health revived –
in a week - visit N. end of –
Taganyika - Usige running in 25
Resolve to remain & finish –
my task - 21 days out in reckoning
reasons for belief in the 26
ancient fountains - –

Round about route from –
Ujiji to Unyanyembe to –
avoid being fleeced - –
Reach Unyanyembe in –
54 days from Ujiji - find –
Arabs engaged in a somewhat –
chronic war with Mirambo 27

[0766]

766
December
Robbery by headsmen selected 29
by Ludha Danji again - –
M^r Stanley's generous –
presents a short 28
Note on Arab near with –
Mirambo - loss by the –
so-called governor Syde bin –
Salems carelessness –
but I keep my own counsel. –

[0767]

767

From 12 leaves back 1872 Feby 20 - despatch –
naturally conclude that all cutchees may
safely be entrusted with the possession of
slaves, but I have been forced to see that
those who shrink from killing a flea or
mosquito are virutally the worst cannibals
in all Africa - the Manyema cannibals
among whom I spent nearly two years
are innocents compared with our
protected Banian fellow subjects.
By then Arab agents they compass the
destruction of more human lives
for their flesh pots in ten - and
could the Indian gentlemen who oppose
the anti slave trade policy of the Foreign
office, but witness the horrid deeds
done by the Banian agents, they would
be foremost in decreeing that every
cutchee found guilty of direct or indirect
slaving should forthwith be shipped
back to India, if not to the Andeman
islands.

The Banians having complete possession of the custom House and Revenue of Zanzibar enjoy complete ample opportunity to aid and conceal the slave trade and all fraudulent transactions committed by their agents - It would be good policy to recommend to Sultan as he cannot trust his Moslem subjects to place his income from all sources in the hands of an English or American merchant of known reputation & uprightness It would be a check on the slave trade - a benefit to the Sultan and an aid to lawful commerce -

[0768]

1872
Feby
20

768

But by far the most beneficial measure that could be introduced into Eastern Africa would be the moral element which has worked so beneficially in suppressing the slave trade around all the English settlements of the West Coast - the Banians seem to have no religion worthy of the name, and among the Muhamadans religion and morality are completely disjoined - Different opinions have been expressed as to the success of Christian missionaries - and gentlemen who judge by the riff raff that follow Indian camps speak very unfavourably from an impression that the drunkhards who profess to be of "Master's caste and drink brandy" are of average specimens of Christian comments - But the comprehensible reports of Colonel Ord presented to Parliament 1865 contains no such mistake - He states that while the presence of the squadron has had some share in suppressing the slave trade the result is mainly due to the existence

of the settlements - this is supported by the fact that even in those least visited by men of war, it has been as effectually suppressed as in those which have been their most constant resort - the moral element which has proved beneficial all round the settlements is mainly due to the teachings of the missionaries - I would carefully avoid anything like boasting over the benevolent efforts of our countrymen

[0769]

769

1872

Feb

20

But here their good influences are totally unknown - No attempt has ever been made by the Muhamadans in East Africa to propagate their faith, and their trade intercourse has only made the natives more avaricious than themselves The fines levied on all traders are nearly prohibitive and nothing is given in return M^r Stanley was mulcted of sixteen hundred yards of superior calico between the sea and Ujiji - and we made a detour of 300 miles to avoid similar spoliation among people accustomed to Arabs - It has been said that Moslems would be better missionaries than Christians because they would allow polygamy, but nowhere have Christians been loaded with the contempt the Arabs have to endure in addition to being plundered - to "hoñga" originally meant to make friends - it does so now in all the more central countries and presents are exchanged at the ceremony the natives usually giving the largest amount but on routes much frequented by Arabs it has come to mean not "black mail" but forced contributions impudently demanded and neither service nor food returned

six pages to be added

David Livingstone
Despatch is continued in the three
loose sheets herein enclosed.

[0770]

[0771]

[0772]

[0773]

[0774]

[0775]

[0776]